



# **Ezekiel**

**translationNotes**

v8

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 8

**Published:** 2017-07-05

## **Table of Contents**

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>29</b>
Introduction to Ezekiel . . . . .	29
Ezekiel 01 General Notes . . . . .	31
Ezekiel 1:1-3 . . . . .	32
Ezekiel 1:4-6 . . . . .	35
Ezekiel 1:7-9 . . . . .	37
Ezekiel 1:10-12 . . . . .	39
Ezekiel 1:13-14 . . . . .	41
Ezekiel 1:15-16 . . . . .	43
Ezekiel 1:17-18 . . . . .	45
Ezekiel 1:19-21 . . . . .	46
Ezekiel 1:22-23 . . . . .	48
Ezekiel 1:24-25 . . . . .	50
Ezekiel 1:26 . . . . .	52
Ezekiel 1:27-28 . . . . .	54
Ezekiel 02 General Notes . . . . .	56
Ezekiel 2:1-3 . . . . .	57
Ezekiel 2:4-5 . . . . .	59
Ezekiel 2:6 . . . . .	61
Ezekiel 2:7-8 . . . . .	63
Ezekiel 2:9-10 . . . . .	64
Ezekiel 03 General Notes . . . . .	66
Ezekiel 3:1-3 . . . . .	67
Ezekiel 3:4-7 . . . . .	69
Ezekiel 3:8-9 . . . . .	71
Ezekiel 3:10-11 . . . . .	73
Ezekiel 3:12-13 . . . . .	74
Ezekiel 3:14-15 . . . . .	76
Ezekiel 3:16-19 . . . . .	78
Ezekiel 3:20-21 . . . . .	80
Ezekiel 3:22-23 . . . . .	82
Ezekiel 3:24-25 . . . . .	84
Ezekiel 3:26-27 . . . . .	85
Ezekiel 04 General Notes . . . . .	87
Ezekiel 4:1-3 . . . . .	88
Ezekiel 4:4 . . . . .	90
Ezekiel 4:6-8 . . . . .	92
Ezekiel 4:9-11 . . . . .	94
Ezekiel 4:12-13 . . . . .	96
Ezekiel 4:14-15 . . . . .	98

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 4:16-17 . . . . .	100
Ezekiel 05 General Notes . . . . .	102
Ezekiel 5:1-2 . . . . .	103
Ezekiel 5:3-4 . . . . .	105
Ezekiel 5:5-6 . . . . .	107
Ezekiel 5:7-8 . . . . .	109
Ezekiel 5:9-10 . . . . .	111
Ezekiel 5:11-12 . . . . .	113
Ezekiel 5:13-14 . . . . .	115
Ezekiel 5:15-17 . . . . .	117
Ezekiel 06 General Notes . . . . .	119
Ezekiel 6:1-3 . . . . .	120
Ezekiel 6:4-5 . . . . .	122
Ezekiel 6:6-7 . . . . .	124
Ezekiel 6:8-10 . . . . .	126
Ezekiel 6:11-12 . . . . .	128
Ezekiel 6:13-14 . . . . .	130
Ezekiel 07 General Notes . . . . .	132
Ezekiel 7:1-2 . . . . .	133
Ezekiel 7:3-4 . . . . .	135
Ezekiel 7:5-7 . . . . .	137
Ezekiel 7:8-9 . . . . .	139
Ezekiel 7:10-11 . . . . .	141
Ezekiel 7:12-13 . . . . .	143
Ezekiel 7:14-16 . . . . .	145
Ezekiel 7:17-19 . . . . .	147
Ezekiel 7:20-22 . . . . .	150
Ezekiel 7:23-25 . . . . .	152
Ezekiel 7:26-27 . . . . .	154
Ezekiel 08 General Notes . . . . .	156
Ezekiel 8:1-2 . . . . .	157
Ezekiel 8:3-4 . . . . .	159
Ezekiel 8:5-6 . . . . .	161
Ezekiel 8:7-9 . . . . .	163
Ezekiel 8:10-11 . . . . .	164
Ezekiel 8:12-13 . . . . .	166
Ezekiel 8:14-15 . . . . .	167
Ezekiel 8:16 . . . . .	168
Ezekiel 8:17-18 . . . . .	169
Ezekiel 09 General Notes . . . . .	171
Ezekiel 9:1-2 . . . . .	172
Ezekiel 9:3-4 . . . . .	174
Ezekiel 9:5-6 . . . . .	176

Ezekiel 9:7-8 . . . . .	178
Ezekiel 9:9-11 . . . . .	180
Ezekiel 10 General Notes . . . . .	182
Ezekiel 10:1-2 . . . . .	183
Ezekiel 10:3-5 . . . . .	185
Ezekiel 10:6-8 . . . . .	187
Ezekiel 10:9-11 . . . . .	189
Ezekiel 10:12-14 . . . . .	191
Ezekiel 10:15-17 . . . . .	193
Ezekiel 10:18-19 . . . . .	195
Ezekiel 10:20-22 . . . . .	197
Ezekiel 11 General Notes . . . . .	199
Ezekiel 11:1 . . . . .	200
Ezekiel 11:2-4 . . . . .	202
Ezekiel 11:5-7 . . . . .	204
Ezekiel 11:8-10 . . . . .	206
Ezekiel 11:11-12 . . . . .	208
Ezekiel 11:13 . . . . .	210
Ezekiel 11:14-15 . . . . .	212
Ezekiel 11:16-18 . . . . .	214
Ezekiel 11:19-21 . . . . .	216
Ezekiel 11:22-23 . . . . .	219
Ezekiel 11:24-25 . . . . .	220
Ezekiel 12 General Notes . . . . .	221
Ezekiel 12:1-2 . . . . .	222
Ezekiel 12:3 . . . . .	224
Ezekiel 12:4-6 . . . . .	226
Ezekiel 12:7 . . . . .	228
Ezekiel 12:8-10 . . . . .	229
Ezekiel 12:11-13 . . . . .	231
Ezekiel 12:14-16 . . . . .	233
Ezekiel 12:17-18 . . . . .	235
Ezekiel 12:19-20 . . . . .	236
Ezekiel 12:21-23 . . . . .	238
Ezekiel 12:24-25 . . . . .	240
Ezekiel 12:26-28 . . . . .	242
Ezekiel 13 General Notes . . . . .	244
Ezekiel 13:1-4 . . . . .	245
Ezekiel 13:5-7 . . . . .	247
Ezekiel 13:8-9 . . . . .	249
Ezekiel 13:10-12 . . . . .	251
Ezekiel 13:13-14 . . . . .	253
Ezekiel 13:15-16 . . . . .	255

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 13:17-18 . . . . .	257
Ezekiel 13:19 . . . . .	260
Ezekiel 13:20-21 . . . . .	261
Ezekiel 13:22-23 . . . . .	263
Ezekiel 14 General Notes . . . . .	265
Ezekiel 14:1-3 . . . . .	266
Ezekiel 14:4-5 . . . . .	268
Ezekiel 14:6 . . . . .	270
Ezekiel 14:7-8 . . . . .	272
Ezekiel 14:9-11 . . . . .	275
Ezekiel 14:12-14 . . . . .	277
Ezekiel 14:15-16 . . . . .	279
Ezekiel 14:17-18 . . . . .	281
Ezekiel 14:19-20 . . . . .	283
Ezekiel 14:21 . . . . .	285
Ezekiel 14:22-23 . . . . .	286
Ezekiel 15 General Notes . . . . .	288
Ezekiel 15:1-4 . . . . .	289
Ezekiel 15:5-6 . . . . .	291
Ezekiel 15:7-8 . . . . .	292
Ezekiel 16 General Notes . . . . .	294
Ezekiel 16:1-3 . . . . .	295
Ezekiel 16:4-5 . . . . .	297
Ezekiel 16:6-7 . . . . .	299
Ezekiel 16:8 . . . . .	301
Ezekiel 16:9-12 . . . . .	303
Ezekiel 16:13-14 . . . . .	305
Ezekiel 16:15-16 . . . . .	307
Ezekiel 16:17-19 . . . . .	309
Ezekiel 16:20-22 . . . . .	311
Ezekiel 16:23-24 . . . . .	313
Ezekiel 16:25-26 . . . . .	314
Ezekiel 16:27-29 . . . . .	316
Ezekiel 16:30-31 . . . . .	318
Ezekiel 16:32-34 . . . . .	320
Ezekiel 16:35-37 . . . . .	321
Ezekiel 16:38-39 . . . . .	323
Ezekiel 16:40-42 . . . . .	325
Ezekiel 16:43 . . . . .	327
Ezekiel 16:44-45 . . . . .	329
Ezekiel 16:46 . . . . .	331
Ezekiel 16:47-48 . . . . .	332
Ezekiel 16:49-50 . . . . .	334

Ezekiel 16:51-52 . . . . .	336
Ezekiel 16:53-55 . . . . .	338
Ezekiel 16:56-58 . . . . .	340
Ezekiel 16:59 . . . . .	342
Ezekiel 16:60-61 . . . . .	343
Ezekiel 16:62-63 . . . . .	344
Ezekiel 17 General Notes . . . . .	346
Ezekiel 17:1-4 . . . . .	347
Ezekiel 17:5-6 . . . . .	349
Ezekiel 17:7-8 . . . . .	351
Ezekiel 17:9-10 . . . . .	353
Ezekiel 17:11-12 . . . . .	355
Ezekiel 17:13-14 . . . . .	357
Ezekiel 17:15-16 . . . . .	359
Ezekiel 17:17-18 . . . . .	361
Ezekiel 17:19-21 . . . . .	363
Ezekiel 17:22-23 . . . . .	365
Ezekiel 17:24 . . . . .	366
Ezekiel 18 General Notes . . . . .	368
Ezekiel 18:1-2 . . . . .	369
Ezekiel 18:3-4 . . . . .	371
Ezekiel 18:5-6 . . . . .	373
Ezekiel 18:7 . . . . .	375
Ezekiel 18:8-9 . . . . .	376
Ezekiel 18:10-11 . . . . .	378
Ezekiel 18:12-13 . . . . .	380
Ezekiel 18:14-15 . . . . .	382
Ezekiel 18:16-17 . . . . .	384
Ezekiel 18:18 . . . . .	386
Ezekiel 18:19-20 . . . . .	388
Ezekiel 18:21-22 . . . . .	390
Ezekiel 18:23 . . . . .	392
Ezekiel 18:24 . . . . .	394
Ezekiel 18:25-26 . . . . .	396
Ezekiel 18:27-28 . . . . .	398
Ezekiel 18:29-30 . . . . .	399
Ezekiel 18:31-32 . . . . .	401
Ezekiel 19 General Notes . . . . .	403
Ezekiel 19:1-4 . . . . .	404
Ezekiel 19:5-7 . . . . .	406
Ezekiel 19:8-9 . . . . .	408
Ezekiel 19:10-11 . . . . .	410
Ezekiel 19:12-13 . . . . .	412

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 19:14 . . . . .	414
Ezekiel 20 General Notes . . . . .	416
Ezekiel 20:1 . . . . .	417
Ezekiel 20:2-3 . . . . .	419
Ezekiel 20:4-6 . . . . .	421
Ezekiel 20:7 . . . . .	423
Ezekiel 20:8-9 . . . . .	425
Ezekiel 20:10-12 . . . . .	428
Ezekiel 20:13-14 . . . . .	430
Ezekiel 20:15-17 . . . . .	432
Ezekiel 20:18-20 . . . . .	434
Ezekiel 20:21-22 . . . . .	436
Ezekiel 20:23-24 . . . . .	438
Ezekiel 20:25-26 . . . . .	440
Ezekiel 20:27-29 . . . . .	442
Ezekiel 20:30-32 . . . . .	444
Ezekiel 20:33-35 . . . . .	446
Ezekiel 20:36-38 . . . . .	448
Ezekiel 20:39 . . . . .	450
Ezekiel 20:40-41 . . . . .	452
Ezekiel 20:42-44 . . . . .	454
Ezekiel 20:45-47 . . . . .	456
Ezekiel 20:48-49 . . . . .	458
Ezekiel 21 General Notes . . . . .	460
Ezekiel 21:1-3 . . . . .	461
Ezekiel 21:4-5 . . . . .	463
Ezekiel 21:6-7 . . . . .	465
Ezekiel 21:8-9 . . . . .	467
Ezekiel 21:10-11 . . . . .	469
Ezekiel 21:12-13 . . . . .	472
Ezekiel 21:14 . . . . .	474
Ezekiel 21:15-17 . . . . .	476
Ezekiel 21:18-20 . . . . .	479
Ezekiel 21:21-23 . . . . .	481
Ezekiel 21:24 . . . . .	483
Ezekiel 21:25-27 . . . . .	485
Ezekiel 21:28-29 . . . . .	487
Ezekiel 21:30-31 . . . . .	490
Ezekiel 21:32 . . . . .	492
Ezekiel 22 General Notes . . . . .	493
Ezekiel 22:1-3 . . . . .	494
Ezekiel 22:4-5 . . . . .	496
Ezekiel 22:6-9 . . . . .	498



Ezekiel 22:10-12 . . . . .	500
Ezekiel 22:13-16 . . . . .	503
Ezekiel 22:17-19 . . . . .	506
Ezekiel 22:20-22 . . . . .	508
Ezekiel 22:23-25 . . . . .	510
Ezekiel 22:26-28 . . . . .	512
Ezekiel 22:29 . . . . .	514
Ezekiel 22:30-31 . . . . .	515
Ezekiel 23 General Notes . . . . .	517
Ezekiel 23:1-4 . . . . .	518
Ezekiel 23:5-7 . . . . .	520
Ezekiel 23:8-10 . . . . .	522
Ezekiel 23:11-13 . . . . .	524
Ezekiel 23:14-15 . . . . .	526
Ezekiel 23:16-17 . . . . .	528
Ezekiel 23:18-19 . . . . .	530
Ezekiel 23:20-21 . . . . .	531
Ezekiel 23:22-23 . . . . .	533
Ezekiel 23:24-25 . . . . .	535
Ezekiel 23:26-27 . . . . .	537
Ezekiel 23:28-29 . . . . .	539
Ezekiel 23:30-31 . . . . .	541
Ezekiel 23:32 . . . . .	543
Ezekiel 23:33-34 . . . . .	545
Ezekiel 23:35 . . . . .	547
Ezekiel 23:36-37 . . . . .	548
Ezekiel 23:38-39 . . . . .	550
Ezekiel 23:40-41 . . . . .	552
Ezekiel 23:42 . . . . .	554
Ezekiel 23:43-45 . . . . .	556
Ezekiel 23:46-47 . . . . .	558
Ezekiel 23:48-49 . . . . .	560
Ezekiel 24 General Notes . . . . .	562
Ezekiel 24:1-2 . . . . .	563
Ezekiel 24:3-5 . . . . .	565
Ezekiel 24:6 . . . . .	567
Ezekiel 24:7-8 . . . . .	569
Ezekiel 24:9-10 . . . . .	571
Ezekiel 24:11-12 . . . . .	573
Ezekiel 24:13 . . . . .	575
Ezekiel 24:14 . . . . .	576
Ezekiel 24:15-17 . . . . .	578
Ezekiel 24:18 . . . . .	580

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 24:19-21 . . . . .	581
Ezekiel 24:22-24 . . . . .	583
Ezekiel 24:25-27 . . . . .	585
Ezekiel 25 General Notes . . . . .	587
Ezekiel 25:1-2 . . . . .	588
Ezekiel 25:3-5 . . . . .	590
Ezekiel 25:6-7 . . . . .	593
Ezekiel 25:8-11 . . . . .	595
Ezekiel 25:12-13 . . . . .	597
Ezekiel 25:14 . . . . .	599
Ezekiel 25:15-17 . . . . .	601
Ezekiel 26 General Notes . . . . .	603
Ezekiel 26:1-2 . . . . .	604
Ezekiel 26:3-4 . . . . .	607
Ezekiel 26:5-6 . . . . .	608
Ezekiel 26:7-8 . . . . .	610
Ezekiel 26:9-11 . . . . .	612
Ezekiel 26:12-14 . . . . .	614
Ezekiel 26:15-16 . . . . .	616
Ezekiel 26:17-18 . . . . .	618
Ezekiel 26:19-21 . . . . .	620
Ezekiel 27 General Notes . . . . .	622
Ezekiel 27:1-3 . . . . .	623
Ezekiel 27:4-5 . . . . .	625
Ezekiel 27:6-7 . . . . .	627
Ezekiel 27:8-9 . . . . .	629
Ezekiel 27:10-11 . . . . .	631
Ezekiel 27:12-13 . . . . .	633
Ezekiel 27:14-15 . . . . .	635
Ezekiel 27:16-18 . . . . .	637
Ezekiel 27:19-21 . . . . .	640
Ezekiel 27:22-23 . . . . .	642
Ezekiel 27:24-25 . . . . .	644
Ezekiel 27:26-27 . . . . .	646
Ezekiel 27:28-30 . . . . .	648
Ezekiel 27:31-33 . . . . .	650
Ezekiel 27:34-36 . . . . .	653
Ezekiel 28 General Notes . . . . .	656
Ezekiel 28:1-3 . . . . .	657
Ezekiel 28:4-5 . . . . .	659
Ezekiel 28:6-7 . . . . .	661
Ezekiel 28:8-10 . . . . .	663
Ezekiel 28:11-13 . . . . .	665

Ezekiel 28:14-15 . . . . .	667
Ezekiel 28:16-17 . . . . .	669
Ezekiel 28:18-19 . . . . .	672
Ezekiel 28:20-22 . . . . .	674
Ezekiel 28:23-24 . . . . .	676
Ezekiel 28:25-26 . . . . .	678
Ezekiel 29 General Notes . . . . .	680
Ezekiel 29:1-3 . . . . .	681
Ezekiel 29:4-5 . . . . .	683
Ezekiel 29:6-7 . . . . .	685
Ezekiel 29:8-10 . . . . .	687
Ezekiel 29:11-12 . . . . .	690
Ezekiel 29:13-14 . . . . .	692
Ezekiel 29:15-16 . . . . .	694
Ezekiel 29:17-18 . . . . .	696
Ezekiel 29:19-20 . . . . .	698
Ezekiel 29:21 . . . . .	700
Ezekiel 30 General Notes . . . . .	701
Ezekiel 30:1-3 . . . . .	702
Ezekiel 30:4-5 . . . . .	704
Ezekiel 30:6-7 . . . . .	707
Ezekiel 30:8-9 . . . . .	710
Ezekiel 30:10-11 . . . . .	712
Ezekiel 30:12 . . . . .	714
Ezekiel 30:13-14 . . . . .	716
Ezekiel 30:15-16 . . . . .	718
Ezekiel 30:17-19 . . . . .	720
Ezekiel 30:20-21 . . . . .	723
Ezekiel 30:22-24 . . . . .	725
Ezekiel 30:25-26 . . . . .	727
Ezekiel 31 General Notes . . . . .	729
Ezekiel 31:1-2 . . . . .	730
Ezekiel 31:3-4 . . . . .	732
Ezekiel 31:5-7 . . . . .	734
Ezekiel 31:8-9 . . . . .	736
Ezekiel 31:10-11 . . . . .	738
Ezekiel 31:12 . . . . .	740
Ezekiel 31:13-14 . . . . .	742
Ezekiel 31:15 . . . . .	744
Ezekiel 31:16 . . . . .	746
Ezekiel 31:17-18 . . . . .	748
Ezekiel 32 General Notes . . . . .	750
Ezekiel 32:1-2 . . . . .	751

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 32:3-4 . . . . .	754
Ezekiel 32:5-6 . . . . .	756
Ezekiel 32:7-8 . . . . .	757
Ezekiel 32:9-10 . . . . .	759
Ezekiel 32:11-12 . . . . .	761
Ezekiel 32:13-14 . . . . .	763
Ezekiel 32:15-16 . . . . .	765
Ezekiel 32:17-18 . . . . .	767
Ezekiel 32:19-21 . . . . .	769
Ezekiel 32:22-23 . . . . .	772
Ezekiel 32:24-25 . . . . .	774
Ezekiel 32:26-27 . . . . .	777
Ezekiel 32:28-29 . . . . .	779
Ezekiel 32:30 . . . . .	781
Ezekiel 32:31-32 . . . . .	783
Ezekiel 33 General Notes . . . . .	785
Ezekiel 33:1-4 . . . . .	786
Ezekiel 33:5-6 . . . . .	788
Ezekiel 33:7-9 . . . . .	790
Ezekiel 33:10-11 . . . . .	792
Ezekiel 33:12-13 . . . . .	795
Ezekiel 33:14-16 . . . . .	797
Ezekiel 33:17-20 . . . . .	799
Ezekiel 33:21-22 . . . . .	801
Ezekiel 33:23-24 . . . . .	803
Ezekiel 33:25-26 . . . . .	805
Ezekiel 33:27-29 . . . . .	807
Ezekiel 33:30-31 . . . . .	810
Ezekiel 33:32-33 . . . . .	812
Ezekiel 34 General Notes . . . . .	814
Ezekiel 34:1-3 . . . . .	815
Ezekiel 34:4-6 . . . . .	818
Ezekiel 34:7-8 . . . . .	820
Ezekiel 34:9-10 . . . . .	822
Ezekiel 34:11-13 . . . . .	824
Ezekiel 34:14-16 . . . . .	827
Ezekiel 34:17-19 . . . . .	829
Ezekiel 34:20-21 . . . . .	831
Ezekiel 34:22-24 . . . . .	833
Ezekiel 34:25-27 . . . . .	835
Ezekiel 34:28-29 . . . . .	838
Ezekiel 34:30-31 . . . . .	840
Ezekiel 35 General Notes . . . . .	842

Ezekiel 35:1-3 . . . . .	843
Ezekiel 35:4-6 . . . . .	845
Ezekiel 35:7-9 . . . . .	847
Ezekiel 35:10-11 . . . . .	849
Ezekiel 35:12-13 . . . . .	851
Ezekiel 35:14-15 . . . . .	853
Ezekiel 36 General Notes . . . . .	855
Ezekiel 36:1-3 . . . . .	856
Ezekiel 36:4 . . . . .	858
Ezekiel 36:7 . . . . .	861
Ezekiel 36:8-9 . . . . .	862
Ezekiel 36:10-12 . . . . .	864
Ezekiel 36:13-15 . . . . .	866
Ezekiel 36:16-18 . . . . .	868
Ezekiel 36:19-21 . . . . .	870
Ezekiel 36:22-23 . . . . .	873
Ezekiel 36:24-25 . . . . .	875
Ezekiel 36:26-28 . . . . .	876
Ezekiel 36:29-31 . . . . .	878
Ezekiel 36:32-34 . . . . .	880
Ezekiel 36:35-36 . . . . .	882
Ezekiel 36:37-38 . . . . .	884
Ezekiel 37 General Notes . . . . .	886
Ezekiel 37:1-3 . . . . .	887
Ezekiel 37:4-6 . . . . .	889
Ezekiel 37:7-8 . . . . .	891
Ezekiel 37:9-10 . . . . .	893
Ezekiel 37:11-12 . . . . .	895
Ezekiel 37:13-14 . . . . .	897
Ezekiel 37:15-17 . . . . .	898
Ezekiel 37:18-20 . . . . .	900
Ezekiel 37:21-23 . . . . .	902
Ezekiel 37:24-25 . . . . .	904
Ezekiel 37:26-28 . . . . .	906
Ezekiel 38 General Notes . . . . .	908
Ezekiel 38:1-3 . . . . .	909
Ezekiel 38:4-6 . . . . .	911
Ezekiel 38:7-9 . . . . .	913
Ezekiel 38:10-12 . . . . .	915
Ezekiel 38:13 . . . . .	917
Ezekiel 38:14-16 . . . . .	919
Ezekiel 38:17-18 . . . . .	921
Ezekiel 38:19-20 . . . . .	923

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 38:21-23 . . . . .	925
Ezekiel 39 General Notes . . . . .	928
Ezekiel 39:1-3 . . . . .	929
Ezekiel 39:4-6 . . . . .	931
Ezekiel 39:7-8 . . . . .	933
Ezekiel 39:9-10 . . . . .	935
Ezekiel 39:11 . . . . .	937
Ezekiel 39:12-13 . . . . .	939
Ezekiel 39:14-16 . . . . .	941
Ezekiel 39:17-18 . . . . .	943
Ezekiel 39:19-20 . . . . .	945
Ezekiel 39:21-22 . . . . .	947
Ezekiel 39:23-24 . . . . .	949
Ezekiel 39:25-27 . . . . .	951
Ezekiel 39:28-29 . . . . .	953
Ezekiel 40 General Notes . . . . .	955
Ezekiel 40:1-2 . . . . .	956
Ezekiel 40:3-4 . . . . .	958
Ezekiel 40:5-7 . . . . .	960
Ezekiel 40:8-10 . . . . .	963
Ezekiel 40:11-13 . . . . .	965
Ezekiel 40:14-16 . . . . .	967
Ezekiel 40:17-19 . . . . .	969
Ezekiel 40:20-21 . . . . .	971
Ezekiel 40:22-23 . . . . .	973
Ezekiel 40:24-25 . . . . .	975
Ezekiel 40:26-27 . . . . .	976
Ezekiel 40:28-31 . . . . .	977
Ezekiel 40:32-34 . . . . .	979
Ezekiel 40:35-37 . . . . .	980
Ezekiel 40:38-39 . . . . .	982
Ezekiel 40:42-43 . . . . .	984
Ezekiel 40:44-45 . . . . .	986
Ezekiel 40:46-47 . . . . .	988
Ezekiel 40:48-49 . . . . .	990
Ezekiel 41 General Notes . . . . .	992
Ezekiel 41:1-2 . . . . .	993
Ezekiel 41:3-4 . . . . .	995
Ezekiel 41:5-7 . . . . .	997
Ezekiel 41:8-9 . . . . .	999
Ezekiel 41:10-11 . . . . .	1001
Ezekiel 41:12-14 . . . . .	1003
Ezekiel 41:15-17 . . . . .	1004

Ezekiel 41:18-20 . . . . .	1006
Ezekiel 41:21-24 . . . . .	1008
Ezekiel 41:25-26 . . . . .	1010
Ezekiel 42 General Notes . . . . .	1011
Ezekiel 42:1-3 . . . . .	1012
Ezekiel 42:4-6 . . . . .	1014
Ezekiel 42:7-9 . . . . .	1015
Ezekiel 42:10-12 . . . . .	1016
Ezekiel 42:13-14 . . . . .	1018
Ezekiel 42:15 . . . . .	1019
Ezekiel 42:16 . . . . .	1020
Ezekiel 42:20 . . . . .	1022
Ezekiel 43 General Notes . . . . .	1023
Ezekiel 43:1-2 . . . . .	1024
Ezekiel 43:3-5 . . . . .	1025
Ezekiel 43:6-8 . . . . .	1027
Ezekiel 43:9 . . . . .	1029
Ezekiel 43:10-11 . . . . .	1030
Ezekiel 43:12 . . . . .	1032
Ezekiel 43:13-14 . . . . .	1033
Ezekiel 43:15-17 . . . . .	1035
Ezekiel 43:18-19 . . . . .	1037
Ezekiel 43:20-21 . . . . .	1039
Ezekiel 43:22-24 . . . . .	1040
Ezekiel 43:25-27 . . . . .	1042
Ezekiel 44 General Notes . . . . .	1044
Ezekiel 44:1-3 . . . . .	1045
Ezekiel 44:4-5 . . . . .	1047
Ezekiel 44:6-7 . . . . .	1049
Ezekiel 44:8-9 . . . . .	1051
Ezekiel 44:10-12 . . . . .	1052
Ezekiel 44:13-14 . . . . .	1055
Ezekiel 44:15-16 . . . . .	1057
Ezekiel 44:17-18 . . . . .	1059
Ezekiel 44:19 . . . . .	1061
Ezekiel 44:20-22 . . . . .	1062
Ezekiel 44:23-24 . . . . .	1064
Ezekiel 44:25-27 . . . . .	1066
Ezekiel 44:28-29 . . . . .	1068
Ezekiel 44:30-31 . . . . .	1070
Ezekiel 45 General Notes . . . . .	1072
Ezekiel 45:1-2 . . . . .	1073
Ezekiel 45:3-5 . . . . .	1075

*Table of Contents*

---

Ezekiel 45:6-7 . . . . .	1077
Ezekiel 45:8 . . . . .	1079
Ezekiel 45:9-12 . . . . .	1080
Ezekiel 45:13-15 . . . . .	1082
Ezekiel 45:16-17 . . . . .	1084
Ezekiel 45:18-20 . . . . .	1086
Ezekiel 45:21-22 . . . . .	1088
Ezekiel 45:23-24 . . . . .	1089
Ezekiel 45:25 . . . . .	1091
Ezekiel 46 General Notes . . . . .	1092
Ezekiel 46:1-2 . . . . .	1093
Ezekiel 46:3-5 . . . . .	1095
Ezekiel 46:6-8 . . . . .	1096
Ezekiel 46:9-10 . . . . .	1098
Ezekiel 46:11-12 . . . . .	1099
Ezekiel 46:13-15 . . . . .	1100
Ezekiel 46:16-18 . . . . .	1101
Ezekiel 46:19-20 . . . . .	1103
Ezekiel 46:21-24 . . . . .	1105
Ezekiel 47 General Notes . . . . .	1107
Ezekiel 47:1-2 . . . . .	1108
Ezekiel 47:3-5 . . . . .	1110
Ezekiel 47:6-8 . . . . .	1111
Ezekiel 47:9-10 . . . . .	1112
Ezekiel 47:11-12 . . . . .	1114
Ezekiel 47:13-14 . . . . .	1115
Ezekiel 47:15-17 . . . . .	1116
Ezekiel 47:18-20 . . . . .	1118
Ezekiel 47:21-23 . . . . .	1120
Ezekiel 48 General Notes . . . . .	1122
Ezekiel 48:1-3 . . . . .	1123
Ezekiel 48:4-7 . . . . .	1125
Ezekiel 48:8-9 . . . . .	1126
Ezekiel 48:10-12 . . . . .	1127
Ezekiel 48:13-14 . . . . .	1129
Ezekiel 48:15-16 . . . . .	1130
Ezekiel 48:17-18 . . . . .	1131
Ezekiel 48:19-20 . . . . .	1132
Ezekiel 48:21-22 . . . . .	1134
Ezekiel 48:23-26 . . . . .	1136
Ezekiel 48:27-29 . . . . .	1137
Ezekiel 48:30-32 . . . . .	1139
Ezekiel 48:33-35 . . . . .	1140



---

<b>translationQuestions</b>	<b>1141</b>
Ezekiel 1	1141
Ezekiel 2	1144
Ezekiel 3	1145
Ezekiel 4	1148
Ezekiel 5	1150
Ezekiel 6	1152
Ezekiel 7	1154
Ezekiel 8	1156
Ezekiel 9	1157
Ezekiel 10	1159
Ezekiel 11	1161
Ezekiel 12	1163
Ezekiel 13	1165
Ezekiel 14	1167
Ezekiel 15	1170
Ezekiel 16	1171
Ezekiel 17	1174
Ezekiel 18	1176
Ezekiel 19	1178
Ezekiel 20	1179
Ezekiel 21	1183
Ezekiel 22	1185
Ezekiel 23	1187
Ezekiel 24	1190
Ezekiel 25	1193
Ezekiel 26	1195
Ezekiel 27	1197
Ezekiel 28	1199
Ezekiel 29	1201
Ezekiel 30	1203
Ezekiel 31	1205
Ezekiel 32	1207
Ezekiel 33	1209
Ezekiel 34	1212
Ezekiel 35	1215
Ezekiel 36	1217
Ezekiel 37	1219
Ezekiel 38	1222
Ezekiel 39	1224
Ezekiel 40	1226
Ezekiel 41	1228
Ezekiel 42	1229

Table of Contents

---

Ezekiel 43 . . . . .	1231
Ezekiel 44 . . . . .	1233
Ezekiel 45 . . . . .	1236
Ezekiel 46 . . . . .	1238
Ezekiel 47 . . . . .	1240
Ezekiel 48 . . . . .	1242
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>1244</b>
abomination, abominable . . . . .	1244
Abraham, Abram . . . . .	1246
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses . . . . .	1248
adversary, enemy . . . . .	1250
Almighty . . . . .	1251
altar, altars . . . . .	1252
ambassador, representative . . . . .	1254
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess . . . . .	1255
Amorite . . . . .	1256
ancestor, father, forefather . . . . .	1257
angry, anger . . . . .	1259
anoint, anointed, anointing . . . . .	1261
appoint, appoints, appointed . . . . .	1263
Arabah . . . . .	1264
Arabia, Arabian . . . . .	1265
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic . . . . .	1266
armor . . . . .	1267
arrogant . . . . .	1268
Asher . . . . .	1269
assembly, assemble . . . . .	1270
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire . . . . .	1272
astray, go astray, led astray, stray . . . . .	1273
atonement, atone, atones, atoned . . . . .	1274
avenge, revenge, vengeance . . . . .	1275
Babylon, Babylonian . . . . .	1277
barren . . . . .	1279
Bashan . . . . .	1280
Benjamin . . . . .	1281
betray, betrayer . . . . .	1282
bind, bond, bound . . . . .	1284
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous, blasphemies . . . . .	1286
bles, blessed, blessing . . . . .	1287
blood . . . . .	1289
bloodshed . . . . .	1291
boast, boasts, boastful . . . . .	1292
bow and arrow . . . . .	1294

bread . . . . .	1295
breathe, breath . . . . .	1297
bribe . . . . .	1299
bronze . . . . .	1300
brother, brothers . . . . .	1301
burnt offering, offering by fire . . . . .	1303
bury, buried, burial . . . . .	1304
call, calls, calling, called . . . . .	1305
camel . . . . .	1307
Canaan, Canaanite . . . . .	1308
captive, captivity . . . . .	1310
cedar . . . . .	1312
Chaldea, Chaldean . . . . .	1313
chariot . . . . .	1314
cherubim, cherub . . . . .	1315
chief . . . . .	1317
children, child . . . . .	1318
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	1320
clan . . . . .	1322
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes . . .	1323
comfort, comforter . . . . .	1325
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments . . . . .	1327
commander . . . . .	1329
companion . . . . .	1330
compassion, compassionate . . . . .	1331
condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation . . . . .	1333
confidence, confident . . . . .	1334
consecrate, consecrated, consecration . . . . .	1335
consume . . . . .	1336
contempt, contemptible . . . . .	1338
corrupt, corruption . . . . .	1339
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor . . . . .	1340
courtyard, court . . . . .	1341
covenant, covenants . . . . .	1343
cow, calf, bull, cattle . . . . .	1345
create, creation, Creator . . . . .	1346
creature . . . . .	1348
crown, to crown . . . . .	1349
Cush . . . . .	1351
cut off . . . . .	1352
cypress . . . . .	1354
Cyprus . . . . .	1355
Damascus . . . . .	1356

*Table of Contents*

---

Dan . . . . .	1357
Daniel . . . . .	1358
darkness . . . . .	1359
David . . . . .	1361
day . . . . .	1363
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh . . . . .	1365
death, die, dead . . . . .	1366
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive . . . . .	1369
declare, declaration . . . . .	1371
decree . . . . .	1374
defile, be defiled . . . . .	1376
descendant, descended from . . . . .	1378
desecrate . . . . .	1379
desert, wilderness . . . . .	1380
desolate, desolation . . . . .	1382
devastate, devastation . . . . .	1384
devour . . . . .	1385
discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline . . . . .	1386
dishonor, dishonorable . . . . .	1387
disperse, dispersion . . . . .	1388
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer . . . . .	1389
divorce . . . . .	1390
donkey, mule . . . . .	1391
doom . . . . .	1392
doorpost . . . . .	1393
dove, pigeon . . . . .	1394
drink offering . . . . .	1395
drunk, drunkard . . . . .	1396
eagle . . . . .	1397
earth, earthly . . . . .	1398
Eden, garden of Eden . . . . .	1400
Edom, Edomite, Idumea . . . . .	1401
Egypt, Egyptian . . . . .	1402
Elam . . . . .	1404
elder . . . . .	1405
enslave, in bondage . . . . .	1406
envy, covet . . . . .	1407
Ephraim . . . . .	1408
everlasting, eternal, eternity . . . . .	1409
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	1411
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation . . . . .	1414
exile, the Exile . . . . .	1415
Ezekiel . . . . .	1417

face . . . . .	1418
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	1420
faithless, faithlessness . . . . .	1422
false prophet . . . . .	1423
famine . . . . .	1424
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism . . . . .	1425
fear, fears, afraid . . . . .	1427
feast . . . . .	1429
festival . . . . .	1430
fir . . . . .	1431
fire . . . . .	1432
firstborn . . . . .	1434
firstfruits . . . . .	1436
fishermen, fishers . . . . .	1437
flesh . . . . .	1438
flock, herd . . . . .	1440
flood . . . . .	1442
fool, fools, foolish, folly . . . . .	1444
foreigner, foreign, alien . . . . .	1445
forever . . . . .	1447
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness . . . . .	1449
forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook . . . . .	1451
foundation, founded . . . . .	1453
free, freedom, liberty . . . . .	1455
freewill offering . . . . .	1457
fruit, fruitful . . . . .	1458
fulfill, fulfilled . . . . .	1460
Gad . . . . .	1462
gate, gate bar . . . . .	1463
gift, gifts . . . . .	1465
Gilead . . . . .	1467
glorify, glorifies . . . . .	1468
glory, glorious . . . . .	1470
goat, kid . . . . .	1472
God . . . . .	1473
god, gods, goddess . . . . .	1476
gold . . . . .	1478
governor, govern, proconsul, government . . . . .	1479
grain . . . . .	1480
grain offering . . . . .	1481
grape . . . . .	1482
guilt offering . . . . .	1483
guilt, guilty . . . . .	1484

*Table of Contents*

---

Hades, Sheol . . . . .	1486
Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites . . . . .	1488
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	1489
Haran . . . . .	1492
hard, hardness, harden . . . . .	1493
harp . . . . .	1495
head . . . . .	1496
heal, cure . . . . .	1498
heart, hearts . . . . .	1500
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	1502
high places . . . . .	1504
Hittite . . . . .	1506
Holy One . . . . .	1507
holy place . . . . .	1508
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit . . . . .	1510
holy, holiness . . . . .	1512
honey, honeycomb . . . . .	1514
hoof, hoofed, hooves . . . . .	1515
hope, hoped, hopes . . . . .	1516
horror, horrified . . . . .	1518
horse . . . . .	1519
house . . . . .	1520
house of God, Yahweh's house . . . . .	1523
humble, humbles, humbled, humility . . . . .	1524
humiliate, humiliation . . . . .	1525
idol, idolatrous . . . . .	1526
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure . . . . .	1528
incense . . . . .	1529
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	1530
iniquity, iniquities . . . . .	1532
inquire . . . . .	1534
integrity . . . . .	1535
Israel, Israelites . . . . .	1536
Issachar . . . . .	1539
Jacob, Israel . . . . .	1540
jealous, jealousy . . . . .	1542
Jehoiachin . . . . .	1544
Jerusalem . . . . .	1545
Job . . . . .	1547
Jordan River, Jordan . . . . .	1548
Joseph (OT) . . . . .	1549
joy, joyful . . . . .	1551
Judah . . . . .	1553

Judah, kingdom of Judah . . . . .	1554
judge . . . . .	1556
judge, judges, judgment, judgments . . . . .	1557
just, justice, justly . . . . .	1560
Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh . . . . .	1562
kind, kinds . . . . .	1563
king . . . . .	1564
kingdom . . . . .	1566
kingdom of Israel . . . . .	1568
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	1570
lamb, Lamb of God . . . . .	1572
lament, laments, lamentation . . . . .	1574
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	1576
Lebanon . . . . .	1578
Levite, Levi . . . . .	1579
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive . . . . .	1580
light . . . . .	1583
like, likeness . . . . .	1585
lion . . . . .	1587
livestock . . . . .	1588
loins . . . . .	1589
Lord . . . . .	1590
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God . . . . .	1592
lots, casting lots . . . . .	1597
love, loves, loving, loved . . . . .	1598
lowly, lowliness . . . . .	1601
lust . . . . .	1602
magic, magician . . . . .	1603
majesty . . . . .	1604
Manasseh . . . . .	1605
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished . . . . .	1606
meal offering, grain offering . . . . .	1607
Meshech . . . . .	1608
mighty, might . . . . .	1609
mind . . . . .	1611
Moab, Moabite, Moabites . . . . .	1613
mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker . . . . .	1614
month . . . . .	1616
Mount Hermon . . . . .	1617
mourn, mourning . . . . .	1618
name, names, named . . . . .	1619
Naphtali . . . . .	1621
nation . . . . .	1622

Nebuchadnezzar . . . . .	1625
Negev . . . . .	1627
neighbor . . . . .	1628
new moon . . . . .	1629
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile . . . . .	1630
Noah . . . . .	1631
oak . . . . .	1632
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	1633
obey, obedient, obedience . . . . .	1635
oil . . . . .	1637
oppress, oppression, oppressor . . . . .	1638
ox, oxen . . . . .	1640
palm . . . . .	1641
parable, parables . . . . .	1642
peace offering . . . . .	1643
peace, peaceful . . . . .	1644
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . . .	1646
people of God, my people . . . . .	1649
perfect . . . . .	1651
perish, perished, perishing, perishable . . . . .	1652
Persia, Persians . . . . .	1653
Pharaoh, king of Egypt . . . . .	1654
Philistines . . . . .	1656
pillar, column . . . . .	1657
pit . . . . .	1658
plague . . . . .	1659
pledge . . . . .	1660
plow . . . . .	1661
possess, possession . . . . .	1662
power, powers . . . . .	1664
priest, priests, priesthood . . . . .	1666
prince, princess . . . . .	1669
profane . . . . .	1671
profit, profitable . . . . .	1673
promise, promises, promised . . . . .	1675
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	1677
prostitute, harlot, whore . . . . .	1680
proud, pride, prideful . . . . .	1682
proverb . . . . .	1684
province, provincial . . . . .	1685
provoke . . . . .	1686
punish, punishment . . . . .	1687
pure, purify, purification . . . . .	1689



queen . . . . .	1691
quench . . . . .	1692
Rabbah . . . . .	1693
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	1694
rebel, rebellious, rebellion . . . . .	1696
rebuke . . . . .	1698
reign . . . . .	1699
reject . . . . .	1700
rejoice . . . . .	1701
remnant . . . . .	1702
repent, repents, repented, repentance . . . . .	1704
report . . . . .	1706
reproach . . . . .	1707
rest . . . . .	1708
restore, restores, restored, restoration . . . . .	1710
Reuben . . . . .	1712
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation . . . . .	1713
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	1715
robe . . . . .	1717
rod . . . . .	1718
royal . . . . .	1719
ruin, ruins . . . . .	1720
ruler, rule . . . . .	1721
Sabbath . . . . .	1722
sackcloth . . . . .	1724
sacrifice, offering . . . . .	1725
Salt Sea, Dead Sea . . . . .	1727
Samaria, Samaritan . . . . .	1728
sanctuary . . . . .	1730
sandal . . . . .	1732
save, saves, saved, safe . . . . .	1733
scepter . . . . .	1735
scribe, scribes . . . . .	1736
scroll . . . . .	1737
seed, semen . . . . .	1738
seize . . . . .	1740
send, send out, sent . . . . .	1741
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	1743
serve, service . . . . .	1745
set apart . . . . .	1747
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication . . . . .	1748
shame, shameful, ashamed . . . . .	1750
Sheba . . . . .	1752

*Table of Contents*

---

sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	1753
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	1755
shield . . . . .	1757
Sidon, Sidonians . . . . .	1758
siege, besiege, besieged, besieger . . . . .	1759
sign, signs, proof, reminder . . . . .	1760
silver . . . . .	1762
Simeon . . . . .	1763
sin offering . . . . .	1764
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	1765
sister . . . . .	1768
slander, slanderer . . . . .	1769
slaughter . . . . .	1770
slay, slain . . . . .	1771
Sodom . . . . .	1772
Son of Man, son of man . . . . .	1773
son, sons . . . . .	1776
sow, sower, plant . . . . .	1779
spear . . . . .	1781
spirit, spirits, spiritual . . . . .	1782
splendor . . . . .	1784
staff . . . . .	1785
statute, statutes . . . . .	1786
stone, stones, stoning . . . . .	1787
stronghold, fortress, fortified . . . . .	1788
stumbling block, stone of stumbling . . . . .	1789
sulfur . . . . .	1790
sword . . . . .	1791
Tamar . . . . .	1794
Tarshish . . . . .	1795
temple . . . . .	1796
terror, terrify . . . . .	1798
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea . . . . .	1799
threshold . . . . .	1800
throne . . . . .	1801
tomb, grave, burial place . . . . .	1802
tongue . . . . .	1804
transgress, transgresses, transgression . . . . .	1806
trial . . . . .	1808
tribe . . . . .	1809
tribute . . . . .	1810
trumpet . . . . .	1811
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	1812

Tubal . . . . .	1814
turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	1815
twelve tribes of Israel . . . . .	1817
Tyre, Tyrians . . . . .	1818
uncircumcised, uncircumcision . . . . .	1819
unclean . . . . .	1821
unfaithful, unfaithfulness . . . . .	1823
unjust, unjustly, injustice . . . . .	1824
unleavened bread . . . . .	1825
vain, vanity . . . . .	1826
veil . . . . .	1827
vine . . . . .	1828
vineyard . . . . .	1829
virgin . . . . .	1830
vision . . . . .	1831
voice . . . . .	1833
vow, vows, vowed . . . . .	1834
walk, walks, walked, walking . . . . .	1835
waste, wasteland . . . . .	1837
watch, watchman . . . . .	1838
watchtower, tower . . . . .	1839
water, waters . . . . .	1840
wheat . . . . .	1842
wine, wineskin, new wine . . . . .	1843
wise, wisdom . . . . .	1845
woe . . . . .	1847
wolf, wolves, wild dogs . . . . .	1849
womb . . . . .	1850
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures . . .	1851
word, words . . . . .	1854
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	1856
worship . . . . .	1858
wrath, fury . . . . .	1860
Yahweh . . . . .	1862
year . . . . .	1866
yoke . . . . .	1868
Zadok . . . . .	1869
zeal, zealous . . . . .	1870
Zebulun . . . . .	1871
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>1872</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	1872
Active or Passive . . . . .	1877
Apostrophe . . . . .	1884

*Table of Contents*

---

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	1886
Background Information . . . . .	1893
Biblical Distance . . . . .	1896
Biblical Volume . . . . .	1900
Biblical Weight . . . . .	1904
Doublet . . . . .	1906
Ellipsis . . . . .	1909
Euphemism . . . . .	1911
Exclamations . . . . .	1913
Exclusive and Inclusive “We” . . . . .	1916
First, Second, or Third Person . . . . .	1918
Forms of You . . . . .	1922
Fractions . . . . .	1923
Hebrew Months . . . . .	1926
How to Translate Names . . . . .	1929
Hyperbole and Generalization . . . . .	1934
Hypothetical Situations . . . . .	1938
Idiom . . . . .	1941
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	1947
Introduction of a New Event . . . . .	1948
Irony . . . . .	1952
Litotes . . . . .	1955
Merism . . . . .	1957
Metaphor . . . . .	1959
Metonymy . . . . .	1975
Nominal Adjectives . . . . .	1985
Numbers . . . . .	1987
Order of Events . . . . .	1990
Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	1992
Parables . . . . .	1995
Parallelism . . . . .	1998
Personification . . . . .	2002
Pronouns . . . . .	2005
Proverbs . . . . .	2007
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	2010
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	2013
Simile . . . . .	2018
Symbolic Action . . . . .	2022
Symbolic Language . . . . .	2025
Symbolic Prophecy . . . . .	2028
Synecdoche . . . . .	2031
Textual Variants . . . . .	2034
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	2036

Verse Bridges . . . . .	2039
When Masculine Words Include Women . . . . .	2041

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Ezekiel

#### Part 1: General Introduction

##### Outline of Ezekiel

1. The approaching destruction of Jerusalem (Chapters 1–27)
  - Call of Ezekiel (1:1–3:21)
  - Judgment against what people have done (3:22–11:25)
  - Prediction of Jerusalem’s fall and captivity of its people (12:1–27:7)
2. The prophecies, oracles, and laments toward neighboring nations (25:1–32:32)
3. Oracles of hope (33:1–48:35)
  - New covenant (33:1–22)
  - New life (34:1–31)
  - Edom the enemy, destroyed (35:1–15)
  - Israel restored (36:1–37:28)
  - Gog and Magog (38:1–39:29)
  - The Temple idealized and the city restored (40:1–48:35)

##### What is Ezekiel about?

This book contains prophecies that were given between 592 BC and 573 BC. Ezekiel tells the Jewish people in exile in Babylonia that God has punished them for their sin and unfaithfulness to him, but that he will restore Judah. God is using Babylon to punish them, but the enemy nations will be crushed in their turn. There is prophecy about the restoration and renewal of worship, the sacrificial system, and the new temple. The Book of Ezekiel ends with the reallocation of the Israel’s land among all the tribes of Israel. Ezekiel concludes with the overarching principle that “Yahweh is there.”

##### How should the title of this book be translated?

“Ezekiel” may also be called the “The Messages from God brought by Ezekiel.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

##### Who wrote the Book of Ezekiel?

The prophecies in the Book of Ezekiel came through Ezekiel, a prophet who lived near Babylon in the time of the exile.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What was Ezekiel's temple?

A large portion of the Book of Ezekiel gives instructions regarding the building of a new temple. However, this temple is not the same as the temple the people would build after going back to Jerusalem. Because Ezekiel's temple has never been built, some people believe that this temple is to be built in the future. Others believe that Ezekiel's temple is symbolic of the Church.

### Do the sacrifices in Ezekiel follow the law of Moses?

If one was to compare some of the required sacrifices in Numbers 28 with the sacrifices in Ezekiel 46, there are some differences. These differences probably exist because Ezekiel prophesies about a new temple with a new sacrificial system.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

===How should one represent Ezekiel's visions in translation?===

The Book of Ezekiel has many complicated visions, with dazzling and stunning images. Some of his visions became the foundation for many other books of Scripture that also contain descriptions of events of the end of the world. Some of these visions are about God rescuing Israel in the distant future. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

It is unclear whether Ezekiel actually traveled to particular places named in the visions, or whether he had only a mental idea of what he was describing. For this reason, Ezekiel's viewpoint is sometimes difficult to understand, even though the visions' meanings may be clear.

Translators should avoid the temptation to explain these visions; instead, the visions should be presented just as they are in the source text.

### What does "and you will know that I am the Lord" mean?

This is a common phrase in the Book of Ezekiel. It is meant to assure the reader that these messages truly come from God, and that he will do what he has promised. The translator may also use the phrase "and you will understand that I am God and what I say will happen."

## **Ezekiel 01 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **Ezekiel's call**

Ezekiel had a vision of God calling him to prophetic ministry. (See: [call](#), [calls](#), [calling](#), [called](#) and [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel intro](#)



**Ezekiel 1:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1-2</sup> "When I, Ezekiel, was thirty years old, I was living among the Israelite people by the Kebar Canal, which was south of Babylon. The Babylonians had taken us from the land of Judah and brought us here. On the fifth day of the fourth month of that year, it was as though the sky opened and I saw visions from God.

The fifth day of the fourth month was almost five years after King Jehoiachin had been exiled."<sup>3</sup> So God gave Ezekiel the priest, son of Buzi, messages in Babylonia while he was beside the Kebar Canal. Yahweh's power went to him there.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> In the thirtieth year, the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month, it came about that I was living among the captives by the Kebar Canal. The heavens opened, and I saw visions of God. <sup>2</sup> On the fifth day of that month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—<sup>3</sup> the word of Yahweh came to Ezekiel son of Buzi the priest, in the land of the Chaldeans by the Kebar Canal, and the hand of Yahweh was upon him there.

**translationNotes****In the thirtieth year**

This is the thirtieth year of Ezekiel's life. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month**

"the fifth day of the fourth month." This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is around the end of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**it came about that**

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**I was living among the captives**

The word "I" refers to Ezekiel. "I was one of the captives"

**I saw visions of God**

"God showed me unusual things"

**it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin**

Throughout the book, Ezekiel will date his prophecies based on when the Babylonians forced Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem.

**to Ezekiel ... upon him there**

Ezekiel speaks of himself as if he were another person. AT: “to me, Ezekiel ... upon me there” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**the word of Yahweh came to Ezekiel**

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. AT: “Yahweh gave a message to Ezekiel” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Buzi**

the name of a man (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Kebar Canal**

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. “the Kebar River”

**the hand of Yahweh was upon him**

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. AT: “Yahweh was controlling him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Yahweh**

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the [translationWord](#) page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [vision](#)
- [God](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [king](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- power, powers
- Ezekiel
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> In one of the visions, I saw a windstorm coming from the north. There was a huge cloud, and lightning was flashing within it continually, and a brilliant light surrounded the cloud. In the center of where the lightning was flashing, there was amber-colored fire. <sup>5</sup> In the center of the storm I saw what resembled four living creatures. They resembled humans, <sup>6</sup> but each of them had four faces and four wings.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then I looked, and there was a windstorm coming from the north; a great cloud with fire flashing within it and brightness surrounding it and inside of it, and the fire was the color of amber inside the cloud. <sup>5</sup> In the middle was the likeness of four living creatures. This was their appearance: They had the likeness of a man, <sup>6</sup> but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

**a windstorm**

This is a storm that has a lot of wind.

**coming from the north**

North is the direction to your left when you look toward the sun while it is rising.

**a great cloud with fire flashing within it**

This can be translated as a new sentence: "The storm had a very large cloud with fire flashing in it"

**fire flashing**

Possible meanings are 1) "flashing lightning" or 2) "constant lightning."

**brightness surrounding it and inside of it**

"a very bright light was around the cloud and inside of it"

**the color of amber**

“bright yellow like amber” or “bright yellow” or “glowing yellow”

**amber**

a hard yellow resin that is used as a beautiful decoration on jewelry

**In the middle**

“Inside the storm”

**the likeness of four living creatures**

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like these things. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “what looked like four living creatures” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**This was their appearance**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verbal phrase. AT: “This is what they looked like” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**They had the likeness of a man**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verbal phrase. AT: “The four creatures looked like people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings**

“but each of them had four different faces and four wings.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head.

**translationWords**

- [fire](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Their legs were like human legs, but their feet resembled the hooves of calves that shined like polished bronze. <sup>8</sup> On the four sides of their bodies under their wings there were hands like humans have. <sup>9</sup> As the four creatures stood there, they formed a circle, with their wings touching each other. They did not turn when they were moving; they went straight ahead.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Their legs were straight, but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf that shone like polished bronze. <sup>8</sup> Yet they had human hands under their wings on all four sides. For all four, their faces and wings were like this: <sup>9</sup> their wings were touching the wings of the next creature, and they did not turn as they went; instead, each one went straight forward.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

**but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf**

“but their feet looked like calf hooves” or “but their feet looked like the feet of calves”

**hooves of a calf**

the hard part of a calf’s foot

**that shone like polished bronze**

“that were shiny like bronze that has been polished.” This describes the feet of the creatures. AT: “and they shone like polished bronze” (See: [Simile](#))

**on all four sides**

“on all four sides of their bodies”

**For all four, their faces and wings were like this**

“For all four of the creatures, their wings and their faces were like this”

**they did not turn as they went**

“the creatures did not turn as they moved”

**translationWords**

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [creature](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Each of the creatures had four faces. In front there was a face that resembled a human face. The face on the right side resembled a lion's face. The face on the left side resembled an ox's face. The face in back resembled an eagle's face. <sup>11</sup> Two of each creature's wings were lifted up and touched the wings of the creatures that were on either side of it. The other two wings were folded against the creature's body. <sup>12</sup> The creatures went straight ahead in whatever direction the Spirit of God, who controlled them, wanted them to go, without changing directions while they were moving.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The likeness of their faces was like the face of a man. The four of them had the face of a lion to the right side, and the four of them had the face of an ox on the left side. They four had also the face of an eagle. <sup>11</sup> Their faces were like that, and their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing, and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies. <sup>12</sup> Each went straight forward, so that wherever the Spirit directed them to go, they went without turning.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

**The likeness of their faces was like the face of a man**

Ezekiel is describing the faces of the creatures on their front side. The abstract noun "likeness" means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a man's face. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "The face of each creature looked like the face of a man" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**The four of them had the face of a lion to the right side**

"The face on the right side of each one's head looked like the face of a lion"

**the four of them had the face of an ox on the left side**

"the face on the left side of the head of each one looked like the face of an ox"

**They four had also the face of an eagle**

"The face on the back of the head of each one looked like the face of an eagle"



**their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing**

“each creature held up two of his wings so that one wing touched the wing of the creature on one side of him, and the other wing touched the wing of the creature on the other side of him”

**and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies**

This can be translated as a new sentence: “The other two wings of each creature covered its body”

**Each went straight forward**

“Each creature moved with a face looking forward”

**translationWords**

- [lion](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [eagle](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> The four creatures resembled burning coals or torches. A blazing fire moved back and forth among the creatures, and lightning flashed from among them. <sup>14</sup> The creatures were moving back and forth very rapidly, so that they looked like flashes of lightning.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals of fire, like the appearance of torches; bright fire also moved about among the creatures, and there were flashes of lightning. <sup>14</sup> The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they had the appearance of lightning!

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

**As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals**

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like these things. Both “likeness” and “appearance” are abstract nouns that can be translated as verbs. AT: “As for what the living creatures looked like, they were similar to burning coals” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**there were flashes of lightning**

“lightning came out from the fire.”

**The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they had the appearance of lightning**

Lightning flashes and then disappears quickly, and the creatures moved from one place to another quickly. The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they looked like lightning” (See: [Simile](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [creature](#)
- [fire](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> While I looked at the four living creatures, I saw a wheel on the ground beside each of them. <sup>16</sup> Each of the wheels was the same, and they all shone like beryl. Each wheel seemed to have one wheel inside another wheel.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then I looked at the living creatures; and I saw one wheel on the ground beside each of living creatures with its four faces. <sup>16</sup> This was the appearance and structure of the wheels: Each wheel was like beryl, and the four had the same likeness; their appearance and structure was like a wheel intersecting another wheel.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision.

**This was the appearance and structure of the wheels**

“This is what the wheels looked like and how they were made”

**like beryl**

Beryl is a kind of clear, valuable stone, often of yellow or golden color. “clear and yellow like a beryl stone” or “clear and yellow like a precious stone”

**the four had the same likeness**

Here the abstract noun “likeness” refers to what the four wheels looked like. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “all four of the wheels looked the same” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**their appearance and structure was like a wheel intersecting another wheel**

The abstract nouns “appearance” and “structure” can be translated as verbs. AT: “they appeared to be made with one wheel going through another wheel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Whenever they moved, they would go straight in one of the four directions that the creatures were facing; they did not turn in another direction while they moved. <sup>18</sup> The rims of the wheels were imposing and frightening, and they were covered with eyes.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> As they moved, they went in any of their four directions, without turning as they went. <sup>18</sup> As for their rims, they were high and fearsome, for the rims were full of eyes round about.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

**they went in any of their four directions**

Possible meanings are 1) “their” refers to the creatures. AT: “they would go straight in any one of the four directions that the creatures looked towards” or 2) “their” refers to the wheels.

**As for their rims**

“This is what the rims of the wheels looked like”

**they were high and fearsome**

“the rims were very tall and awe-inspiring” or “the rims where tall and frightening”

**for the rims were full of eyes round about**

“because the rims had very many eyes around all four of the wheels”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Whenever the living creatures moved, the wheels moved with them. So whenever the creatures rose up from the ground, the wheels also rose up. <sup>20</sup> Wherever the Spirit of God, who controlled the creatures, wanted them to go, they went; and the wheels went with them, because their spirit controlled the wheels. <sup>21</sup> Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels moved. Whenever the creatures stood still, the wheels stopped. Whenever the creatures rose up from the ground, the wheels rose up with them.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Whenever the living creatures moved, the wheels moved beside them. When the living creatures rose up from the earth, the wheels also rose up. <sup>20</sup> Wherever the Spirit would go, they went, and the wheels rose up beside them, for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels. <sup>21</sup> Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels also moved; and when the creatures stood still, the wheels stood still; when the creatures rose up from the earth, the wheels rose up beside them, because the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.

**translationNotes****When the living creatures rose up from the earth**

The creatures were flying in the air after they left the ground. AT: “So when the creatures left the ground and went up into the air” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the wheels also rose up**

“the wheels also left the ground and went into the air”

**Wherever the Spirit would go, they went**

The word “they” refers to the creatures.

**the wheels rose up beside them**

“the wheels went up into the air with the living creatures”

**the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels**

Possible meanings are 1) Ezekiel is speaking of the “creatures” of verse 19 as if they were one creature. AT: “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or 2) Ezekiel is using an idiom. AT: “the spirit of life was in the wheels” or “the living spirit was in the wheels” or 3) the spirit in

the creatures and in the wheels is the same. AT: “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 1:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Above the heads of the creatures there was something that resembled a dome. It glistened as ice shines, and it was awesome. <sup>23</sup> Under the dome, the creatures stretched out their wings. Each one had two wings that touched the wings of the creatures on either side, and two wings that covered his own body.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Over the heads of the living creatures was the likeness of an expansive dome; it looked like awe-inspiring crystal stretched out over their heads above. <sup>23</sup> Beneath the dome, each one of the creature's wings stretched out straight and touched another creature's wings. Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body.

**translationNotes****the likeness of an expansive dome**

Here the abstract noun "likeness" means that what Ezekiel saw looked like "an expansive dome." The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "what looked like an expansive dome" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**an expansive dome**

A dome looks like a hollow ball that is cut in half. "Expansive" means very large. "a huge upside-down bowl"

**awe-inspiring crystal**

"awe-inspiring ice" or "crystal that makes people marvel when they look at it"

**stretched out over their heads above**

"and the expansive dome was spread out above the heads of the creatures" or "and the expansive dome took up a lot of space over the heads of the creatures"

**Beneath the dome**

"under the dome"

**Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body**

“Each of the living creatures also had two other wings, which they used to cover their bodies”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Whenever the creatures moved, their wings made a sound that resembled the crashing of waves in the sea. It also sounded like the voice of Almighty God, and like the noise of a huge army marching. Whenever the creatures stood still on the ground, they lowered their wings. <sup>25</sup> While they stood on the ground with their wings lowered, there was a voice from the dome that was over their heads.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of many waters. Like the voice of the Almighty whenever they moved. Like the sound of a rainstorm. Like the sound of an army. Whenever they stood still, they lowered their wings. <sup>25</sup> A voice came from above the dome over their heads whenever they stood still and lowered their wings.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision of the living creatures.

**Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of many waters. Like the voice of the Almighty whenever they moved. Like**

Other possible meanings are that the words “whenever they moved” refer to 1) all the words before them in this verse, “Whenever they moved, I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Like” or 2) to the words that follow, “wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Whenever they moved, it sounded like.”

**Like ... waters. Like ... moved. Like ... rainstorm. Like ... army.**

These sentences are not complete because Ezekiel was showing that he was excited about what he saw. They can be translated as complete sentences: “The wings sounded like ... water. They sounded like ... moved. They sounded like ... rainstorm. They sounded like ... army.” (See: [Simile](#))

**many waters**

This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to a loud river or a large waterfall or the waves crashing at the ocean. All of these are very loud.

**Like the voice of the Almighty**

The Bible sometimes refers to thunder as “the voice of the Almighty.” AT: “It sounded like the voice of the Almighty God” or “It sounded like the thunder of the Almighty” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Like the sound of a rainstorm**

Possible meanings are: 1) “Like the sound of very big storm” or 2) “Like the sound of a very large crowd of people” AT: “There was a sound that was loud like a big storm” or “There was a sound that was loud like a very large crowd of people” (See: [Simile](#))

**Whenever they stood still**

“Whenever the creatures stopped moving”

**they lowered their wings**

“the creatures let their wings hang down by their sides.” They did this when they were not using their wings to fly.

**A voice came from above the dome**

“Someone who was above the dome spoke.” If you need to tell whose voice this is, you should probably identify it as the voice of Yahweh ([Ezekiel 1:3](#)).

**the dome over their heads**

“the dome that was over the heads of the creatures”

**the dome**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:23](#).

**translationWords**

- [voice](#)
- [Almighty](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:26****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Above the dome was something that resembled a huge throne that was made of a huge sapphire. Sitting on the throne was someone who resembled a human.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Above the dome over their heads was the likeness of a throne that was like the appearance of a sapphire stone, and on the likeness of the throne was a likeness like the appearance of a man.

**translationNotes****over their heads**

“over the heads of the living creatures”

**was the likeness of a throne**

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a throne. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “was something that looked like a throne” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**sapphire**

a very valuable stone that is clear blue and very shiny

**on the likeness of the throne was**

The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “on what looked like a throne there was” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**a likeness like the appearance of a man**

The abstract nouns “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with verbal phrases. If you need to tell who this is, you should probably identify him as Yahweh ([Ezekiel 1:3](#)). AT: “something that looked similar to what appeared to be a man” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [throne](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 1:27-28****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> I saw that above his waist he resembled metal that was glowing as though it had a very hot fire inside it. And I saw that below his waist there was a very brilliant light that surrounded him. <sup>28</sup> It shone like a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day.

That was the brilliant light that represented the presence of Yahweh. When I saw it, I threw myself flat onto the ground, and I heard him speak!

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> I saw a figure with the appearance of glowing metal with fire in it from the appearance of his hips up; I saw from the appearance of his hips downward the appearance of fire and brightness all around. <sup>28</sup> Like the appearance of a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day was the appearance of the bright light surrounding it. It was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of Yahweh. When I saw it, I fell on my face, and I heard a voice speaking.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.

**from the appearance of his hips up**

The person's body above the hips looked like glowing metal that had fire in it. The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. AT: "from what appeared to be his hips up" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**from the appearance of his hips downward the appearance of fire and brightness all around**

The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. AT: "all around him below what appeared to be his hips, I saw what looked like fire and a bright light" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Like the appearance of a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day was the appearance of the bright light surrounding it**

The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. AT: "The brightness surrounding it appeared to be like the way a rainbow appears in the clouds on a rainy day" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**rainbow**

the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer

**It was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of Yahweh**

The abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like the glory of Yahweh. Both “appearance” and “likeness” can be translated as with a verbal phrase. AT: “It appeared to be what looked like the glory of Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I fell on my face**

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))

**I heard a voice speaking**

The word “voice” is a metonym for the person. AT: “I heard someone speaking” or “Someone spoke, and I heard his voice” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [fire](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 1 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 02 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Ezekiel's call continues in this chapter. God appointed Ezekiel to be a prophet but warned him that the people were very rebellious and would not listen to him. (See: [call](#), [calls](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [appoint](#), [appoints](#), [appointed](#) and [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 02:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 2:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> The voice said to me, “Son of man, stand up while I speak to you.” <sup>2</sup> While he spoke to me, God’s Spirit entered me and enabled me to stand up. Then I heard him speak to me.

<sup>3</sup> He said, “Son of man, I will send you to the Israelite people. They are people who have turned away from me and rebelled against me. Their ancestors rebelled against me, and they themselves are still rebelling against me.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, stand up on your feet; then I will speak to you.” <sup>2</sup> Then, as he spoke to me, the Spirit entered into me and set me on my feet, and I heard him speaking to me. <sup>3</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, I am sending you to the people of Israel, to rebellious nations that have rebelled against me—both they and their ancestors have sinned against me up to this very day!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

**He said to me**

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)). It was not “the Spirit.”

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**the Spirit**

Other possible meanings are 1) “a spirit” or 2) “a wind.”

**to the people of Israel, to rebellious nations that have rebelled against me**

“to the Israelites, to rebellious peoples who have rebelled against me.” The two phrases “people of Israel” and “rebellious nations” refer to the same people. AT: “to the people of Israel, a people who has rebelled against me” (See: [Doublet](#))

**up to this very day**

“even now” or “even today.” This means that the people of Israel were continuing to disobey God.

**translationWords**

- Son of Man, son of man
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- send, send out, sent
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- nation
- ancestor, father, forefather
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 2:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> The people to whom I will send you are very stubborn. But say to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you.’ <sup>5</sup> And when you tell them my messages, perhaps those rebellious people will heed those messages and perhaps they will not heed them; but they will know that a prophet has been among them!

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Their descendants have stubborn faces and hard hearts. I am sending you to them, and you will say to them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says.’ <sup>5</sup> Either they will listen or they will not listen. They are a rebellious house, but they will at least know that a prophet has been among them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues to speak to Ezekiel.

**Their descendants**

the descendants of the past generations of Israel who had rebelled against God, referring to the people living in Israel at the time Ezekiel writes

**have stubborn faces**

“have expression on their faces that show that they are stubborn”

**stubborn faces and hard hearts**

The words “stubborn faces” refer to the way they act on the outside, and the words “hard hearts” refer to the way they think and feel. Together they emphasize that the people of Israel would not change how they lived in order to obey God. (See: [Doublet](#))

**stubborn**

This describes a person who refuses to change what he thinks or what he is doing.

**hard hearts**

Rocks never change and become soft, and these people never change and become sorry when they do evil things. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a prophet has been among them**

“the one whom they have refused to listen to was a prophet”

**translationWords**

- [hard, hardness, harden](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 2:6****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> And you, son of man, you must not be afraid of them or afraid of what they say. Living among them will be like living in the midst of briars or scorpions, but do not be afraid of them. They are rebellious people, but do not allow them to frighten you.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> You, son of man, do not be afraid of them or their words. Do not be afraid, although you are with briars and thorns and although you live with scorpions. Do not fear their words or be dismayed by their faces, since they are a rebellious house.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues to speak to Ezekiel

**son of man**

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “mortal person” or “human”

**briars and thorns and ... scorpions**

These words describe the people of Israel who will not treat Ezekiel kindly when he tells them what God says. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**briars and thorns**

Briars are bushes with sharp points on the branches. The sharp points on the branches are called thorns.

**scorpions**

A scorpion is a small animal with two front claws, six legs, and a large tail with a poisonous stinger. Its sting is very painful.

**Do not fear their words**

“Do not be afraid of what they say.”

**be dismayed by their faces**

The words “their faces” are a metonym for the message the people express with their faces. AT: “lose your desire to serve me because of the way they look at you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [word, words](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 2:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Tell them my message, but do not expect them to pay attention to it, because they are very rebellious. <sup>8</sup> But son of man, you must pay attention to what I say. Do not be rebellious like they are. Now open your mouth and eat what I give to you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> But you will speak my words to them, whether they listen or not, because they are most rebellious. <sup>8</sup> But you, son of man, listen to what I am saying to you. Do not be rebellious like that rebellious house. Open your mouth and eat what I am about to give to you!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues to speak to Ezekiel.

**are most rebellious**

“are very rebellious” or “totally rebel against me”

**house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 2 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 2:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then, as I watched, I saw his hand that was stretched toward me. In his hand was a scroll. <sup>10</sup> He unrolled the scroll. On both sides of it were written words that expressed sorrow and mourning and words about trouble.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then I looked, and a hand was extended out to me; in it was a written scroll. <sup>10</sup> He spread it out before me; it had been written on both its front and back, and written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe.

**translationNotes****a hand was extended out to me**

It was as if 1) a person in the heavens had extended his hand out toward Ezekiel and all Ezekiel could see was from the hand to the elbow or shoulder or 2) the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)) extended his hand.

**a written scroll**

“a scroll that had writing on it”

**He spread it out**

The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)).

**it had been written on both its front and back**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “someone had written on both its front and its back” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe**

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “lamentations,” “mourning,” and “woe.” AT: “someone had written on it that these people would lament, be sad the way they would be if someone they loved had died, and have bad things happen to them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [scroll](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [woe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 03 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Ezekiel's call concludes in this chapter. God told Ezekiel more about what he should say to the people and how he should say it. (See: [call](#), [calls](#), [calling](#), [called](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 03:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 3:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> He said to me, “Son of Man, eat this scroll that is in front of you. Then go and speak to the Israelite people.” <sup>2</sup> So I opened my mouth, and he gave me the scroll to eat it.

<sup>3</sup> Then he said to me, “Son of Man, eat the scroll that I have given to you. Fill your stomach with it.” So I ate it, and in my mouth it tasted as sweet as honey.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, what you have found, eat. Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” <sup>2</sup> So I opened my mouth, and he fed me that scroll. <sup>3</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll that I have given to you!” So I ate it, and it was as sweet as honey in my mouth.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

**He said to me**

The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)).

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**what you have found**

This refers to the scroll that God was giving him. (See: [Ezekiel 2:9](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that scroll**

Many versions have “the scroll” or “this scroll.”

**feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll**

The word “belly” refers to the part of the body people can see from the outside. The word “stomach” refers to the internal organs inside the belly.

**it was as sweet as honey**

Honey tastes sweet, and the scroll tasted sweet.

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:4-7****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, "Son of Man, go to the Israelite people and tell them my message. <sup>5</sup> The people to whom I am sending you are not people whose language is very difficult to learn, a language which you do not understand. I am sending you to your Israelite people. <sup>6</sup> I am sending you to people whose language you understand very well. If I were sending you to people whose language was difficult for you to understand, they would pay attention to what you say to them. <sup>7</sup> But because the Israelite people do not want to listen to me, they will not want to listen to you. They do not want to listen because they are all very rebellious.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, "Son of man, go to the house of Israel and speak my words to them. <sup>5</sup> For you are not being sent to a people of strange speech or difficult language, but to the house of Israel— <sup>6</sup> not to many peoples of strange speech or a difficult language, whose words you cannot understand. Surely if I sent you to them, they would have listened to you. <sup>7</sup> But the house of Israel will not be willing to listen to you, for they are not willing to listen to me. So all the house of Israel is strong browed and hard hearted.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

**he said to me**

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the "one who looked like a man" ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)). It was not "the Spirit."

**the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of strange speech or a difficult language**

"who speak a strange or difficult language"

**not to many peoples of strange speech**

"I am not sending you to a mighty nation whose people speak a strange language"

**if I sent you to them, they would have listened to you**

This is a hypothetical situation that could have happened but did not. Yahweh did not send Ezekiel to people who did not understand his language. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**if I sent you to them**

The word “them” refers to a mighty nation other than Israel.

**strong browed and hard hearted**

These mean basically the same thing. AT: “very rebellious” or “very stubborn” (See: [Doublet](#))

**strong browed**

This is an idiom. AT: “unwilling to change” (See: [Idiom](#))

**hard hearted**

This phrase suggests that the people resist God and are unwilling to obey him. The heart is used to describe the place in the body where a person decides what they want to do. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [word, words](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [nation](#)
- [hard, hardness, harden](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But you—I will enable you to be as stubborn and tough as they are. <sup>9</sup> I will cause you to be as firm as the hardest stone, like flint. So, even though they are very rebellious people, do not be afraid of them; do not allow them to frighten you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Behold! I have made your face as stubborn as their faces and your brow as hard as their brows. <sup>9</sup> I have made your brow like a diamond, harder than flint! Do not fear them or be discouraged by their faces, since they are a rebellious house.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Spirit of God continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here alerts Ezekiel to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I have made your face as stubborn as their faces**

The words “face” and “faces” are used to stand for the people the sentence is about. AT: “I have made you as stubborn as they are” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**I have made ... your brow as hard as their brows**

The “brow” is the forehead or eyebrow and is a metonym for what the person thinks. AT: “I have made ... you strong so you will not stop doing what you are doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I have made your brow like a diamond, harder than flint**

“I have made your brow like the hardest stone, harder than flint”

**flint**

a stone that is hard enough to start a fire by hitting it with metal or another stone



**house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [face](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> He also said to me, "Son of Man, listen very carefully to what I say, and keep thinking about it. <sup>11</sup> Go to your fellow Israelites who are here after being exiled, and speak to them. Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says' and then tell them my message, whether they want to hear it or whether they would rather cease to exist."

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then he said to me, "Son of man, all the words that I announce to you—take them into your heart and hear them with your ears! <sup>11</sup> Then go to the captives, to your people, and speak to them. Say to them, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says,' whether they will listen or not."

**translationNotes****take them into your heart and hear them with your ears**

Here "heart" represents a person's mind. AT: "remember them and listen carefully" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Then go to the captives**

The word "captives" refers to the people of Israel who were living in Babylon.

**your people**

"your people group." Ezekiel had lived in Judah before the Babylonians took him to Babylon.

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**translationWords**

- [captive, captivity](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then in the vision the Spirit of God lifted me up, and I heard behind me the sound of a large earthquake. (Praise our glorious Yahweh in the place where he lives in heaven!) <sup>13</sup> I heard the sound of the wings of the four living creatures brushing against each other, and I also heard the sound of the wheels that were beside them. It was a loud sound like an earthquake.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then the Spirit lifted me up, and I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!” <sup>13</sup> It was the sound of the wings of the living creatures as they touched one another, and the sound of the wheels that were with them, and the sound of a great earthquake.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues telling about the vision he saw.

**I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!”**

Some versions take “Blessed ... place!” as a words that the “great earthquake” spoke: “I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake, which said, ‘Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!’” Others understand the sound of the earthquake as the sound of the glory of Yahweh leaving his place, “as the glory of Yahweh left its place, I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake.”

**the sound of a great earthquake**

It is not clear if the sound came from an earthquake, from a voice that was loud like an earthquake, or from the wings and wheels. AT: “a sound like the sound of a great earthquake” or “a voice speaking; the voice sounded like a great earthquake” or “a loud rumbling noise”

**the glory of Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

**the sound of a great earthquake**

“a loud, deep and powerful rumbling sound like the sound of an earthquake”

**translationWords**

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- bless, blessed, blessing
- glory, glorious
- Yahweh
- creature

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> The Spirit took me away. Within me I was very bitter and angry, and I felt unable to do anything, as though Yahweh were pushing down on me very powerfully. <sup>15</sup> I came to the exiles who lived at the town of Tel Aviv near the Kebar Canal in Babylon. Then, where they were living, I sat for seven days. I was shocked about everything that I had seen.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> The Spirit lifted me up and took me away, and I went with bitterness in my spirit's rage, for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me! <sup>15</sup> So I went to the captives at Tel Aviv who lived along the Kebar Canal, and I stayed there among them for seven days, overwhelmed in amazement.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel seems to have been angry because Yahweh had sent him to speak to the Israelite exiles, thus rebelling against Yahweh himself. Though he was supposed to speak to them, he sat in silence for seven days, even though he could feel the anger of Yahweh "powerfully pressing on" him.

**away, and I went with bitterness in my spirit's rage**

The words "bitterness" and "rage" are types of anger. This can be stated as a separate sentence. AT: "away. I was bitter and my spirit was full of anger" or "away. I was very bitter and angry"

**bitterness**

Ezekiel speaks of his anger at Yahweh as if there were a bad taste in his mouth because Yahweh had forced him to eat something that tasted bad. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me**

Ezekiel speaks of being sad and tired because Yahweh had commanded him to do things he did not want to do as if Yahweh were pushing him down into the ground. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the hand of Yahweh**

Possible meanings are 1) the word "hand" is often used to refer to someone's power or action, AT: "the power of Yahweh," or 2) Ezekiel knew that Yahweh was angry with him because he was not obeying Yahweh by speaking to the Israelite exiles. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Tel Aviv**

A town in Babylon, about 80 kilometers southeast of the main city, which was also called Babylon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the Kebar Canal**

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

**overwhelmed in amazement**

“unable to do anything because I was so amazed”

**translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:16-19****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> After those seven days had ended, Yahweh gave me this message: <sup>17</sup> "Son of Man, I am appointing you to be like a watchman. So listen to these messages that I will give you, and tell them those messages to warn them. <sup>18</sup> When I say about some wicked people, 'They will surely die because of their sins,' if you do not warn them or tell them that they must turn from their wicked behavior if they want to save their lives, they will die because of their sin, and it will be your responsibility since you did not act to prevent it. <sup>19</sup> But if you warn wicked people and they do not turn from all their wicked behavior, they will die because of their sins, but you will have saved yourself from my punishment.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then it happened after seven days that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>17</sup> "Son of man, I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel, so listen to the word from my mouth, and give them my warning. <sup>18</sup> When I say to the wicked, 'You will surely die' and you do not warn him or speak a warning to the wicked about his evil deeds so he might live—the wicked one will die for his sin, but I will require his blood from your hand. <sup>19</sup> But if you warn the wicked, and he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds, then he will die for his sin, but you will have rescued your own life.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel tells about his experience at Tel-Aviv.

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**watchman**

God told Ezekiel to warn the people of Israel just as a watchman would warn the people of a city if enemies were coming, so that they could prepare and be safe. (See: [Metaphor](#)).

**the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a warning to the wicked about his evil deeds so he might live**

You may need to make explicit that the wicked needs to stop doing evil deeds. AT: “a warning to the wicked to stop doing his evil deeds so that he might live” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the wicked**

“wicked people”

**require his blood from your hand**

This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. AT: “treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: [Idiom](#))

**he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds**

The phrase “wicked deeds” means the same thing as “wickedness.” AT: “he does not stop doing wicked things” (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [blood](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 3:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Similarly, when righteous people turn from their righteous behavior and do evil deeds, and I cause bad things to happen to them, they will die. But you must warn them. If they do not stop their sinful behavior, they will die because of their sins. I will not think about the righteous things that they did previously. But if you have not warned them, I will hold you responsible for their deaths. <sup>21</sup> But if you warn righteous people not to sin, and they do not sin; they will surely remain alive because they heeded your warning, and you will have saved yourself from my punishment.”

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> If a righteous man turns from his righteousness and acts unjustly, and I set a stumbling block before him, he will die. Because you did not warn him, he will die in his sin, and I will not call to mind the righteous deeds that he performed, but I will require his blood from your hand. <sup>21</sup> But if you warn the righteous man to stop sinning so that he no longer sins, he will surely live since he was warned; and you will have rescued your own life.”

**translationNotes****set a stumbling block before him**

Possible meanings are 1) “make something bad happen to him” or 2) “cause him to sin openly.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he will die in his sin**

“he will die as a sinner” or “he will die as a guilty person because he has disobeyed me”

**I will require his blood from your hand**

This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:18](#). AT: “I will treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: [Idiom](#))

**since he was warned**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “since you warned him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [unjust, unjustly, injustice](#)

- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- hand, right hand, to hand over

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> I felt Yahweh take control, and he spoke to me and said, “Get up and go to the plain, and I will speak to you there.” <sup>23</sup> So I got up and went out to the plain. And I saw the glory of Yahweh there, like the glory that I had seen along the Kebar Canal. And I threw myself flat onto the ground.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> So the hand of Yahweh was on me there, and he said to me, “Arise! Go out into the plain, and I will speak with you there!” <sup>23</sup> I arose and went out into the plain, and there the glory of Yahweh was staying, like the glory that I had seen beside the Kebar Canal; so I fell on my face.

**translationNotes****the hand of Yahweh**

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. AT: “the power of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the glory of Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

**the Kebar Canal**

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

**I fell on my face**

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Then the Spirit of God entered me and enabled me to stand up. He said to me, "Go into your house and stay inside it. <sup>25</sup> People will tie you with ropes, with the result that you will be unable to go out among the people.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> The Spirit came to me and stood me up on my feet; and he spoke with me, and said to me, "Go and shut yourself up within your house, <sup>25</sup> for now, son of man, they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them.

**translationNotes****he spoke with me**

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the "one who looked like a man" ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)). It was not "the Spirit."

**they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them**

This is best translated literally.

**translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 3:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Even though they are very rebellious people, I will cause your tongue to stick to the roof of your mouth, with the result that you will be unable to talk and to rebuke them. <sup>27</sup> But then when I speak to you again, I will enable you to talk and tell them ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh is saying to you.’ The one who wants to hear me will hear me, but the one who ignores the message will come to an end, since they are a rebellious people!”

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> I will make your tongue stick to the roof of your mouth, so you will be mute, and you will not be able to rebuke them, since they are a rebellious house. <sup>27</sup> But when I speak with you, I will open your mouth so you will say to them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says.’ The one who will hear will hear; the one who will not listen will not listen, for they are a rebellious house!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**the roof of your mouth**

“the top of your mouth”

**you will be mute**

“you will not be able to speak”

**house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will open your mouth**

“I will make you able to speak”

**the one who will not listen will not listen**

“the one who refuses to listen will not listen”

## Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

## translationWords

- [rebuke](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [house](#)

## Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 3 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 04 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Destruction of Jerusalem**

The destruction of Jerusalem is pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the lack of food and water that would occur during the siege of Jerusalem.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 04:01 Notes](#)



**Ezekiel 4:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh continued and said, "Son of man, take a large clay tablet and scrape lines on it that represent Jerusalem. <sup>2</sup> Then draw figures around it to represent enemy soldiers who will build earthworks and forts around the city in order to take it. Set figures around it that represent battering rams. <sup>3</sup> Then take an iron pan, and place it to be like an iron wall between you and the carving of the city. Then stare at the image of the city. This means that enemy troops will surround the city to attack it. This will be a warning to the Israelite people.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> "But you, son of man, take a brick for yourself and place it before you. Then carve the city of Jerusalem on it. <sup>2</sup> Then lay siege against it, and build forts against it. Raise up an assault ramp against it and set camps around it. Place battering rams all around it. <sup>3</sup> Then take for yourself an iron pan and use it as an iron wall between yourself and the city and set your face against it, for it will be under siege, and you are to put the siege against it. This will be a sign to the house of Israel.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He tells Ezekiel to take a brick and dirt and pieces of wood and act as if he were Yahweh destroying the city of Jerusalem.

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**carve the city of Jerusalem**

You may need to make explicit that Ezekiel is to carve a picture. AT: "carve a picture of the city of Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lay siege against it**

"surround the city in order to capture it"

**build forts against it**

"build strong walls against it." The walls would keep people from leaving the city.

**Raise up an assault ramp against it**

“Build a ramp outside of it for the enemies to get inside.” Jerusalem had a wall around it to protect the people inside. The enemies could only get inside if they had a ramp to climb up over the wall.

**Place battering rams all around it**

“Set around it huge poles people would use to break down the gates and get inside.” “Battering rams” are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside.

**set your face against it**

This is a command to stare at the model of the city as a symbol of punishing the city. AT: “stare at the city” or “stare at the city so that it will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face**

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” refers to literally staring at something. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)
- [face](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 4:4****UDB:**

<sup>4-5</sup> Then lie on your left side, and stay like that for 390 days. You will be symbolically bearing the punishment for the sins of the Israelites, the northern kingdom; you must lie like that one day for each year that I will punish them.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then, lie on your left side and put the sin of the house of Israel on it; you will carry their sin for the number of the days that you lie down against the house of Israel. <sup>5</sup> I myself am assigning to you one day to represent each year of their punishment: 390 days! In this way, you will carry the sin of the house of Israel.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**put the sin of the house of Israel on it**

Possible meanings are 1) “symbolically bear the punishment for the sins of the Israelites” or 2) “suffer by lying on your side because of their sin.”

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you will carry their sin**

Possible meanings are 1) “you will be guilty of their sin” or 2) “you will be punished for their sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated “symbolically” by Ezekiel as noted in the UDB.

**lie down against the house of Israel**

“lie facing the kingdom of Israel in a hostile manner”

**I myself am assigning to you one day to represent each year of their punishment**

“I myself command you to lie on your side for the same number of days as the number of years that I will punish them”

### **each year of their punishment**

Possible meanings are 1) each year that they will be punished for their sins or 2) each year that they have sinned.

### **390 days**

“three hundred and ninety days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### **translationWords**

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 4:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> After that, lie down again. This time, lie on your right side for forty days. That will symbolize that the Judean people, the southern kingdom, will be punished for their sins, one year for each day that you lie there. <sup>7</sup> Turn your face toward the drawing of Jerusalem and bare your arm like a soldier does who prepares to go into battle, and prophesy about what will happen to the city. <sup>8</sup> You will not be able to move; it will be as though I have tied you with ropes so that you cannot turn from one side to the other until you have finished symbolizing how many years the city will be besieged.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> When you have completed these days, then lie down a second time on your right side, for you will carry the sin of the house of Judah for forty days. I am assigning to you one day for each year. <sup>7</sup> Set your face toward Jerusalem that is under siege, and with your arm uncovered prophesy against it. <sup>8</sup> For behold! I am placing bonds on you so you will not turn from one side to the other until you have completed the days of your siege.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**these days**

the days Ezekiel lies down on his left side to illustrate the siege of the kingdom of Israel

**you will carry the sin**

Possible meanings are 1) “you will be guilty of the sin” or 2) “you will be punished for the sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated “symbolically” by Ezekiel as noted in the UDB. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 4:4](#).

**the house of Judah**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I am assigning to you one day for each year**

“I will make you do this one day for each year that I will punish them”

**Set your face toward Jerusalem that is under siege**

This is a command to stare at the model of Jerusalem as a symbol of punishing Jerusalem. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). AT: “Stare at Jerusalem that is under siege” or “Stare at Jerusalem that is under siege, so that it will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Set your face**

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze. “Set your face” refers to literally staring at something. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**prophecy against it**

“prophecy about the bad things that will happen to Jerusalem”

**For behold**

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**I am placing bonds on you**

Bonds are ropes or chains that keep a person from moving. It is not clear whether the word “bonds” is a metaphor for something Yahweh does that is as if he had bound Ezekiel or if he is using literal, physical ropes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [face](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 4:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Before you do that, take some wheat, barley, beans, lentils, millet, and spelt; and put them in a storage jar, and use that to bake bread for yourself. That is what you will eat during the 390 days while you lie on your left side. <sup>10</sup> You will eat about two hundred grams of bread each day throughout the day. <sup>11</sup> Also measure out about one-half liter of water to drink each day throughout the day.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Take for yourself wheat, barley, beans, lentils, millet, and spelt; put them in a single container and make bread for yourself according to the number of the days that you will lie upon your side. For 390 days you will eat it. <sup>10</sup> The food you will eat will be by weight, twenty shekels per day, and you will eat it at set times each day. <sup>11</sup> Then you will drink water, measured out to a sixth of a hin, and you will drink it at set times.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**wheat, barley ... millet, and spelt**

These are different kinds of grains.

**beans**

vines whose seeds, which grow in a single row inside its otherwise empty fruit, can be eaten

**lentils**

These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**390 days**

“three hundred and ninety days” (See: [Numbers](#))

**twenty shekels per day**

“20 shekels per day.” A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: 200 grams of bread each day” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

**a sixth of a hin**

“1/6 hin” or “a sixth part of a hin” or “about one-half liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Fractions](#))

**a hin**

A hin is 3.7 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**translationWords**

- [wheat](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 4:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Eat that bread like you would eat a loaf of barley bread. But use your own dried dung for fuel to bake the bread while people are watching. <sup>13</sup> That will symbolize that the Israelite people will be forced to eat food that is unacceptable to me when they are living in the nations to which I will force them to go.”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> You will eat it as barley cakes, but you will bake it on excrement of human dung within their sight!” <sup>13</sup> For Yahweh says, “This means that the bread that the people of Israel will eat will be unclean, there among the nations where I will banish them.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**You will eat it**

The word “it” refers to the bread ([Ezekiel 4:9](#)).

**barley cakes**

flat bread made of barley ([Ezekiel 4:9](#)) (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**you will bake it on excrement of human dung**

“you will cook it over a fire made with pieces of human solid waste.” Your language may have a way of expressing this politely.

**will banish**

will send away by force

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [bread](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [nation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 4:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then I said, “No, Lord Yahweh! Do not force me to do that! I have never caused myself to become unacceptable to you. From the time when I was young, I have never eaten meat of any animal that was found dead or that had been killed by wild animals. And I have never eaten any meat that is unacceptable to you.”

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh replied, “Because of that, I will allow you to bake your bread using dried cow manure instead of human dung for fuel.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> But I said, “Alas, Lord Yahweh! I have never been unclean! I have never eaten either anything that died or anything killed by animals, from my youth until now, and foul meat has never entered my mouth!” <sup>15</sup> So he said to me, “Look! I have given you cow manure instead of human dung so you can prepare your bread over that.”

**translationNotes****Alas**

“It would be wrong for me to do that.” Ezekiel is very troubled by what the Lord has told him to do.

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#). Here Ezekiel is speaking to the Lord.

**foul meat has never entered my mouth**

“I have never eaten foul meat”

**foul meat**

“disgusting, unclean meat.” This refers to meat that is unclean because it has come from an animal that has died of sickness or old age or was killed by another animal. The word “foul” shows his disgust over meat like this.

**Look**

“Listen” or “Pay attention to the important thing I will tell you now”

**I have given you**

“I will allow you to use”

**cow manure**

solid waste from cows. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this.

**human dung**

solid waste from humans. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:12](#).

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [unclean](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 4:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then he said to me, "Son of man, I will cause the supply of food to Jerusalem to be cut off. Then the people will eat the small amounts of food and drink the small amounts of water that their leaders permit them to have, and they will be very distressed and anxious as they do that, <sup>17</sup> because water and food will be very scarce. They will see each other becoming extremely thin, and they will be appalled; but this will happen because they are being punished for the sins that they have committed."

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> He also said to me, "Son of man! Behold! I am breaking the staff of bread in Jerusalem, and they will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety and drink water while rationing it in trembling. <sup>17</sup> Because they will lack bread and water, every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste away because of their iniquity."

**translationNotes****Behold**

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**I am breaking the staff of bread in Jerusalem**

"I will stop the supply of food to Jerusalem"

**the staff of bread**

The supply is called a staff because some people need a staff to walk and do their work, and people need bread to live. Bread represents all kinds of food. AT: "the supply of food" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**they will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety**

You may need to make explicit why they will ration the bread. "they will carefully divide their bread because they fear that there will not be enough" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**rationing**

giving small amounts of something of which there is not enough to many people

**rationing it in trembling**

The word “shaking” is a metaphor for being afraid and “trembling” represents fear. AT: “rationing it while shaking” or “rationing it in fear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste away**

Possible meanings are 1) “everyone will look at his brother and worry about how much food his brother eats and waste away” or 2) “every one of them will be dismayed and waste away” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**waste away**

The phrase “waste away” is usually used of flesh or wood rotting. Here it is a metaphor for wicked people becoming thin and dying because they have no food. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [staff](#)
- [bread](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 05 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The destruction of Jerusalem**

The destruction of Jerusalem is continued to be pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the destruction of Jerusalem by fire and war.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 05:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 5:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> "Then, son of man, when you start doing those things, take a sharp sword and use it like a barber's razor to shave your head and your beard. Put the hair that you shaved off on scales, and divide the hair into three equal parts. <sup>2</sup> When the time during which you will symbolize that the city will be surrounded by enemy troops ends, put a third of the hair inside the drawing of the city and burn it. Take another third of the hair, scatter it all around the drawing of the city, and then strike it with your sword. That will symbolize that I will strike the people of Jerusalem with their enemies' swords. Then allow the wind to scatter the other third of the hair. That will symbolize that even if they flee from the city, I will still cause their enemies to pursue them and attack them with swords.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> "Then you, son of man, take a sharp sword as a barber's razor for yourself, and pass the razor over your head and your beard, then take scales to weigh and divide your hair. <sup>2</sup> Burn a third of it with fire in the midst of the city when the days of the siege are completed, and take a third of the hair and strike it with the sword all around the city. Then scatter a third of it to the wind, and I will draw out a sword to chase after the people.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. All instances of "the city" refer to the "city" that Ezekiel carved onto the brick ([Ezekiel 4:1](#)).

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**barber's razor**

"blade for cutting hair"

**pass the razor over your head and your beard**

"shave your head and your face" or "remove the hair from your head and the beard from your face"



**Burn a third of it**

“Burn a third of your hair” (See: [Fractions](#))

**midst**

middle

**when the days of the siege are completed**

“when the days of Jerusalem’s siege have ended” or “when the days have ended that you show how Jerusalem will put under siege”

**take a third of the hair**

“take one of the three piles of hair” (See: [Fractions](#))

**strike it with the sword all around the city**

“hit it with your sword all over the city”

**scatter a third of it to the wind**

“let the wind blow the last third of your hair in different directions” (See: [Fractions](#))

**I will draw out a sword to chase after the people**

The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy soldiers who will attack with their swords, and to “draw out a sword” is to send the soldiers into battle. AT: “I will cause their enemies to pursue them and attack them with swords.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will draw out a sword**

“I will pull a sword out of its container”

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> But take a few your hairs and tie them to your sleeves. <sup>4</sup> Then take a few of those hairs, throw them into the fire, and burn them up. That will symbolize that a fire will spread from Jerusalem and destroy things throughout Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> But take a small number of hairs from them and tie them into the folds of your robe. <sup>4</sup> Then take more of the hair and throw it into the midst of the fire; and burn it in the fire; from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.

**But take ... Then take**

Ezekiel was to do this when he shaved his hair and beard ([Ezekiel 5:1](#)) and before he burned the hair ([Ezekiel 5:2](#)). You may need to place these verses before those verses. “But when you shave off your hair and beard, and before you burn them, take ... After you have scattered the hair to the wind, then take” (See: [Order of Events](#) and [Verse Bridges](#))

**a small number of hairs from them**

“a few hairs from the piles”

**tie them**

The word “them” refers to the hairs. Possible meanings are 1) the hairs were long enough so Ezekiel could tie them or 2) Ezekiel was to sew the hairs or otherwise attach them 3) Ezekiel was to place the hairs loosely in a fold of the garment.

**the folds of your robe**

Possible meanings are 1) “the cloth on your arms” (“your sleeves”) or 2) “the end of the cloth on your robe” (“your hem”) or 3) the fold in the garment where it is tucked into the belt.

**from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel**

“from there a fire will spread out and burn up all the people of Israel.” Yahweh speaks of how he will punish Israel as if he were going to set fire to a house and of the people of Israel as if they were the family that lives in that house but were at that time outside the house. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [fire](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: This drawing will represent Jerusalem, the city that I have placed in the center of the nations, with other countries around it. <sup>6</sup> But the wicked people of Jerusalem rebel against obeying my commands, and they show that they are more wicked than the people of the surrounding countries. They rejected my laws and refused to obey my commands.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, "This is Jerusalem in the midst of the nations, where I have placed her, and where I have surrounded her with other lands. <sup>6</sup> But she has in wickedness rejected my decrees more than the nations have, and my statutes more than the countries that surround her. The people have rejected my judgments and have not walked in my statutes."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak.

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**This is Jerusalem**

"This carving represents Jerusalem" ([Ezekiel 4:1](#))

**in the midst of the nations**

Possible meanings are 1) other nations were on all sides of Jerusalem or 2) "more important than all other nations."

**I have placed her**

Jerusalem is referred to as "her" and "she." (See: [Personification](#))

**other lands**

"the neighboring countries" or "the countries around her"

### **The people have rejected my judgments**

“The people of Israel and Jerusalem have refused to obey my judgments.”

#### **translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [reject](#)
- [decree](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [nation](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)

#### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You people of Jerusalem have been more rebellious than the people of the nations around you; you have not obeyed any of my laws. You have not even obeyed the laws of the nations around you!

<sup>8</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am opposed to you people of Jerusalem. I will punish you, and the people of other nations will see it.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, “Because you are more troublesome than the nations that surround you and have not walked in my statutes or acted according to my decrees, or even acted according to the decrees of the nations that surround you,” <sup>8</sup> therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, “Behold! I myself will act against you. I will execute judgments within your midst for the nations to see.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**Because you are more troublesome than**

“because your sinfulness is worse than” or “because you are more unruly than”

**that surround you**

“that are all around you.”

**have not walked in my statutes**

Walking is a metaphor for the way a person lives. AT: “have not lived according to my statutes” or “have not obeyed my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**or acted according to my decrees**

“or obeyed my decrees”

**Behold!**

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**I will execute judgments within your midst**

“I will judge you in various ways” or “I will punish you” .

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Because of all your detestable idols and practices, I will punish you people of Jerusalem like I have never done before and will never do again. <sup>10</sup> As a result, parents among you will eat their children, and children will eat their parents because there will be nothing else to eat. I will punish you severely, and I will cause those who will still be alive to be scattered in every direction.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> I will do to you what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again, because of all your disgusting actions. <sup>10</sup> Therefore fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers, since I will execute judgment on you and scatter to every direction all of you who are left.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel and Jerusalem.

**what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again**

“as I have not done before and will not do in a similar way again” or “like I have never done before and will never do again” .

**because of all your disgusting actions**

“because of all the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshipping idols and false gods.

**fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers**

Ezekiel is probably telling what will really happen when the people have no food.

**I will execute judgment on you**

“I will judge you” or “I will punish you severely”

**scatter to every direction all of you who are left**

“I will force all of you who are left to go to different places.”



**translationWords**

- ancestor, father, forefather
- children, child
- son, sons

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, make this declaration! That as surely as I am alive, because you have polluted my temple with all your disgusting idols and with the other awful things that you do, I will no longer bless you. I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you. <sup>12</sup> One-third of your people will die inside the city because of the plagues they will experience, or by famine. One-third of your people will be killed by your enemies' swords outside the city. And one-third I will scatter in every direction, but your enemies will still pursue you and kill you with their swords.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—it is certainly because you have defiled my sanctuary with all your hateful things and with all your disgusting deeds, that I myself will reduce you in number; my eye will not have pity on you, and I will not spare you. <sup>12</sup> A third of you will die by plague, and they will be consumed by famine in your midst. A third will fall by the sword surrounding you. Then I will scatter a third in every direction, and draw out a sword to chase after them as well.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

**as I live**

“as surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: **Idiom**)

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: **First, Second, or Third Person**)

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in **Ezekiel 2:4**.

**defiled ... sanctuary**

ruined the place that Yahweh had set aside to be only for his use

**with all your hateful things**

“with all of those things of yours that I hate.” You may need to make explicit that this refers to idols: “with all your idols, which I hate” or “with all your disgusting idols.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**with all your disgusting deeds**

“with all the disgusting things that you do”

**my eye will not have pity on you**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. AT: “I will not pity you” (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

**I will not spare you**

“I will surely punish you”

**they will be consumed by famine in your midst**

“many of them will die because of famine”

**translationWords**

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [plague](#)
- [famine](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then I will no longer be angry with you; I will stop punishing you after I have avenged myself against you. And when I stop punishing you, you will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken to you because I have finished punishing you in my anger.

<sup>14</sup> I will cause your city to be a ruins, so that people of other nations that are around you will pass by and see it and sneer at you.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then my wrath will be completed, and I will cause my fury toward them to rest. I will be satisfied, and they will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken in my wrath when I have completed my fury against them. <sup>14</sup> I will make you a desolation and a reproach to the nations that surround you in the sight of everyone who passes by.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

**my wrath will be completed**

“I will no longer be angry because I will have done everything I wanted to do because I was angry”

**I will cause my fury toward them to rest**

The word “fury” means violent anger, and here it is a metonym for punishment. “I will stop punishing them because I will have punished them fully.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will be satisfied**

You may need to make explicit why Yahweh will be satisfied. AT: “I will be satisfied that I have punished them enough” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**when I have completed my fury against them**

“when I have finished punishing them”

**translationWords**

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [reproach](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 5:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> They will scorn you and taunt you. When I severely punish you because of my great anger, they will be horrified and you will be a warning to them. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it. <sup>16</sup> And when I cut off your food supply and cause there to be more famine, it will be as though I am shooting at you with my arrows that will destroy you. <sup>17</sup> So I will cause you to experience a famine, and I will send wild beasts to attack you and your children, and all your children will be killed. You will experience plagues and wars, and I will cause your enemies to attack you with their swords. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> So Jerusalem will become something for other people to condemn and to mock, a warning and a horror to the nations that surround you. I will execute judgments against you in wrath and fury, and with a furious rebuke—I, Yahweh have declared this! <sup>16</sup> I will send out harsh arrows of famine against you that will become the means with which I will destroy you. For I will increase the famine on you and break your staff of bread. <sup>17</sup> I will send a famine and disasters against you so you will be childless. Plague and blood will pass through you, and I will bring a sword against you—I, Yahweh, have declared this.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

**in wrath and fury**

The words “wrath” and “fury” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is very angry. AT: “because I will be very angry with you” (See: [Doublet](#))

**will send out harsh arrows of famine against you**

The word “arrows” is a metonym for the sharp pains that people feel when they have had no food for a long time. AT: “will make you feel the pain of intense hunger” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**increase the famine on you**

“make the famine more severe for you” or “make the famine last longer for you” or “make sure that there is less and less for you to eat”

**break your staff of bread**

A “staff” was something that people leaned upon to support them. This phrase is a metaphor that means removing the supply of food that the people were depending upon. See how “staff of bread” is translated in [Ezekiel 4:16](#). AT: “cut off your food supply” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Plague and blood will pass through you**

Sickness and violent death are spoken of as if they were soldiers going through the city killing everyone they could. AT: “Many people will die of disease, and many others will die in war” (See: [Personification](#))

**I will bring a sword against you**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT: “I myself will cause soldiers to come and kill you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [rebuke](#)
- [famine](#)
- [staff](#)
- [bread](#)
- [plague](#)
- [blood](#)
- [sword](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 5 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 06 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Shrines on the hill tops**

God will destroy all those who have been worshiping idols at the hill top shrines.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 06:01 Notes](#)



**Ezekiel 6:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, turn toward the mountains of Israel, and prophesy about what will happen to them, and say, <sup>3</sup> 'Mountains of Israel, listen to what Yahweh the Lord says to you! He says this to the mountains and the high hills and to the streambeds and the low valleys. He says: I am about to send enemy soldiers with swords to destroy all the hilltops where you worship idols.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, set your face against the mountains of Israel and prophesy to them. <sup>3</sup> Say, 'Mountains of Israel, listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh! The Lord Yahweh says this to the mountains and to the hills, to the streambeds, and to the valleys: Behold! I am bringing a sword against you, and I will destroy your high places.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people so that the people of Israel would hear the words and know that Ezekiel's words were for them. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**set your face against the mountains of Israel**

This is a command to stare at the mountains as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). AT: "stare at the mountains of Israel" or "stare at the mountains of Israel so that the people there will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face against the mountains of Israel**

The mountains of Israel were far away, so Ezekiel could not see them, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming it. AT: “turn toward the mountains of Israel and stare” or “stare toward the mountains of Israel so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face**

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the mountains of Israel**

“the mountains in the land of Israel”

**Behold!**

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**I am bringing a sword against you**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT: “I am bringing soldiers to come and kill you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [sword](#)
- [high places](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 6:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> They will smash all your altars for worshipping idols and your pillars you use for astronomy, and they will kill many Israelite people in front of their idols. <sup>5</sup> Their corpses will lie in front of their idols, and their bones will be scattered around their altars.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed, and I will throw down your dead in front of their idols. <sup>5</sup> I will lay the dead bodies of the people of Israel before their idols, and scatter your bones around your altars.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "People will no longer worship at your altars and your enemy will destroy your pillars" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I will throw down ... I will lay ... and scatter**

Yahweh was speaking of sending soldiers ([Ezekiel 6:3](#)) to do these things. AT: "I will send soldiers to throw down ... They will lay ... and scatter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**your dead**

"your people who have died"

**translationWords**

- altar, altars
- desolate, desolation
- pillar, column
- idol, idolatrous

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 6:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Wherever you live, your towns will be ruined and the places where idols were worshiped on the hilltops will be smashed. Your altars will be completely smashed, and everything that you own will become a pile of ruins. <sup>7</sup> Many of your people will be killed right in front of you, and then you will know that I am Yahweh and I do what I say I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Everywhere you live, cities will be laid waste and the high places ruined, so that your altars will be laid waste and made desolate. Then they will be broken and disappear, your pillars will be cut down and your works will be wiped away. <sup>7</sup> The dead will fall down in your midst and you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**cities will be laid waste**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "Enemy armies will lay waste your cities" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they will be broken**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "enemy armies will break your altars" or "enemy armies will break them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your pillars will be cut down**

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated "pillars" in [Ezekiel 6:4](#). AT: "they will cut down your pillars" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your works will be wiped away**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "no one will remember what you have done" or "they will destroy everything you have made" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**The dead will fall down in your midst**

"You will see the enemy kill many people"

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [high places](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 6:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But I will allow some of you to remain alive. They will escape death when your enemies scatter you among many other nations. <sup>9</sup> When that happens, in those nations to which you have been forced to go, those of you who have escaped death will think about me. You will remember that I was very grieved because you turned away from me, because you were disloyal to me, and because you desired to worship your idols. You will hate yourselves because of the evil and detestable things that you have done. <sup>10</sup> And you will realize that I, Yahweh, have punished you. You will realize that when I threatened to punish you, I surely intended to do that.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> But I will preserve a remnant among you, and there will be some who escape the sword among the nations, when you are scattered throughout the countries. <sup>9</sup> Then those who escape will think of me among the nations where they will be held captive, that I was grieved by their promiscuous heart that turned away from me, and by their eyes that whored after their idols. Then they will show loathing on their face for the wickedness which they have committed with all their abominations. <sup>10</sup> So they will know that I am Yahweh. It was for a reason that I said I would bring this evil to them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**some who escape the sword**

The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT: "some whom the soldiers do not kill" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**when you are scattered throughout the countries**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "when I scatter you in different countries" or "when I force you to live in other countries" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I was grieved by their promiscuous heart that turned away from me**

Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a woman who sleeps with many people. AT: "I was sad because they were like a wife who has left me to sleep with other men" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**by their eyes that whored after their idols**

Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a married woman who looks at other men and desires to sleep with them. AT: “by the way they desired strongly to worship idols” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**they will show loathing on their face for the wickedness which they have committed**

Possible meanings are 1) “their faces will show that they hate themselves because of the wicked things they have done” or 2) “their faces will show that they hate the wicked things that they have done.”

**translationWords**

- [remnant](#)
- [sword](#)
- [nation](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 6 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 6:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you, Ezekiel: Slap your hands and stamp your feet and cry out to show that you are distressed, and groan about what will happen to the Israelite people because of all their wicked and detestable behavior. They will be killed by their enemies' swords, they will die from hunger, and they will die from plagues. <sup>12</sup> Those who are far from Jerusalem will die from plagues, those who are close to Jerusalem will be killed by their enemies' swords. Those who are still alive after that will die from hunger. That is how I will punish them.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Clap your hands and stomp your foot! Say, 'Alas!' because of all the evil abominations of the house of Israel! For they will fall by sword, famine, and plague. <sup>12</sup> The one far away will die by plague, and the one who is near will fall by the sword. Those who remain and survive will die by famine. In this way I will accomplish my fury against them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. AT: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**Clap your hands and stomp your foot**

Ezekiel was to do this symbolic action to get the people's attention. This was not applause. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

**Alas**

This word is spoken by those who see people doing bad things and realize that bad things will happen to the evildoers as a result. If your language has a similar word, you might want to use it here.

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they will fall by sword, famine, and plague.**

To “fall” is a euphemism for to “die.” The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT:

**I will accomplish my fury against them**

“I will satisfy my anger against them” or “I will punish them until I am no longer angry”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [house](#)
- [famine](#)
- [plague](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 6:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Some of your people's corpses will lie among their idols around their altars, on every high hilltop and on all the mountaintops, under every big tree—at all the places where they burned incense to honor their idols. When this happens you will realize that I, Yahweh, have done this. <sup>14</sup> For I will display my power and cause every area in which they live in your country to become an empty wasteland, from the desert in the far south to the town of Diblah in the far north. Then they will realize that I, Yahweh, have done this.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when their dead lie among their idols, around their altars, on every high hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak—the places where they burned incenses to all their idols. <sup>14</sup> I will strike with my hand and make the land desolate and a waste, from the wilderness to Diblah, throughout all the places where they live. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.” <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies and modern versions have .

---

6:14 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *Diblah Riblah*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**around their altars, on every high hill**

Another possible meaning is “around their altars, which are on every high hill.”

**hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak**

Another possible meaning is “hill, on all the mountain peaks, under every flourishing tree, and under every thick oak.”

**flourishing**

healthy and growing

**oak**

a large tree with strong wood that provided shade for worshipers

**Diblah**

the name of a city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- oak
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- desert, wilderness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 6 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 07 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Now is the time for punishment**

The people will be punished severely for their idol worship and the temple will be destroyed. (See: [temple](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 07:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 7:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "You, son of man, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to the people of Israel: All of Israel, everything within its borders, will soon be destroyed.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "You, son of man—the Lord Yahweh says this to the land of Israel."

'An end! An end has come to the four borders of the land.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This starts God's prophecy of judgment on Israel.

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**You, son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**the Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. AT: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**to the land of Israel**

The word “land” is a metonym for the people who live on the land. AT: “to the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**An end!**

“The end has come!”

**the four borders of the land**

“the entire land” The “four borders” are to the north, east, south, and west.

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> You people of Israel, the end has come. I will punish you severely. I will judge you for all the wicked things that you have done, and pay you back for your disgusting behavior. <sup>4</sup> I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you. I will surely punish you for your wicked behavior. Then you will know that it has happened because I, Yahweh, have done it.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Now the end is upon you, for I am sending out my wrath on you, and I will judge you according to your ways;

then I will bring all your abominations upon you.

<sup>4</sup> For my eyes will not pity you, and I will not spare you. Instead, I will bring your ways upon you,

and your abominations will be in your midst, so you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**the end is upon you**

The "end" is spoken of as if it were a robber attacking the people. AT: "your life is finished" (See: [Personification](#))

**I am sending out my wrath on you**

"Wrath" is spoken of as if it were an arrow that Yahweh was shooting at the people. AT: "I am angry, and I will punish you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**according to your ways**

"according to the things you do" or "because of the wicked things you do"

**I will bring all your abominations upon you**

"I will punish you for doing those things that I hate so much"



**For my eyes will not pity you**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. AT: “For I will not pity you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**I will bring your ways upon you**

The way a person lives is spoken of as a path on which one walks. AT: “I will punish you for the things you have done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your abominations will be in your midst**

Possible meanings are 1) “I will punish all of you because of your abominations” or 2) “this will happen as long as you continue to worship idols.”

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: You will soon experience many terrible disasters! <sup>6</sup> This will be the end of Israel; your country will be finished! And your lives will be ended! <sup>7</sup> It will be the end of you people who live in the land of Israel. The time has come; the day when you will be destroyed is near. At that time the people who worship idols on the mountains will not be happy; they will panic.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this:

Disaster! A unique disaster! Behold, it is coming. <sup>[1]</sup> some ancient copies have

<sup>6</sup> An end is surely coming. The end has woken up against you. Behold, it is coming!

<sup>7</sup> Your doom is coming to you who inhabit the land.

The time has come; the day of destruction is near, and the mountains will no longer be joyful.

---

7:5 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *Disaster! A unique disaster! Disaster after disaster*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:11](#). AT: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**Disaster! A unique disaster! Behold, it is coming.**

These exclamations are meant to make the passage very strong. AT: "Behold, a terrible disaster is coming, one that no one has ever experienced before"

**Behold**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**The end has woken up against you**

The judgment that is coming is treated as if it were an enemy waking up from sleep. (See: [Personification](#))

**the mountains will no longer be joyful**

The word “mountains” is a metonym for the people who live on the mountains. AT: “the people on the mountains will not have any more joy” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [doom](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> I am very angry with you and am about to pour out my punishment on you. I will judge you for all the wicked things that you have done and pay you back for your disgusting behavior. <sup>9</sup> I will not pity you or act mercifully toward you. I will surely punish you for your wicked behavior. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have punished you.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Now before long I will pour out my fury against you and fill up my wrath upon you when I judge you according to your ways and bring all your abominations upon you.

<sup>9</sup> For my eye will not look compassionately, and I will not spare you. As you have done, I will do to you;

and your abominations will be in your midst so you will know that I am Yahweh, the one punishing you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

**Now before long**

“Very soon now”

**I will pour out my fury against you and fill up my wrath upon you**

Yahweh uses the terms “pour out” and “fill up” to speak of his anger as if it were water that he poured out into a jar. These phrases emphasize that Yahweh will punish the people severely. AT: “I will punish you severely because I am very angry” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))

**fury**

“wrath” or “great anger”

**For my eye will not look compassionately**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. AT: “I will not look on them with compassion” or “I will not be compassionate to them” (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

**I will not spare you**

“I will not leave you without punishment” or “I will punish you”

**your abominations will be in your midst so you will know that I am Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 7:4](#).

**translationWords**

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> The day of your punishment is here! It has arrived! Disasters have come as a result of your pride. <sup>11</sup> People are acting violently and doing more wicked things. And nothing that belongs to those people will be left, none of their money, and they will not be respected by anyone.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Behold, the day! Behold, it is coming!

Doom has gone out! The rod has blossomed, arrogance has budded!

<sup>11</sup> Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness—

none of them, and none of their multitude, none of their wealth, and none of their importance will last!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

**Behold, the day! Behold, it is coming!**

"Behold! The day is coming!" You may need to make explicit which day is coming. AT: "Behold! The day when I will punish you is coming!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Behold**

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**Doom has gone out**

"Disaster has begun to come to Israel" or "Terrible things have begun to happen"

**The rod has blossomed, arrogance has budded**

Possible meanings are 1) "The people of Israel have grown very proud" or "The people of Israel have become very violent and very proud." (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness**

"The people's violence has led them to do more wicked things"

**translationWords**

- proud, pride, prideful
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Now is the time; that day has arrived. People who buy things should not rejoice because they bought things very cheaply and those who sell things should not be sad because they had to sell things cheaply, because Yahweh will be punishing everyone. <sup>13</sup> People who sell some of their property will never be able to buy it back—they will not even be able to return to see it; because they have sinned, not one of them will succeed in staying alive.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> The time is coming; the day has come close. Do not let the buyer rejoice, nor the seller mourn, since my anger is on the entire multitude!

<sup>13</sup> For the seller will not return to the land he sold as long as they both live, because the vision concerning the entire multitude will not be reversed; and because of their sins, none of them will be strengthened!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

**The time is coming; the day has come close**

Both "The time" and "the day" refer to the time when God will punish the people of Israel. AT: "Israel's punishment will happen very soon" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**my anger is on the entire multitude**

"I am angry with the whole multitude"

**multitude**

a very large number of people. Here it refers to the people of Israel.

**as long as they both live**

as long as "the buyer" and "the seller" (7:12) both live



**the vision concerning the entire multitude will not be reversed**

“God will surely do to the multitude what he has shown me”

**none of them will be strengthened**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “God will not strengthen any of them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [rejoice](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [vision](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Your commanders will blow trumpets to get the army ready to fight, but no one will respond, because I will be angry at all the people.

<sup>15</sup> When those things happen, your enemies will be outside the city with their swords, and there will be plagues and famines inside the city. Those who are caught outside of the city in the fields will be killed by their enemies' swords, and those who are in the city will die from famines and plagues. <sup>16</sup> Those who survive and escape will flee to the mountains, and they all will moan because of their sins, as pigeons moan.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> They have blown the trumpet and made everything ready, but there is no one marching to battle;

since my anger is on the entire multitude.

<sup>15</sup> The sword is on the outside, and plague and famine are inside the building.

Those who are in the field will die by the sword, while famine and plague will consume those in the city.

<sup>16</sup> But some survivors will escape from among them, and they will go to the mountains.

Like doves of the valleys, all of them will moan—each man for his iniquity.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

**They have blown the trumpet**

"They have blown the trumpet to call people to fight against the enemy"

**my anger is on the entire multitude**

"I am angry with the whole multitude." See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 7:12](#).

**The sword is on the outside**

The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT:

**the building**

the city

**while famine and plague will consume those in the city**

The word “consume” is a metaphor for “totally destroy.” AT: “and most of the people in the city will die from hunger and sickness” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Like doves of the valleys, all of them will moan**

Doves make a low-pitched noise that sounds like the sound a person makes when he is in constant pain or deep sadness. AT: “They will all be so sad that they will moan, and the sound will be as if they were a flock of doves” (See: [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [trumpet](#)
- [sword](#)
- [plague](#)
- [famine](#)
- [dove, pigeon](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Because they will be very afraid, all the people's hands will become limp and weak, and their knees will become very weak and unable to hold them up. <sup>18</sup> They will put on clothes made from rough cloth, and they will be terrified. Their faces will show that they are ashamed, and they will shave their heads to show that they are very sad. <sup>19</sup> They will throw their silver into the streets, and consider their gold the same way they would consider garbage, because they will realize that their silver and gold will not be able to rescue them when Yahweh punishes them. They will not be able to buy food to fill their stomachs, because having a lot of gold and silver has led them to sin.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Every hand will falter and every knee will be weak as water,

<sup>18</sup> and they will wear sackcloth, and terror will cover them;

and shame will be on every face, and baldness on all of their heads.

<sup>19</sup> They will throw their silver into the streets and their gold will be like refuse. Their silver and their gold

will not be able to rescue them in the day of Yahweh's rage. Their lives will not be saved,

and their hunger will not be satisfied, because their iniquity has become a stumbling block.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

**Every hand will falter and every knee will be weak as water**

The hands and knees are synecdoches for the people themselves. AT: "Everyone will be so terrified that they will be unable to work and their knees will become weak so that they cannot stand" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**falter**

fail to do what it is supposed to do

**every knee will be weak as water**

Another possible translation is, "every knee will flow with water," a euphemism for all the people losing control of their bladders because they are so frightened. (See: [Euphemism](#))

**knee ... weak as water**

Water cannot stand up, and the people's knees will be so weak that the people are unable to stand on their legs. (See: [Simile](#))

**terror will cover them**

Terror is spoken of as if it were clothing. AT: "everyone will see how terrified they are" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**baldness on all of their heads**

Shaving the head was a sign of sadness. AT: "all of them will shave their heads" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in the day of Yahweh's rage**

"in the day when Yahweh acts on his anger" or "when Yahweh punishes them"

**the day**

This can be a time period of more or less than one 24-hour day.

**their hunger will not be satisfied**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "they will not be able to satisfy their hunger" or "they will still be hungry even after they eat all they have" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**their iniquity has become a stumbling block**

Possible meanings are 1) "because having a lot of gold and silver has led them to sin" or 2) "because they are evil, they are committing sins that show how evil they are."

**translationWords**

- [sackcloth](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> They were proud, so they used their beautiful jewelry to make detestable and disgusting idols of their false gods. So I will make them see how disgusting and unacceptable these things are. <sup>21</sup> I will give their silver and gold to foreigners who invade your country and take away your valuable treasures. I will give those things to wicked people, and I will not interfere when they will do disgraceful things to the things that they take. <sup>22</sup> I will allow robbers to enter the temple I love and protect, and they will desecrate it.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> In their pride they took the beauty of his jeweled ornaments, and with them they made their idolatrous figures, and their detestable things. Therefore, I am turning these into an unclean thing to them.

<sup>21</sup> Then I will give those things into the hand of strangers as plunder and to the wicked of the earth as plunder,

and they will defile them.

<sup>22</sup> Then I will turn my face away from them when they defile my cherished place;

bandits will enter it and defile it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

**with them**

with the jeweled ornaments

**I will give those things into the hand of strangers**

The word "hand" is used to refer to control. "I will give those idols into the control of people they do not know" or "I will give those idols to people they do not know" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**plunder**

things that are stolen or taken by force

**they will defile them**

The strangers and wicked people will defile the idols that the people of Israel had made.

**I will turn my face away**

“I will not pay attention” or “I will look away” or “I will not notice”

**my cherished place**

“the place I love.” This refers to God’s temple.

**bandits**

“robbers.” This word refers to violent men who steal and destroy.

**translationWords**

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [face](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 7:23-25****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> Prepare chains to be fastened on you when your enemies capture you as punishment because the people throughout the country are committing murder, and people in the city are being violent. <sup>24</sup> So I will bring armies of the nations whose people are extremely wicked to take the houses of the Israelite people. I will make Israelite people realize that they are to no longer be proud. Your enemies will cause your places of worship to no longer be acceptable to be used. <sup>25</sup> When your enemies cause you to be terrified, you will plead for them to make peace, but there will be no peace.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Make a chain, because the land is filled with the judgment of blood,  
and the city is full of violence.

<sup>24</sup> So I will bring the most wicked of the nations, and they will possess their houses,  
and I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty, for their holy places will be defiled!

<sup>25</sup> Fear will come! They will seek peace, but there will be none.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words to Ezekiel about Israel.

**Make a chain**

Chains are used to hold slaves or prisoners. God says this to show the people that they will become slaves or prisoners.

**the land is filled with the judgment of blood**

Possible meanings are 1) "everywhere in the country God is judging people because they violently killed others" or 2) "the courts everywhere in the country are murdering people." The word "blood" here represents murder and death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the city is full of violence**

The city is spoken of as if it were a container, and violence is spoken of as an object that can be put in a container. The abstract noun "violence" can be translated as a verb. AT: "violence is everywhere in the city" or "many people in the city are doing violent things to others" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**they will possess their houses**

the wicked will take the Israelites' houses

**I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty**

“I will cause the powerful people in Israel to stop being proud of themselves”

**their holy places will be defiled!**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “enemies will defile the places where they worship” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**their holy places**

the places in which they worshiped idols

**Fear will come**

“The people will be afraid”

**They will seek peace**

“They will try to make peace with their enemies”

**but there will be none**

“but they will be unable to make peace with their enemies”

**translationWords**

- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [blood](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 7:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> You will experience many disasters, and you will continually hear rumors about disasters that are happening in other places. People will plead with prophets to tell them what visions they have received, but the prophets will not have received any visions. Priests will no longer teach people the laws that I gave to Moses. Even the wise older people will not have any answers. <sup>27</sup> Your king will mourn, and his son will no longer expect that good things will happen. The hands of people throughout the country will tremble. And I will do to them what they deserve for their wicked behavior. I will judge and condemn them the same way they have judged and condemned others. Then they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Disaster upon disaster will come, and there will be rumor after rumor.

Then they will seek a vision from the prophet, but the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders.

<sup>27</sup> The king will mourn and the prince will dress in despair,

while the hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear. According to their own ways I will do this to them!

I will judge them with their own standards until they know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words about Israel.

**Disaster upon disaster will come**

Disaster is spoken of as if it could move by itself. AT: “One disaster after another will happen” (See: [Personification](#))

**they will seek a vision from the prophet**

“they will ask the prophets what visions they have seen”

**the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders**

“The priests will not teach the law, and the elders will not be able to give good advice.” This is because God will not give them wisdom.

**the prince**

Possible meanings are 1) “the king’s son” or 2) every male member of the royal family except the king.

**will dress in despair**

Possible meanings are 1) clothing is a metonym for what a person feels, “will have no hope,” or 2) “will dress in clothes that show he is mourning.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**the hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear**

The word “hands” is a synecdoche for the people. AT: “the people of the land will be so afraid that their hands will tremble” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [vision](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [counsel, counselor, advice, advisor](#)
- [elder](#)
- [king](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 08 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Judah's sin**

The people have contaminated the temple with their worship of other gods and through their sin. (See: [temple](#), [god](#), [gods](#), [goddess](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 08:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 8:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> On the fifth day of the sixth month, almost six years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, I was sitting with the leaders of Judah in my house when I felt the presence of Yahweh the Lord come on me again. <sup>2</sup> Then in a vision I saw someone who resembled a man, but below his waist his body was like fire and above his waist his body was glowing like very hot metal.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> So it came about in the sixth year and the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month, as I sat in my house and the elders of Judah sat before me, that the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me there. <sup>2</sup> So I looked, and behold, there was a likeness with the appearance of a man. From the appearance of his hips downward there was fire. And from his hips upward there was the appearance of something shining, like glowing metal.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel tells about another vision he saw.

**So it came about**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in the sixth year**

You may need to make explicit the time period of which this is the sixth year. AT: “in the sixth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month**

This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of September on Western calendars. AT: “the fifth day of the sixth month.” (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me**

This should be translated literally, as Ezekiel later sees something like a hand. Others may choose to consider the hand a metaphor for Yahweh’s presence or power. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Lord Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

**fell upon**

“took hold of”

**a likeness with the appearance of a man**

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a man. Both “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “there was someone who appeared to be a man” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**glowing metal**

When metal is very hot, it glows with a yellow or orange light.

**the appearance of his hips ... the appearance of something shining**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “what appeared to be his hips ... what appeared to be something shining” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [elder](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [fire](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> He reached out what seemed to be a hand and grabbed me by the hair of my head. The Spirit lifted me up high above the earth, and in visions God took me from Babylon to Jerusalem. He took me to the temple, to the inner north gate, to the place where there was an idol that caused Yahweh to be very disgusted and furious. <sup>4</sup> And there in front of me was the very bright light of God himself whom the Israelite people previously worshiped. It was like the vision that I had seen in the plain.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then he reached out the form of a hand and took me by the hair of my head; the Spirit lifted me up between earth and heaven, and in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem, to the entrance of the inner northern gate, where the idol that provokes great jealousy was standing. <sup>4</sup> Then behold, the glory of the God of Israel was there, according to the vision I had seen on the plain.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues telling about the vision from God.

**he reached out**

The word “he” probably refers to the “figure like a man” ([Ezekiel 8:2](#)).

**between earth and heaven**

“between the ground and the sky”

**in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem**

The words “in visions” mean that this experience is happening in Ezekiel’s thoughts. His body would still be in his home while God shows him these things.

**the inner northern gate**

“the inner northern gate of the temple.” The temple was surrounded by two walls, one inside the other. This gate was on the north side of the inner wall. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))



**the idol that provokes great jealousy**

“the idol that causes God to be very jealous”

**according to the vision I had seen on the plain**

Possible meanings are 1) “who looked the same as what I had seen in the vision that I saw when I was on the plain” or 2) “who looked the same as what I saw when I was on the plain.”

**the plain**

a large area of flat land that has few trees.

**translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [vision](#)
- [God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [jealous, jealousy](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> God said to me, “Son of man, look toward the north!” So I looked, and I saw at the entrance of the gate near the altar that idol that caused Yahweh to be disgusted and furious.

<sup>6</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, do you see what the Israelite people are doing? They are doing detestable things here, things that will cause me to abandon my temple. But you will see things that are even more detestable.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then he said to me, “Son of man, lift up your eyes to the north.” So I lifted up my eyes to the north, and to the north of the gate leading to the altar, there in the entrance, was the idol of jealousy. <sup>6</sup> So he said to me, “Son of man, do you see what they are doing? These are great abominations that the house of Israel is doing here to make me go far from my own sanctuary. But you will turn and see even greater abominations.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The “figure like a man” ([Ezekiel 8:2](#)) speaks to Ezekiel.

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lift up your eyes ... lifted up my eyes**

This idiom means that he should look towards something. AT: “look up ... looked up” or “turn your head and look ... turned my head and looked” (See: [Idiom](#))

**gate leading to the altar**

“gate through which people would walk so they could go to the altar”

**do you see what they are doing?**

God uses this question to bring Ezekiel’s attention to what the people were doing. AT: “I want you to understand why I hate what the people here are doing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [jealous, jealousy](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [house](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Then he brought me to the entrance of the courtyard. I looked and saw a hole in the wall. <sup>8</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, dig through the wall here.” So I dug through the wall, and I saw a doorway inside.

<sup>9</sup> He said to me, “Go in and see the wicked and detestable things that they are doing here!”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Then he brought me to the doorway of the courtyard, and I looked, and there was a hole in the wall. <sup>8</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, dig into this wall.” So I dug into the wall, and there was a door.

<sup>9</sup> Then he said to me, “Go and see the wicked abominations that they are doing here.”

**translationNotes****the courtyard**

You may need to make explicit which courtyard. “the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So I went in through the doorway and looked, and I saw all over the walls of a big room, drawings of all kinds of creatures that crawl along the ground and other detestable animals, and drawings of all the idols that the people of Israel were worshiping. <sup>11</sup> In front of them stood seventy elders of Israel. Jaazaniah son of Shaphan, was standing among them. Each of them was holding a pan in which incense was burning, and fragrant smoke of burning incense was rising up.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So I went in and looked, and behold! There was every form of creeping thing and detestable beast! Every idol of the house of Israel was carved into the wall all around. <sup>11</sup> Seventy elders of the house of Israel were there, and Jaazaniah son of Shaphan was standing in their midst. They were standing in front of the images, and each man had his censer in his hand so that the smell of the cloud of incense went up.

**translationNotes****behold**

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw. Your language may have a different word to show this.

**every form of creeping thing and detestable beast**

“carvings in the wall of all kinds of creeping animals and detestable beasts.” The phrase “creeping thing” refer to insects and other small animals.

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the wall all around**

You may need to make explicit which wall. AT: “the wall all around the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Jaazaniah ... Shaphan**

men’s names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**censer**

a pan that people burn incense in when they worship God or false gods

**translationWords**

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [house](#)
- [elder](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [incense](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> God said to me, “Son of man, look at what the Israelite elders are doing here in the darkness, each of them standing in his rooms with the carved images, worshiping his own idols! They are saying, ‘Yahweh does not see us; Yahweh has deserted this country.’” <sup>13</sup> He also said, “But you will see things that are even more detestable!”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark? Each one does this in the hidden chamber of his idol, for they say, ‘Yahweh does not see us! Yahweh has forsaken the land.’” <sup>13</sup> Then he said to me, “Turn again and see the other great abominations that they are doing.”

**translationNotes****do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark?**

God is commanding Ezekiel to look at what the elders are doing. AT: “look at what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the hidden chamber of his idol**

“the room where no one can see him worship his idol”

**translationWords**

- [darkness](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then he took me to the entrance at the outer north gate of the temple. I saw women sitting there, mourning for the death of the god of the people of Babylonia, Tammuz. <sup>15</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, do you see this? And you will see things that are more detestable than this!”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Next he brought me to the entrance of the gate of Yahweh’s house that was on the north side, and behold! The women were sitting there mourning for Tammuz. <sup>15</sup> So he said to me, “Do you see this, son of man? Turn again and see even greater abominations than these.”

**translationNotes****the entrance of the gate of Yahweh’s house that was on the north side**

This was the outer north gate—not the same one as in [Ezekiel 8:3](#).

**behold!**

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**mourning for Tammuz**

grieving because the false god Tammuz had died (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Do you see this ... man?**

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. AT: “Think about this ... man.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 8:16****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then he took me into the inner courtyard inside the temple. There at the entrance of the temple, between the porch and the altar, were about twenty-five men. Their backs were toward the temple, and their faces were toward the east; they were bowing down to worship the sun as it rose in the east.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> He brought me into the inner courtyard of Yahweh's house, and behold! at the entrance of the temple of Yahweh between the portico and the altar, there were about twenty-five men with their backs toward the temple of Yahweh and their faces toward the east, and they were worshipping the sun.

**translationNotes****behold!**

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**portico**

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support

**their faces toward the east**

“they were looking toward the east”

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [temple](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [face](#)
- [worship](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 8:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> He said to me, "Son of man, do you see what they are doing? Do you think that it is not a serious thing that these men of Judah are doing, worshiping these detestable things here? But they are doing other terrible things. They are acting violently throughout their country, and continually provoking my anger. Look at them! They are insulting me by their actions of false worship! <sup>18</sup> So I will show them that I am very angry. I will not pity them or act mercifully toward them. And even if they shout loudly to me to help them, I will not pay attention to them."

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> He said to me, "Do you see this, son of man? Is it a little thing for the house of Judah to do these abominations that they are doing here? For they have filled the land with violence and they have turned again to provoke me to anger, putting the branch to their noses. <sup>18</sup> So I will also act among them; my eye will not have compassion, and I will not spare them. Though they cry in my ears with a loud voice, I will not hear them."

**translationNotes****Do you see this ... man?**

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. AT: "Think about this ... man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Is it a little thing for the house of Judah to do these abominations that they are doing here?**

God uses this question to show that he is right to be angry at the people of Judah. AT: "I am right to be angry at the house of Judah because of these abominations that they are doing here." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**house of Judah**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Judah people group" or "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they have filled the land with violence**

"throughout the country they are doing violent things or "all over the country they are attacking one another"

**to provoke me to anger**

“to make me angry”

**putting the branch to their noses**

Possible meanings are 1) the people were using the branches in false worship or 2) the people were using the branches to show rebellion against Yahweh. The words “branch to ... noses” may be a literal tree branch and literal noses, or they could be the term for a hand gesture. (See: [Idiom](#))

**my eye will not have compassion**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. AT: “I will not look on them with compassion” or “I will not be compassionate to them” (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

**I will not spare them**

“I will still punish them”

**Though they cry in my ears with a loud voice**

“Though they yell their prayers to me with a loud voice”

**I will not hear them**

“I will not listen to them”

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 09 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sorrow over sin

God was looking for people who were sad that there was so much evil being done. Yahweh would keep these faithful people from being killed with the rest of the people. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 09:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 9:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh called out loudly, “You men who are going to punish this city, bring your tools of destruction here.” <sup>2</sup> Then I saw six men coming from the north gate of the temple. Each one was carrying a weapon. With them was a man wearing a white linen robe. He carried at his side a case containing things to write with. They all came in and stood beside the bronze altar.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then he cried in my hearing with a loud voice, and said, “Let the guards come up to the city, each with his weapon of destruction in his hand.” <sup>2</sup> Then behold! Six men came from the pathway of the upper gate that faces north, each with his weapon of slaughter in his hand. There was a man in their midst dressed in linen with a scribe’s equipment at his side. So they went in and stood beside the bronze altar.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision God gave him. It started in [Ezekiel 8:1](#).

**he cried in my hearing**

“I heard him call out”

**he cried**

the “figure like a man” ([Ezekiel 8:2](#)) cried

**weapon of destruction**

weapon for destroying people or things

**weapon of slaughter**

weapon for killing many people

**behold**

“what I am about to say is important”

**the upper gate that faces north**

“the upper northern gate” or “the north gate of the inner court”

**linen**

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. AT: “smooth cloth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**scribe’s equipment**

tools that scribes write with

**bronze**

A dark gold-colored metal. It is made from mostly copper with tin added for strength. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [scribe, scribes](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 9:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then the glory that symbolized the presence of the God of Israel rose up from above the four winged creatures and moved to the entrance of the temple, and Yahweh called to the man wearing the linen robe, <sup>4</sup> and said to him, “Go throughout Jerusalem and put a mark on the foreheads of those who are very sad because of the detestable things that are being done inside the city.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then the glory of the God of Israel went up from the cherubim where it had been to the threshold of the house. He called to the man dressed in linen who had the scribe’s equipment at his side. <sup>4</sup> Yahweh said to him, “Pass through the midst of the city—the midst of Jerusalem—and make a mark on the foreheads of those who groan and sigh about all the abominations being performed in the midst of the city.”

**translationNotes****from the cherubim where it had been**

Possible meanings are 1) “from above the four winged creatures” ([Ezekiel 1:5](#)) or 2) from between the two cherubim in the most holy place in the temple. Try to translate this literally. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**threshold of the house**

The “house” refers to God’s temple.

**linen**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

**scribe’s equipment**

tools that scribes write with. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

**groan and sigh**

These are sounds people make when they feel very sad or grieved about something. (See: [Doublet](#))

**the abominations being performed in the midst of the city**

“the horrible things being done in the city” or “the detestable things that people are doing in the city”

**translationWords**

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [threshold](#)
- [scribe, scribes](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 9 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 9:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> While I was listening, he said to the other six men, "Follow the man wearing the white robe, and kill people. Do not pity them or act mercifully toward them. <sup>6</sup> Slaughter old men, young men and women, older women and children; but do not harm any of those who have that mark on their forehead. Start at my temple." So they began by killing the elders who were worshiping idols in front of the temple.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then he spoke to the others within my hearing, "Pass through the city after him and kill. Do not let your eyes have compassion, and do not spare <sup>6</sup> either old man, young man, virgin, little children or women. Kill all of them! But do not approach anyone who has the mark on his head. Begin at my sanctuary!" So they began with the elders who were in front of the house.

**translationNotes****he spoke to the others within my hearing**

The word "others" refers to the guards ([Ezekiel 9:1](#)).

**Do not let your eyes have compassion**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. AT: "Do not have compassion" (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

**do not spare**

"do not refrain from killing"

**mark on his head**

These were the people who groaned about the abominations happening in Jerusalem. See how you translated "mark" in [Ezekiel 9:4](#).

**Begin at my sanctuary**

You may need to make explicit what the people are to begin to do at the sanctuary. AT: "Begin to kill the ones who do not have the mark at my sanctuary" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the elders

Possible meanings are 1) the “seventy elders of the house of Israel” ([Ezekiel 8:11](#)) or 2) any “old man” (see the beginning of the verse).

### translationWords

- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 9:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Then Yahweh said to those men, “Pollute the temple by filling the courtyard with the corpses of those whom you kill! Start now!” So they went out and starting killing people throughout the city. <sup>8</sup> While they were doing that, I was left alone. I prostrated myself on the ground and cried out, “Yahweh my Lord, are you going to get rid of all the other people of Israel who are still alive, while you are severely punishing the people of Jerusalem?”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> He said to them, “Defile the house, and fill its courtyards with the dead. Proceed!” So they went out and attacked the city. <sup>8</sup> As they were attacking it, I found myself alone and I fell on my face and cried out and said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh, will you destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continuing to speak to the guards judging the people of Israel.

**the house**

the temple

**attacked the city**

The word “city” is a metonym for the people in the city. AT: “attacked the people in the city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I fell on my face**

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

**Ah, Lord Yahweh**

Ezekiel says this because he is very troubled by what the Lord told the men to do to Jerusalem. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:14](#).

**will you destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?**

Ezekiel is pleading with Yahweh not to destroy the remnant. AT: “please do not destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem!” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

**in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem**

Wrath is spoken of as if it were a liquid that Yahweh could pour out of a container. The word “Jerusalem” is a metonym for the people in the city. The abstract noun “outpouring” can be translated as a verb. AT: “when you pour out your wrath on Jerusalem” or “when you punish the people of Jerusalem because you are very angry with them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [house](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 9:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> He replied, "The sins of the people are numerous and severe! There is murder everywhere in this country, and this city is full of people who act unjustly. They say, 'Yahweh has abandoned this country, and he does not see what we are doing.' <sup>10</sup> So I will not pity them or act mercifully toward them. I will do to them the evil things that they have done to other people."

<sup>11</sup> Then the man wearing the linen robe returned, saying, "I have done what you commanded me to do."

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> He said to me, "The iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah is exceedingly great. The land is full of blood and the city full of perversions, since they say, 'Yahweh has forgotten the land,' and 'Yahweh does not see!' <sup>10</sup> So then, my eye will not look with compassion, and I will not spare them. I will instead bring it all on their heads." <sup>11</sup> Behold! The man dressed in linen who had the scribe's equipment by his side came back. He reported and said, "I have done all that you have commanded."

**translationNotes****the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**exceedingly great**

"very great"

**The land is full of blood and the city full of perversions**

Here "land" is spoken of as if it were a container filled with blood. Here "blood" is metonym for murder. And "city" is spoken of as if it were a container and "perversions" were the contents inside of it. AT: "All over the land people are killing innocent people, and all over the city people are doing wicked things" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**my eye will not look with compassion**

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. AT: "I will not look on them with compassion" or "I will not be compassionate to them" (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

**bring it all on their heads**

To bring someone's conduct on him represents punishing him for his bad conduct. AT: "punishing them as they deserve"

**Behold**

"Pay attention to what I am about to say"

**linen**

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#). AT: "smooth cloth" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**He reported and said**

"He reported to Yahweh and told him"

**translationWords**

- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [house](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [blood](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 9 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 10 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **God left the temple**

God now abandoned Judah, and left the temple. This was devastating to the religious life of Judah.  
(See: [temple](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 10:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 10:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then I saw what resembled a throne made of sapphire above the thing that resembled a dome that was above the heads of the four winged creatures. <sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to the man wearing the linen robe, “Go between the wheels that are under the winged creatures. Pick up as many hot coals as you can, and scatter them over the city.” And while I watched, the man wearing the white robe left.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> As I looked toward the dome that was over the heads of the cherubim; something appeared above them like a sapphire with the appearance of the likeness of a throne. <sup>2</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to the man dressed in linen and said, “Go between the wheels underneath the cherubim, and fill both your hands with fiery coals from between the cherubim and scatter them over the city.” Then the man went in as I watched.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in [Ezekiel 8:1](#).

**toward the dome**

“toward the curved roof”

**cherubim**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

**like a sapphire**

a valuable blue or green gemstone

**with the appearance of the likeness of a throne**

“that looked like something that looked like a throne.” Ezekiel is not willing to say for sure that it looked like a throne.

**linen**

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#). AT: “smooth cloth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))



### **Go between the wheels**

Translate the word “wheels” as in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

### **fiery coals**

Coals are the burned pieces of wood left over after a fire. They are black, but they glow red and orange when they are very hot. They are also called charcoal.

### **scatter them over the city**

“sprinkle them over the city” or “spread them over the city”

### **translationWords**

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [throne](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> The four winged creatures were standing on the south side of the temple when the man wearing the white robe entered. Then a cloud filled the inner courtyard of the temple. <sup>4</sup> And the glory of Yahweh went up from directly over the winged creatures and stood over the doorway of the temple. It filled the entire temple with a cloud and everything in the courtyard was bright because of Yahweh's glorious presence. <sup>5</sup> I also heard the sound made by the wings of the winged creatures in the courtyard outside the temple. It was very loud, like the voice of Almighty God when he speaks.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> The cherubim stood on the right side of the house when the man went in, and a cloud filled the inner courtyard. <sup>4</sup> The glory of Yahweh rose up from the cherubim and stood over the threshold of the house. It filled the house with the cloud, and the courtyard was full of the brightness of Yahweh's glory. <sup>5</sup> The sound of the cherubim's wings was heard as far as the outer courtyard, like the voice of God Almighty when he speaks.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Ezekiel interrupts his description of what was happening and describes what he saw.

**The cherubim stood ... inner courtyard**

This is background information for the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

**cherubim**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

**on the right side**

As one faces east, "the right side" is toward the south. AT: "on the south side" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the house**

the temple

## The glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

### It filled

the glory of Yahweh filled

### translationWords

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [house](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [threshold](#)
- [voice](#)
- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> When Yahweh commanded the man wearing the linen robe to take burning coals from among those winged creatures, the man went into the courtyard and stood beside one of the wheels. <sup>7</sup> Then one of those winged creatures reached out his hand to the fire that was there among them. He picked up some of the coals and put them in the hands of the man wearing the linen robe, and that man took them and left. <sup>8</sup> Under the wings of the winged creatures was something that resembled a human's hands.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> It came about, when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said, "Take fire from between the wheels that are between the cherubim," the man went in and stood beside a wheel. <sup>7</sup> A cherub reached out his hand between the cherubim to the fire that was among the cherubim, and lifted it up and placed it into the hands of the one dressed in linen. The man took it and went back out. <sup>8</sup> I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings.

**translationNotes****It came about**

This phrase is used here to mark when the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said**

This is a repeat of the information that was given in [Ezekiel 10:2](#). After talking about the cherubim and God's glory in 10:3-5, Ezekiel returns to telling about the man who was wearing linen.

**the man dressed in linen**

Translate "linen" as in [Ezekiel 9:1](#).

**beside a wheel**

Translate "wheel" as in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

**I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings**

"I saw that the cherubim had something like a man's hand under their wings"

**translationWords**

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [fire](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then I saw four wheels alongside the winged creatures. There was one wheel beside each of the winged creatures. The wheels shone like very valuable stones. <sup>10</sup> The wheels were all alike: Each had one wheel inside another wheel. <sup>11</sup> Whenever they moved, they went straight in whatever direction one of the winged creatures faced. The wheels did not turn in another direction while the winged creatures flew.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> So I looked, and behold! Four wheels were beside the cherubim—one wheel beside each cherub—and the appearance of the wheels was like a beryl stone. <sup>10</sup> Their appearance was the same likeness for all four of them, like a wheel intersecting another wheel. <sup>11</sup> When they moved, they went in any of their four directions, without turning as they went; but whatever direction the head faced, they followed after it without turning as they went.

**translationNotes****behold**

Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw

**wheels**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

**cherubim**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

**cherub**

This is the singular form of “cherubim.”

**the appearance of the wheels was like a beryl stone**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “the wheels appeared to be like a beryl stone” or “what appeared to be wheels were like a beryl stone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**beryl stone**

“Beryl” is a very hard, valuable stone. This beryl was probably green or blue. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Their appearance was the same likeness for all four of them**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “All four of them appeared to be similar” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**a wheel intersecting another wheel**

The word “intersecting” means “crossing” or “passing through.”

**they went in any of their four directions**

Possible meanings are 1) “their” refers to the creatures. AT: “they would go straight in any one of the four directions that the creatures looked towards” or 2) “their” refers to the wheels.

**whatever direction the head faced, they followed**

Possible meanings for “the head” are 1) this refers to the winged creatures. AT: “they went in whatever direction the winged creatures were looking” or 2) this refers to the front wheel. AT: “they followed in whatever direction the front wheel went”

**translationWords**

- [face](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Their bodies, including their backs and hands and wings, were covered with eyes. The wheels were also covered with eyes. <sup>13</sup> I heard someone call them ‘the whirling wheels.’ <sup>14</sup> Each of the winged creatures had four faces. One face was like the face of a bull, one face was like the face of a human, one face was like the face of a lion, and one face was like the face of an eagle.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Their whole body—including their backs, their hands, and their wings—was covered with eyes, and eyes covered the four wheels all around also. <sup>13</sup> As I listened, the wheels were called, “Whirling.” <sup>14</sup> They had four faces each; the first face was the face of a cherub, the second face was the face of a man, the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle.

**translationNotes****Their whole body**

“The whole bodies of the cherubim”

**wheels**

Translate the word “wheels” as in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

**the wheels were called, “Whirling.”**

The word “Whirling” means “Spinning.” Here it is the name of the wheels. This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone called the wheels, ‘Whirling.’” or “the name of the wheels was ‘Whirling.’” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**They had four faces each**

“Each cherub had four faces” or “Each of the cherubim had four faces.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:6](#).

**translationWords**

- [lion](#)
- [eagle](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then the winged creatures rose up. They were the same living creatures that I had seen alongside the Kebar Canal. <sup>16</sup> When the winged creatures moved, the wheels moved with them. When the winged creatures spread their wings to fly over the ground, the wheels did not leave them but stayed beside them. <sup>17</sup> When the winged creatures stopped, the wheels stopped. When the winged creatures started to fly, the wheels flew with them, because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then the cherubim—these were the living creatures that I had seen by the Kebar Canal—rose up. <sup>16</sup> Whenever the cherubim moved, the wheels would go beside them, and whenever the cherubim lifted up their wings to rise up from the earth, the wheels did not turn. They still stayed beside them. <sup>17</sup> When the cherubim stood still, the wheels stood still, and when they rose up, the wheels rose up with them, for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.

**translationNotes****cherubim**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

**living creatures**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:13](#).

**the Kebar Canal**

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

**rose up**

“went up into the air”

**They still stayed beside them**

“The wheels stayed with the cherubim.” AT: “The wheels moved with the cherubim”

**stood still**

“stayed still” or “did not move”

**the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels**

Possible meanings are 1) Ezekiel is speaking of the “creatures” of verse 15 as if they were one creature. AT: “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or 2) Ezekiel is using an idiom. AT: “the spirit of life was in the wheels” or “the living spirit was in the wheels” or 3) the spirit in the creatures and in the wheels is the same. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:20](#). AT: “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Then the glory of Yahweh left the entrance of the temple and stopped above the winged creatures.  
<sup>19</sup> While I watched, the winged creatures spread their wings and started to fly, and the wheels went with them. They stopped at the gate on the east side of the temple, and the glory of God, the one whom the Israelites had worshiped, was above them.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Then the glory of Yahweh went out from over the threshold of the house and stood over the cherubim. <sup>19</sup> The cherubim lifted up their wings and rose from the earth in my sight when they went out, and the wheels did the same beside them. They stood at the eastern entrance to Yahweh's house, and the glory of the God of Israel came upon them from above.

**translationNotes****the glory of Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

**the house**

the temple

**stood over**

“stayed over” or “waited over”

**came upon them from above**

“went above the cherubim”

**translationWords**

- [threshold](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 10:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> These were the same four living creatures that I had seen alongside the Kebar Canal, and I realized that they were the winged creatures. <sup>21</sup> Each of them had four faces and four wings, and under their wings was what resembled a human's hands. <sup>22</sup> Their faces were the same as the faces that I had seen at the Kebar Canal. Each of them flew straight ahead.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> These were the living creatures that I had seen below the God of Israel by the Kebar Canal, so I knew that they were cherubim! <sup>21</sup> They had four faces each and four wings each, and the likeness of human hands under their wings, <sup>22</sup> and the likeness of their faces was like the faces that I had seen in the vision at the Kebar Canal, and each of them went straight ahead.

**translationNotes****the living creatures**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:13](#).

**the Kebar Canal**

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

**the likeness of human hands**

Here the abstract noun "likeness" means that what Ezekiel saw looked like human hands. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "something that looked like human hands" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the likeness of their faces was like the faces that I had seen**

The abstract noun "likeness" can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "their faces looked like the faces that I had seen" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**went straight ahead**

"faced forward" or "looked directly ahead"

**translationWords**

- [creature](#)
- [vision](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 11 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Safety**

The people were trusting Jerusalem to keep them safe. But God was going to pull them out of Jerusalem. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

The people in Jerusalem used the metaphor “this city is the pot and we are the meat in the pot” meaning they were safe in Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 11:01 Notes](#)



**Ezekiel 11:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then God's Spirit lifted me up and took me to the gate on the east side of the temple. There at the gate were twenty-five men. Among them I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur, and Pelatiah son of Benaiah, who were leaders of the people.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house, facing east, and behold, in the doorway of the gate there were twenty-five men. I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah, leaders of the people, among them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in [Ezekiel 8:1](#).

**to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house, facing east**

This gate was part of the wall that surrounded the temple area. AT: "the gate on the eastern side of the wall surrounding Yahweh's house" or "the gate on the eastern wall of the temple courtyard"

**Yahweh's house**

See how you translated this phrase in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**behold**

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**twenty-five men**

"25 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

**Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**among them**

"among the twenty-five men"

**translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:2-4****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, these are the new leaders in Jerusalem who are planning to do evil things and who are giving wicked advice to people in this city. <sup>3</sup> They say, 'It is not the time to build houses yet, but just as pieces of meat are carefully stored in covered pots we will be protected from the bad things that will happen to others.' <sup>4</sup> So, son of man, prophesy about the terrible things that will happen to them."

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> God said to me, "Son of man, these are the men who devise iniquity, and who decide wicked plans in this city. <sup>3</sup> They are saying, 'The time to build houses is not now; this city is the pot, and we are the meat.' <sup>4</sup> Therefore prophesy against them. Prophesy, son of man."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**The time to build houses is not now**

This shows the people feel so secure they are not worried about building houses now. Other versions of the Bible read, "Now is the time to build our houses." This would mean that the people want to build houses because they feel secure.

**this city is the pot, and we are the meat**

The people speak of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. The metaphor suggests that they are important and safe within the city. AT: "This city is like a pot that will protect us as a pot protects meat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the pot**

Possible meanings are 1) a pot for storing meat or 2) a pot for cooking meat.

**translationWords**

- [God](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon me and told me to say to the people, "This is what Yahweh says, 'You Israelite people say those things, and I know what you are thinking. <sup>6</sup> You have killed many people in this city and filled the streets with their corpses.

<sup>7</sup> Therefore this is what Yahweh the Lord says, 'The corpses of the people whom you have killed here are like the meat and Jerusalem is the cauldron, but I will expel you people from this city!

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me and he said for me to say: This is what Yahweh says, "That is what you are saying, house of Israel; for I know what goes through your mind. <sup>6</sup> You have multiplied the people you have killed in this city and filled its streets with them. <sup>7</sup> Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: The people you have killed, whose bodies you have laid in the midst of Jerusalem, are the meat, and this city is the pot. But you are going to be brought out from the midst of this city.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to talk to the prophet Ezekiel.

**the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me**

Ezekiel speaks of the Spirit of Yahweh inspiring and empowering him to prophesy as if the Spirit of Yahweh fell upon him. AT: "the Spirit of Yahweh empowered me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**That is what you are saying**

"You are saying these things." This refers to what the people were saying in [Ezekiel 11:3](#).

**house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "Israelites" or "Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The people you have killed ... are the meat, and this city is the pot**

Yahweh speaks of the people whom they have killed as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 11:3](#). AT: "The people you have killed ... are like the meat in the pot, and this city is like the pot. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**But you are going to be brought out**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "But I am going to bring you out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [mind](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> You are afraid of being killed by enemies' swords, so that is what I will cause to happen to you. <sup>9</sup> I will expel you from this city and enable foreigners to capture you and punish you. <sup>10</sup> They will kill you with their swords; you will be punished right here in Israel! Then people will realize that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> You have feared the sword, so I am bringing the sword upon you—this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh. <sup>9</sup> I will bring you out of the midst of the city, and put you into the hands of foreigners, for I will bring judgment against you. <sup>10</sup> You will fall by the sword. I will judge you within the borders of Israel so you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**You have feared the sword, so I am bringing the sword upon you**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT: “You have feared war, so I am bringing enemy armies to attack you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**put you into the hands of foreigners**

Here the metonym “hands” represents power or control. AT: “put you into the power of foreigners” or “enable foreigners to capture you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**You will fall by the sword**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT: “They will kill you with their swords” or “You will die in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sword](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 11:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> This city will not be a place where you will be protected like meat in a covered pot. I will punish you wherever you are in Israel. <sup>12</sup> Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have predicted that would happen, because you have not obeyed my commands and decrees; instead, you have imitated the wicked behavior of the people of the nearby nations.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat within her midst. I will judge you within the borders of Israel. <sup>12</sup> Then you will know that I am Yahweh, the one whose statutes you have not walked in and whose decrees you have not carried out. Instead, you have carried out the decrees of the nations that surround you.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat**

The people had spoken of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. Yahweh says that this is not true. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 11:3](#). AT: “This city is not like a pot that will protect you as a pot protects meat” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**within the borders of Israel**

“in the land of Israel”

**the one whose statutes you have not walked in**

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like person would walk along a road. AT: “the one whose statutes you have not obeyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

- statute, statutes
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- decree
- nation

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:13****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> While I was prophesying that, Pelatiah son of Benaiah suddenly died. Then I prostrated myself on the ground and cried out loudly, “Yahweh my Lord, are you going to similarly get rid of all the Israelite people who are still alive?”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> It came about that as I was prophesying, Pelatiah son of Benaiah, died. So I fell on my face and cried out with a loud voice and said, “Alas, Lord Yahweh, will you completely destroy the remnant of Israel?”

**translationNotes****It came about**

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**Pelatiah son of Benaiah**

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**I fell on my face**

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

**Alas, Lord Yahweh**

The word “Alas” is an exclamation that expresses fear and sadness. AT: “Oh no, Lord Yahweh” or “Ah, Lord Yahweh” (See: [Exclamations](#))

**translationWords**

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then Yahweh gave me this message, <sup>15</sup> “Son of man, the people who are still in Jerusalem are talking about your relatives, your clan, and all the rest of the Israelites who were exiled and saying, ‘They are in Babylonia, far from Yahweh. They have left their property here in Israel, so their property now belongs to us!’”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>15</sup> ”Son of man, your brothers! Your brothers! The men of your clan and all the house of Israel! All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem, ‘They are far away from Yahweh! This land was given to us as our possession.’

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

**your brothers! Your brothers!**

This is stated twice for emphasis.

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family, in this case the Israelites who are the descendants of Jacob. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The people living in Jerusalem say about all of them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**All of them are those of whom**

Some versions have “All of them are those to whom”

**This land was given to us as our possession**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh has given this land to us as our possession” or “This land has become our possession” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- brother, brothers
- clan
- house
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- Yahweh

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> So tell them, “This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Although I caused them to be taken far away from Israel and scattered them among other nations, for a short time I have become a sanctuary for them in the countries to which they have been taken.”

<sup>17</sup> So also tell them, “This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Some day I will gather you from the nations to which you have been taken and bring you back to Israel, and you will live in your country again.

<sup>18</sup> When you return to your country, you will get rid of all the vile statues of gods and detestable idols.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Therefore say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Though I have removed them far off among the nations, and though I have scattered them among the lands, yet I have been a sanctuary for them for a little while in the lands where they have gone.’ <sup>17</sup> Therefore say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands where you were scattered, and I will give you the land of Israel.’ <sup>18</sup> Then they will go there and remove every detestable thing and every abomination from that place.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh gives this message to Ezekiel about the Israelites who were in exile.

**I have been a sanctuary for them**

Yahweh speaks of dwelling among the people who are in exile as if he were a sanctuary for them. AT: “I have been with them” or “I have been like their place of worship” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The repetition emphasizes the surety of Yahweh’s promise to bring the exiles back to the land of Israel. AT: “I will bring you back from all of the nations” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**where you were scattered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “where I scattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **every detestable thing and every abomination**

These words have similar meanings and emphasize that God will remove all the idols from Israel. (See: [Doublet](#))

### **every detestable thing**

This means things that cause hatred or disgust. Here it refers to idols.

### **translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 11:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> I will give you Israelites one new heart and I will give you a new way of thinking when you return to Israel. You will not be stubborn, but will be obedient. <sup>20</sup> When I do that, you will carefully obey all my laws. You will be my people, and I will be your God. <sup>21</sup> But as for those who are devoted to worshiping their vile statues and detestable idols, I will punish them as they deserve for the evil things that they have done.” This is what Yahweh declared.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within them. I will take out the heart of stone from their flesh and give them a heart of flesh, <sup>20</sup> so that they will walk in my statutes, they will carry out my decrees and do them. Then they will be my people, and I will be their God. <sup>21</sup> But to those who walk with affection toward their detestable things and their abominations, I will bring their conduct on their own heads—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues the prophecy of what will happen to the scattered Israelites.

**I will give them one heart ... give them a heart of flesh**

Yahweh speaks of all of the Israelites who are in exile as if they are one person, with one heart and one spirit. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will give them one heart**

Here the metonym “heart” represents the will and emotions. Yahweh speaks of causing all of the people to share the same new emotions as if he were giving them one heart. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**I will put a new spirit within them**

Here the metonym “spirit” represents the thoughts and disposition. Yahweh speaks of causing the people to think new thoughts as if he were giving them a new spirit. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**I will take out the heart of stone from their flesh and give them a heart of flesh**

Yahweh speaks of the people being stubborn as if they had a stone heart and of their being willingly obedient as if they had a heart of flesh. He speaks of causing them to become willingly obedient as if he were exchanging those two hearts. AT: “I will cause them to stop being stubborn and instead cause them to obey me willingly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they will walk in my statutes, they will carry out my decrees and do them**

Each of these phrases have similar meanings and describes the people as obeying what Yahweh has commanded them to do. They are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**they will walk in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like a person would walk along a road. AT: “they will obey my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**those who walk with affection toward their detestable things**

Yahweh speaks of a person’s conduct as if it were the person walking. AT: “those who conduct their lives out of devotion to their detestable things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**detestable things**

This means things that cause hatred or disgust. Here it refers to idols. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:18](#).

**I will bring their conduct on their own heads**

Here the metonym “conduct” represents the consequences of their actions. The idiom “bring ... on their own heads” means they will experience these consequences. AT: “I will cause them to suffer the consequences of their actions” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [God](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

- [head](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then the winged creatures, with their wheels beside them, spread their wings and flew up into the air, and the dazzling brightness of Yahweh was above them. <sup>23</sup> That light went up away from the city and stopped above the mountain to the east of the city.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> The cherubim lifted up their wings and the wheels that were beside them, and the glory of the God of Israel was high up over them. <sup>23</sup> Then the glory of Yahweh went up from within the midst of the city and stood on the mountain to the east of the city.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The cherubim and the glory of God leave the temple and city.

**cherubim**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

**translationWords**

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 11:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> In the vision that I had been seeing, God's Spirit lifted me up and brought me back to the exiles in Babylon. Then the vision ended, <sup>25</sup> and I told the exiles everything that Yahweh had shown me in the vision.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> The Spirit lifted me up and brought me into Chaldea, to the exiles, in the vision from the Spirit of God, and the vision that I had seen went up from upon me. <sup>25</sup> Then I declared to the exiles all the things of Yahweh that I had seen.

**translationNotes****the vision that I had seen went up from upon me**

Ezekiel speaks of the vision ending as if the vision was an object that had been upon him and then left him. AT: "the vision that I had seen ended" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [vision](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 11 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 12 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Exile**

God warned that very soon the people in Jerusalem would be exiled to Babylon.

#### **Links:**

- **[Ezekiel 12:01 Notes](#)**

**Ezekiel 12:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, you are living among people who are very rebellious. They have eyes, but they do not see what I want them to see; they have ears, but they do not listen to what I want them to hear, because they are such a rebellious people.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, you live in the midst of a rebellious house, where they have eyes to see but they do not see; and where they have ears to hear but do not listen, because they are a rebellious house.

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**a rebellious house**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: "a rebellious people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they have eyes to see but they do not see ... they have ears to hear but do not listen**

People being unable to understand Yahweh's message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were unable physically to see and hear. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 12:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore, son of man, pack your belongings as though you were going into exile. Then, during the daytime, while people are watching, prepare to go to another place. Even though the people are rebellious, perhaps they will understand what you are symbolizing.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore as for you, son of man, prepare your things for exile, and begin going out by day in their sight, for I will exile you in their sight from your place to another place. Perhaps they will begin to see, though they are a rebellious house.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to act out another parable.

**Therefore as for you**

“So then, this is what I say to you”

**in their sight**

“as they watch”

**Perhaps they will begin to see**

People being able to understand Yahweh’s message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were able physically to see. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a rebellious house**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: “a rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> During the daytime, while they are watching, bring out the things that you want to take, and pack them. Then in the evening, while they are watching, do what those who are preparing to go into exile do. <sup>5</sup> Dig through the city wall and take your things through the hole. <sup>6</sup> Put them in a sack on your shoulder while they are watching, and leave when it becomes dark. Cover your face so you cannot see the path. I want you to do this because I want you to warn the Israelite people.”

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You will bring out your things for an exile in the day in their sight; go out in the evening in their sight in the way that anyone goes into exile. <sup>5</sup> Dig a hole through the wall in their sight, and go out through it. <sup>6</sup> In their sight, lift up your things onto your shoulder, and bring them out in the darkness. Cover your face, for you must not see the land, since I have set you as a sign to the house of Israel.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God is speaking to Ezekiel and describing how he should act out the parable.

**in their sight**

“as they watch”

**have set you as a sign**

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. AT: “have made you to be a warning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [exile, the Exile](#)

- darkness
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- house
- Israel, Israelites

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> So I did what Yahweh told me to do. During the day I brought things out of my house as though I was packing to go into exile. Then in the evening I dug through the city wall. Then while people watched, I put my sack of belongings on my shoulder and left.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> So I did this, just as I was commanded. I brought out my things of exile in the daytime, and in the evening I dug a hole through the wall by hand. I brought my things out in the dark, and lifted them up on my shoulder in their sight.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel shows the people of Israel they will soon be forced into exile.

**just as I was commanded**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “just as Yahweh commanded me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**dug a hole through the wall by hand**

“dug a hole through the wall with my hands”

**in the dark**

“at night”

**translationWords**

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [darkness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> The next morning, Yahweh gave me this message, <sup>9</sup> "Son of man, did the rebellious people of Israel not ask you, 'What are you doing?'"

<sup>10</sup> So go back and say to them, 'What I did is about the king in Jerusalem and all the other people of Israel who are there.'

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me in the morning, saying, <sup>9</sup> "Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, 'What are you doing?'" <sup>10</sup> Say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: this prophetic action concerns the prince in Jerusalem, and all the house of Israel in whose midst they are.'

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, 'What are you doing?'**

God asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knew—that the people had asked him this question. AT: "Son of man, the house of Israel, that rebellious house, is asking, 'What are you doing?'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the house of Israel, that rebellious house**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate "rebellious house" as in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: "the people of Israel, that rebellious people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**What are you doing**

Since the people had seen what Ezekiel was doing, their question implies their desire to know the reason why he was doing it. AT: "What is the meaning of the things you are doing" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in whose midst they are**

The phrase “in whose midst” refers to Jerusalem, while “they” refers to the “house of Israel.” AT: “who are in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- house
- Israel, Israelites
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- prince, princess
- Jerusalem

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Tell them, 'What I did is a warning to you. What I did in front of you, they are going to have to do. They will be captured and forced to go to another country. <sup>12</sup> Their king will put his belongings on his shoulder when it becomes dark and he will try to escape. His servants will dig a hole through the city wall, and he will take his belongings through it. He will cover his face so others will not recognize him and he will not be able to see the land. <sup>13</sup> But it will be as though I will spread a net for him to be captured; enemy soldiers will capture him, blind him, and take him to the city of Babylon where the Chaldean people live. But he will not be able to see it because he will be blind; and there he will die.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Say, 'I am a sign to you.' As I have done, so it will be done to them; they will go into exile and into captivity. <sup>12</sup> The prince who is among them will lift up his things upon his shoulder in the dark, and will go out through the wall. They will dig through the wall and bring out their things. He will cover his face, so he will not see the land with his eyes. <sup>13</sup> I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare; then I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans, but he will not see it. He will die there.

**translationNotes****I am a sign to you**

Here the word "sign" refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Ezekiel speaks of himself and his actions as being this warning. AT: "I am a warning to you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so it will be done to them**

The word "them" refers to the people living in Jerusalem. This can be stated in active form. AT: "so others will do to them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the dark**

"at night"

**They will dig through the wall**

The word "They" refers to the people living in Jerusalem.



**He will cover his face**

“The prince will cover his face”

**I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare**

Yahweh speaks of enabling the Chaldeans to capture the prince as if he himself were catching the prince in a trap that he had set. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will bring him to Babylon**

Yahweh speaks of enabling the Chaldeans to bring the prince to Babylon as if he himself were bringing the prince there. AT: “I will cause the Chaldeans to bring him to Babylon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> I will scatter all those who have been around him—his advisors and his soldiers—in every direction; and I will cause his enemies to pursue them, with their swords ready to strike them.

<sup>15</sup> Then, when I scatter them among many nations, they will know that I, Yahweh have the power to do what I say that I will do. <sup>16</sup> But I will spare some of them from being killed by the sword, or starving to death, or dying of disease so they can record that they have been doing disgusting things, and they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> I will also scatter in every direction all of those around him who were to assist him and his entire army, and I will send out a sword after them. <sup>15</sup> Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands. <sup>16</sup> But I will spare a few men from among them from the sword, famine, and plague, so they may record all of their abominations in the lands where I take them, so they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****I will send out a sword after them**

The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy armies who will attack with their swords. AT: “I will send armies to pursue them with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. AT: “when I cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**I will spare ... from the sword, famine, and plague**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. You may need to make explicit that they will not die from famine or plague. AT: “I will keep ... from dying in battle, from starving to death, and from dying of disease” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- sword
- Yahweh
- nation
- disperse, dispersion
- famine
- plague
- abomination, abominable
- know, knowledge, make known

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>18</sup> "Son of man, tremble while you eat your food, and shudder fearfully while you drink your water.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>18</sup> "Son of man, eat your bread with trembling, and drink your water with shaking and worry.

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [bread](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Tell this to the Israelite people: 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says about those who are still living in Jerusalem and in other places in Israel. They also will be very anxious while they eat their food and drink their water, because their country will soon have everything taken away. That will happen because the people who live there continually act very violently. <sup>20</sup> The towns where people live will be devastated, and the land will become barren. Then you people will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.'

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Then say to the people of the land, 'The Lord Yahweh says this concerning the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the land of Israel, "They will eat their bread with trembling and drink their water while shaking, since the land will be despoiled of its fullness because of the violence of all those who live there. <sup>20</sup> So the cities that were inhabited will be desolate, and the land will become a wasteland; so you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

**translationNotes****the land will be despoiled of its fullness**

The word "fullness" refers to everything in the land. The word "despoiled" means that people will empty the land of everything in it. This can be stated in active form. AT: "others will empty the land of everything in it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the cities that were inhabited will be desolate**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the cities where people lived will be desolate" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bread](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>22</sup> "Son of man, the people in Israel have this proverb that says, 'The days keep passing, and what the prophets predict never happens.' <sup>23</sup> So say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I am going to prove that what they say is not correct, and then they will never say it again in Israel.' Tell them, 'It will soon be the time when everything that the prophets predict will happen.'

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>22</sup> "Son of man, what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails'? <sup>23</sup> Therefore, say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: I will put an end to this proverb, and the people of Israel will no longer use it.' Say to them, 'The days have drawn near when every vision will be fulfilled.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails'?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel something he already knows. The question is a mild rebuke for the people who use the proverb. AT: "the people in the land of Israel have this proverb that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**The days are prolonged**

This idiom means that many days have passed. AT: "Many days have passed" or "Time has gone by" (See: [Idiom](#))

**every vision fails**

This means that the visions that the prophets receive and communicate to the people fail to happen. AT: "every prophetic vision fails to happen" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The days have drawn near**

This phrase refers to the days in which Israel will be judged. AT: “The days of judgment are coming soon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**every vision will be fulfilled**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will fulfill every vision” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [proverb](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [vision](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 12:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> No longer will prophets tell the Israelite people false visions, or tell people prophecies just to please them. <sup>25</sup> Instead, I, Yahweh, will say what I want to tell the people, and what I predict will quickly happen. You rebellious people, I will cause to happen everything that I say will happen. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.”

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> For there will no longer be any false visions or favorable divinations within the house of Israel. <sup>25</sup> For I am Yahweh! I speak, and I carry out the words that I speak. The matter will no longer be delayed. For I will speak this word in your days, rebellious house, and I will carry it out!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what to say to the people of Israel.

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I carry out the words that I speak**

This idiom means that Yahweh does what he says. AT: “I do the things that I say” (See: [Idiom](#))

**The matter will no longer be delayed**

The “matter” refers to the things that Yahweh says will happen. AT: “What I say will no longer be delayed” or “What I say will happen soon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will speak this word**

“I will speak this message” or “I will speak this prophecy”

**in your days**

This idiom refers to the period of time in which a person lives. AT: “while you are alive” or “during you lifetime” (See: [Idiom](#))

**rebellious house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: “rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [vision](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 12:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Yahweh also gave me this message. He said, <sup>27</sup> "Son of man, the Israelite people are constantly saying about you, 'The things that he sees in visions will not happen soon. They are about things that will happen many years from now, far in the future.'

<sup>28</sup> Therefore say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I will no longer delay causing to happen any of the things that I have prophesied. Whatever I have predicted will soon happen.'"

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>27</sup> "Son of man! Behold, the house of Israel has said, 'The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times.' <sup>28</sup> Therefore say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: My words will not be delayed any longer, but the word that I have spoken will be done—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.'"

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Behold**

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times**

These phrases are both ways the people of Israel are saying Ezekiel's warnings will not happen in their lifetime but will happen far in the future. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**My words will not be delayed any longer, but the word that I have spoken will be done**

These phrases are both ways God is telling the people of Israel that the things he has warned about will happen soon. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**My words will not be delayed any longer**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will no longer delay the word I have spoken” or “I will no longer delay doing what I said I would do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the word that I have spoken will be done**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will accomplish the word that I have spoken” or “I will do what I have spoken” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [vision](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 12 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 13 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### False prophets

God spoke against people who said they were prophesying but had not received any message from God. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

God said of people who encourage others to feel safe even when they continue to sin were not strengthening a wall but just putting whitewash on it to hide the imperfections. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 13:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 13:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, prophesy a warning against the prophets in Israel who are prophesying. Some of them are prophesying things that they themselves have imagined. Say to them, 'Listen to what Yahweh says!' <sup>3</sup> He says, "Terrible things will happen to those wicked prophets who proclaim their own ideas and have not seen any visions from me. <sup>4</sup> You Israelite people, your prophets are like jackals in the desert, they are scavengers feeding off of others' loss.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Again, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, prophesy against the prophets who are prophesying in Israel, and say to those who are prophesying out of their own imaginations, 'Listen to the word of Yahweh. <sup>3</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit, but who have seen nothing! <sup>4</sup> Israel, your prophets have been like jackals in the wastelands.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**prophesying out of their own imaginations**

"prophesying only the things that they imagine"

**who follow their own spirit**

Here the word "spirit" represents the thoughts and ideas of the person. To "follow" here is an idiom that means to do what their own ideas suggest for them to do. AT: "who act according to their own ideas" (See: [Idiom](#))

**like jackals in the wastelands**

Like jackals that scavenge for food and shelter among the abandoned ruins of cities, the prophets are using the destruction of Jerusalem for their own benefit. (See: [Simile](#))

**jackals**

wild animals that are related to dogs and that scavenge for food in abandoned places.

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- mind
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- woe
- fool, fools, foolish, folly
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- waste, wasteland

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Because you were listening to them, you have not repaired breeches or strengthened your walls. That needs to be done so that the walls will be strong when I, Yahweh, send your enemies to attack you. <sup>6</sup> The visions and prophecies of those prophets are false. They say, ‘Yahweh told me this.’ I have not sent them to you to be my prophets, but you expect that what they prophesy will truly happen! <sup>7</sup> They say that they have seen visions, but those visions are false, and the things that they prophesy are lies. They say, ‘Yahweh told me this,’ but I have told them nothing!

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> You have not gone to the breaks in the wall around the house of Israel in order to repair it, in order to resist in battle on the day of Yahweh. <sup>6</sup> The people have false visions and make false predictions, those who say, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration.” Yahweh has not sent them, but they nevertheless have made people hope that their messages would come true. <sup>7</sup> Have you not had false visions and made false predictions, you who say, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration” when I myself have not spoken?’

**translationNotes****the wall around the house of Israel**

This refers to the wall surrounding the city of Jerusalem.

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**resist in battle**

You can supply the implicit information here. AT: “resist the enemy armies” or “defend the city” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the day of Yahweh**

This refers to the time when Yahweh will judge his people by means of an enemy army. AT: “the day of Yahweh’s judgment” or “the day when Yahweh judges you by sending enemy armies to attack you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))



**Have you not had false visions ... when I myself have not spoken?**

Yahweh uses a question to rebuke the false prophets. AT: “You have had false visions ... because I myself have not spoken.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**had false visions and made false predictions**

Since the false prophets have not really received a message from Yahweh, what they predict about the future is not true.

**Such and such**

This is a phrase used to refer to anything the prophet may have said. Your language may have another way to say this. (See: [Idiom](#))

**Yahweh’s declaration**

“is what Yahweh has declared”

**translationWords**

- [day of the Lord, day of Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [vision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you prophets have said what is false and because your visions are lies, I am opposed to you. <sup>9</sup> I will strike all you prophets who falsely say that you have seen visions and prophesy things that are lies. You will not have any place among my people, your names will not be listed in the records of the Israelite people, and you will never return to Israel. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Because you have had false visions and have told lies—therefore this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration against you: <sup>9</sup> My hand will be against the prophets who have lying visions and who make false predictions. They will not be in the assembly of my people, or enrolled in the record of the house of Israel; they must not go to the land of Israel. For you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!

**translationNotes****this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**My hand will be against the prophets**

Here the word "hand" represents Yahweh's power. That his hand will be against them is a metaphor that means that he will punish them with his power. AT: "I will punish the prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**They will not be in the assembly of my people**

This means that Yahweh will not consider these false prophets to be part of the people of Israel.

**or enrolled in the record of the house of Israel**

This probably refers to an official record of the citizens of Israel. This can be stated in active form. AT: "nor will anyone enroll their names in the record of the house of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am the Lord Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am the Lord Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, the Lord Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [vision](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> They deceive my people, saying “Things will go well for us” when things will not go well. It is like they want to make people think that there is a very strong wall when it is not strong. <sup>11</sup> So, tell those prophets who cover the wall with whitewash that the wall will surely fall down. It will rain very hard. I will send big hailstones to fall. Very strong winds will blow against it. <sup>12</sup> When the wall falls down, the people will certainly say to those prophets, “The white paint certainly did not make the wall strong!”

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Because of this, and because they led my people astray and said, “Peace!” when there is no peace, they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash.’ <sup>11</sup> Say to those who are whitewashing the wall, ‘It will fall down; there will be a downpour of rain, and I will send hailstones to make it fall down, and a windstorm wind to break it down. <sup>12</sup> See, the wall will fall down. Have others not said to you, “Where is the whitewash that you put on it?”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In these verses, Yahweh speaks of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Because of this**

The word “this” refers to the prophets reporting false visions to the people and telling them lies.

**they led my people astray**

Yahweh speaks of the prophets deceiving the people and getting them to believe lies as if the prophets had led the people away from the path upon which they should have been walking. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash**

Here “a wall” stands for peace and security that the false prophets told the people that Yahweh was promising to give them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**whitewash ... whitewashing**

The word “whitewash” refers to a white liquid mixture or paint used to cover up impurities and make surfaces white.

**I will send hailstones to make it fall down, and a windstorm wind to break it down**

Yahweh refers to the judgment that he will send upon the people as if it were a severe storm that breaks down the wall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**hailstones**

balls of ice that sometimes falls from the sky during a rainstorm.

**Have others not said to you, “Where is the whitewash that you put on it?”**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that others will ask the prophets what happened to their whitewash. AT: “Others will certainly say to you, ‘Where is the whitewash that you put on it?’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Where is the whitewash that you put on it?**

Possible meanings are 1) that this is an honest question for which the people expect and answer or 2) this is a rhetorical question that the people ask out of sarcasm. AT: “The whitewash that you put on it did no good.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [astray, go astray, led astray, stray](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because I am very angry with you, I will send enemy armies to destroy Jerusalem. It will be as though I will send a very strong wind and hailstones and very heavy rains to destroy you. <sup>14</sup> The false prophecies of your prophets are like a wall that they have covered with whitewash, but I will break it down, and shatter it down to the ground, with the result that people can see its foundations. When the wall collapses you also will be killed, and everyone will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: I will bring a windstorm in my rage, and there will be floods of rain in my wrath! Hailstones in my rage will completely destroy it. <sup>14</sup> For I will tear down the wall that you have covered with whitewash, and I will demolish it to the ground and lay bare its foundations. So it will fall, and you will be annihilated in the middle of it all. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will bring a windstorm ... completely destroy it.**

Yahweh refers to the judgment that he will send upon the people as if it were a severe storm that breaks down the wall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in my rage ... in my wrath ... in my rage**

“because of my rage ... because of my wrath ... because my rage.”

**lay bare**

“uncover”

**you will be annihilated in the middle of it all**

The phrase “in the middle of it all” refers to the stones of the wall that Yahweh will break down. He speaks of destroying the people in his judgment as if the wall would crush them to death when he breaks it down. AT: “all of its stones will crush you to death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**annihilated**

“destroyed”

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [flood](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> In that way I will show that I am very angry with the wall and with those who covered it with whitewash. And I will say, “The wall is gone and those who whitewashed it have been killed.”

<sup>16</sup> Those are the prophets who prophesied that things would go well for the people in Jerusalem, when things would not go well for them.’

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> For I will annihilate in my fury the wall and those who whitewashed it. I will say to you, “The wall exists no more, nor do the people who whitewashed it—<sup>16</sup> the prophets of Israel who prophesied about Jerusalem and who had visions of peace for her. But there is no peace!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will annihilate in my fury**

“Because I am very angry, I will annihilate”

**whitewashed it**

The word “whitewash” refers to a white liquid mixture or paint used to cover up impurities and make surfaces white. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 13:10](#).

**the prophets of Israel who prophesied about Jerusalem and who had visions of peace for her**

This phrase defines who “the people who whitewashed it” are.

**visions of peace for her**

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.



**translationWords**

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [vision](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> So you, son of man, show that you are angry with the women of Jerusalem who prophesy things that they themselves have imagined, and speak true prophesy against them. <sup>18</sup> Tell them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Terrible things will happen to you women who fasten magic charms on your wrists and make veils of various sizes to put on your heads in order to deceive the people. You think that you will deceive others by telling them that you know what will happen in the future, and you will save your own lives.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> So you, son of man, set your face against the daughters of your people who prophesy out of their own minds, and prophesy against them. <sup>18</sup> Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the women who sew magic charms onto every part of their hand and make veils for their heads of every size, used to hunt down people. Will you hunt down my people but save your own lives?

**translationNotes****set your face against the daughters**

This is a command to stare at the women as a symbol of punishing them. Translate "set your face against" as you did in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). AT: "stare at the daughters" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face against**

Here "face" is a metonym for attention or gaze, and "set your face" represents staring. AT: "stare at" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**daughters of your people**

This idiom refers to women who belong to the same people group as Ezekiel does. AT: "women of Israel" or "your countrywomen" (See: [Idiom](#))

**prophesy out of their own minds**

"prophesying only the things that they think in their own minds." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 13:2](#).

**prophesy against**

"prophesy about the bad things that will happen to them." See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:7](#).

**sew magic charms onto every part of their hand**

This means that they sew magic charms together and then attach them to their hands, not that they sew them directly onto their hands.

**charms**

objects believed to have magical powers.

**used to hunt down people**

Yahweh speaks of these women using beauty, mystery, and lies to deceive people as if the people were animals that the women hunted down and trapped with their charms. This can be stated in active form. AT: “that they use to hunt down people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**make veils for their heads of every size**

This means that they make veils to put on the heads of people of different height. AT: “make veils for the heads of women of every stature” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Will you hunt down my people but save your own lives?**

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to rebuke the women who do these things. The implicit answer is, “no.” AT: “Do not think that you will be able to save your own lives after you have hunted down my people!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [mind](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [woe](#)
- [magic, magician](#)
- [veil](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions

## Ezekiel 13:19

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> You dishonored me by telling lies in order to get from my people a few handfuls of barley and a few pieces of bread. My people listen to lies; and you women who are lying to them have caused people who did not deserve to die to be killed, and have spared those who should not continue to live.'

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> You have profaned me among my people for handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread, to kill people who should not die, and to preserve the lives of those who should not continue to live, because of your lies to my people who heard you.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak against the false prophetesses in Israel.

#### handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread

Barley is a grain used to make bread and the word "crumb" is a small amount of bread. Both phrases are small amounts of food and are used to emphasize how small the payment was to the prophetesses. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### translationWords

- [profane](#)
- [bread](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to those women: 'I detest your magic charms by which you deceive people like other people trap birds. I will tear those charms off your wrists, and I will cause the people whom you have deceived to no longer be deceived by you. <sup>21</sup> I will also tear off your veils and rescue my people from continuing to be deceived by you, and they will no longer be under your control. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: I am against the magic charms that you have used to ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds. Indeed, I will tear them from your arms; and the people whom you have trapped like birds—I will let them go free. <sup>21</sup> I will tear away your veils and rescue my people from your hand, so they will no longer be trapped in your hands. You will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****the magic charms that you have used to ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds**

Yahweh speaks of these women using their magic charms to deceive people as if the people were birds that the women trapped with those charms. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**charms**

objects believed to have magical powers

**to ensnare**

“to trap” “to catch in a snare”

**tear them from your arms**

“tear the charms from your arms”

**rescue my people from your hand**

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. AT: “rescue my people from your power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they will no longer be trapped in your hands**

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. Yahweh speaks of the people being in the control of these women as if the women had trapped them with their hands. This can be stated in active form. AT: “you will no longer trap them like prey in your hands” or “you will no longer control them with your power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [magic, magician](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)
- [veil](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 13:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> You have discouraged righteous people by telling them lies when I did not do things to cause them to be sad. And you have encouraged wicked people to keep on doing their wicked behavior; if they had turned away from it, they would have continued to live. <sup>23</sup> Therefore, you will no longer falsely say that you have seen visions or tell people what will happen in the future in order to please them. I will rescue my people from being deceived by you. And then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Because you discourage the heart of the righteous person with lies, even though I did not desire his discouragement, and because you encourage instead the actions of the wicked person so that he will not turn from his way to save his life— <sup>23</sup> therefore you will no longer have false visions or continue to make predictions, for I will rescue my people out of your hand. You will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****discourage the heart of the righteous person**

Here the word “heart” represents the person and his emotions. AT: “discourage the righteous person” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**turn from his way**

To stop doing something is referred to as turning in a different direction. AT: “stop what he is doing” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**have false visions or continue to make predictions**

Both of these phrases refer to talking about what will happen in the future. AT: “continue to make false predictions” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**I will rescue my people out of your hand**

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 13:21](#). AT: “I will rescue my people from your power” (See: [Metonymy](#))



**translationWords**

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 14 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Jerusalem deserves punishment**

When the captives from Jerusalem arrive in Babylon, it will be obvious why God has punished them.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 14:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 14:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat down in front of me. <sup>2</sup> Then Yahweh gave me this message: <sup>3</sup> "Son of man, these men worship idols, and they are allowing idols to induce them to sin. So should I answer them if they ask me for advice?"

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me. <sup>2</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>3</sup> "Son of man, these men have taken their idols into their hearts and have put the stumbling block of their iniquity before their own faces. Should I be inquired of at all by them?"

**translationNotes****Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me**

The elders sat before Ezekiel in order to inquire of the Lord through Ezekiel. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**have taken their idols into their hearts**

Yahweh speaks of the elders committing themselves to worshiping idols as if the elders had "taken their idols into their hearts." AT: "have devoted themselves to idols" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**have put the stumbling block of their iniquity before their own faces**

Yahweh speaks of the idols that the elders worship as if they were blocks over which the elders stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. AT: "have resolutely determined to worship the things that lead to iniquity" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**stumbling block of their iniquity**

Possible meanings are 1) the idols are a stumbling block that leads to the elders' iniquity or 2) worshipping idols is an iniquity that causes the elders to stumble.

**Should I be inquired of at all by them?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the elders should not be inquiring of him. This question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. AT: "Should I permit them to inquire of me at all?" or "They should not be inquiring of me at all." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [face](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But say this to them: 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: When any Israelite person wants to worship idols that will induce him to sin, and goes to a prophet to get advice, I, Yahweh, will give him the same answer that they deserve to receive because they worship idols. <sup>5</sup> I will do this so the Israelite people, who have abandoned me in order to worship their idols, will sincerely worship me again.'

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Therefore announce this to them and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Every man of the house of Israel who takes his idols into his heart, or who puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face, and who then comes to a prophet—I, Yahweh, will answer him according to the number of his idols. <sup>5</sup> I will do this so that I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts that have been driven far from me through their idols.'

**translationNotes****Therefore announce this to them**

The word “them” refers to the “men from the elders of Israel.”

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who takes his idols into his heart**

Yahweh speaks of the people committing themselves to worshiping idols as if they had taken their idols into their hearts. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). AT: “who devotes himself to idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**who puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face**

Yahweh speaks of the idols that people worship as if they were blocks over which the people stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). AT: “who resolutely determines to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**then comes to a prophet**

A person goes to a prophet in order to inquire of the Lord. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I, Yahweh, will answer him according to the number of his idols**

This phrase refers to the many idols that the people worship. It is implied that the severity of Yahweh's answer will as great as the number of idols that they worship. AT: "I, Yahweh, will give him the answer that he deserves because he worships so many idols" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts**

Here the word "hearts" represents the minds and affections of the people. Yahweh speaks of causing them to be devoted to him once again as if he were to capture their hearts. AT: "I will cause the people of Israel to be devoted to me again" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**their hearts that have been driven far from me through their idols**

Here the word "hearts" represents the minds and affections of the people. This can be stated in active form. AT: "who have all left me to worship their idols" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:6****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, say to the Israelite people, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Repent! Stop worshipping your idols, and stop all your other detestable behavior!’

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore say to the house of Israel, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Repent and turn away from your idols! Turn back your faces from all your abominations.’

**translationNotes****the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Repent and turn away from your idols! Turn back your faces from all your abominations**

Both of these phrases are ways to tell the people of Israel to stop worshipping idols. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Repent and turn away**

The words “repent” and “turn way” mean basically the same thing. Together they strengthen the command to stop worshipping idols. (See: [Doublet](#))

**Turn back your faces**

Here the word “faces” represents the people. AT: “Turn back” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [face](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 14:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> When any of you Israelite people or any foreigner living among you turns away from me and starts worshipping idols that induce him to sin, and then goes to a prophet to find out what I want him to do, I myself will answer him. <sup>8</sup> I will show that I detest him, and cause what happens to him to be a warning to others, and cause him to be someone whom people despise. I will not allow him to associate with my people. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> For every one from the house of Israel and every one of the foreigners staying in Israel who deserts me, who takes his idols into his heart and puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his own face, and who then comes to a prophet to seek me—I, Yahweh, will answer him myself. <sup>8</sup> So I will set my face against that man and make him a sign and a proverb, for I will cut him off from the midst of my people, and you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who takes his idols into his heart**

Yahweh speaks of the people committing themselves to worshipping idols as if they had taken their idols into their hearts. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). AT: “who devotes himself to idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his own face**

Yahweh speaks of the idols that people worship as if they were blocks over which the people stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). AT: “who resolutely determines to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will set my face against that man**

Yahweh speaks of being opposed to a person as if he were to set his face against that person. AT: “I will be against that man” or “I will oppose that man” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set my face**

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set my face” refers to staring. AT: “stare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**make him a sign and a proverb**

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. The word proverb refers to what people will say about that sign when they see it. AT: “I will make that man to be a warning and a proverb” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will cut him off from the midst of my people**

Yahweh speaks of causing a person no longer to belong to his people as if he were cutting that person off from the people, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. AT: “I will cause him no longer to belong to my people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [face](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [proverb](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions

**Ezekiel 14:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> And if a prophet is deceived and gives a false prophecy, even though I have allowed him to give that message, I will get rid of him and remove him from among my Israelite people. <sup>10</sup> Both the prophet and the one who asks him for advice will be guilty, and I will punish both of them. <sup>11</sup> Then the Israelite people will no longer abandon me, and they will no longer become unacceptable to me because of their sins. They will be my people, and I will be their God. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.”

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> If a prophet is deceived and speaks a message, then I, Yahweh, will deceive that prophet; I will reach out with my hand against him and destroy him from the midst of my people Israel. <sup>10</sup> They will carry their own iniquity; the iniquity of the prophet will be the same as the iniquity of the one who inquires from him. <sup>11</sup> Because of this, the house of Israel will no longer wander away from following me nor defile themselves any longer through all their transgressions. They will be my people, and I will be their God—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****I will reach out with my hand against him**

God’s “hand” refers to what he does. AT: “I will work against him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**They will carry their own iniquity**

Here the word “iniquity” represents the guilt that people incur for committing iniquity. Yahweh speaks of people suffering the consequences of their iniquity as if they were carrying the iniquity. AT: “They will suffer the consequences of their own iniquity” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will no longer wander away from following me**

Yahweh speaks of the people no longer worshiping him as if they were to wander away from him and no longer follow him. AT: “will no longer stop worshiping me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [God](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>13</sup> "You human, if the people of some country sin against me by abandoning me, and I punish them by cutting off their food supply and by sending a famine so that people and animals die, <sup>14</sup> even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were there, they would save only themselves because of their being righteous. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>13</sup> "Son of man, when a land sins against me by committing a sin so that I reach out with my hand against it and break the staff of its bread, and send out over it a famine and cut off both man and beast from the land; <sup>14</sup> then even if these three men—Noah, Daniel, and Job—were in the land's midst, they could only rescue their own lives by their righteousness—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****when a land sins against me**

Here the word "land" represents the people who live in the land. AT: "when the people who live in a land sin against me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**break the staff of its bread**

Yahweh speaks of the supply of bread as if it were a staff. The word "bread" represents all kinds of food. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:16](#). AT: "end the supply of its food" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**cut off both man and beast from the land**

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if he were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. AT: "kill both man and beast in the land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- staff
- bread
- send, send out, sent
- famine

- Noah
- Daniel
- Job
- righteous, righteousness
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Or, if I send wild animals throughout the country, and they attack and kill many of the people, so that travel in that country becomes very dangerous and no one travels through that country, <sup>16</sup> as surely as I am alive, even if those three men were in that country, they could not save even their own sons or daughters from being killed. Only they three would be saved, and the country would become a wasteland. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> If I send evil beasts through the land and make it barren so that it becomes a wasteland where no man may pass through because of the beasts, <sup>16</sup> then even if these same three men were in it—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued, but the land would become a wasteland.

**translationNotes****these same three men**

Noah, Daniel, and Job

**as I live**

“as surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**only their own lives would be rescued**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they could only rescue their own lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- barren
- waste, wasteland
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- declare, declaration
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Or, if I bring enemy soldiers to kill the people and animals throughout that country with their swords, <sup>18</sup> as surely as I am alive, even if those three men were in that country, they would not be able to save even their own sons or daughters from being killed. They would save only themselves. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Or if I bring a sword against that land and say, ‘Sword, go through the land and cut off both man and beast from it’, <sup>18</sup> then even if these three men were in the midst of the land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued.

**translationNotes****if I bring a sword against that land**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT:

**Sword, go through the land**

Here the word “sword” represents the soldiers of an enemy army who attack with swords. AT: “Army, go through the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**cut off both man and beast from it**

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if it were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. AT: “kill both man and beast in the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**these three men**

Noah, Daniel, and Job

**only their own lives would be rescued**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they would only rescue their own lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [sword](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Or, if I send a plague into that land and cause the people and the animals to die from the plague because I am very angry with those people, <sup>20</sup> as surely as I am alive, even if Noah, Daniel and Job were in that country, they would not be able to save even their sons and daughters. They would save only themselves because of their being righteous. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Or if I send a plague against this land and pour out my fury against it through bloodshed, in order to cut off both man and beast, <sup>20</sup> then even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were in that land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued by their righteousness.

**translationNotes****pour out my fury**

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury as if his fury were a liquid that he pours out from a container. AT: “I will express my fury” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**cut off both man and beast**

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if he were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. AT: “kill both man and beast” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**only their own lives would be rescued**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they would only rescue their own lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [plague](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [Job](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 14:21

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> So now this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will cause four things to happen to the people of Jerusalem to punish them very severely. Some people and animals will be killed by swords, some will die from famines, others will be attacked and killed by wild animals, and others will die in plagues.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this: I will certainly make things worse by sending my four punishments—famine, sword, wild animals, and plague—against Jerusalem to cut off both man and beast from her.

### translationNotes

#### to cut off both man and beast from her

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if it were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. The word “her” refers to Jerusalem. AT: “to kill both man and beast in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [famine](#)
- [sword](#)
- [plague](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 14:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> But some of your people will remain alive, both adults and children. They will come to you, Ezekiel. And when you see their disgusting behavior and actions, you will realize that I had good reasons for causing the people of Jerusalem to experience those many great disasters that I have sent to them. <sup>23</sup> When you see those things that they do, you will know that there were very good reasons for me to do everything that I caused to happen to them. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Yet, behold! A remnant will be left in her, survivors who will go out with sons and daughters. Behold! They will go out to you, and you will see their ways and actions and be comforted concerning the punishment that I have sent to Jerusalem, and about everything else that I have sent against the land. <sup>23</sup> The survivors will comfort you when you see their ways and their actions, so you will know all these things I have done against her, that I have not done them in vain!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak with Ezekiel about the punishment of the people of Israel.

**Behold**

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the information that follows.

**left in her ... done against her**

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

**their ways and their actions**

Both of these phrases refer to what the people of Israel have done. AT: “the way they live” or “the things they do” (See: [Doublet](#))

**be comforted concerning the punishment**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they will comfort you concerning the punishment” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- remnant
- comfort, comforter
- punish, punishment
- send, send out, sent
- Jerusalem
- vain, vanity
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 14 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 15 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Useless**

God said that the people of Jerusalem were useless to him. He uses a simile to show just how useless they were. (See: [Simile](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 15:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 15:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, the wood of a grapevine is certainly not more useful than the branches of the trees in a forest. <sup>3</sup> No one even makes pegs from it to hang things on. <sup>4</sup> And after a branch of a grapevine is thrown into a fire and the fire burns both ends and chars the branch in the middle, after that will it be useful for anything?"

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, how is a vine better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest? <sup>3</sup> Do people take wood from a vine to make anything? Or do they make a peg from it to hang anything on it? <sup>4</sup> See! If it is thrown into a fire as fuel, and if the fire has burned both of its ends and also the middle, is it good for anything?"

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh is talking to Ezekiel in this section.

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**how is a vine better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "a vine is not better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Do people take wood from a vine to make anything?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "People do not take wood from a vine to make anything." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**do they make a peg from it to hang anything on it?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “they do not make a peg from it to hang things on it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**If it is thrown into a fire as fuel ... is it good for anything?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “If it is thrown into a fire as fuel ... it is not good for anything.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**If it is thrown into a fire as fuel**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “If a person throws it into a fire as fuel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fire](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 15:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> No; if it was not useful for anything before it was burned, it certainly cannot be made into something useful after the fire has burned and charred it.

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: The wood of grapevines is useful only for fuel in a fire. Similarly, the people who live in Jerusalem are useless.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> See! When it was complete, it could not make anything; surely then, when the fire has burned, then it still will not make anything useful. <sup>6</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Unlike the trees in the forests, I have given the vine as fuel for fires; I will act in the same way toward the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking about the vine.

**See!**

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**When it was complete**

“When it was whole” or “Before the fire burned it”

**it could not make anything**

“no one could make anything from it”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 15:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> I will reject them. It will be as though they have escaped from a fire, but there will still be a fire that will burn them up. And when I punish them, you people who remain alive will know that I, Yahweh, have done it. <sup>8</sup> I will cause your country to become a wasteland because your people have not been loyal to me. That is what I, Yahweh, the Lord, say.”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> For I will set my face against them. Though they come out from the fire, yet the fire will consume them; so you will know that I am Yahweh, when I set my face against them. <sup>8</sup> Then I will make the land into an abandoned wasteland because they have committed sin—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.

**I will set my face against them**

Yahweh speaks of being opposed to them as if he were to set his face against them. AT: “I will be against them” or “I will oppose them” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set my face**

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set my face” refers to staring. AT: “stare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Though they come out from the fire, yet the fire will consume them**

Yahweh speaks of the punishment that he will afflict upon the people as if it were a fire that burns them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the fire will consume them**

Yahweh speaks of fire burning things as if the fire consumed them. AT: “the fire will destroy them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they have committed sin**

“the people who live there have committed sin” or “the people who live there have sinned”

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [face](#)
- [fire](#)
- [consume](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 15 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 16 General Notes**

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

God compared Judah to an adulteress because she worshiped idols instead of God who had done so much to help her. Adultery is a common image used to describe the worship of idols by Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 16:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 16:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, inform the people of Jerusalem about their detestable behavior. <sup>3</sup> Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you people of Jerusalem: It is as though you are a woman whose father belonged to the Amor people group and your mother belonged to the Heth people group.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, inform Jerusalem about her abominations, <sup>3</sup> and declare, 'The Lord Yahweh says this to Jerusalem: Your beginning and your birth took place in the land of Canaan; your father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In this chapter, Yahweh speaks about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful bride. He describes her growth from infancy to adulthood. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**Your beginning and your birth**

These two phrases share similar meanings. Yahweh speaks of when people founded the city as if it were the city's birth. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**your father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite**

The Amorites and Hittites were both pagan people groups who lived in the land before the people of Israel conquered it. Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem's father and mother belonging to these people groups to express that she was born into idolatry. (See: [Metaphor](#))



**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- Jerusalem
- abomination, abominable
- declare, declaration
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Hittite

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> It is as though on the day that you were born, your umbilical cord was not cut, and your body was not washed in water or rubbed with salt and wrapped in strips of cloth, like Israelite babies always are. <sup>5</sup> No one pitied you or acted kindly toward you by doing those things for you. Instead, it was as though they hated you. As soon as you were born they threw you into a field to die.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> On the day of your birth, your mother did not cut your navel, nor did she purify you in water or rub you down with salt, or wrap cloth around you. <sup>5</sup> No eye had compassion for you to do any of these things for you, to be compassionate toward you. On the day that you were born, with loathing for your life, you were thrown out into the open field.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were an infant. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**your mother did not cut your navel**

Here “navel” refers to the umbilical cord that is attached to the navel. AT: “you mother did not cut your umbilical cord” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**No eye had compassion for you**

Here the word “eye” represents the person who sees. AT: “Nobody who saw you had compassion for you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**with loathing for your life**

“because your parents hated you”

**you were thrown out into the open field**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “your parents threw you out into the open field” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then it was as though I passed by and saw you lying in your own blood and kicking. And while you lay there kicking in your own blood, I said to you, “I want you to remain alive!” <sup>7</sup> It was as though I caused you to grow up, like plants in the field grow; you grew up and became tall and became like the most precious jewel of all. You developed into a beautiful woman, but you were still completely naked.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> But I passed by you, and I saw you writhing in your own blood; so I said to you in your blood, “Live!” I said to you in your blood, “Live!” <sup>[1]</sup> . <sup>7</sup> I made you grow like a plant in a field. You multiplied and became great, and you became the jewel of jewels. Your breasts became firm, and your hair grew thick, though you had been naked and bare.

---

16:6 <sup>[1]</sup>Some modern versions leave out the second occurrence of *I said to you in your blood, “Live!”*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were an infant. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**But I passed by you**

Yahweh is walking near the newborn baby.

**I said to you in your blood**

The implicit information can be supplied from the previous phrase. AT: “I said to you as you were lying in your blood” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**I made you grow like a plant in a field**

Here Yahweh compares growing quickly with the way a plant grows quickly. (See: [Simile](#))

**You multiplied and became great**

These two phrases share similar meanings. They both refer to her growing and becoming taller. AT: “You matured and grew taller” (See: [Doublet](#))

**you became the jewel of jewels**

Here the woman, who represents Jerusalem, is spoken of as if she had become the finest of all jewels, that is, as if she had become the most beautiful of all women. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you became the jewel of jewels**

Some modern versions translate “You became old enough to wear jewels.”

**naked and bare**

These two words mean the same thing. AT: “completely naked” (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [blood](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:8****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> When I saw you several years later, it was as though I spread the cloth of my robe over you to symbolize that I would marry you, with the result that you were no longer naked. I solemnly promised that I would marry you and made a marriage agreement with you, and you became my wife.’ That is what Yahweh the Lord says.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> I passed by you again, and I saw you. See! the time of love came for you, so I spread my robe over you and covered your nakedness. Then I swore to you and brought you into a covenant—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—and you became mine.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**See!**

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**the time of love came for you**

This is to say that Yahweh sees the young woman is old enough to be married.

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [robe](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:9-12****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> And then it was as though I bathed you and washed the blood from you and put ointment on your body. <sup>10</sup> It was as though I put a fine linen robe on you and gave you expensive clothes. I put an embroidered dress on you and put leather sandals on your feet. <sup>11</sup> It was as though I put bracelets on your arms and a necklace around your neck. Those things all had nice jewels fastened to them. <sup>12</sup> I put a gold ring in your nose and fastened earrings to your ears and put a beautiful crown on your head.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> So I washed you with water and rinsed your blood off you, and I anointed you with oil. <sup>10</sup> I dressed you in embroidered clothes and placed leather sandals on your feet. I wrapped you with fine linen and covered you with silk. <sup>11</sup> Next I adorned you with jewelry, and I put bracelets on your hands, and a chain around your neck. <sup>12</sup> I put a nose ring in your nostrils and earrings in your ears, and a beautiful crown on your head.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**embroidered clothes**

“beautiful clothes.” To embroider is to sew a design into a piece of cloth.

**I adorned you with jewelry**

“I put jewelry on you”

**translationWords**

- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [oil](#)
- [sandal](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [head](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> So it was as though you wore gold and silver ornaments. You had clothes made from fine linen and other expensive fabrics, and an embroidered dress. You ate fine flour, honey, and oil. You were the most beautiful woman and I made you into a queen. <sup>14</sup> You were very beautiful, with the result that people in other nations heard about you, because they knew that I, Yahweh the Lord, am the one who had caused you to become very beautiful.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> So you were adorned with gold and silver, and you were dressed in fine linen, silk, and embroidered clothes; you ate fine flour, honey, and oil, and you were very beautiful, and you became a queen. <sup>14</sup> Your fame went out among the nations because of your beauty, for it was perfect in the majesty that I had given to you—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**you were adorned with gold and silver, and you were dressed in fine linen**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I adorned you with gold and silver, and dressed you in fine linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**fame**

“reputation”

**it was perfect**

“your beauty was perfect”

**translationWords**

- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [oil](#)
- [queen](#)
- [nation](#)

- perfect
- majesty
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> But it was as though you forgot that I made you beautiful and started acting promiscuous with every man who came along, and they all enjoyed your beauty. <sup>16</sup> It was as though you took some of your clothes to make beautifully decorated the high places, and that is where you slept with those men. Those things should certainly never occur!

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> But you trusted in your own beauty, and you acted like a prostitute because of your fame; you poured out your acts of prostitution on everyone who passed by, so that your beauty became his. <sup>16</sup> Then you took your clothes and with them you made high places for yourself decorated in various colors, and there you acted like a prostitute. This should not have happened. Nor should such a thing exist.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**you trusted in your own beauty**

“you placed your confidence in your own beauty”

**acted like a prostitute**

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem as if the city were an unfaithful wife who sleeps with other men in exchange for payment. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you poured out your acts of prostitution**

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s immoral actions as if they were liquids and of committing those actions repeatedly as if it were pouring those liquids from a container. AT: “you repeatedly committed your acts of prostitution” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that your beauty became his**

This Hebrew phrase is translated in many different ways by various modern versions. For example, some Bibles read “so that you gave yourself to him” or “his it was”

**translationWords**

- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [high places](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> You took the fine gold and silver jewelry that I gave you, and you made male idols for yourself, in order to sleep with them. <sup>18</sup> You took some of your embroidered clothes to put on those idols, and you burned oil and incense in front of them to honor them. <sup>19</sup> And the bread that was made from fine flour and the olive oil and honey that I gave to you to eat, you offered to be a fragrant sacrifice to those idols. I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that that is what happened.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> You took the fine jewels of the gold and silver that I gave you, and you made for yourself male figures, and you did with them as a prostitute would do. <sup>18</sup> You took your embroidered garments and covered them, and you set my oils and perfumes before them. <sup>19</sup> My bread I gave you—made with fine flour, oil, and honey—you set before them for a fragrant aroma, for this is what happened—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**male figures**

“statues of men” or “idols that look like men”

**you did with them as a prostitute would do**

Possible meanings are 1) this is a polite way to say the young woman was sleeping with the male figures. AT: “you slept with them” or 2) this is a metaphor in which Yahweh speaks of her worshiping the figures as if she were sleeping with them. AT: “you worshiped them” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**made with fine flour, oil, and honey**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “bread that I made with fine flour, oil, and honey” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**set before them**

“placed as an offering in front of them”

**translationWords**

- gold
- silver
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- oil
- bread
- honey, honeycomb
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> And you even took your sons and daughters who were supposed to be committed to me and sacrificed and killed them as though they were less important than your becoming a prostitute. <sup>21</sup> You slaughtered those who were like my children, and offered them to be sacrifices to these false gods! <sup>22</sup> All during the time when you were acting like a prostitute and doing other detestable things, you did not think about the time when it was as though you were very young, naked, lying in your own blood and kicking in the field.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then you took your sons and daughters whom you bore for me, and you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food. Are your acts of prostitution a small matter? <sup>21</sup> You slaughtered my children and put them into the fire. <sup>22</sup> In all your abominations and your acts of prostitution you have not thought about the days of your youth, when you were naked and bare as you thrashed about in your blood.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**whom you bore for me**

“who were my children”

**you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food ... put them into the fire**

Here Yahweh does not use a metaphor, but speaks of something that the people of Israel had actually done. They sacrificed their children to pagan idols.

**you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food**

In these ancient pagan sacrifices, the people believed that the gods would eat the food that they offered to them. This can be stated in active form. AT: “you sacrificed them to the images so that those images could devour them as food” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))



**Are your acts of prostitution a small matter? You slaughtered**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the woman is acting as if her prostitution was not bad enough and so she decided to sacrifice her children, as well. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “You must think that your acts of prostitution are a small matter, and so you slaughtered” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**put them into the fire**

It is implicit that she put them into the fire in order to offer them as burnt offerings to her images. AT: “sacrificed them as burnt offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**naked and bare**

These two words mean the same thing. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 16:7](#). AT: “completely naked” (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [son, sons](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [devour](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 16:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> So I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that terrible things will happen to you. In addition to all the other wicked things that you did, <sup>24</sup> you built yourself a tall building in which you worship idols and you built a place to worship idols in every city square.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Woe! Woe to you!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—therefore, in addition to all this wickedness, <sup>24</sup> you built yourself a vaulted chamber in every public place.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

#### you built yourself a vaulted chamber in every public place

Possible meanings are that she built a place where 1) she could worship her idols or 2) she could practice her prostitution.

### translationWords

- woe
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- high places

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> At the beginning of every street you built a tall building for the worship of idols, and showed people your beautiful body, offering it to sleep with every man who walked by, and so you were known as a prostitute and your fame for your immorality grew every day. <sup>26</sup> It was as though you had slept with men from Egypt who were eager to sleep with you, men who lived near Israel. You caused me to become very angry because you became more eager to sleep with more and more of them.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> You built your high place at the head of every road and made your beauty a disgrace, and you spread your legs to anyone who passed by, and you multiplied your acts of prostitution. <sup>26</sup> You have acted like a prostitute with the Egyptians, your lustful neighbors, and you committed many more acts of prostitution, provoking me to anger.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**at the head of every road**

Yahweh speaks of the beginning of a road as if it were its head. AT: “at the beginning of every road” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [high places](#)
- [desecrate](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [lust](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions

**Ezekiel 16:27-29****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> So I punished you and caused your enemies to capture some of your country. I enabled your greedy enemies from Philistia to defeat you; and even they were shocked because of your disgraceful behavior. <sup>28</sup> It was as though you slept with soldiers from Assyria, too, because you always wanted to sleep with more men. And after that, you still were not satisfied. <sup>29</sup> So you also slept with soldiers from Babylonia, a country full of merchants, but even that did not satisfy you.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> See! I will strike you with my hand and cut off your food. I will hand your life over to your enemies, the daughters of the Philistines, who were ashamed of your obscene behavior. <sup>28</sup> You have acted like a prostitute with the Assyrians because you could not be satisfied. You acted like a prostitute and still were not satisfied. <sup>29</sup> You performed many more acts of prostitution in the land of the merchants of Chaldea, and even this did not satisfy you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**See!**

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I will strike you with my hand**

Here “hand” represents power. AT: “I will use my power to strike you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**cut off your food**

Yahweh speaks of stopping the supply of food as if it were cutting off the food. AT: “stop your food supply” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will hand your life over**

Here “life” represents the person. AT: “I will hand you over” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the daughters of the Philistines**

Here Yahweh speaks of the cities of Philistia as if they were the daughters of the Philistines. The cities represent the people who live there. AT: “the Philistine people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that when you did all those things, acting like a bold prostitute, you were showing that you could not control your lust and would do anything, no matter how promiscuous, that you wanted to satisfy your desires. <sup>31</sup> But when you built the houses on the hills to worship idols in every city square, you were not really like a prostitute because prostitutes charge money. You refused to take money for what you did!

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> How sick is your heart—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute? <sup>31</sup> You have built your high places at the head of every street and made your vaulted chamber in every public place. Yet you were not like a prostitute because you refused to take payment.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.

**How sick is your heart ... that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute?**

Yahweh asks the rhetorical question in order to rebuke Jerusalem. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “Your heart must be very sick ... that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**How sick is your heart**

Here the word “heart” represents the will and emotions. Yahweh speaks of her inability to control her desires as if her heart were sick. AT: “How weak-willed are you” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**at the head of every street**

Yahweh speaks of the beginning of a street as if it were its head. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 16:25](#). AT: “at the beginning of every street” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**made your vaulted chamber**

Possible meanings are that she built a place where 1) she could worship her idols or 2) she could practice her prostitution. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 16:24](#).

**translationWords**

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [high places](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 16:32-34****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> You are like a woman who commits adultery: You prefer to sleep with strangers rather than with your husband. <sup>33</sup> Prostitutes are paid, but it is as though you give gifts to all your lovers; you bribe them to come to you from everywhere to sleep with you. <sup>34</sup> So although you act like you are a prostitute, you are actually the opposite of other prostitutes! Instead of them giving any money to you, you give men money to sleep with you!

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> You adulterous woman, you accept strangers instead of your husband. <sup>33</sup> People give payment to every prostitute, but you give your wages to all your lovers and bribe them to come to you from all around for your acts of prostitution. <sup>34</sup> So there is a difference between you and those other women, since no one goes to you to ask you to sleep with them. Instead, you pay them. No one pays you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**you accept strangers instead of your husband**

This refers to accepting someone to sleep with her. AT: “you accept strangers into your bed instead of your husband” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [bribe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:35-37****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> Therefore, you people of Jerusalem, you, who are like a prostitute, listen to what Yahweh the Lord is saying about you! <sup>36</sup> He says that what you have done is as though you have lusted for everyone around you and had slept with them and with the male idols you made, so that you even made your own children to be sacrifices to them. <sup>37</sup> So what I am going to do is as though I will gather those who you think have loved you and those whom you hated. I will gather them around you to attack you, and what I will do is as though I will strip your clothes off you, and they will see you when you are completely naked.

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> Therefore, you prostitute, listen to the word of Yahweh. <sup>36</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have poured out your lust and uncovered your nakedness through your acts of prostitution with your lovers and with all your detestable idols, and because you gave them your children's blood, <sup>37</sup> therefore, behold, I will gather all your lovers that you have met, all those whom you loved and all those whom you hated, and I will gather them against you on every side. I will uncover your nakedness to them so they see all your nakedness.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**you have poured your lust out**

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem's lust as if it were liquid and of committing actions repeatedly to gratify that lust as if it were pouring that liquid from a container. AT: "you repeatedly committed actions to gratify your lust" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**poured your lust out**

Some modern versions translate "poured your wealth out."

**the blood of your children that you gave to your idols**

This refers to killing children as a sacrifice to idols.

**behold!**

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**so they can see all your nakedness**

Stripping a person naked in front of others was an action intended to humiliate the person. The word “nakedness” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “so they can see you completely naked” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- lust
- idol, idolatrous
- blood
- children, child
- love, loves, loving, loved

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:38-39****UDB:**

<sup>38</sup> I will punish you like women who commit adultery and who murder people are punished. I will get revenge on you and get rid of you because I am extremely angry with you. <sup>39</sup> I will allow your enemies who you thought loved you break apart your high places of idol worship and pagan altars. They will strip you naked and keep your clothes and jewelry, and abandon you with nothing to cover yourself with.

**ULB:**

<sup>38</sup> For I will punish you for adultery and the shedding of blood, and I will bring on you the bloodshed of my anger and passion. <sup>39</sup> I will give you into their hands so they will throw down your vaulted chamber and break down your high places and they will strip you of your clothes and take all of your jewelry. They will leave you naked and bare.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**the shedding of blood**

This phrase represents murder in any form. AT: “murder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will bring on you the bloodshed of my anger and passion**

Here “bloodshed” represents murder in any form. Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh speaks of punishing her for murder as if he were bringing bloodshed upon her. AT: “In my anger and passion, I will punish you for committing murder” or 2) Yahweh speaks of putting her to death as if he were bringing bloodshed upon her. AT: “In my anger and passion, I will shed your blood” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**I will give you into their hands**

Here “hands” represents power or control. AT: “I will place you in their control” or “I will allow them to have power over you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**throw down your vaulted chamber**

Possible meanings are that they will destroy 1) the place where she worshiped her idols or 2) the place where she practiced her prostitution. See how you translated “vaulted chamber” in [Ezekiel 16:24](#).

**naked and bare**

These two words mean the same thing. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 16:7](#). AT: “completely naked” (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [punish, punishment](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [high places](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:40-42****UDB:**

<sup>40</sup> They will bring a mob to attack you, and that mob will throw stones at you and cut you to pieces with their swords. <sup>41</sup> They will burn down your houses and punish you while many women are watching. I will let them do this so that you will learn a lesson for acting so adulterously and for paying people to sleep with you. <sup>42</sup> Then I will no longer be angry with you. I will stop being jealous because your punishment will satisfy me.

**ULB:**

<sup>40</sup> Then they will bring up a crowd against you and stone you with stones, and they will cut you apart with their swords. <sup>41</sup> They will burn your houses and will perform many acts of punishment on you in the sight of many women, for I will put a stop to your prostitution, and you will no longer pay your lovers. <sup>42</sup> Then I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you, for I will be satisfied, and will no longer be angry.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. He speaks about enemy soldiers as her lovers. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**will perform many acts of punishment on you**

The word “punishment” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “will punish you in many different ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**in the sight of many women**

“where many women can see” or “while many women watch”

**I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you**

The words “fury” and “anger” refer to the punishment that Yahweh inflicts because he is angry. The two phrases mean basically the same thing. AT: “I will stop punishing you because I will no longer be angry with you” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- stone, stones, stoning
- sword
- punish, punishment
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- angry, anger

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:43****UDB:**

<sup>43</sup> You have forgotten the wonderful things that I did for you in previous years. You have caused me to become extremely angry because of all the evil things that you have done. In addition to all the other detestable things that you did, you committed many sexual sins. So I Yahweh the Lord declare that I will punish you for doing those things.

**ULB:**

<sup>43</sup> Because you did not call to mind the days of your youth and have made me shake with anger because of all these things, therefore, behold! I myself will bring down on your own head the punishment for what you have done—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. Have you not added prostitution to all your other detestable practices?

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**call to mind**

This idiom means to remember. AT: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

**have made me shake with anger because of all these things**

Here “shake” refers to a physical response that a person has when he is extremely angry. As Jerusalem was doing these things, she did not think about what Yahweh had done when she was young.

**behold!**

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I myself will bring down on your own head the punishment for what you have done**

The idiom “bring ... on your own head” means that she will experience this punishment. See how you translated this idiom in [Ezekiel 11:21](#). AT: “I will cause you to suffer the punishment for your conduct” (See: [Idiom](#))



**translationWords**

- call, calls, calling, called
- mind
- angry, anger
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:44-45****UDB:**

<sup>44</sup> People who like to quote proverbs will quote this proverb about you: ‘Daughters behave like their mothers behave.’ <sup>45</sup> You are like your mother; it was as though she detested her husband and her children. You are like your sisters, who also despised their husbands and their children. It was as though your father belonged to the Amor people group and your mother belonged to the Heth people group.

**ULB:**

<sup>44</sup> Behold! Everyone who speaks proverbs concerning you will say, “As the mother is, so also is her daughter.” <sup>45</sup> You are the daughter of your mother, who detested her husband and her children, and you are the sister of your sisters who detested their husbands and their children. Your mother was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**Behold!**

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**who detested her husband**

“who hated her husband”

**Your mother was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite**

The Amorites and Hittites were both pagan people groups who lived in the land before the people of Israel conquered it. Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s father and mother belonging to these people groups to express that she was born into idolatry. See how you translated these phrases in [Ezekiel 16:3](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [proverb](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Amorite](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:46****UDB:**

<sup>46</sup> And it was as though your older sister was Samaria, and she and her daughters lived to the north of you, and it was as though your younger sister was Sodom, and her daughters lived to the south of you.

**ULB:**

<sup>46</sup> Your older sister was Samaria and her daughters were the ones living in the north, while your younger sister was the one living south of you, that is, Sodom and her daughters.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**Your older sister was Samaria ... your younger sister was the one living south of you, that is, Sodom**

Samaria and Sodom were both cities that Yahweh had judged for their idolatry and wickedness. Yahweh speaks of these cities being Jerusalem's sisters to express that she belonged to a family that practiced idolatry and wickedness. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [sister](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [Sodom](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:47-48****UDB:**

<sup>47</sup> You not only imitated all their detestable behavior, but you quickly became more sinful than they were. <sup>48</sup> I, Yahweh the Lord, solemnly declare that as surely as I am alive, the people who lived in Sodom and other nearby cities never did the detestable things that you people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah have done.

**ULB:**

<sup>47</sup> You not only walked in their ways and copied their behavior and practices, but in all your ways you have been worse than they were. <sup>48</sup> As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—your sister Sodom and her daughters, have not done as much evil as you and your daughters have done.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**You not only walked in their ways**

The way a person lives is spoken of as if the person were walking on a path. AT: “You not only acted like them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**copied their behavior and practices**

Here the words “behavior” and “practices” mean basically the same thing. AT: “copied the things that they did” (See: [Doublet](#))

**As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

- [Sodom](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:49-50****UDB:**

<sup>49</sup> These are the sins of the people who lived in Sodom, who were like your sister people among them: they were prideful and did not think they would ever be punished. They ignored poor and hurting people around them. <sup>50</sup> The people of Sodom and nearby cities were proud and did detestable things in my presence, so I got rid of them when I saw what they had been doing.

**ULB:**

<sup>49</sup> Behold! This was the sin of your sister Sodom that she was arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned about anything. She did not strengthen the hands of the poor and needy people. <sup>50</sup> She was arrogant and committed disgusting actions before me, so I took them away just as you have seen.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned about anything**

Yahweh describes Sodom as a rich woman who has more than enough food and lives in security. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**She did not strengthen the hands of the poor and needy people**

Here the word “hands” represents the people who work with their hands. The words “poor” and “needy” emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. AT: “She did not help the people who could not help themselves” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [arrogant](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 16:51-52****UDB:**

<sup>51</sup> Also, the people of Samaria did not commit half as many sins as you commit. You have done more disgusting things than they have done. You cause the people of Samaria to appear to be good, compared to you. <sup>52</sup> Your sins are worse than their sins, so they seem to be less wicked than you are. So I will punish you more than I punished them. As a result, you will be ashamed and disgraced.

**ULB:**

<sup>51</sup> Neither did Samaria commit even half of your sins; instead, you have done many more disgusting things than they did, and you have shown that your sisters were better than you because of all the disgusting things that you do! <sup>52</sup> Especially you, show your own shame; in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you, because of the sins you committed in all those disgusting ways. Your sisters now seem better than you. Especially you, show your own shame, for in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**you have shown that your sisters were better than you**

Yahweh uses this phrase three times to emphasize that the wicked cities of Samaria and Sodom were more righteous than Jerusalem.

**Especially you, show your own shame**

Yahweh uses this phrase twice to emphasize how shamefully the people of Jerusalem have acted.

**show your own shame**

“be ashamed” or “bear your disgrace”

**translationWords**

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:53-55****UDB:**

<sup>53</sup> However, some day I will cause the people of Sodom and Samaria and the cities near to them to prosper again. And I will cause you to prosper again, too. <sup>54</sup> You will be very ashamed of the wicked things that you have done, and that will cause the people of those cities to be encouraged.

<sup>55</sup> The people of Sodom and Samaria will prosper again, and you and the people in nearby cities will prosper also.

**ULB:**

<sup>53</sup> For I will restore their fortunes—the fortunes of Sodom and her daughters, and the fortunes of Samaria and her daughters; but your fortunes will be among them. <sup>54</sup> On account of these things you will show your shame; you will be humiliated because of everything that you have done, and in this way you will be a comfort to them. <sup>55</sup> So your sister Sodom and her daughters will be restored to their former condition, and Samaria and her daughters will be restored to their former estate. Then you and your daughters will be restored to your former condition.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**fortunes**

“wealth”

**you will show your shame**

“you will be ashamed” or “you will bear your disgrace”

**you will be humiliated**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will humiliate you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you will be a comfort to them**

The noun “comfort” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “you will comfort Sodom and Samaria” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**your sister Sodom and her daughters will be restored to their former condition**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will restore your sister Sodom and her daughters to their former condition” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Samaria and her daughters will be restored to their former estate**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will restore your sister Samaria and her daughters to their former estate” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**estate**

“condition”

**you and your daughters will be restored to your former condition**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will restore you and your daughters to your former condition” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [humiliate, humiliation](#)
- [comfort, comforter](#)
- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:56-58****UDB:**

<sup>56</sup> You sneered at the people of Sodom when you were proud, <sup>57</sup> before it was revealed that you were more wicked than she was. And now the people of Edom and the people of Philistia all insult you and despise you. <sup>58</sup> And you are being punished for all your immoral behavior and other detestable things that you do. This is what Yahweh is saying to you!

**ULB:**

<sup>56</sup> Sodom your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth in the days when you were proud, <sup>57</sup> before your wickedness was revealed. But now you are an object of scorn to the daughters of Edom and to all the daughters of the Philistines around her. People all about despise you. <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies and modern versions have , that is, Syria. <sup>58</sup> You will show your shame and your disgusting actions!—this is Yahweh’s declaration!

---

16:57 <sup>[1]</sup>Instead of *Edom Aram*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**Sodom your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth**

Here the word “mouth” represents the person who speaks. This can be stated in active form. AT: “You did not even mention your sister Sodom” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**before your wickedness was revealed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “before you revealed your wickedness” or “before I revealed your wickedness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you are an object of scorn**

This refers to Jerusalem as something people talk badly about.

**the daughters of Edom and to all the daughters of the Philistines**

Here Yahweh speaks of the cities of Edom and Philistia as if they were the daughters of Edom and of the Philistines. The cities represent the people who live there. AT: “the Edomite people and to all the Philistine people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**despise**

“hate”

**this is Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [Sodom](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 16:59

### UDB:

<sup>59</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will continue to punish you like you deserve to be punished, because by rejecting the agreement that I made with you, you have despised that solemn agreement that you promised to obey.

### ULB:

<sup>59</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: I will deal with you as you deserve, you who have despised your oath by breaking the covenant.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### despised your oath by breaking the covenant

Jerusalem broke her marriage covenant with Yahweh, thereby showing that she did not care about the oaths that she had made to him. AT: “despised your oath to me by breaking the covenant that you made with me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### translationWords

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 16:60-61****UDB:**

<sup>60</sup> But I will not forget the agreement that I made with you long ago and I will make an agreement with you that will endure forever. <sup>61</sup> Then you will think about what you have done, and you will be ashamed about those things when you welcome the people of Sodom and Samaria, cities which are like your daughters, but they will not have the same agreement that I will make with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>60</sup> But I myself will call to mind my covenant with you made in the days of your youth, and I will establish an everlasting covenant with you. <sup>61</sup> Then you will call to mind your ways and be ashamed when you receive your older sisters and your younger sisters. I will give them to you as daughters, but not because of your covenant.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**call to mind**

This idiom means to remember. AT: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

**made in the days of your youth**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I made with you when you were young” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 16:62-63****UDB:**

<sup>62</sup> I will establish my agreement with you, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do. <sup>63</sup> Then when I have forgiven you for all your sins, you will think about all the sins that you committed and you will be ashamed. You will never again boast about them, because you will be humiliated.” I, the Lord Yahweh, have said so! This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**ULB:**

<sup>62</sup> I myself will establish my covenant with you, and you will know that I am Yahweh. <sup>63</sup> Because of these things, you will call everything to mind and be ashamed, so you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame, when I have forgiven you for all that you have done—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**call everything to mind**

This idiom means to remember. AT: “remember everything” (See: [Idiom](#))

**you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame**

This means that Jerusalem will be too ashamed to speak.

**translationWords**

- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 16 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 17 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Breaking allegiance**

The king of Judah had vowed to obey Babylon but instead he followed Egypt. Therefore, God said he would not prosper. (See: [vow](#), [vows](#), [vowed](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Judah is compared to a vine that grows one direction and then another. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 17:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 17:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, tell this story as an illustration to the people of Israel. <sup>3</sup> Say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: A huge eagle that had strong wings and long beautiful feathers of many colors flew to Lebanon. It grasped the top of a cedar tree <sup>4</sup> and broke it off. Then the eagle carried it away to Canaan, a country that had many merchants, and planted it in one of the cities there.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, present a riddle and speak a parable to the house of Israel. <sup>3</sup> Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this:

A large eagle with large wings and long pinions, full of feathers,  
and that was multicolored went to Lebanon and took hold of the top of a cedar tree.

<sup>4</sup> It broke off the tips of the branches and took them to the land of Canaan;  
he planted it in a city of merchants.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel reports a message that God gives him.

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**present a riddle and speak a parable**

"give them a puzzle to think about" or "tell this story as an illustration"

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**long pinions, full of feathers**

“the ends of its wings were long and full of feathers.” The word “pinion” means the outer end of the wings.

**that was multicolored**

The eagle’s feathers were many different colors.

**It broke off the tips of the branches**

“It broke off the highest part of the tree”

**took them**

“took the top of the tree” or “took the branches”

**he planted it in a city of merchants**

“he planted it in a city that had many merchants.” A merchant is a person who sells things.

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [parable, parables](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then that eagle took a seedling from your country and planted it in a fertile field. He planted it like people plant a willow tree, alongside a stream that had plenty of water. <sup>6</sup> It grew and became a low grapevine that spread along the ground. Its branches turned up toward the eagle, but its roots grew down into the ground. So it became a good vine and produced lots of branches and leaves.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> He also took some seed of the land and planted it in fertile soil.

He placed it beside a large body of water like a willow.

<sup>6</sup> Then it sprouted and became a spreading vine low to the ground.

Its branches turned toward him, and its roots grew under it.

So it became a vine and produced branches and sent out shoots.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This is a continuation of the parable about the eagle.

**He also took**

The word “he” is the eagle in the parable.

**fertile soil**

“good ground”

**He placed it beside a large body of water**

“the eagle planted the seed in a place where there was a lot of water”

**planted it ... like a willow**

Willow trees grow in places where there is a lot of water. If the eagle planted the seed like a willow, it means that he planted it in a place with a lot of water. AT: “and planted the seed like one would plant a willow tree by water” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Then it sprouted**

“Then the seed began to grow into a plant”

**a spreading vine low to the ground**

“a vine that spreads out on the ground”

**Its branches turned toward him**

The branches of the vine turned toward the eagle. This means that they began to grow upward towards the sky.

**its roots grew under it**

Possible meanings are 1) “its roots grew under itself into the ground” or “the roots of the vine grew under the eagle.”

**So it became a vine**

“That is how the vine grew”

**produced branches and sent out shoots**

“grew branches and spread its shoots”

**translationWords**

- [seed, semen](#)
- [vine](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> But there was another huge eagle that had strong wings and beautiful feathers. And some of the roots of the vine grew toward that eagle, and its branches also turned toward it, hoping that the eagle would bring more water to it. <sup>8</sup> That happened in spite of the fact that the vine had been planted in good soil, where there was plenty of water, with the result that it had produced branches and produced grapes and had become a very healthy vine.'

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> But there was another great eagle with large wings and many feathers.

Behold! This vine turned its roots toward the eagle,

and it spread out its branches toward the eagle from the place it had been planted so it would be watered.

<sup>8</sup> It had been planted in good soil beside a large body of water

so it would produce branches and sprout fruit, to become a magnificent vine.'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The introductory "but" shows that a different eagle is being described other than the one before.

**another great eagle**

"another large eagle"

**Behold!**

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**This vine turned its roots toward the eagle**

Yahweh speaks of the vine as if it were able to behave like a person and intentionally turned its roots toward the other eagle to receive nourishment from it. AT: "The roots of the vine grew toward the eagle" (See: [Personification](#))

**from the place it had been planted so it would be watered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "from the place that the first eagle had planted it so that it would have water" (See: [Active or Passive](#))



### **It had been planted**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The first eagle had planted the vine” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **translationWords**

- [vine](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then after you have told that to the people, say to them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: That vine will certainly not remain healthy. It will be pulled up by its roots by the eagle that planted it, and all its fruit will be stripped off and its leaves will wither. And it will not need someone with strong arms or many people to pull it out by its roots. <sup>10</sup> Even if that vine is transplanted, it certainly will not continue to grow. When the hot wind from the east blows against it, it will completely wither, there where it was planted!'"

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Say to the people, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Will it prosper?

Will it not be uprooted and stripped of its fruit so that it withers, and all its fresh growth will wither?

No strong arm or many people will be needed to pull it out by its roots.

<sup>10</sup> So behold! After it has been planted, will it grow? Will it not wither when the eastern wind touches it?

It will completely wither away in the garden plot where it sprouted."

**translationNotes****Will it prosper?**

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "It will not prosper." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Will it not be uprooted and stripped of its fruit so that it withers, and all its fresh growth will wither?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the vine will certainly be judged. The question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. AT: "Someone will pull up its roots and pluck out its fruit so all of its growth of leaves will wither away." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**No strong arm or many people will be needed to pull it out**

The phrase "strong arm" represents a strong person. This can be stated in active form. AT: "There will be no need for a strong person or many people to pull it out" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**behold**

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**will it grow?**

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to emphasize the negative answer. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: “It will not grow.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Will it not wither when the eastern wind touches it?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that this will certainly happen. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “It will wither when the eastern wind touches it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).

**when the eastern wind touches it**

“when the eastern wind blows on it”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh gave this message to me: <sup>12</sup> "Ask these rebellious Israelite people, 'Do you know what this parable means?' Tell them that it signifies that the king of Babylon went to Jerusalem with his army and captured the king of Judah and his officials, and took them back to Babylon.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>12</sup> "Speak to the rebellious house, 'Do you not know what these things mean? Behold! The king of Babylon came to Jerusalem and took her king and her princes and brought them to him in Babylon.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the rebellious house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: "the rebellious people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Do you not know what these things mean?**

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to provide the answer. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: "This is what these things mean." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Behold**

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**her king and her princes**

The word "her" refers to Jerusalem.

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- house
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- prince, princess

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then he took one of the king's close relatives, appointed one of them as king, and made an agreement with him, forcing him to solemnly promise to remain loyal. The king of Babylon also took to Babylon the other important citizens of Judah, <sup>14</sup> in order that the kingdom of Judah would not be able to become powerful again. The king of Babylon intended that the kingdom of Judah would not continue to exist if the people did not obey that agreement that he made with the king of Babylon.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then he took a royal descendant, made a covenant with him, and brought him under an oath. He took away the powerful people of the land, <sup>14</sup> so the kingdom might become lowly and not lift itself up. By keeping his covenant the land will survive.

**translationNotes****brought him under an oath**

“made him swear an oath”

**so the kingdom might become lowly and not lift itself up**

The kingdom being small and weak is spoken of as if it were lowly and being large and powerful as if it lifted itself up. AT: “so the kingdom might remain small and not become great” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the land will survive**

Here the word “land” represents the kingdom of Judah and the people in it. AT: “the kingdom will continue to exist” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- royal
- descendant, descended from
- covenant, covenants
- oath, swear, swear by
- power, powers
- kingdom
- lowly, lowliness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> The king of Judah rebelled against the king of Babylon by sending officials to Egypt to request from them horses and a large army to fight against the army of Babylonia. But the king of Judah will certainly not be successful. Rulers who rebel like that and refuse to obey solemn agreements will never escape.

<sup>16</sup> I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, the king of Judah will die in Babylon, in the city where the king of Babylon appointed him to be the king of Judah. He will die because he despised the solemn agreement and refused to do what he promised to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> But the king of Jerusalem rebelled against him by sending his ambassadors to Egypt to acquire horses and an army. Will he succeed? Will the one doing these things escape? If he breaks the covenant, will he escape? <sup>16</sup> As I live!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—he will surely die in the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he broke. He will die in the middle of Babylon.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks about the king of Jerusalem rebelling against the king of Babylon.

**Will he succeed?**

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: “He will certainly not succeed.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Will the one doing these things escape?**

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This may be translated as a statement. AT: “The one doing these things will not escape.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**If he breaks the covenant, will he escape?**

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: “If he breaks the covenant, he will certainly not escape.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))



**As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised**

“the land of the king of Babylon who made him King of Judah, the king of Babylon whose oath he despised”

**translationWords**

- [king](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [ambassador, representative](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [horse](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> The king of Egypt with all his very huge army will not be able to help the king of Judah: The soldiers from Babylonia will build ramps up against the city walls and set up devices to batter the walls. They will enter Jerusalem and kill many of its people. <sup>18</sup> The king of Judah despised the solemn agreement by disregarding the treaty. Although he had solemnly promised to be under the control of the king of Babylon, he sent officials to request help from Egypt. Therefore he will not escape being punished by the king of Babylon.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Pharaoh with his mighty army and a great company of men will not help him in battle, when ramps are constructed and siege walls are built up to cut off many lives. <sup>18</sup> For the king despised his oath by breaking the covenant. Behold, he reached out with his hand to make a promise and yet he did all these things. He will not escape.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaking about the king of Jerusalem.

**his mighty army and a great company of men**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how large and strong Pharaoh's army is. (See: [Doublet](#))

**will not help him**

Here the word "him" refers to the king of Judah.

**siege walls**

this refers to a tower with ladders that can be placed next to a wall and allow soldiers to get over the wall and into the city.

**to cut off many lives**

"to kill many people"

**Behold**

"Indeed." The word "behold" adds emphasis to what follows.

**reached out with his hand to make a promise**

This refers to taking hold of another person's hand as a sign of friendship and agreement. Here it represents the covenant oath that he made with the king of Babylon. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**translationWords**

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [king](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Just as surely as I am alive, I will cause the king of Judah to be punished for ignoring the solemn agreement that he made with the king of Babylon and then refusing to obey it, since this violates what I expect. <sup>20</sup> It will be as though I will spread a net to capture him, and he will be caught in it. He will be captured and taken to Babylon and punished because he rebelled against me. <sup>21</sup> Most of his soldiers who try to escape will be killed by their enemies' swords, and those who survive will be scattered in all directions. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: As I live, was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke? So I will bring his punishment on his head! <sup>20</sup> I will spread my net out over him, and he will be caught in my hunting net. Then I will bring him to Babylon and execute judgment on him there for his treason that he committed when he betrayed me! <sup>21</sup> All of his refugees in his armies will fall by the sword, and the ones who remain will be scattered in every direction. Then you will know that I am Yahweh; I have declared this would happen."

**translationNotes****was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke?**

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the affirmative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "it was my oath that the king of Jerusalem despised and my covenant that he broke." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).

**I will bring his punishment on his head**

The idiom "bring ... on his head" means that he will experience this punishment. See how you translated this idiom in [Ezekiel 11:21](#). AT: "I will cause him to suffer his punishment" (See: [Idiom](#))

**I will spread my net out over him, and he will be caught in my hunting net**

Yahweh speaks of enabling the enemy army to capture the king as if he were trapping the king in a net. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he will be caught in my hunting net**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "I will catch him in my hunting net" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**All of his refugees ... armies will fall by the sword**

The word “fall” is a euphemism for “die.” Here the word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people with swords. AT: “Soldiers will kill all his refugees ... armies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the ones who remain will be scattered in every direction**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the ones who remain alive will flee in every direction” or “the enemy soldiers will scatter in every directions the ones who remain alive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [betray, betrayer](#)
- [sword](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 17:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "It will be as though I will take a shoot from the top of a very tall cedar tree and plant it in another place. I will plant it on a very high mountain. <sup>23</sup> It will be as though I will plant it on a mountain in Israel, and it will grow and become a beautiful cedar tree. Many kinds of birds will make their nests in the tree, and they will have shade in its branches.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, 'So I myself will take away the highest part of the cedar tree, and I will plant it away from its tender branches. I will break it off, and I myself will plant it on a high mountain. <sup>23</sup> I will plant it on the mountains of Israel so it will bear branches and produce fruit, and it will become a majestic cedar so that every winged bird will live under it. They will nest in the shade of its branches.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh resumes the parable that he had told in [Ezekiel 17:1](#) and speaks about Jerusalem as if it were a branch that he plants on the mountains of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### bear branches

"grow new branches"

### translationWords

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [majesty](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 17:24****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> And it will be as though all the trees in the field will know that I, Yahweh, get rid of tall trees and will make little ones grow. I cause big green trees to wither, and I cause dry trees to become green. I, Yahweh have said this, and I will certainly do what I have said that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh. I bring down the high trees and I raise up the low trees. I wither the watered tree and I cause the dried tree to bloom. I am Yahweh, I have declared that this will happen; and I have done it.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a branch that he plants on the mountains of Israel and of other nations as if they were other trees. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh**

Yahweh speaks of trees as if they are people who can know about him. The trees represent the nations and the people who live in them. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**I bring down the high trees and I raise up the low trees**

“I cut down the tall trees and I cause the little trees to grow”

**wither**

when a plant dries up and dies.

**translationWords**

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 17 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 18 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Inherited Guilt**

God does not punish children for the sins of their parents, but only punishes them for their own sins. Despite this, the parents' sins may still have consequences for their children. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 18:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 18:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "You people quote this proverb and say that it is about Israel:

'Parents eat sour grapes,

but it is their children who have a very sour taste in their mouths.'

This means that you think that you must suffer for the sins that your ancestors committed.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me again, saying, <sup>2</sup> "What do you mean, you who use this proverb concerning the land of Israel and say,

'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt'?

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came to me again**

The phrase "the word of Yahweh came" is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: "Yahweh spoke to me again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**What do you mean, you who use this proverb ... 'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt'?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel something he already knows. The question is a rebuke for the people who use the proverb. AT: "The people in the land of Israel have this proverb ... 'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt'." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**What do you mean, you who use this proverb**

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**land of Israel**

This refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt**

This proverb means that children experience the consequences of their parents' actions. (See: [Proverbs](#))

**the children's teeth are made blunt**

The idiom “teeth are made blunt” refers to the sour taste in one’s mouth that is a result of eating unripe or sour fruit. AT: “the children get a sour taste in their mouths” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [proverb](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [grape](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> But I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, you Israelite people will no longer say this proverb. <sup>4</sup> Everyone who is alive belongs to me. That includes children and their parents; they all belong to me. And it is those who sin who will die because of their sins.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—there will certainly no longer be any occasion for you to use this proverb in Israel. <sup>4</sup> Behold! Every life belong to me—the life of the father as well as the life of the son, they belong to me! The soul who sins is the one who will die!

**translationNotes****As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**The soul who sins**

Here the word “soul” represents the person. AT: “The person who sins” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [proverb](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

- ancestor, father, forefather
- son, sons
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- death, die, dead

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:5-6****UDB:**

- <sup>5</sup> So suppose that there is a righteous person,  
one who always does what is fair and right.
- <sup>6</sup> He does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops;  
he does not request help from idols as the rest of Israel has been doing.  
He does not sleep with someone else's wife  
or with a woman during her monthly menstrual period.

**ULB:**

- <sup>5</sup> What can be said about a man who is righteous and who carries out justice and righteousness—  
<sup>6</sup> if he does not eat upon the mountains or lift up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, and he does not defile his neighbor's wife, nor approached a woman during her monthly period, is he a righteous man?

**translationNotes****he does not eat upon the mountains**

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has not participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. AT: "he does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the mountains" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lift up his eyes to the idols**

The idiom "lift up his eyes" refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. AT: "worship the idols" or "pray to the idols" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**approached a woman during her monthly period**

It is implicit that he has not approached a woman in order to sleep with her. AT: "approached a woman to sleep with her during her monthly period" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [house](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> He does not mistreat people;

if a person borrows money from him and gives him something to guarantee that he will pay the money back, this man always gives it back to that person before the sun goes down.

He does not rob people.

He gives food to hungry people.

He gives clothing to people who need clothes.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> What can be said about a man who does not oppress anyone, and he gives back to the debtor what was put up as security for a loan, and he does not commit theft but gives his food to the hungry and he covers the naked with clothes, is he a righteous man?

**translationNotes****gives back to the debtor what was put up as security for a loan**

“returns to the debtor the item that the debtor gave him as security for the loan”

**translationWords**

- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [pledge](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 18:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> When he lends money to people,  
he does not do it to make him pay interest.

He does not do things that are evil.

He always decides things fairly.

<sup>9</sup> He faithfully obeys all my laws.

That man is truly righteous;  
he will remain alive.

That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, promise.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> What can be said about a man who does not charge too much interest for the money he loans, and he does not take too much profit for what he sells? It is said of him that he carries out justice and establishes faithfulness between people. <sup>9</sup> If that man walks in my statutes and keeps my decrees to act faithfully, then the promise for this righteous man is this: He will surely live!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to describe the actions of the righteous man.

**interest**

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

**establishes faithfulness between people**

This means that he judges fairly the disputes that may arise between people.

**that man walks in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path in which the person walks. AT: “that man obeys my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- profit, profitable
- just, justice, justly
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- statute, statutes
- righteous, righteousness
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> But suppose that man has a son who acts violently, who murders people and does any of these other things, even though his father has not done any of them.

<sup>11</sup> He eats meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops.

He sleeps with other people's wives.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> But suppose that he has a violent son who sheds blood and does any one of these things that were mentioned, <sup>[1]</sup> <sup>11</sup> (though his father has not done any of these things). He eats upon the mountains and he defiles his neighbor's wife, what can be said about him?

---

18:10 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient copies and many modern versions leave out *to a brother*

**translationNotes****who sheds blood**

This phrase represents murder in any form. AT: "who murders" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**any one of these things**

This refers to the sinful actions that Yahweh had mentioned beginning in [Ezekiel 18:5](#).

**eats upon the mountains**

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:5](#). AT: "eats meat sacrificed to idols upon the mountains" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [son, sons](#)
- [blood](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> He mistreats poor and needy people.

He robs people.

If someone gives him something to guarantee that he will pay back money that he has borrowed, the unrighteous man never gives it back to him before the sun goes down.

He seeks help from idols.

He does other disgusting things.

<sup>13</sup> When he lends money, he charges interest.

If you think that I will keep such a person alive, you are certainly wrong. Because he has done all those detestable things, I will certainly make him die, and it will be his own fault.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> This man oppresses the poor and needy, and he seizes and robs, and he does not return a pledge, and he lifts up his eyes to the idols and commits disgusting actions, <sup>13</sup> and he lends out money at too high interest and he makes too much profit on what he sells, should that man live? Surely he will not! He will certainly die and his blood will be on him because he has done all these detestable things.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about the violent son.

**the poor and needy**

The words “poor” and “needy” share similar meanings and emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. (See: [Doublet](#))

**he lifts up his eyes to the idols**

The idiom “lifts up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:6](#). AT: “he worships the idols” or “he prays to the idols” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**interest**

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

**should that man live? Surely he will not!**

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to emphasize the negative answer. AT: “he will certainly not live!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**his blood will be on him**

Here the word “blood” represents death. For blood to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that death. AT: “he will be responsible for his own death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [seize](#)
- [pledge](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [blood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> But suppose that man has a son who sees all the sins that his father commits, but he himself does not do those things.

<sup>15</sup> The son does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the hilltops.

He does not request help from idols.

He does not sleep with other people's wives.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> But behold! Suppose there is a man who bears a son, and his son sees all the sins that his father has committed, and though he sees them, he does not do those things. <sup>15</sup> That son does not eat upon the mountains, and he does not lift up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, and he does not defile his neighbor's wife, what can be said about him?

**translationNotes****behold!**

The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows.

**That son does not eat upon the mountains**

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has not participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:6](#). AT: "That son does not eat meat sacrificed to idols upon the mountains" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he does not lift up his eyes to the idols**

The idiom "lifted up his eyes" refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:6](#). AT: "he does not worship the idols" or "he does not pray to the idols" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 18:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> He does not mistreat people.

If he lends money to someone, he does not require that person to give him something to guarantee that he will pay the money back.

He does not rob anyone.

He gives food to those who need it.

He gives clothes to those who need clothes.

<sup>17</sup> He does not commit sins, unlike his father,  
and does not charge interest when he lends money.

He faithfully obeys all my laws.

I will make sure that that person does not die for his father's sins; he will certainly stay alive.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> That son does not oppress anyone, or seize a pledge, or take stolen things, but instead gives his food to the hungry and covers up the naked with clothes. <sup>17</sup> That son does not oppress anyone or take interest that is too high or make too much profit for a loan, but he carries out my decrees and walks according to my statutes; that son will not die for his father's sin: He will surely live!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak about the son who does not commit the same sins as his father.

**interest**

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret "interest" in this passage as "too much interest."

**walks according to my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if his statutes were a path in which the person walks. AT: "obeys my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- seize
- pledge
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- profit, profitable
- decree
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- statute, statutes
- death, die, dead
- ancestor, father, forefather
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:18****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> But I will ensure that his father will die for the sins that he committed, because the father cheated and robbed people, and did other things that are evil.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> His father, since he oppressed others by extortion and robbed his brother, and did what is not good among his people—behold, he will die in his iniquity.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks about the son's father who has not obeyed God's law.

**extortion**

to take something from someone else by using threats or force.

**robbed his brother**

“robbed his fellow Israelite”

**behold**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**in his iniquity**

“because of his iniquity”

**translationWords**

- ancestor, father, forefather
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- brother, brothers
- death, die, dead
- iniquity, iniquities

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> If you ask, ‘Why should the man’s son not suffer for the evil things that his father did?’, I will answer that the son has done what is fair and right and has obeyed all my laws, so he will surely remain alive. <sup>20</sup> It is those who sin who will die because of their sins. I will not punish people because their parents have sinned, or because their children have sinned. I will reward people who live rightly, and I will punish the wicked people, those who live wrongly.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> But you say, ‘Why does the son not bear the iniquity of his father?’ Because the son carries out justice and righteousness and keeps all my statutes; he does them. He will surely live! <sup>20</sup> The one who sins, he is the one who will die. A son will not bear his father’s iniquity, and a father will not bear his son’s iniquity. The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself, and the wickedness of the wicked will be on himself.

**translationNotes****Why does the son not bear the iniquity of his father?**

Yahweh speaks of a person being responsible for or guilty of iniquity as if the iniquity were an object that the person carries. AT: “Why is the son not responsible for the iniquity of his father?” or “Why is the son not guilty of the iniquity of his father?” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself**

For righteousness to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that righteousness. AT: “The one who acts rightly will be responsible for his own righteousness” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the wickedness of the wicked will be on himself**

For wickedness to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that wickedness. AT: “the wicked person will be responsible for his own wickedness” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [son, sons](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)

- statute, statutes
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- death, die, dead
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> But if a wicked person stops doing all the evil things that he did previously, and if he starts to obey faithfully all my laws, and if he does what is fair and right, he will surely remain alive; I will not kill him. <sup>22</sup> I will not punish him for the sins he committed previously. Because of the good things that he has done since that time, I will allow him to stay alive.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> But if the wicked turns away from all his sins that he has done, and keeps all my statutes and performs justice and righteousness, then he will certainly live and not die. <sup>22</sup> All the transgressions that he has committed will not be called to mind against him. He will live by the righteousness that he practices.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaking of the wicked person who changes and does what is righteous.

**All the transgressions that he has committed will not be called to mind against him**

The idiom “call to mind” means to remember. This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will not remember all the transgressions that he has committed and will not hold them against him” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**by the righteousness that he practices**

“because of the righteous things he has done”

**translationWords**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- turn, turn away, turn back
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- statute, statutes
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- transgress, transgresses, transgression

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 18:23****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that I certainly am not happy about wicked people dying. Instead, I am happy when they stop doing wicked things and remain alive as a result.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Do I greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—and not in his turning away from his way so that he may live?

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks about his desire for wicked people.

**Do I greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked ... and not in his turning away from his way so that he may live?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question in order to emphasize the opposite. AT: “I do not greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked ... but I do greatly rejoice if he turns away from his way so that he may live.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**not in his turning away from his way**

Yahweh speaks of a person’s lifestyle or behavior as if it were a way on which the person walks. The idiom “to turn away” from something means to stop doing that thing. AT: “not in his ceasing to live the way that he lives” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [rejoice](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

- declare, declaration
- turn, turn away, turn back
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:24****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> But if a righteous person stops doing right things and starts to commit sins and does the same disgusting things that wicked people do, I will certainly not allow him to remain alive. I will not think about the righteous things that he did previously. Because he did not faithfully do what pleases me, and because of all the sins that he has committed, he will certainly die.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> But if the righteous person turns away from his righteousness and commits iniquity and practices abominations like all the abominations that the wicked person does, then will he live? All the righteousness that he had done will not be called to mind when he betrays me in his treason. So he will die in the sins that he committed.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh gives an example of a man who turns from righteousness to wickedness.

**then will he live?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the negative answer. AT: “then he will surely not live.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**All the righteousness that he had done will not be called to mind**

The idiom “call to mind” means to remember. This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will not remember all the righteousness that he had done” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**treason**

crime done against a country or against God, by someone who is expected to be loyal

**he will die in the sins**

“he will die because of the sins”

### translationWords

- righteous, righteousness
- turn, turn away, turn back
- iniquity, iniquities
- abomination, abominable
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- betray, betrayer
- death, die, dead
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> But you say that I, Yahweh, do not act fairly. You Israelite people, listen to what I say: It is certainly not what I do that is unfair; it is what you continually do that is not fair. <sup>26</sup> If a righteous person turns away from doing what is right and commits sins, he will die for committing those sins.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> But you say, 'The way of the Lord is not fair!' Listen, house of Israel! Are my ways unfair? Is it not your ways that are unfair? <sup>26</sup> When the righteous man turns away from his righteousness, and commits iniquity and dies because of them, then he will die in the iniquity that he has done.

**translationNotes****house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Are my ways unfair?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the negative answer. AT: "My ways are not unfair." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Is it not your ways that are unfair?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the positive answer. AT: "It is your ways that are unfair." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**dies because of them ... die in the iniquity that he has done**

These phrases repeat the thought of a man dying because of his sin to express that it was his fault and the fault of no one else. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:27-28****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> But if a wicked person turns away from doing wicked things and does what is just and right, he will save himself from dying. <sup>28</sup> Because he has thought about all the evil things that he did and has turned away from doing them, I will certainly allow him to live. I will not kill him.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> But when a wicked man turns away from his wickedness that he has done and performs justice and righteousness, then he will preserve his life. <sup>28</sup> For he has seen and turned away from all the transgressions that he had done. He will surely live, and he will not die.

**translationNotes****he has seen**

Yahweh speaks of the person thinking about and understanding something as if the person were seeing it. AT: "he has considered" or "he has understood" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- transgress, transgresses, transgression
- death, die, dead

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:29-30****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> But you, the Israelites, say that I do not act fairly. You people of Israel, I always act fairly. It is you who are acting wickedly.

<sup>30</sup> Therefore, you Israelite people, I, Yahweh the Lord, will judge each of you according to what you have done. Repent! Turn away from all your wicked behavior! Then I will not destroy you because of the wrong things you have done.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> But the house of Israel says, ‘The way of the Lord is not fair!’ How is my way not fair, house of Israel? It is your ways that are not fair. <sup>30</sup> Therefore I will judge each man among you according to his ways, house of Israel!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. Repent and turn away from all your transgressions so that they will not be stumbling blocks of iniquity against you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to teach the people of Israel why his way is fair.

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The way of the Lord is not fair ... How is my way not fair ... It is your ways that are not fair**

Actions or behaviors are spoken of as if they were a way or path that a person travels. AT: “The Lord does not act fairly ... How do I not act fairly ... It is you who do not act fairly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**according to his ways**

Yahweh speaks of a person’s actions as if the person were walking along a path. AT: “according to his actions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**turn away from all your transgressions so that they will not be stumbling blocks of iniquity against you**

Yahweh speaks of “transgressions” causing people to rebel against him as if they were blocks over which the people stumble. (See: [Metaphor](#))



**stumbling blocks of iniquity against you**

Possible meanings are 1) the stumbling blocks cause the person to commit more iniquity. AT: “stumbling blocks that cause you to commit more iniquity” or 2) The word “iniquity” is a metonym for the punishment that a person receives for his iniquity. AT: “stumbling blocks that lead to your punishment” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 18:31-32****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> Stop doing wicked things; start thinking in a new way. You Israelite people, do you really want me to kill you because you have sinned? <sup>32</sup> I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that I am not pleased if you die. So turn away from your sins and stay alive!”

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> Throw away from yourselves all of the transgressions that you have committed; make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit. Why should you die, house of Israel? <sup>32</sup> For I have no delight in the death of the one who dies—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—so repent and live!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.

**Throw away from yourselves all of the transgressions that you have committed**

Yahweh speaks of the people determining to stop committing transgressions as if the transgressions were objects, such as clothing, that they removed and threw away. AT: “Get rid of all of the transgressions that you have committed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit**

Here the word “heart” represents the will and emotions and the word “spirit” represents the thoughts and disposition. Yahweh speaks of the people having new emotions and thoughts as if they were making a new heart and spirit for themselves. AT: “get for yourselves new emotions and a new way of thinking” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Why should you die, house of Israel?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to comfort the people of Israel. AT: “There is no reason for you to die, house of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 19 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Judah destroyed**

The first king was taken as a captive to Egypt, the next was taken as a captive to Babylon. Now Judah is not prospering.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

The kings of Judah are compared to man-eating lions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 19:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 19:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to me, <sup>2</sup> "Ezekiel, sing a sad funeral song which will be a parable about the leaders of Israel. Say to the Israelite people,

'It is as though your mother had been a brave female lion  
who raised her cubs among other lions.

<sup>3</sup> She taught one of them to hunt for other animals to kill,  
and he even learned to kill and eat people.

<sup>4</sup> When people from other nations heard about him,  
they trapped him in a pit.

Then they used hooks  
to drag him to Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> "Now you, take up a lamentation against the leaders of Israel <sup>2</sup> and say,

'Who was your mother? A lioness, she lived with a lion's son;  
in the midst of young lions, she nurtured her cubs.

<sup>3</sup> She is the one who raised up one of her cubs to become a young lion, a lion who learned to tear apart his victims, and then he devoured men.

<sup>4</sup> Then the nations heard about him. He was caught in their trap, and they brought him with hooks to the land of Egypt.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to the people of Israel. He tells a story where the nation of Israel is a lioness and some of the past kings in the kingdom of Judah are her cubs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**take up a lamentation**

This idiom means to sing a lamentation. AT: "sing a lamentation" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Who was your mother?**

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to introduce the answer. AT: "This is who your mother is." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### **lioness**

a female lion

### **He was caught in their trap**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They caught him in their trap" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **translationWords**

- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [lion](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [devour](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 19:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> His mother waited for him to return,  
but soon she stopped hoping for that to happen.

So she raised another cub  
who also became very fierce.

<sup>6</sup> He hunted along with other lions for animals to kill,  
and he even learned to kill and eat people.

<sup>7</sup> He mistreated his victims' widows,  
and he destroyed cities.

When he roared loudly,  
everyone was terrified and abandoned everything they owned.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then she saw that although she had waited for his return, her expectation was now gone, so she took another of her cubs and raised him to become a young lion.

<sup>6</sup> This young lion roamed about in the midst of lions. He was a young lion and learned to tear his victims; he devoured men.

<sup>7</sup> He seized their widows and ruined their cities.

The land and its fullness were abandoned because of the sound of his roaring. <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies and many modern versions have .

---

19:7 <sup>[1]</sup>Instead of *He seized their widows He destroyed their fortresses*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**He seized their widows**

“He seized the widows of the men whom he devoured”

### **The land and its fullness were abandoned**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “People abandoned the land and its fullness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **its fullness**

“everything in it”

### **translationWords**

- [hope, hoped, hopes](#)
- [lion](#)
- [devour](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 19:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> So people of other nations planned to kill him;  
and men came from many places  
to spread out a net for him.

They caught him in it.

<sup>9</sup> They pulled him with hooks in his flesh and put him into an iron cage,  
then they took him to the king of Babylon.

There they locked him up so that the sound of his voice  
could never be heard echoing on the hills of Israel.'

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> But the nations came against him from the surrounding provinces;  
they spread their nets over him. He was caught in their trap.

<sup>9</sup> With hooks they put him in a cage and then they brought him to the king of Babylon.

They brought him to the strongholds so that his voice would no longer be heard on the mountains of Israel.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**from the surrounding provinces**

“from the provinces surrounding the land of Israel”

**He was caught in their trap**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They caught him in their trap” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**his voice would no longer be heard**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “people would no longer hear his voice” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [nation](#)
- [province, provincial](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [voice](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 19:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> 'It is as though your mother  
were a grapevine fertilized in blood,  
and growing up beside a stream.

There was plenty of water,  
so it had lots of branches and produced a lot of grapes.

<sup>11</sup> That grapevine grew and became taller than all the nearby trees;  
everyone could see that it was very strong and healthy.

And those branches were good for making scepters that symbolize the power of a king.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Your mother was like a vine planted in your blood beside the water. <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies and many modern versions have .

it was fruitful and full of branches because of the abundance of water.

<sup>11</sup> It had strong branches that were used for rulers' scepters,  
and its size was exalted above the branches,  
and its height was seen by the greatness of its foliage.

---

19:10 <sup>[1]</sup>Instead of *in your blood in your vineyard*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks of the nation of Israel as though it was the mother of the leaders of Israel. Here he begins to tell a story where she is a prosperous vine. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a vine planted in your blood**

Possible meanings are that "blood" represents 1) the violence of the kings of Judah who had murdered people. AT: "a vine planted by means of violence" or 2) The plentiful wine of Judah which had become a symbol of prosperity. AT: "a vine planted in your prosperity" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Symbolic Language](#))

**strong branches that were used for rulers' scepters**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "branches strong enough that people used them for rulers' scepters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**its height was seen by the greatness of its foliage**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "people could see how tall it was by the greatness of its foliage" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [vine](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [scepter](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 19:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> But Yahweh became very angry,  
 so he pulled up the vine by its roots  
 and threw it on the ground,  
 where the very hot winds from the desert dried up all its fruit.  
 The strong branches wilted and were burned in a fire.  
<sup>13</sup> Now Yahweh has planted that vine in a hot, dry desert.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> But the vine was uprooted in fury and thrown down to the earth, and an eastern wind dried out its fruit.  
 Its strong branches were broken off and withered and fire consumed them.  
<sup>13</sup> So now it is planted in the wilderness, in a land of drought and thirst.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell a story in which the nation of Israel is a vine. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the vine was uprooted in fury and thrown down**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh uprooted the vine in fury and threw it down” or “people uprooted the vine in fury and threw it down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Its strong branches were broken off and withered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh broke off its strong branches and they withered” or “People broke off its strong branches and they withered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in a land of drought and thirst**

The very dry land is spoken of as if it were thirsty. AT: “in a very dry land of drought” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [fire](#)
- [consume](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 19:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> A fire started to burn its stem,  
and then started to burn the branches;  
it burned all the grapes.

Now not even one strong branch remains;  
they will never become scepters for a king.’

This funeral song must be sung very sadly.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> For fire went out from her large branches and consumed its fruit.

There is no strong branch on it, no scepter to rule.’ This is a lamentation and will be sung as a lamentation.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell a story in which the nation of Israel is a vine. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**no scepter to rule**

The implicit information may be supplied from [Ezekiel 19:11](#). AT: “no branch strong enough for a ruler’s scepter” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**will be sung as a lamentation**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must sing it as a lamentation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [consume](#)
- [scepter](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 19 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 20 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Rebels cannot ask for help**

The people of Israel have rebelled against God again and again. Now they cannot come to God for help in their troubles.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 20:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 20:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Almost seven years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the tenth day of the fifth month of that year, some Israelite elders came to me to ask if I had any message for them from Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> It came about in the seventh year, on the tenth day of the fifth month, that elders of Israel came to inquire of Yahweh and sat before me.

**translationNotes****It came about**

This phrase is used to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

**in the seventh year**

The implicit information may be supplied. AT: “in the seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the tenth day of the fifth month**

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**before me**

“in front of me”

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [inquire](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> Then Yahweh gave me a message for them. He said, <sup>3</sup> "Son of man, speak to the elders and tell them that the Lord Yahweh says this: 'You say that you have come to ask if there is any message from me, but as surely as I am alive, I will not allow you to ask for any message from me.'

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>3</sup> "Son of man, declare to the elders of Israel and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Have you come to inquire of me? As I live, I will not be inquired of by you!—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.'

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**As I live**

"As surely as I am alive." Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "I solemnly swear" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Have you come to inquire of me?**

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the elders should not be inquiring of him. AT: "You should not come to inquire of me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**I will not be inquired of by you**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will not allow you to inquire of me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [elder](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> If you are willing to warn them, remind them of the disgusting things that their ancestors did. <sup>5</sup> Then say to them, ‘On the day that I chose you Israelite people to belong to me, I made a solemn oath to your ancestors while they were still in Egypt.’ I said to them, ‘I am Yahweh, your God. <sup>6</sup> I will bring you out of Egypt and lead you to a land that I have chosen for you. It is the most fertile and beautiful land in the world.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man? Let them know about their fathers’ abominations. <sup>5</sup> Say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I chose Israel and raised my hand to swear an oath to the descendants of the house of Jacob, and made myself known to them in the land of Egypt, when I raised my hand to swear an oath to them. I said, “I am Yahweh your God”—<sup>6</sup> on that day I raised my hand to swear an oath to them that I would bring them out of the land of Egypt into a land that I had carefully selected for them. It was flowing with milk and honey; it was the most beautiful ornament among all the lands.

**translationNotes****Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man?**

Yahweh asks Ezekiel the same question twice in order to secure Ezekiel’s commitment to pronounce the judgement. AT: “Are you ready to pronounce judgment on them, son of man?” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**I ... raised my hand to swear an oath**

Here “raised my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. AT: “I ... solemnly swore an oath” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the house of Jacob**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate “the house of” as in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**It was flowing with milk and honey**

“It was a land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” Yahweh speaks of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. AT: “It was land that was excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**the most beautiful ornament among all the lands**

The lands in which people live are spoken of as if they are jewelry or other things that are pleasant to look at. AT: “the most beautiful of all lands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [house](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Each of you must get rid of the disgusting idols that you love, and the idols which you learned to worship in Egypt, and with which you made it impossible for me to accept you. I, Yahweh your God, am saying this to you.'

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> I said to them, "Let each man throw away the detestable things from before his eyes and the idols of Egypt. Do not make yourselves unclean; I am Yahweh your God."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**to them**

"to the descendants of the house of Jacob"

**the detestable things from before his eyes**

Yahweh speaks of the people worshiping the detestable things as if they had placed those idols in front of their eyes. AT: "the detestable things that he worships" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the idols of Egypt**

"throw away the idols of Egypt"

**Do not make yourselves unclean**

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [God](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But they rebelled against me. They would not pay attention to me. They did not get rid of the disgusting idols they loved; they did not reject the idols that they saw in Egypt. So because I was angry with them, I said that I would punish them in Egypt. <sup>9</sup> But for the sake of my own reputation, I decided to do something for your people so that the other people groups would not laugh at me and say I had no power. I decided that they would see me bring my people out of Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> But they rebelled against me and were unwilling to listen to me. Each man did not throw away the detestable things from before his eyes nor forsake the idols of Egypt, so I determined to pour out my fury upon them to satisfy my wrath among them in the middle of the land of Egypt. <sup>9</sup> I acted for my name's sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations among whom they were staying. I made myself known to them, in their eyes, by bringing them out of the land of Egypt.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**they rebelled against me**

The word "they" refers to "the descendants of the house of Jacob."

**were unwilling to listen to me**

"would not obey me"

**the detestable things from before his eyes**

Yahweh speaks of the people worshiping the detestable things as if they had placed those idols in front of their eyes. AT: "the detestable things that he worshiped" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to pour out my fury upon them**

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. AT: "to act against them in my fury" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for my name's sake**

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. AT: “for the sake of my reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the eyes**

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “in the opinion” or “in the judgment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the nations**

The word “nations” is a metonym for the people who live in the nations. AT: “the people who live in other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they were staying**

“they were living”

**I made myself known to them, in their eyes**

Here the word “them” refers to the nations. The idiom “in their eyes” refers to being in a position where people can see. AT: “I revealed myself to them, in their presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

**bringing them**

“bringing the people of Israel”

**translationWords**

- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [profane](#)
- [nation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Therefore I led your people out of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness. <sup>11</sup> I gave them all my laws and decrees, in order that they would obey them, and as a result they would live for a long time. <sup>12</sup> Also, I established the Sabbath days to be a reminder between me and them, so they would know that I am Yahweh, the one who sets them apart for my honor.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So I sent them out of the land of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness. <sup>11</sup> Then I gave them my statutes and made my decrees known to them, by which a man will live if he obeys them. <sup>12</sup> I also gave them my Sabbaths as a sign between myself and them, for them to know that I am Yahweh who makes them holy.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**I sent them**

The word “them” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> But the Israelite people rebelled against me in the wilderness also. They did not obey my commands; they rejected them, even though they would have lived a long time if they had obeyed them, and they treated the Sabbath days like any other day. So I said that I would destroy them in the wilderness, because that would show that I was very angry with them. <sup>14</sup> But again, so that the other people groups would not laugh at me, I decided to do something in order to show those people groups that I was still as powerful as when they had seen me bring my people out of Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> But the house of Israel rebelled against me in the wilderness. They did not walk in my statutes; instead, they rejected my decrees, by which a man will live if he obeys them. They greatly profaned my Sabbaths, so I said I would pour out my fury upon them in the wilderness in order to end them. <sup>14</sup> But I acted for my name's sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations, in whose sight I had brought them out of Egypt.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**They did not walk in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path along which a person walks. AT: "They did not obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I would pour out my fury upon them**

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:8](#). AT: "I would act against them in my fury" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in order to end them**

The euphemism "to end them" refers to killing them. AT: "in order to kill them" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**I acted for my name's sake**

Here the word "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). AT: "I acted for the sake of my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations**

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). AT: “so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the eyes of the nations**

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). AT: “in the thoughts of the people in other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**in whose sight I had brought them out of Egypt**

“in whose presence I brought my people out of Egypt”

**translationWords**

- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [reject](#)
- [decree](#)
- [profane](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 20:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> I solemnly swore to your people in the wilderness that I would not take them into the land that I had promised to give them, a land that was the most fertile and beautiful land in the world. <sup>16</sup> I made this oath, because they had rejected and disobeyed all my laws, and because they were treating the Sabbath days like any other day. And they insisted on worshiping their idols. <sup>17</sup> But I still pitied them, so I did not destroy them in the wilderness.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> So I myself also raised my hand to swear an oath to them in the wilderness not to bring them into the land that I had been going to give them, a land flowing with milk and honey, which was the most beautiful ornament among all the lands. <sup>16</sup> I swore this because they had rejected my decrees and did not walk in my statutes, and they profaned my Sabbaths, since their hearts walked after their idols. <sup>17</sup> But my eye spared them from their destruction and I did not annihilate them in the wilderness.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**I myself also raised my hand to swear an oath**

Here “raised my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:5](#). AT: “I myself also solemnly swore an oath” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**to them**

“to the house of Israel”

**a land flowing with milk and honey**

“a land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” Yahweh speaks of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:6](#). AT: “a land that was excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**the most beautiful ornament among all the lands**

The lands in which people live are spoken of as if they are jewelry or other things that are pleasant to look at. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:6](#). AT: “the most beautiful of all lands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**did not walk in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if they were a path along which a person walks. AT: “did not obey my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**their hearts walked after their idols**

Here the word “heart” represents the person’s thoughts and emotions. Yahweh speaks of being dedicated to idols as if a person’s heart walked after them. AT: “they were dedicated to worshiping their idols” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**my eye spared them**

Here the word “eye” represents Yahweh. AT: “I spared them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> I said to their children, the next generation, 'Do not do the things that your parents always do. Do not worship their idols and so make it impossible for me to accept you. <sup>19</sup> I am Yahweh your God. Carefully obey my laws and commands. <sup>20</sup> Respect my Sabbath days, in order that by doing that, it will remind you that you belong to me.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> I said to their sons and daughters in the wilderness, "Do not walk according to the statutes of your parents; do not keep their decrees or profane yourselves with idols. <sup>19</sup> I am Yahweh your God, walk in my statutes; keep my decrees and obey them. <sup>20</sup> Keep my Sabbaths holy so that they will be a sign between me and you, so that you will know that I am Yahweh your God."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**Do not walk according to the statutes of your parents ... walk in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying statutes as if the statutes were paths along with a person walks. AT: "Do not obey the statutes of your parents ... obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**keep my decrees and obey them**

To "keep" Yahweh's decrees is the same as to "obey them." (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [profane](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> But their children also rebelled against me. They did not take care to obey my laws, even though anyone who obeys them will live for a long time; and they also treated the Sabbath days like any other day. So again I said that I would kill them all in the wilderness, and in this way I would stop being angry. <sup>22</sup> But I did not do that. I decided once more to do something so that the other people groups, those that had seen me bring your people out of Egypt, would not laugh and say that I had lost my power.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> But their sons and daughters rebelled against me. They did not walk in my statutes or keep my decrees, by which a man might live if he obeys them. They profaned my Sabbaths, so I determined to pour out my fury upon them to satisfy my wrath against them in the wilderness. <sup>22</sup> But I turned my hand away and acted for my name's sake, so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations in whose sight I had brought out the Israelites.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**They did not walk in my statutes**

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path along which the person walks. AT: "They did not obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to pour out my fury upon them**

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:8](#). AT: "to act against them in my fury" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I turned my hand away**

Here the word "hand" represents Yahweh and turning his hand away means that he does not do what he was going to do. AT: "But I did not do that" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

**for my name's sake**

Here the word "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. AT: "for the sake of my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations**

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). AT: “so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the eyes of the nations**

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “in the thoughts of the people in other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [nation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> So I swore to them in the wilderness that I would scatter them among many people groups, <sup>24</sup> because they had rejected and disobeyed all my laws, and because they were treating the Sabbath days like any other day—and because they were eager to worship the idols that their parents had worshiped.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> I myself also lifted up my hand to swear to them in the wilderness, that I would scatter them among the nations and disperse them among the lands. <sup>24</sup> I decided to do this since they had not obeyed my decrees, and since they had rejected my statutes and profaned my Sabbaths. Their eyes were longing after their fathers' idols.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**I myself also lifted up my hand to swear**

Here “lifted up my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. AT: “I myself also solemnly swore” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**scatter them among the nations and disperse them among the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). AT: “cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Their eyes were longing after their fathers' idols**

Here the word “eyes” represents the person who looks to the idols to worship them. AT: “They were longing after their fathers' idols” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [nation](#)
- [disperse, dispersion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 20:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> So I also allowed them to obey laws that were not good, laws that would not help them live a long time. <sup>26</sup> I allowed them to do things that made it impossible for me to accept them: I allowed them to sacrifice their firstborn children in fire. I allowed them to do that in order that they would be horrified at themselves, and in order that they would know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live. <sup>26</sup> I made them unclean by their gifts when they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb and put them into the fire. I did this in order to terrify them so they might know that I am Yahweh!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

**Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live**

The words statutes in this phrase do not refer to God's law. God permitted them to live by human laws and judgments that were not good.

**gave them**

The word "them" refers to the children of those whom Yahweh brought out of Egypt.

**by their gifts**

Here the word "gifts" refers to the sacrifices that the people made to the idols that they worshiped.

**they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb**

The phrase "firstborn of the womb" refers to the firstborn child of a woman. The word "sacrifice" can be translated with a verb. AT: "they sacrificed every woman's firstborn child" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**put them into the fire**

It is implicit that they put them into the fire in order to offer them as burnt offerings to their idols. AT: "sacrificed them as burnt offerings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- statute, statutes
- decree
- unclean
- gift, gifts
- firstborn
- womb
- fire
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:27-29****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> Therefore, son of man, speak to the Israelite people. Say this to them, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you: This is one way that your ancestors dishonored me by turning away from me.’ <sup>28</sup> After I brought them into the land that I had sworn to give them, every time that they saw a high hill or a big green tree, they offered sacrifices to idols there. They made offerings to them, and that caused me to become angry. They presented to those idols their fragrant incense, and they poured out wine offerings to them. <sup>29</sup> Then I asked them, ‘What is this hilltop place where you go to worship idols?’ So they are still called Bamah, which means ‘hilltop’.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> Therefore, son of man, speak to the house of Israel and say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: In this also your fathers blasphemed me when they were unfaithful to me. <sup>28</sup> When I brought them into the land that I had sworn to give them, and then whenever they saw any high hill and leafy tree, they offered their sacrifices, they provoked me by their offerings, and there they also burned their fragrant incense and poured out their drink offerings. <sup>29</sup> Then I said to them, “What is this high place where you bring offerings there?” So the name is called Bamah to this day.’

**translationNotes****What is this high place where you bring offerings there?**

Yahweh asks this question in order to rebuke the people. AT: “This is not a high place where you are to bring offerings!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the name is called Bamah**

The name “Bamah” means “high place,” a place for worshiping idols. This can be stated in active form. AT: “people have called that place Bamah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous, blasphemies](#)
- [betray, betrayer](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [provoke](#)
- [incense](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [high places](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:30-32****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> Therefore, say this to the Israelite people: 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: Why do you imitate your ancestors in acting in ways that make me unable to accept you? You act like prostitutes, leaving their husbands for other men. In the same way, you have left me to worship disgusting idols. <sup>31</sup> When you sacrifice your children in the fire, you make me unable to accept you. It is the same as when you bow down to your idols. You Israelite people, should I allow you to ask me to direct you in any matter? I, Yahweh the Lord, say that as surely as I am alive, I will not answer if you ask me.'

<sup>32</sup> You say, 'We want to be like the other people groups in the world. We want to worship idols made of wood and stone like they do.' But what you want will never happen.'

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Therefore say to the house of Israel, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Why do you make yourselves unclean with the ways of your fathers? So why do you act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things? <sup>31</sup> For when you offer up your gifts and you put your sons into the fire, to this day you make yourselves unclean with all your idols. So why should I let you question me, house of Israel? As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—I will not let you question me. <sup>32</sup> The thought that is forming in your mind will never happen. You say, "Let us be like the other nations, like the clans in the other lands who worship wood and stone."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**Why do you make yourselves unclean with the ways of your fathers?**

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. AT: "You should not make yourselves unclean by doing the things that your fathers did." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Why do you make yourselves unclean**

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**So why do you act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things?**

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. AT: "You should not act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**why do you act like prostitutes**

Yahweh speaks of the people being unfaithful to him as if they were acting like women who sleep with men to whom they are not married. (See: [Simile](#))

**put your sons into the fire**

It is implicit that they put their sons into the fire in order to offer them as burnt offerings. AT: “sacrificed them as burnt offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**So why should I let you question me, house of Israel?**

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. AT: “I will not let you question me, house of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**As I live**

Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [unclean](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)
- [fire](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [inquire](#)
- [mind](#)
- [nation](#)
- [clan](#)
- [worship](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:33-35****UDB:**

<sup>33</sup> I, Yahweh your Lord, say that as surely as I am alive, I will use my great power to rule over you, and to show that I am angry with you. <sup>34</sup> With my great power I will gather you from the places to which I scattered you. <sup>35</sup> I will bring you to a wilderness that is surrounded by other nations. There, while I am looking at you, I will judge you.

**ULB:**

<sup>33</sup> As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I will certainly reign over you with a mighty hand, a raised arm, and fury that will be poured out on you. <sup>34</sup> I will bring you out from the other peoples and will gather you out of the countries among whom you have been scattered. I will do this with a mighty hand and with fury poured out. <sup>35</sup> Then I will bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I will judge you face to face.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**with a mighty hand, a raised arm**

The words “hand” and “arm” both represent power. AT: “with very great power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

**fury that will be poured out on you**

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury as if the fury were a liquid that he pours on on the people. This can be stated in active form. AT: “fury that I will pour out on you” or “I will express my fury towards you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**among whom you have been scattered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “among whom I have scattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- reign
- mighty, might
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- wrath, fury
- desert, wilderness
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- face

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 20:36-38****UDB:**

<sup>36</sup> I will punish you, as I punished your ancestors in the wilderness near Egypt. <sup>37</sup> I will make you submit to me; I will force you to obey the covenant that I made with you. <sup>38</sup> I will destroy the people among you who rebel against me. Although I will bring them out of Babylonia, where they are now living, they will not enter Israel. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>36</sup> As I judged your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so also I will judge you—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration. <sup>37</sup> I will cause you to pass under my rod, and I will make you obey the requirements of the covenant. <sup>38</sup> I will purge from among you the rebels and those who revolt against me. I will send them out from the land where they are staying as foreigners, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**I will cause you to pass under my rod**

This refers to the practice of a shepherd counting and inspecting his sheep as the sheep walked under his staff. Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh will count his people whom he gathers from the nations to ensure that they are all present. AT: "I will count you carefully as a shepherd counts his sheep" or 2) Yahweh will inspect each person as they pass under his staff in order to separate the faithful from the unfaithful. AT: "I will inspect you carefully as a shepherd inspects his sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- ancestor, father, forefather
- desert, wilderness
- Egypt, Egyptian
- rod
- covenant, covenants
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- send, send out, sent
- foreigner, foreign, alien

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:39****UDB:**

<sup>39</sup> As for you Israelite people, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Go and worship your idols now, each of you. But afterwards, you will surely pay attention to me and no longer dishonor me by taking gifts to your idols.

**ULB:**

<sup>39</sup> So to you, house of Israel, the Lord Yahweh says this: Each of you should go to his own idols. Worship them if you will refuse to listen to me, but you must no longer profane my holy name with your gifts and your idols.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to listen to me**

“to obey me” or “to pay attention to me”

**profane my holy name**

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh himself. AT: “dishonor me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [worship](#)
- [profane](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:40-41****UDB:**

<sup>40</sup> I, Yahweh your Lord, declare that there on my sacred hill, Zion, that high hill in Israel, you will bring gifts to me, and I will accept them. I will require you to bring to me gifts and offerings there, and your sacrifices that you will set apart for me. <sup>41</sup> When I bring you out from the other nations to which you have been scattered, I will accept you as though you were fragrant incense. I will show the people of other nations that I have set myself apart as holy, that I might be honored.

**ULB:**

<sup>40</sup> For on my holy mountain, on the mountain peak of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—all of the house of Israel will worship me there in the land. I will be pleased to require your offerings there, and also the firstfruits of your tribute with all your holy things. <sup>41</sup> I will accept you like fragrant incense when I bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries where you have been scattered. I will show myself as holy among you for the nations to see.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**to require your offerings**

“to require you to bring your offerings”

**the firstfruits of your tribute**

Yahweh speaks of the best things among all that they give to him as if they were “firstfruits.” AT: “the best of your contributions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your holy things**

“the offerings that you set aside to give to me”

**I will accept you like fragrant incense**

Yahweh speaks of his people worshiping him as they should as if the people themselves were the incense offering. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries**

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will bring his people back from all of the nations to which he had scattered them. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:34](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

**where you have been scattered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “where I have scattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [worship](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [incense](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:42-44****UDB:**

<sup>42</sup> Then, when I bring you into the land of Israel, the land that I swore to give to your ancestors, you will know that I, Yahweh, have done it. <sup>43</sup> And there in Israel you will remember how you conducted your lives previously, the actions that caused you to become unacceptable to me, and you will hate yourselves for all the evil things that you have done. <sup>44</sup> When I act toward you Israelite people to protect my reputation, and not because of your evil deeds and corrupt behavior, you Israelite people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do. That is what Yahweh the Lord declares.”

**ULB:**

<sup>42</sup> Then, when I bring you to the land of Israel, to the land that I have lifted up my hand to swear to give to your fathers, you will know that I am Yahweh. <sup>43</sup> There you will call to mind your conduct and all of your deeds by which you defiled yourselves, and you will despise yourselves in your own eyes for all your evil deeds that you have done. <sup>44</sup> So you will know that I am Yahweh when I do this to you because of my name’s sake, and not because of your evil deeds, and not because of your corrupt deeds, house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**I have lifted up my hand to swear**

Here “lifted up my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. AT: “I have solemnly sworn” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**you will call to mind**

This idiom means to remember. AT: “you will remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

**you defiled yourselves**

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were defiled. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will despise yourselves in your own eyes**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “you will hate yourselves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### because of my name's sake

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. AT: “because of my reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- ancestor, father, forefather
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- unclean
- name, names, named
- corrupt, corruption
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 20:45-47****UDB:**

<sup>45</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>46</sup> "Son of man, turn toward the south. Preach about what will happen to that dry land, to the forest there. <sup>47</sup> Say to the forest in the southern wilderness of Israel: Listen to this message that Yahweh the Lord is saying about you: I am about to start a fire in your midst, and it will burn up all your trees, both the green trees and the withered trees. Nothing will extinguish the blazing flames. And the fire will scorch the faces of everyone who lives in that area, from the south to the north.

**ULB:**

<sup>45</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>46</sup> "Son of man, set your face toward the southern lands, and speak against the south; prophesy against the forest of the Negev. <sup>47</sup> Say to the forest of the Negev, 'This is Yahweh's declaration—the Lord Yahweh says this: See, I will set a fire among you. It will devour every fresh tree and every dried tree among you. The fiery flame will not be quenched; every face from the south to the north will be burned.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**set your face toward the southern lands**

This is a command to stare at the southern lands as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). AT: "Stare at the southern lands" or "Stare at the southern lands so that they will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face**

Here "face" is a metonym for attention or gaze, and "set your face" represents staring. AT: "stare" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The fiery flame will not be quenched**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The fiery flame will not go out" or "No one will be able to quench the fiery flame" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**every face from the south to the north will be burned**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the fire will burn every face from the south to the north” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**every face from the south to the north**

Here the word “face” represents the person. By mentioning the opposite directions, Yahweh refers to everyone who lives in the north, in the south, and everywhere in between. AT: “every person who lives in that area” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Merism](#))

**translationWords**

- [face](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire](#)
- [devour](#)
- [quench](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 20:48-49****UDB:**

<sup>48</sup> Everyone will see that it is I, Yahweh, who have lit this fire, and no one will be able to put it out.”

<sup>49</sup> Then I said, “Yahweh, my Lord, when I tell things like this to people, they do not believe me. They say about me, ‘He is only telling parables.’”

**ULB:**

<sup>48</sup> Then all flesh will see that I am Yahweh when I light the fire, and it will not be quenched.” <sup>49</sup> Then I said, “Alas! Lord Yahweh, they are saying of me, ‘Is he not a mere teller of parables?’”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the forest of the Negev.

**all flesh will see**

Here the word “flesh” represents all humans. The idiom to “see” means to understand. AT: “all people will understand” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**it will not be quenched**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “it will not go out” or “no one will quench it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Alas**

a word that expresses distress or grief

**Is he not a mere teller of parables?**

The people use this question to insult Ezekiel and dismiss what he is telling them. AT: “He is merely telling parables” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire](#)

- [quench](#)
- [parable, parables](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 21 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Refusing to learn**

Judah has refused to learn from their punishment, so God is about to destroy the nation in war.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 21:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 21:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, turn toward the south. Set yourself against them. Preach against the south and prophesy against the forest in the southern Judean wilderness. <sup>3</sup> Say to them, "This is what Yahweh says: I am opposed to you, and it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath to kill both the righteous and the wicked people among you!

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, set your face toward Jerusalem, and speak against the sanctuaries; prophesy against the land of Israel. <sup>3</sup> Say to the land of Israel, 'Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you! I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you!

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity" or "Mortal person" or "Human". God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#).

**set your face toward Jerusalem**

This is a command to stare at Jerusalem as a symbol of punishing the people there. AT: "stare at Jerusalem" or "stare at Jerusalem so that the people there will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face toward Jerusalem**

Jerusalem was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming it. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#) AT: "Turn toward Jerusalem and stare" or "stare toward Jerusalem so that the people there will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you**

This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. AT: "I am opposed to you, and it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath to kill both the righteous and the wicked people among you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the righteous person and the wicked person**

"righteous people and wicked people." This refers to multiple people, not just one righteous person and one wicked person.

**sheath**

something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it

**cut off**

This is a euphemism that means to kill. AT: "kill" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [sword](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> So what I will do to you will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath and strike you. I will kill everyone, including righteous people and wicked people. I will get rid of everyone, from the south to the north. <sup>5</sup> Then everyone will know that it is as though I, Yahweh, have struck people with my sword, and I will not put it back in its sheath again.'

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> In order for me to cut off both the righteous and the wicked from you, my sword will go out from its sheath against all flesh from the south to the north. <sup>5</sup> Then all flesh will know that I, Yahweh, have drawn my sword from its sheath. It will no longer hold back!'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the land of Israel.

**cut off**

This is a euphemism that means to kill. AT: "kill" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**the righteous ... the wicked**

This refers to righteous and wicked people. AT: "those who are righteous ... those who are wicked" or "the righteous people ... the wicked people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**from you**

"among you"

**my sword will go out from its sheath against**

This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. AT: "it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath and strike" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**all flesh**

Here "flesh" is a metonym for "people." AT: "all people" (See: [Metonymy](#))



**from the south to the north**

This is a merism that refers to the area to the north, and to the south, and all places in between. AT: “in every direction” or “everywhere” (See: [Merism](#))

**that I, Yahweh, have drawn my sword from its sheath**

This speaks of Yahweh causing people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. AT: “it is as though I, Yahweh, have struck people with my sword” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**It will no longer hold back**

This speaks of Yahweh not holding back his sword from attacking people as if his sword were a person that was no longer holding itself back from attacking. AT: “and I will not put it back in its sheath again” or “I will not hold back from attacking people” (See: [Personification](#))

**translationWords**

- [cut off](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sword](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, Son of man, groan! Groan in front of the Israelite people very sadly and sorrowfully. <sup>7</sup> And when they ask you, ‘Why are you groaning?’ tell them that it is because of the news that they soon will hear. Everyone will be very fearful, and their hands will tremble uncontrollably, while their knees become as weak as water. A great disaster will soon occur. This is what Yahweh the Lord is promising.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> As for you, son of man, groan as your loins break! In bitterness groan before their eyes! <sup>7</sup> Then it will happen that they will ask you, ‘For what reason are you groaning?’ Then you will say, ‘Because of the news that is coming, for every heart will faint away, and every hand will falter! Every spirit will grow faint, and every knee will flow like water. Behold! It is coming and it will be like this!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh is speaking to Ezekiel.

**groan as your loins break**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to groan as a sign to accompany his message. He tells him to groan deeply as if his abdomen was in great pain. “groan deeply as if your loins were in great pain” or “groan deeply with great sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

**In bitterness groan**

“With great grief” or “With great sorrow”

**before their eyes**

Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. AT: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the news that is coming**

This speaks of the “news” as if it were a person that was soon coming to them. AT: “the news that they will soon hear” (See: [Personification](#))

**for every heart will faint away**

This speaks of people becoming afraid, as if their hearts were fainting. Also, this speaks of the people fainting as a result of fear. AT: “for everyone will become fearful” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**will falter**

“will be weak”

**Every spirit will grow faint**

This speaks of people becoming fearful in their spirits as if their spirits were about to faint. AT: “Everyone will be fearful in their inner being” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**every knee will flow like water**

“every knee will be as weak as water.” This is a euphemism for people being so afraid that they lose their bladder control and urinate on themselves. AT: “every leg will be wet with urine” or “everyone will lose control of their urine” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [loins](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>9</sup> "Son of man, prophesy and say to them, 'This is what the Lord says:

I will sharpen my sword  
and polish it.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>9</sup> "Son of man, prophesy and say, 'The Lord says this:

"Say: A sword! A sword! It will be sharpened and polished!

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**A sword! A sword! It will be sharpened and polished!**

This passage describes the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for an enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. This metaphor begins here and continues through [Ezekiel 21:17](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**It will be sharpened and polished**

This phrase indicates that the sword is ready for someone to use it. This can be stated in active form. AT: "It is sharp and polished" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**polished**

Someone made the sword smooth, shiny, and clean by rubbing it with a rough material.

**translationWords**

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> It will be sharp in order that I can slaughter many people with it;

I will polish it so that it will flash like lightning.

The people of Judah will not celebrate about their king's scepter,

because it will not resist the sword that is coming against it.

<sup>11</sup> So I will polish the sword,

and the right person will then hold it in his hand.

Now it is sharp; now it shines,

ready for the killer to use!

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> It will be sharpened in order to engage in great slaughter! It will be polished in order to be like lightning!

Should we rejoice in my son's scepter? The coming sword hates every such rod!

<sup>11</sup> So the sword will be given to be polished, and then to be grasped by the hand!

The sword is sharpened and it is polished and it is to be given into the hand of the one who kills;”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**It will be sharpened ... It will be polished in order to**

These can be stated in active form. AT: “I will sharpen it ... I will polish it so that it will” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in order to be like lightning**

This means that the sword will be so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. AT: “so that it flashes like lightning” or “so that light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

**Should we rejoice in my son's scepter?**

This rhetorical question emphasizes that the people of Israel will not celebrate their king's power, because it cannot resist the "sword." AT: "The people of Judah will not celebrate about their king's scepter." or "we should not celebrate the power of our king's scepter." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Should we**

The word "we" refers to Ezekiel and the people of Israel. (See: [Inclusive "We"](#))

**in my son's scepter**

Here Yahweh refers to the king of Judah as his son. The king's scepter represents his rule as king. It is important to maintain the image of the king's scepter here, as the words "every such rod" refer to the scepter. AT: "in the king's scepter" or "in the power that the king's scepter represents" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The coming sword hates every such rod**

Here the "sword" is personified as coming to attack the people. This speaks of the king not being able to resist the "sword", as if the "sword" were hating the king's scepter. AT: "the sword will overpower his scepter like that of any other ruler" or "for the king will not be able to resist when the sword is brought against him" (See: [Personification](#))

**such rod**

This phrase is used to mock the king's scepter by calling it a "rod." AT: "such scepter" (See: [Irony](#))

**the sword will be given to be polished**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will polish the sword" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**then to be grasped by the hand**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "then the right person will hold it in his hand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it is to be given into the hand of the one who kills**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "it is ready for the killer to use" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [slaughter](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [scepter](#)
- [sword](#)
- [rod](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 21:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> So, Son of man, cry and wail,  
 because I will use my sword to kill my people,  
 including the leaders of Israel.  
 That sword will kill them and all the others of my people;  
 my sword will kill them all,  
 so beat your chests to show that you are sad.

<sup>13</sup> I am about to test my people,  
 and what will happen if the scepter cannot resist?  
 That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Call for help and lament, son of man! For that sword has come against my people! It is against all the leaders of Israel.  
 They are thrown against the sword with my people. Therefore, slap your thigh!

<sup>13</sup> For there is a trial, but what if the scepter does not last?—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that sword has come against my people! It is against all**

This speaks of Yahweh’s sword attacking his people as if the sword itself were the attacker. AT: “I will use my sword to kill my people! I will bring it against all” (See: [Personification](#))

**They are thrown against the sword with my people**

This speaks of the leaders of Israel being killed with a sword as if they are thrown against the sword. AT: “They are killed with the sword along with my people” or “The sword will kill them along with my people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**slap your thigh**

In Ezekiel's culture, slapping one's thigh was a sign of grief. Some other translation use the gesture of beating one's breast which is a sign of grief in many cultures. AT: "beat your chests" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**but what if the scepter does not last?**

This rhetorical question is used to make the audience think about what could happen. This question can be written as a statement. AT: "and it will be very frightening if the sword destroys the scepter." or "but it will be very frightening if the king cannot resist it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the scepter**

Here the king of Judah is represented by his scepter. AT: "the king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**does not last**

This is an idiom. AT: "cannot resist" or "is destroyed" (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [trial](#)
- [scepter](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> So, Son of man, prophesy;  
 clap your hands to show that you are very sad about what is going to happen.  
 My sword will strike my people again and again;  
 it is a sword for slaughtering many people,  
 while I attack them from every side.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Now you, son of man, prophesy and hit your two hands together, for the sword will attack even a third time!  
 A sword for the ones to be slaughtered! It is a sword for the many to be slaughtered, piercing them everywhere!

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**hit your two hands together**

This means for him to clap his hands as a sign of his grief. AT: “clap your hands to show that you are very sad” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**even a third time**

“even a 3rd time.” This is an idiom that means multiple times. AT: “again and again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))

**A sword for the ones to be slaughtered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “It is a sword for slaughtering people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**It is a sword for the many to be slaughtered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “It is a sword for slaughtering many people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**piercing them everywhere**

“attacking them from every side.” Some Bibles translate this as “which enters into their rooms.” This means no matter where they hide, the sword will kill them.

**piercing them**

The word “them” refers to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [sword](#)
- [slaughter](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> In order that people will be very much afraid  
and that many people will die,

I have placed soldiers at every city gate,  
ready to slaughter people.

My sword will flash like lightning,  
as the soldiers slaughter the people.

<sup>16</sup> I will tell my sword to slash to the right  
and then to the left,  
and to turn in every direction until no one remains alive.

<sup>17</sup> Then I will clap my hands triumphantly;  
and then I will no longer be angry.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> In order to melt their hearts and to multiply their fallen, I have set the slaughter of the sword against their gates! Woe! It is made like lightning, set free to butcher!

<sup>16</sup> You, sword! Strike to the right! Strike to the left! Go wherever your face is turned.

<sup>17</sup> For I will also hit my two hands together, and then I will bring my fury to rest! I, Yahweh, declare it!”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to melt their hearts**

This speaks of causing the people to be so terrified that it is as if their hearts were melting. AT: “to fill them with terror” or “to cause them to be terrified” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to multiply their fallen**

Here “fallen” refers to the people killed in battle. This means there will be a greater number of people killed. AT: “to kill many people among them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**set the slaughter of the sword**

Here the sword of Yahweh represents men with swords that are to attack Jerusalem. Also, the word “slaughter” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “placed soldiers armed with swords at their gates, ready to slaughter the people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**their gates**

The word “their” refers to the people of Jerusalem.

**It is made like lightning**

This compares how the sword is well polished and how it reflects light to appear like lightning. AT: “My sword is polished and flashes like lightning” or “It is polished and reflects light as being like lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

**set free to butcher!**

The sword of Yahweh represents the men with swords that are to attack Jerusalem. This speaks of them being released to attack as if they were released to butcher the people in the same way that animals are butchered. AT: “released to slaughter the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You, sword! Strike to the right! ... Go wherever your face is turned**

Here Yahweh speaks to a sword to emphasize that he is in control of what is happening during the attack. The phrase “wherever your face is turned” is an idiom. AT: “I tell those attacking with swords, ‘Strike to the right! ... Attack in every direction’” (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Idiom](#))

**hit my two hands together**

“clap my hands.” Here clapping hands is a sign of triumph. AT: “clap my hands in triumph” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**translationWords**

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [woe](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>19</sup> "Son of man, draw on a map two roads for the king of Babylonia to march on with his army. When they depart from their own country, they will come to a signpost where a single road divides into those two roads. <sup>20</sup> If they take one of those roads, they will attack the city of Rabbah, the capital of the Ammon people group. If they take the other road, they will come to Judah and Jerusalem, a city with walls around it.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me again, saying, <sup>19</sup> "Now you, son of man, assign two roads for the sword of the king of Babylon to come. The two roads will start in the same land, and a signpost will mark one of them as leading to a city. <sup>20</sup> Mark one road for the Babylonian army to come to Rabbah, the city of the Ammonites. Mark the other to lead the army to Judah and the city of Jerusalem, which is fortified.

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came to me again**

The phrase "the word of Yahweh came" is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 18:1](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke to me again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the sword of the king of Babylon**

The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. AT: "the soldiers of the king of Babylon" or "the Babylonian army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a signpost will mark one of them as leading to a city**

This is a sign posted where the road divides into two roads. AT: "a sign will be posted where the road divides into two roads" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sword](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Rabbah](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)



- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> When the army of Babylon comes to where the road divides, the army will stop, while the king performs magic rituals to decide which road to go on. He will throw arrows; then he will consult his idols about which road to go on, and he will examine the liver of a sheep. <sup>22</sup> With his right hand he will pick up the arrow marked with the name of Jerusalem. He will then command his soldiers to go to Jerusalem. When they arrive there, they will set up rams to batter down the walls, and then the king will give the command for them to slaughter the people. They will shout the battlecry, and they will set up the rams against the city gates. They will build a dirt ramp against the walls around the city, and set walls against the city. <sup>23</sup> The people in Jerusalem who had promised to be loyal to the king of Babylonia will think that those magic rituals must be wrong. They will think that his army should not be attacking them. But he will remind them of the disloyalty of which they are guilty, and he will say that they have violated their agreement with him.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> For the king of Babylon will stop at the crossroads, at the junction, in order to practice divination. He will shake some arrows and ask direction from some idols and he will examine a liver.

<sup>22</sup> In his right hand will be an omen about Jerusalem, to set battering rams against it, to open his mouth to order the slaughter,

to sound a war cry, to set battering rams against the gates,

to build a ramp, and to erect siege towers.

<sup>23</sup> It will seem to be a useless omen in the eyes

of the ones in Jerusalem, those who had sworn an oath to the Babylonians! But the king will accuse them of violating their treaty in order to besiege them!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message.

**at the crossroads, at the junction**

Both of these phrases refer to the place where the two roads meet. AT: “at the crossroads” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**He will shake some arrows and ask direction from some idols and he will examine a liver**

These are divination practices.

**In his right hand will be an omen about Jerusalem**

This means the he will hold one of the articles of his divination that was read as an omen against Jerusalem in his right hand. AT: “In his right hand will be an article of divination with an omen against Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**battering rams**

A battering ram was a cut tree or large log with a sharpened end or an end covered in metal. It was held by several men who would pound the end against a wall.

**to build a ramp**

These were large dirt ramps that the Babylonian soldiers built so that they could get onto the walls of Jerusalem.

**siege towers**

These were wooden towers that the Babylonian soldiers built around Jerusalem to enable them to shoot arrows over the walls of Jerusalem.

**in the eyes of the ones in Jerusalem**

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “in the thoughts of the people in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:24****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Therefore, tell the Israelite people that this is what Yahweh the Lord says: ‘You people have allowed everyone to see that you are openly rebelling against the king of Babylonia, and by doing that you have shown that everything that you do is sinful. Therefore he will capture you and take you to Babylonia.’

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have made your guilt to be remembered, making your transgressions to be revealed, so that in all your actions your sins will be seen—because you have done this you will be taken in hand.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem.

**Because you bring your iniquity to my remembrance**

“Because you remind me of your iniquity”

**your transgressions will be revealed! Your sins will be seen in all of your actions**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “by revealing your transgression, every one will see your sins in all of your actions” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**For this reason you will remind everyone that**

“For this reason everyone will understand that”

**you will be captured by your enemy’s hand**

This can be stated in active form. The “enemy’s hand” represents the enemy’s control. AT: “your enemy will capture you and take you into captivity” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:25-27****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Also, say to the king of Judah, ‘You very wicked king of Israel, it is your time to die. It is the time for Yahweh to punish you.’ <sup>26</sup> And this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you about your king in Jerusalem, ‘Take off the king’s turban and his crown, because now things will be different than they were before. I will give power to those who had none, and I will disgrace those who had power. <sup>27</sup> I will cause the Babylonians to destroy everything. No one will be king of Judah again, not until the man comes who deserves to be king. Then I will make him become king.’

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> As for you, profane and wicked ruler of Israel, whose day of punishment has come, and whose time of committing iniquity has ended,

<sup>26</sup> the Lord Yahweh says this to you: Remove the turban and take off the crown! Things will no longer be the same! Exalt the lowly and humble the exalted!

<sup>27</sup> A ruin! A ruin! I will make it a ruin! It will not be restored until the one comes who is assigned to execute judgment.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Israel.

**whose day of punishment has come**

This is an idiom. AT: “whom Yahweh will now punish” (See: [Idiom](#))

**whose time of committing iniquity has ended**

“at the time when Yahweh ends iniquity”

**the turban**

“the king’s turban.” A turban is a beautiful piece of cloth that kings wore wrapped on their heads as a symbol of their authority.

**the lowly ... the exalted**

This refers to people with low status and people who are exalted. AT: “those who are lowly ... those who are exalted” or “those with low status ... those with high status” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**It will not be restored**

Here the crown represents the position of king. The kingship will not be restored until the Messiah comes. AT: “There will no longer be a king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the one comes who is assigned**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the one comes who I assign” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [profane](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation](#)
- [lowly, lowliness](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> And, Son of man, prophesy and say that this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say about the Ammon people group, and about how I will disgrace them:

'My soldiers have swords

and they have pulled out those swords to slaughter many people.

They have polished them in order to kill people,

and to flash like lightning.

<sup>29</sup> Your Ammonite prophets have given you false visions about what will happen to you,

and they have held useless ceremonies that give you false messages.

So swords will strike the necks of those wicked people.

The day when I punish them has come,

because they have not been loyal to me.'

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> So you, son of man, prophesy and say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this to the people of Ammon concerning their coming disgrace: A sword, a sword is drawn! It is sharpened for the slaughter in order to devour, so it will be like lightning! <sup>29</sup> While prophets see empty visions for you, while they perform rituals to come up with lies for you, this sword will lie on the necks of the wicked who are about to be killed, whose day of punishment has come and whose time of iniquity is about to end.

**translationNotes****concerning their coming disgrace**

The word "disgrace" can be expressed as a verb. AT: "about how he will disgrace them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**A sword, a sword is drawn! It is sharpened for the slaughter**

This refers to the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the soldiers that Yahweh uses to kill a large number of people who have been disobedient to him. AT: "Swords! My soldiers have drawn their swords! They are sharpened for the slaughter" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**is drawn**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "is out of its sheath"



**It is sharpened for the slaughter in order to devour**

This speaks of the soldiers killing people as if they were animals devouring their prey. This can be stated in active form. AT: “It is sharp in order to slaughter and to kill people”

**so it will be like lightning**

This means that the sword is so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. AT: “and light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

**empty visions for you ... with lies for you**

“empty visions for you Ammonites ... with lies for you Ammonites.” The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon. In the original Biblical language, the word “your” is feminine singular and refers to the nation of Ammon. Nations were often thought of as a woman. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**empty visions**

This speaks of visions being false and meaningless as if they were empty containers. AT: “visions that are not true” or “false visions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the wicked**

This refers to wicked people. AT: “those who are wicked” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**who are about to be killed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “who are about to die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**whose day of punishment has come and whose time of iniquity is about to end**

The phrases “day of” and “time of” are idioms. AT: “for the time has come for them to be punished and for their iniquity to end” or “for the time has come for me to punish them and for them to no longer be able to commit wickedness” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [sword](#)
- [devour](#)
- [false prophet](#)
- [vision](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> But later the soldiers of Babylon will have to put their swords back into their sheaths, because the time for them to slaughter their enemies will end.

I will judge these Babylonians in the country where they were born.

<sup>31</sup> I will pour out my punishment on them.

Because I am very angry with them,

my breath on them will scorch them like a fire.

I will allow brutal men to capture them,

men who are experts at killing people.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Return the sword to its sheath. In the place of your creation, in the land of your origin, I will judge you! <sup>31</sup> I will pour out my indignation on you! I will fan the fire of my rage against you and put you into the hand of cruel men, craftsmen of destruction!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.

**Return the sword to its sheath**

“Later the sword will be put back in its sheath.” This speaks of the soldiers withdrawing from attacking Jerusalem, by saying that Yahweh’s sword is put back in its sheath. AT: “But later the soldiers will return their swords to their sheaths, for the time of slaughter will be over” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**sheath**

This is something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:3](#).

**In the place of your creation**

The word “creation” may be expressed as a verb. AT: “In the place that I created you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I will pour out my indignation on you**

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the Babylonians because of his indignation against them as if his indignation were a liquid that he poured out of a container upon them. AT: “I will punish you because of indignation against you” or “Out of my anger I will punish you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will fan the fire of my rage against you**

This compares Yahweh’s rage to a consuming fire. AT: “I will bring my rage upon you like a blazing fire” or “I will punish you in my fierce anger” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the hand of cruel men**

The “hand” of the men refers to their control. AT: “the control of cruel men” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**craftsmen of destruction**

“men who cause great destruction”

**translationWords**

- [sword](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 21:32****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> They will be like fuel that is burned in a fire.  
Their blood will flow in their own land.  
No one will remember them anymore.  
That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> You will become fuel for the fire! Your blood will be in the midst of the land. You will not be remembered, for I, Yahweh have declared this!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.

**You will become fuel for the fire**

“The fire will burn up your bodies”

**Your blood will be in the midst of the land**

“Your blood will soak into the ground of your land”

**You will not be remembered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one will remember you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [blood](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 21 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 22 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Continuous evil

Murder, idolatry and all sorts of evil have been done in Jerusalem; so God will destroy the city and scatter the people among the nations. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 22:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 22:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, are you ready to condemn the people of Jerusalem? It is a city full of murderers. Remind them of all the detestable things that they have done. <sup>3</sup> Then say, "This is what Yahweh the Lord says: By murdering people and by defiling yourselves, by making idols, you people of this city have brought on yourselves the time when I will destroy you.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Now you, son of man, will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood? Make her know all her abominations. <sup>3</sup> You must say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: This is a city that pours out blood in her midst so that her time may come; a city that makes idols to make herself unclean.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Now you, son of man, will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood?**

This rhetorical question functions as a command. AT: "Son of man, go and judge. Go and judge the city of blood." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**the city of blood**

The word "blood" is a metonym for murder. AT: "the city where many people murder their neighbors" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**her ... herself**

The word "her" refers to Jerusalem. Cities were often thought of as a woman. This continues through verse 32. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) and [Personification](#)).

**This is a city that pours ... her midst**

Here the “city” represents the people who live there. AT: “The people who live in this city pour ... its midst” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that pours out blood in her midst**

The word “blood” is a metonym for murder. AT: “where many people murder their neighbors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that her time may come**

This refers to the time when Yahweh will destroy them. AT: “so that the time of her destruction may come” or “so that the time may come for her to be destroyed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [blood](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [unclean](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 22:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> You have become guilty by murdering innocent people. You have made it impossible for me to accept you, by making idols for yourselves. You are bringing your time to an end. Therefore I will cause the other people groups to laugh at you and mock you. <sup>5</sup> People in countries that are near you and people who live far from you will make fun of you, because your city is full of confusion, and because you have made it impossible for me, your own God, to accept you.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You are guilty by the blood that you have poured out, and are made unclean by the idols that you have made. For you have drawn your days close and approached your final years. Therefore I will make you a reproach to the nations and a derision in the sight of every land. <sup>5</sup> Both those who are near and those who are far away from you will mock you, you unclean city, with the reputation known everywhere as being full of confusion.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak through Ezekiel to the people of Jerusalem.

**by the blood that you have poured out**

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. AT: “because you murdered innocent people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**are made unclean by**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “are unclean because of” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**For you have drawn your days close and approached your final years.**

Both of these phrases are idioms that mean that the time when Yahweh will punish Jerusalem is very near. AT: “Because of these things you have done, you are approaching the end of your time” or “You are bringing your time to an end” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Idiom](#))

**I will make you a reproach to the nations and a derision in the sight of every land**

The words “reproach” and “derision” can be expressed as verbs. A derision is something or someone that is mocked or ridiculed. AT: “I will make the nations reproach you and every land ridicule you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**a derision in the sight of every land**

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. AT: “cause the people of every land to consider you a derision” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of every land**

This generalization refers to the places who are familiar with Jerusalem and represents the people who live in these places. AT: “of the people of every nearby land” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**translationWords**

- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [nation](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:6-9****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Think about how each of your Israelite kings have used his power to murder people. <sup>7</sup> Your people do not respect their parents; they have oppressed foreigners; they mistreat orphans and widows. <sup>8</sup> You despise my sacred places and practices, and you treat the Sabbath days like any other day. <sup>9</sup> Among you are men who tell lies in order to cause others to be executed. There are those who go to the hilltops and eat food offered to idols, and they openly perform evil acts.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Behold! The rulers of Israel, each one by his own power, have come to you to pour out blood. <sup>7</sup> They have dishonored fathers and mothers within you, and they have performed oppression on the foreigners in your midst. They have mistreated the orphans and the widows within you. <sup>8</sup> You have despised my holy things and have profaned my Sabbaths. <sup>9</sup> Slanderous men have come among you in order to pour out blood, and they eat on the mountains. They perform wickedness in your midst.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaking about the ruler of Israel in Jerusalem.

**Behold**

“Listen.” The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**each one by his own power, have come**

“have each used their authority to come to you.”

**come to you ... in your midst**

“come to your city ... within your city.” The words “you” and “your” refer to Jerusalem.

**to pour out blood**

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. AT: “to murder people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They have dishonored fathers and mothers within you**

“The people of Jerusalem have dishonored their fathers and mothers.” The word “they” refers to the people in Jerusalem.

**performed oppression**

“oppressed”

**they eat on the mountains**

Here “the mountains” refer to the altars on the mountains that are dedicated to idols. They men eat meat that has been sacrificed to the idols in order to be have the blessing of false gods. AT: “they eat the meat that has been sacrificed to idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**perform wickedness in your midst**

“do evil things among you”

**translationWords**

- ruler, rule
- Israel, Israelites
- power, powers
- dishonor, dishonorable
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- holy, holiness
- profane
- Sabbath
- slander, slanderer
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> There are men who sleep with their father's wife, and men who sleep with women during their monthly menstrual periods. <sup>11</sup> There are men who sleep with someone else's wife. Some of your men sleep with their daughters-in-law or with their own sisters or half-sisters. <sup>12</sup> There are among you men who accept bribes in order to cause someone to be executed. You charge interest when you lend people money. You become rich by forcing people to give you money. And you have forgotten me, Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> In this city men uncover the nakedness of their father. Within the city they have violated unclean women during their menstrual period. <sup>11</sup> Men who commit abominations with their neighbors' wives, and men who make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean; men who abuse their own sisters—daughters of their own fathers—all these are among you. <sup>12</sup> These men take bribes among you in order to pour out blood. You have taken interest and gained too much profit, you have damaged your neighbors through oppression, and you have forgotten me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues to speak through Ezekiel about the terrible things that the people of Jerusalem have done.

**you ... They**

These pronouns refer to Jerusalem (the people of Jerusalem).

**The nakedness of a father is revealed**

This means that a son sleeps with his father's wife. AT: "There are men who sleep with their father's wife" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**her impurity**

"her menstrual period"

**They have abused ... commit abominations with ... shamefully unclean ... men who abuse**

These are all ways to express that the men have had slept with women they should not have and how sinful their actions are. AT: “They have raped ... committed abominations by sleeping with ... shamefully unclean by sleeping with them ... men who rape” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to pour out blood**

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. AT: “to murder people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**interest**

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

**you have damaged your neighbors through oppression**

This means that they have oppressed their neighbors by charging them too much interest. AT: “you have oppressed your neighbors and made them poor” or “you have made your neighbors poor by charging too much interest” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you have forgotten me**

Refusing to obey Yahweh is like forgetting that he exists. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [bribe](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:13-16****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> So I will shake my fist at your unfair profits and at the murderers who live among you. <sup>14</sup> When I finish punishing you, you will no longer be courageous. I, Yahweh, have said what I will do to you, and I will do it. <sup>15</sup> I will scatter you among many people groups, and I will make you stop your sinful behavior. <sup>16</sup> When the people of other nations see that you have been humiliated, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> See! With my hand I have struck the dishonest gain that you have made, and the bloodshed that is in your midst. <sup>14</sup> Will your heart stand, will your hands be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you? I, Yahweh, am declaring this, and I will do it. <sup>15</sup> So I will scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands. In this way, I will purge your uncleanness from you. <sup>16</sup> So you will become unclean in the eyes of the nations. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.”  
<sup>[1]</sup> , some ancient copies have .

---

22:16 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *you will become unclean I will give you your inheritance*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Jerusalem by speaking directly to the city of Jerusalem.

**With my hand I have struck**

“I have shaken my fist against” or “I have clapped my hands against.” This is a symbolic action that shows anger and disapproval. AT: “I have shown my anger and disapproval against” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the bloodshed that is in your midst**

“the murdering that happens among you”

**Will your heart stand, will your hands be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you?**

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question to emphasize how hurt they will be when he punishes them. This question may be written as a statement. AT: “Your heart will not stand and your hands will not be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))



**Will your heart stand**

Here the whole person is referred to by his “heart” to emphasize his emotions and will. Here the idea of “standing” is an idiom that means to be courageous. AT: “Will you stand” or “Will you be courageous” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

**will your hands be strong**

Here the whole person is referred to by his “hands.” AT: “will you be strong” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**So I will scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). AT: “So I will cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations”(See: [Parallelism](#))

**purge**

remove something unwanted

**uncleanness**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**So you will become unclean in the eyes of the nations**

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The “eyes” represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “So the nations will consider you unclean” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the nations**

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. AT: “the people in other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh then said to me, <sup>18</sup> "Son of man, your Israelite people have become useless to me. They are like dross to me. They are like the useless copper, tin, iron, and lead that remains after silver is melted in a very hot furnace <sup>19</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you have all become like dross, I will gather you in Jerusalem.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Next the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>18</sup> "Son of man, the house of Israel has become dross to me. All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin, and iron and lead in your midst. They will be like the dross of silver in your furnace. <sup>19</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Because all of you have become like dross, therefore, behold! I am about to gather you into the center of Jerusalem.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the house of Israel has**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites have" or "the Israelite people group has" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**has become dross to me**

Dross is the impurities that are left over after silver or gold has been purified in a furnace. Here Yahweh speaks of the people being worthless to him as if they were dross. AT: "has become as worthless to me as dross" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin ... like the dross of silver in your furnace**

Yahweh continues to speak about how the people have become worthless to him as if they were dross. AT: "All of them are as worthless as the leftover of bronze and tin, and iron and lead that remain after you melt silver in the furnace" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **behold**

“listen.” The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### **translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> People put ore containing silver, copper, iron, lead, and tin in a very hot furnace and melt them in a blazing fire to burn up the impurities. Similarly, I will gather you together inside Jerusalem, and because I am very angry with you, what I will do will be as though I am melting you. <sup>21</sup> It will be as though I am blowing on you with a hot breath that shows that I am very angry, and it will be as though you will melt, <sup>22</sup> as though you will melt like silver melts in a furnace, and then you will know that I, Yahweh, have punished you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> As a collection of silver and bronze, iron, lead and tin in the midst of the furnace must have fire blown against it, I will melt you. So I will gather you in my wrath and fury. I will put you there and blow the fire on it to melt it; so will I gather you in my anger and in my wrath, and I will put you there and pour you out. <sup>21</sup> So I will gather you and blow against you with the fire of my wrath so that you will be poured out in her midst. <sup>22</sup> As melting silver in the middle of a furnace, you will be melted down in its midst, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have poured out my fury against you!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues to describe his punishment of the people of Israel in Jerusalem as metals being melted and purified in a furnace. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**As a collection of silver and bronze ... must have fire blown against it, I will melt you**

Here Yahweh speaks of how he will gather together the people of Jerusalem and punish them by comparing them to how silver, bronze, iron, lead, and tin are put in a furnace and burned. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**So I will gather ... I will put you there ... so will I gather ... I will put you there and pour you out**

These phrases have similar meanings and may be combined. Here Yahweh continues to speak about how he is going to punish the people as if they were metal that he was melting and pouring out. AT: “So I will gather you in my wrath and my fury. I will put you together in Jerusalem and it will be as though I am blowing fire on you to melt you and then pouring you out” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**blow against you with the fire of my wrath**

Here Yahweh speaks of the greatness of his wrath as if it were a fire. AT: “my wrath will be like a fire that I will blow against you to melt you, and then I will pour you out there” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in her midst**

“in Jerusalem.” The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

**As melting silver in the middle of a furnace, you will be melted down in its midst**

Here Yahweh continues to speak about how he is going to punish the people as if they were metal that he was melting and pouring out. AT: “It will be as though you were melted down like silver in the middle of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**have poured out my fury against you**

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as if he were pouring out his fury against them. AT: “have punished you in my anger” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [fire](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:23-25****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>24</sup> "Son of man, say to the Israelite people, 'You are disgusting to Yahweh, completely unacceptable to him. So Yahweh is angry with you. There will be no rain in your country.' <sup>25</sup> Their leaders are like lions that tear apart the animals that they have killed. The leaders destroy their people. They steal treasures and other valuable things from people, and they murder many men and make their wives into widows.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>24</sup> "Son of man, say to her, 'You are a land that has not been cleansed. There is no rain on the day of wrath! <sup>25</sup> There is a conspiracy of her prophets in her midst, like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. They consume life and take precious wealth; they make many widows within her! <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies have .

---

22:25 <sup>[1]</sup>Instead of *There is a conspiracy of her prophets within her whose princes*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Jerusalem.

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**You are a land that has not been cleansed**

This can be stated in active form. The word "land" here refers to Israel and to the people who live there. AT: "You are a land and a people that is unclean" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**not been cleansed**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**There is no rain on the day of wrath**

Rain is used as an example of God's blessing. AT: "There is no blessing on the day of wrath" (See: [Idiom](#))

**There is a conspiracy of her prophets in her midst**

The word "her" refers to Israel. AT: "The prophets within Israel plot conspiracies"

**conspiracy**

a secret plan made by two or more people to do something harmful or illegal

**like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. They consume life and take precious wealth**

This compares the prophets of Israel to lions who attack and kill their victims. AT: "They kill people for they are like roaring lions who attack and kill their prey. They take peoples' precious wealth" (See: [Simile](#))

**they make many widows within her**

The word "her" refers to Israel. They "make many widows" by killing married men. AT: "they make many women into widows by killing their husbands" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [lion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 22:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Their priests disobey my laws and dishonor my sacred things by saying that there is no difference between things that are sacred and those that are not sacred, and by ignoring my laws about resting on the Sabbath days. As a result, they no longer honor me. <sup>27</sup> Their officials are like wolves that tear apart the animals that they have killed. They murder people in order to get their money. <sup>28</sup> Their prophets try to cover up those sins by saying they have received visions from God. They say, ‘This is what Yahweh the Lord says,’ when I have said nothing to them.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Her priests do violence to my law, and they profane my holy things. They do not distinguish between holy things and profane things, and do not teach the difference between the unclean and the clean. They hide their eyes from my Sabbaths so that I am profaned in their midst. <sup>27</sup> Her princes within her are like wolves tearing apart their victims. They pour out blood and destroy life, to make a profit dishonestly. <sup>28</sup> Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash; they see false visions and predict falsehoods to them. They say “The Lord Yahweh says this” when Yahweh has not spoken.

**translationNotes****her**

This pronoun refers to Jerusalem.

**do violence to my law**

“disobey my laws”

**the unclean and the clean**

This refers to unclean and clean things. Something that God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. AT: “things that are unclean and things that are clean” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**They hide their eyes from my Sabbaths**

This speaks of the people ignoring and not observing the Sabbath and if they were hiding their eyes from the Sabbath” AT: “They ignore my Sabbaths” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that I am profaned in their midst**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “and profane me among themselves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Her princes within her are like wolves tearing apart their victims**

This compares Israel's princes to wolves who attack and kill their victims. (See: [Simile](#))

**They pour out blood and destroy life**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the violence that the princes practice. AT: "They murder people" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash**

This speaks of the prophets trying to hide these sins as if they were something that they could paint over with whitewash. AT: "It is like her prophets have painted over their sins with whitewash" or "Their prophets try to hide these evil things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**whitewash**

This is a solution that is painted on things to make them white that is similar to white paint.

**predict falsehoods to them**

"predict lies for the princes." The word "them" refers to the princes.

**translationWords**

- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [profane](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [wolf, wolves, wild dogs](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:29****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> The Israelite people force others to give them money, and they rob people. They oppress poor people, and they mistreat foreigners among them by not treating them fairly in the courts.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> The people of the land have oppressed through extortion and plundered through robbery, and they mistreat the poor and needy, and oppress the foreigner without justice.

**translationNotes****have oppressed ... and plundered**

The understood words may be supplied. AT: “have oppressed people ... and plundered others” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**extortion**

This refers to when someone threatens or hurts another person in order to make them give him money.

**the poor and needy**

This refers to poor and needy people. AT: “those who are poor and needy” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**translationWords**

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 22:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> I looked among them to find a man who would pray for the people and cause them to repent so that I would not need to destroy them. But I did not find anyone. <sup>31</sup> So because I am very angry with them, I will severely punish them for all the wicked things that they have done. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> So I searched for a man from them who would build up a wall and who would stand before me in its breach for the land so I would not destroy it, but I found no one. <sup>31</sup> So I will pour out my indignation upon them. I will finish them with the fire of my indignation and set their way on their own heads—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh compares the leaders of Jerusalem to a wall and himself to an invading army. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a man from them who would build up a wall**

This speaks of a man who would take responsibility to pray for the people and to lead them to repentance as if that man were to build a wall to protect the people from Yahweh. AT: “a man from among them who would act like he built a wall” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**stand before me in its breach**

Its “breach” refers to a gap in the wall. This speaks of the man defending the people before Yahweh as if he were a warrior standing in the breach to defend the city. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the land so I would not destroy it**

Here the “land” represents the people who live there. AT: “for the people so that I would not destroy them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**pour out my indignation upon them**

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as if his indignation were a liquid that he poured out on them. AT: “I will punish the people because of my indignation for them” or “I will punish the people because of my anger against them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**indignation**

“wrath.” This refers to strong displeasure or anger against something that is wicked.

**I will finish them with the fire of my indignation**

This speaks of how harsh Yahweh’s judgement is by comparing it to a fire. Here destroying the people is referred to as “finishing” them. AT: “I will destroy them with my wrath which is as intense as a blazing fire” or “I will destroy them with my wrath” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

**set their way on their own heads**

Setting something on a person’s head refers to making them carry a burden or take responsibility for it. AT: “make them take responsibility for what they have done” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [head](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 22 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 23 General Notes

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Israel and Judah have been unfaithful to God by worshiping idols. They are compared to two unfaithful wives who have repeatedly committed adultery. (See: [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 23:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 23:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to me, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, listen to this parable about Jerusalem and Samaria. Once there were two women, daughters of the same mother. <sup>3</sup> They lived in Egypt. And from the time that they were young women, they became prostitutes. In that land, men fondled their breasts and caressed their young bosoms. <sup>4</sup> The older sister was Oholah, and her younger sister was Oholibah. It was as though they later became my wives. Later they gave birth to sons and daughters. Oholah represents Samaria, and Oholibah represents Jerusalem.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, there were two women, daughters of the same mother. <sup>3</sup> They acted as prostitutes in Egypt in the time of their youth. They acted as prostitutes there. Their breasts were squeezed and their virgin nipples were fondled there. <sup>4</sup> Their names were Oholah—the older sister—and Oholibah—her younger sister. Then they became mine and bore sons and daughters. Their names mean this: Oholah means Samaria, and Oholibah means Jerusalem.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks of how the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria have been unfaithful to him in a metaphor in which he refers to them as two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**Their breasts were squeezed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Men squeezed their breasts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**their virgin nipples were fondled there**

This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase and emphasizes the immoral behavior of the two young women. This can be stated in active form. AT: “there men fondled their virgin nipples” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**fondled**

to be touched lovingly or softly

**they became mine**

This means that he married them and they became his wives. AT: “they became my wives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Their names mean this: Oholah means Samaria, and Oholibah means Jerusalem**

“Oholah represents Samaria, and Oholibah represents Jerusalem.” In this metaphor Samaria is spoken of as if it were Oholah and Jerusalem is spoken of as if it were Oholibah. This speaks of how these cities were unfaithful to Yahweh as if they were unfaithful wives. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Oholah**

This is the name of a woman that means “her tent.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Oholibah**

This is the name of a woman that means “my tent is in her.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 23:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Oholah acted like a prostitute while she was still my wife. She desired to sleep with those whom she loved—soldiers from Assyria. <sup>6</sup> Some of them were army officers and commanders. They wore beautiful purple uniforms. They were all handsome young men who rode horses. <sup>7</sup> She acted like a prostitute toward all the important Assyrian officials. I could no longer accept her as belonging to me, because she was worshiping all the idols of the men she wanted to sleep with.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> But Oholah acted as a prostitute even when she was mine; she lusted for her lovers, for the Assyrians who were dominant, <sup>6</sup> the governor who wore violet, and for his officials, who were strong and handsome, all of them men riding on horses. <sup>7</sup> So she gave herself as a prostitute to them, to all the best of Assyria's men, and she made herself unclean with everyone she lusted for—and with all their idols.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**when she was mine**

This refers to when she was his wife. AT: “while she was still my wife” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**dominant**

“in control”

**all the best of Assyria's men**

This identifies who the word “them” refers to.

**she made herself unclean with everyone she lusted for—and with all their idols**

This implies that she slept with all of these men and worshiped the idols they worshiped. AT: “she made herself unclean by sleeping with everyone she lusted for and by worshiping all their idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [lust](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [horse](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> When she was a young woman in Egypt, she started being a prostitute, and she allowed young men to caress her breasts and have sex with her. When she became older, she did not quit acting like a prostitute.

<sup>9</sup> So I allowed the Assyrian soldiers, whom she wanted to sleep with, to capture her. <sup>10</sup> They stripped all her clothes off her. They took away her sons and daughters. And then they killed her with a sword. Other women started talking about how she was disgraced, and about how she deserved to suffer.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> For she had not left her prostitute behavior behind in Egypt, when they had slept with her when she had been a young girl, when they first began to fondle her virgin breasts, when they first began to pour out their promiscuous behavior on her. <sup>9</sup> Therefore I gave her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians for whom she lusted. <sup>10</sup> They uncovered her nakedness, took her sons and daughters, killed her with the sword, and she became notorious among other women, so they executed judgment on her.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to pour out their promiscuous behavior on her**

This speaks of the men acting promiscuously towards her as if their promiscuous behavior were a large amount of water that they were pouring out on her. AT: “to act promiscuously towards her” or “to act lustfully towards her” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I gave her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians**

The word “hand” refers to power or control. The two phrases have the same meaning and the second phrase explains that “her lovers” were “the Assyrians.” AT: “I gave her over to her lovers, the Assyrians” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

**they passed judgment on her**

This is an idiom. AT: “they talked about her disgrace” or “she had a bad reputation among them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- sword
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Her younger sister Oholibah saw those things that happened to Oholah, but she was also a prostitute, and she desired to sleep with men even more than her older sister had desired. <sup>12</sup> Oholibah also wanted to sleep with the Assyrian soldiers. Some of them were army officers and commanders. They all wore beautiful uniforms. They were all handsome young men. And they rode horses. <sup>13</sup> I saw what she did that caused me to be unable to accept her, just like her older sister.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Her sister Oholibah saw this, but she lusted even more passionately and acted like a prostitute even more than her sister. <sup>12</sup> She lusted for the Assyrians, the governors and the dominating officials who dressed impressively, who were men riding horses. All of them were strong, handsome men. <sup>13</sup> I saw that she had made herself unclean. It was the same for both sisters.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Oholibah**

This is the name of a woman that means “my tent is in her.” See how you translated this name in [Ezekiel 23:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**It was the same for both sisters**

This refers to how they had both made themselves unclean. AT: “Both sisters became unclean through their acts of prostitution” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sister](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> But she did even worse things. She saw drawings of men from Babylonia on the walls, painted in red. <sup>15</sup> The men in the drawings had belts around their waists and long turbans on their heads. They all resembled officers from Babylonia who rode in chariots.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then she increased her prostitution even more. She saw men carved on walls, figures of Chaldeans painted in red, <sup>15</sup> wearing belts around their waists, with flowing turbans on their heads. All of them had the appearance of officers of chariot troops, the likeness of sons of Babylonia, whose native land is Chaldea.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**turbans**

hats made out of long cloth and wrapped around the top of a man's head

**had the appearance of officers of chariot troops, the likeness of sons**

The abstract nouns "likeness" and "appearance" can be translated with verbal phrases. AT: "appeared the way officers of chariot troops do, and they looked like sons" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**chariot troops**

soldiers who drive chariots and who run ahead of and beside them

**sons of Babylonia**

"Babylonians"

**translationWords**

- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 23:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> As soon as she saw those drawings, she wanted to sleep with those men, and she sent messages to them in Babylonia. <sup>17</sup> Then the soldiers from Babylonia came to her, lay in bed with her, and slept with her. Then she became disgusted with them and turned away from them.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> As soon as her eyes saw them, she lusted for them, so she sent out messengers to them in Chaldea. <sup>17</sup> Then the Babylonians came to her and to her bed of lust, and they made her unclean with their promiscuousness. By what she had done she was made unclean, so she turned herself away from them in disgust.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**her bed of lust**

This refers to her bed where she slept with men and acted lustfully. AT: “her bed where she acted lustfully” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they made her unclean with their promiscuousness**

This means that they slept with the woman. AT: “they slept with her and made her unclean” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so she turned herself away from them**

This is an idiom. AT: “so she rejected them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> But when she continued to openly act like a prostitute and to show herself naked to others, I became disgusted with her and rejected her, as I had rejected her older sister. <sup>19</sup> But she became even more immoral, as she remembered when she was a young woman learning to be a prostitute in Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> When she displayed her acts of prostitution and uncovered her nakedness,  
I turned away from her, just as I had turned away in disgust from her sister.

<sup>19</sup> Then she increased her prostitution as she remembered the days of her youth,  
when she was a prostitute in the land of Egypt.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**my soul turned away from her ... my soul turned away from her sister**

Here the “soul” represents one’s emotions. AT: “I became disgusted with her and rejected her ... I became disgusted with her sister and rejected her” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> There she wanted to sleep with those who loved her, whose private parts were very long, like those of donkeys, and whose reproductive emissions were huge, like those of horses. <sup>21</sup> So she desired to be immoral like she was when she was young, when men in Egypt caressed her bosom and fondled her young breasts.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> So she lusted for her lovers,

whose private parts were like those of donkeys, and whose reproductive emissions were like those of horses.

<sup>21</sup> This is how you committed shameful acts of your youth, when the Egyptians fondled your nipples and squeezed your young breasts.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**whose private parts were like those of donkeys**

This compares the size of the mens' private parts to those of a donkey to show how wicked Oholibah's desires were. This is an exaggeration as they could not be as large as those of a donkey. AT: "whose private parts were very long, like those of a donkey" (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**whose reproductive emissions were like those of horses**

This compares the volume of the mens' emissions to those of a horse to show how wicked Oholibah's desires were. This is an exaggeration as they could not be like those of a horse. AT: "whose reproductive emissions were huge, like those of a horse" (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**translationWords**

- [donkey, mule](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Oholibah represents you people of Jerusalem. Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord say: Those soldiers who loved you but from whom you turned away because you became disgusted with them—I will make them angry with you. I will make them come and attack you from every side— <sup>23</sup> soldiers from Babylon and all the other places in Babylonia, and their allies from the regions of Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the army of Assyria. Yes, all of them are handsome young men, army officers and commanders, officers who have great fame, all riding on horses.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore, Oholibah, the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I will turn your lovers against you.

Those from whom you turned away, I will bring them against you from every side:

<sup>23</sup> the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the Assyrians with them, strong, handsome men, governors and commanders, all of them are officers and men of reputation, all of them riding on horses.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Behold!**

"Listen!" The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I will bring them against you from every side**

"I will cause them to attack you from all directions"

**the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the Assyrians with them**

This does not refer to all of the people who live in these places, but rather to soldiers from there. AT: "soldiers from Babylon and all of Chaldea, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the soldiers of Assyria with them" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**Pekod, Shoa, and Koa**

These are the names places in Babylonia. These places represent the soldiers from these places. AT: “those from Pekod, Shoa, and Koa” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**strong, handsome men, governors and commanders ... all of them riding on horses**

This is the description of the men of Assyria that Oholah had slept with who are now turning against her. This is similar to the description given in [Ezekiel 23:6](#).

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Their huge army will attack you with weapons, riding in chariots and pulling wagons that will carry the army supplies. They will surround you, carrying large and small shields, and wearing helmets. I will allow them to capture you and punish you in the way that they always punish their enemies. <sup>25</sup> Because I am very angry with you, I will cause them to act furiously toward you. They will cut off your noses and your ears. Then, those who are still alive, they will kill with their swords. They will take away your sons and daughters, and it will be like a fire that burns up your descendants.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> They will come against you with weapons, and with chariots and wagons, and with a great crowd of people.

They will set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you all around.

I will give them the opportunity to punish you, and they will punish you with their actions.

<sup>25</sup> For I will set my jealous anger on you, and they will deal with you in fury. They will cut off your noses and your ears, and your survivors will fall by the sword. They will take away your sons and your daughters, and your survivors will be devoured by fire.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will come against you**

This is an idiom. AT: “will attack you” (See: [Idiom](#))

**with weapons**

The Hebrew word translated here as “weapons” is rare. Many modern versions translate it in this way, but some versions leave this phrase out.

**They will set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you all around**

These defensive items are used to refer to various types of soldiers. AT: “Soldiers will attack you on all sides carrying large shields, small shields, and wearing helmets” (See: [Metonymy](#))



**For I will set my jealous anger on you, and they will deal with you in fury**

Here Yahweh speaks of causing the armies to attack them because he is angry with them as if his anger were something that he was placing upon them. AT: "Because I am very jealous for you, I will cause them to act furiously towards you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They will cut off your noses and your ears**

This describes the punishment in Babylon for married women who slept with men that are not their husbands. AT: "They will punish you as an adulteress, by cutting of your noses and your ears" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**your survivors will fall by the sword**

The word "fall" is a euphemism for "die". The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill with swords. AT: "men will kill your survivors with their swords" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**your survivors will be devoured by fire**

This speaks of the survivors being burned by fire as if the fire were an animal attacking and eating them. This can be stated in active form. AT: "your survivors will be burned by fire" or "fire will burn your survivors" (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [chariot](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [sword](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> They will strip off your clothes and your fine jewelry, and they will take them away. <sup>27</sup> In that way, I will stop all the immoral behavior that began when you became a prostitute in Egypt. You will no longer desire to do those things; you will no longer think about what you did in Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> They will strip you of your clothes and take away all of your jewelry. <sup>27</sup> So I will remove your shameful behavior from you and your acts of prostitution from the land of Egypt. You will not lift up your eyes toward them with longing, and you will think of Egypt no longer.'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**from the land of Egypt**

This refers to her prostitution as beginning in Egypt. AT: "which you began in the land of Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**You will not lift up your eyes toward them with longing**

This is a way to refer to a person turning their head to look at something. Here looking represents desire. AT: "You will not look toward them with longing" or "You will not desire these things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will think of Egypt no longer**

Here "Egypt" represents the shameful things that she did in Egypt. AT: "you will think about the things you did in Egypt no longer" or "you will not think about what you did in Egypt any more" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord say: Those whom you hate, those with whom you became disgusted and from whom you turned away—I am about to allow them to capture you. <sup>29</sup> They will be cruel; they will take away everything that you own. They will leave you completely naked, and everyone will see that you truly are a prostitute.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I will give you into the hand of the ones you hate, back into the hand of the ones from whom you had turned away. <sup>29</sup> They will deal with you hatefully; they will take all your possessions and abandon you naked and bare, and your nakedness will be uncovered just as when you engaged in promiscuity and prostitutions.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Behold**

Those word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**give you into the hand of the ones you hate ... into the hand of the ones from whom you had turned away**

These two phrases have the same meaning. It means that they will be captured by the men they used to prostitute themselves to. AT: “allow you to be captured by those you hate and had turned away from” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**into the hand**

Here the word “hand” refers to control. AT: “into the control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**unclothed and bare**

These two words mean the same thing and emphasize that she will be completely naked. (See: [Doublet](#))

**The naked shame of your prostitution will be revealed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They will reveal the naked shame of your prostitution”

**your shameful behavior and your promiscuousness**

These phrases both describe her prostitution and emphasize how bad this behavior was. The understood words in the parallel phrase may be supplied. AT: “your shameful behavior and your promiscuousness will be revealed” or “they will reveal your shameful behavior and your promiscuousness” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> It is because of what you have done that you will be punished in that way; you have been an immoral prostitute; you have slept with men of other nations, and you have made it impossible for me to accept you, because you have worshiped their idols. <sup>31</sup> You have behaved like the people of Samaria, who are like your older sister. So I will cause you to be punished as they were punished.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> These things will be done to you in your acting like a prostitute, lusting after nations by which you became unclean with their idols. <sup>31</sup> You have walked in the way of your sister, so I will put her cup of punishment into your hand.'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**These things will be done to you in your acting**

“These things will be done to you because you have acted.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “These things will happen to you because you have acted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**acting like a prostitute, lusting after nations**

Ezekiel speaks of Oholibah, who represents Judah ([Ezekiel 23:4](#)), as if she were a prostitute sleeping with the men of many nations for money. He wants the people of Judah to understand that Yahweh to punish them because they were worshiping the idols of other nations so they could get those nations' wealth and power. AT: “acting like a prostitute, lusting after men of other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**became unclean with their idols**

She became unclean by worshiping the idols. AT: “became unclean by worshiping their idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**unclean**

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so I will put her cup of punishment into your hand**

This refers to Oholibah's punishment that she will receive as if it were a cup of wine. AT: "so I will cause you to be punished in the same way as your sister" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [lust](#)
- [nation](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:32****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You will suffer when you drink from a cup that is deep and large.

It will be as though you will drink from the same cup that the people of Samaria drank from.

And it is because you will drink what it is in that cup, many people will scorn you and make fun of you,

because when you drink from the cup it will make you drunk and then you will be overcome with sadness.

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, 'You will drink your sister's cup that is deep and large.

You will become a laughingstock and a subject for derision—this cup contains a great amount.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You will drink your sister's cup**

Here Yahweh speaks of punishment as if it were a cup of wine the woman drank. AT: "You will drink the same cup of punishment as your sister" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**your sister's cup that is**

Here the "cup" represents what is in the cup. AT: "from your sister's cup that is" or "all that is in your sister's cup, and her cup is" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a laughingstock ... a subject for derision**

Both of these phrases refer to a person who is laughed at and criticized because of their foolish behavior. Derision is mocking or ridiculing something or someone. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**this cup contains a great amount**

This sentence does not say what is in the cup because it is understood by reading [Ezekiel 23:31](#). AT: "this cup contains a great amount of punishment" (See: [Ellipsis](#))



**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:33-34****UDB:**

<sup>33</sup> When you become very drunk, you will become very sad,  
because drinking what is in that cup will cause you to be ruined; everyone will leave you.

This is what happened to the people of Samaria, who are like your sister.

<sup>34</sup> You will drink all the liquid that is in that cup;  
then you will break that cup into pieces  
and use those pieces to cut your breasts because you will be very sad.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.

**ULB:**

<sup>33</sup> You will be filled with drunkenness and sorrow,  
the cup of horror and devastation;  
the cup of your sister Samaria.

<sup>34</sup> You will drink it and drain it empty; then you will shatter it and tear your breasts with the pieces.

For I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You will be filled with drunkenness and sorrow**

This speaks of being very drunk and full of sorrow as if drunkenness and sorrow were things that filled her body. AT: “You will become very drunk and very sad” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the cup of horror and devastation**

“the cup that causes horror and devastation.” The words “horror” and “devastation” share similar meanings here and emphasize how terrible her punishment will be. AT: “for what is in that cup causes horror and devastation” (See: [Doublet](#))

**the cup of your sister Samaria**

Oholibah's sister Oholah represents Samaria. Samaria is called by its name but still referred to as a sister. The cup is a symbol for the punishment that she received. AT: "for this is the same cup of punishment that your sister, who represents Samaria, drank" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**tear your breasts**

"cut your breasts"

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [horror, horrified](#)
- [devastate, devastation](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:35****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Because you have forgotten me and rejected me, I must punish you for your immoral behavior and for being a prostitute.”

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Because you have forgotten me and thrown me away behind your back, so also you will bear the consequences of your shameful behavior and acts of sexual immorality.’”

**translationNotes****thrown me away behind your back**

Yahweh speaks of Oholibah rejecting him as if he were an object that she had thrown behind her back and forgotten. AT: “rejected me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:36-37****UDB:**

<sup>36</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, judge the people of those two cities represented by Oholah and Oholibah. You must remind them of their detestable behavior. <sup>37</sup> It is as though they have committed adultery and have murdered people. They have been unfaithful to me by worshiping idols. They have even sacrificed their own children, who belonged to me, in fire.

**ULB:**

<sup>36</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah? So present to them their disgusting actions, <sup>37</sup> since they have committed adultery, and since there is blood on their hands. They have committed adultery with their idols, and they have even put their sons into the fire, as food for their idols.

**translationNotes****Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah?**

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question as a command for Ezekiel. This question can be written as a statement. The cities of Jerusalem and Samaria are represented by Oholah and Oholibah. AT: "Son of man, you will judge Oholah and Oholibah!" or "Son of man, judge the people of those two cities represented by Oholah and Oholibah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#).

**there is blood on their hands**

This is an idiom. AT: "they have murdered people" (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses](#)
- [blood](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [son, sons](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:38-39****UDB:**

<sup>38</sup> They have done other disgraceful things: they have caused my temple to be an unacceptable place for worship, and they treat the Sabbath days like any other day. <sup>39</sup> On the same day that they sacrificed their children to their idols, they entered my temple, which caused it to be an unacceptable place for worshipping me. They did these things in my own house!

**ULB:**

<sup>38</sup> Then they continue to do this to me: They make my sanctuary unclean, and on the same day they defile my Sabbaths. <sup>39</sup> For when they had slaughtered their children for their idols, then they came to my sanctuary on the same day to defile it! So behold! This is what they have done in the middle of my house.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks about how the people of Jerusalem and Samaria have been unfaithful to him.

**unclean**

A person or thing God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**on the same day they defile my Sabbaths**

The phrase “same day” refers to the previous phrase “make my sanctuary unclean.” AT: “on the same day on which they make my sanctuary unclean, they defile my Sabbaths” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**behold!**

“indeed!” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**in the middle of my house**

This refers to the house in general. The reference to the “middle” emphasizes that what was done happened openly in the temple and defiled the whole place. AT: “in my own house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- [sanctuary](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [house](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 23:40-41****UDB:**

<sup>40</sup> They sent messages to men in countries far away. And as those men were coming, the two sisters bathed themselves for them, painted their eyebrows, and put on jewelry. <sup>41</sup> They sat on a beautiful couch, with a table in front of it on which they had put incense and olive oil that belonged to me.

**ULB:**

<sup>40</sup> You sent out for men who came from far away, to whom messengers had been sent—now behold. They indeed came, those for whom you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry. <sup>41</sup> There you sat on a beautiful bed and at a table arranged before it where you placed my incense and my oil.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh again refers to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You sent out for men who came from far away, to whom messengers had been sent**

These two phrases have the same meaning. This means that they sent messengers to men far away requesting for them to come to them. AT: “You sent messengers to men who came to you from far away” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**behold**

“listen.” The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry**

These are things done by a woman to make her appear more beautiful to a man.

**you bathed ... you sat**

Here the word “you” switches to singular and refers to only one sister, but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### **my incense and my oil**

These are items used in worship to Yahweh.

### **translationWords**

- [incense](#)
- [oil](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:42****UDB:**

<sup>42</sup> Soon there was a noisy crowd around them. Among the crowd there were drunkards who had come from the desert of Arabia. They put bracelets on the arms of the two sisters, and they put beautiful crowns on their heads.

**ULB:**

<sup>42</sup> So the sound of a noisy crowd was around her; including all kinds of men, even Sabeans were brought in from the wilderness, and they put bracelets on their hands and beautiful crowns on their heads.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to refer to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**So the sound of a noisy crowd was around her**

The sound of the crowd is used to refer to the crowd of people. AT: “So there was a noisy crowd around her” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**was around her ... on their hands**

“was around her ... on her and her sister’s hands.” This verse begins by referring to one of the sisters but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. In the second part of the verse it switches back to referring to both sisters with the word “their.”

**Sabeans were brought**

This can be stated in active form. The word “Sabeans” refers to people from Sheba. AT: “Sabeans had come” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

**they put bracelets**

The word “they” refers to the men.

**translationWords**

- [drunk, drunkard](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:43-45****UDB:**

<sup>43</sup> Then I said about the woman who had become exhausted by sleeping with many men, ‘Now those men will act toward her as though she were a prostitute, because that is all that she is.’ <sup>44</sup> So they slept with those two women, Oholah and Oholibah, as men sleep with prostitutes. <sup>45</sup> But righteous men will condemn them to be punished, as women who commit adultery and who murder others are punished, because those women commit adultery and they murder others.

**ULB:**

<sup>43</sup> Then I said of her who was worn out by adultery, ‘Now they will be sexually immoral with her, and she with them.’ <sup>44</sup> They went in to her and slept with her as men go in to be with a prostitute. In this way they slept with Oholah and Oholibah, who were immoral women. <sup>45</sup> But righteous men will pass judgment and punish them as adulteresses, and they will punish them with the sentence for those who shed blood, because they are adulteresses and blood is on their hands.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to refer to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**her who was worn out ... with her, and she with them**

This refers to one of the sisters but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here.

**They went in to her and slept with her as men go in to be with a prostitute**

This compares the way men slept with her to the way men sleep with a prostitute. AT: “They slept with her in the same way that men sleep with a prostitute” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**They went in to her**

“They went in to where she was” or “They went to her”

**In this way they slept with Oholah and Oholibah**

“This is how they slept with Oholah and Oholibah”

**pass judgment**

This is an idiom. AT: “condemn” (See: [Idiom](#))

**who shed blood ... blood is on their hands**

This is an idiom. AT: “who murder people ... murderers” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses
- sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication
- guilt, guilty
- righteous, righteousness
- condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation
- punish, punishment
- blood
- hand, right hand, to hand over

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 23:46-47****UDB:**

<sup>46</sup> So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Bring a mob to attack Samaria and Jerusalem, and allow that mob to cause the people of those cities to be terrified; allow the mob to rob them. <sup>47</sup> The mob will throw stones at them to kill them; they will cut them into pieces with their swords, they will kill their sons and daughters, and they will burn down their houses.

**ULB:**

<sup>46</sup> So the Lord Yahweh says this: I will raise up a company against them and give them up to be terrorized and plundered. <sup>47</sup> Then that company will stone them with stones and cut them down with their swords. They will kill their sons and daughters and burn down their houses.

**translationNotes****raise up a company**

The phrase “raise up” is an idiom. AT: “gather a large group of people” (See: [Idiom](#))

**against them and give them**

“against Jerusalem and Samaria and give them”

**give them up**

Yahweh gives up the responsibility to take care of them and allows them to suffer.

**to be terrorized and plundered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “for the company to terrorize and plunder them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**cut them down**

This is an idiom. AT: “kill them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 23:48-49****UDB:**

<sup>48</sup> In that way I will cause them to stop their immoral behavior. This will warn other women to not imitate what you people of Jerusalem are doing. <sup>49</sup> I will punish you people of Jerusalem for your immoral behavior and for worshiping idols. Then you will know that I, Yahweh the Lord, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>48</sup> For I will remove shameful behavior from the land and discipline all the women so they will no longer act like prostitutes. <sup>49</sup> So they will set your shameful behavior against you. You will bear the guilt of your sins with your idols, and in this way you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****So they will set your**

“So the company will set your.” The word “they” refers to the “company” of people from [Ezekiel 23:47](#).

**set your shameful behavior against you**

This is an idiom. AT: “cause you to accept responsibility for your shameful behavior” or “punish you for your shameful behavior” (See: [Idiom](#))

**bear the guilt of your sins with your idols**

“accept responsibility for the guilt of your sins with your idols.” This implies that they will be punished for their sins. AT: “receive the punishment for sinning by worshiping your idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- shame, shameful, ashamed
- discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- know, knowledge, make known

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 23 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 24 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Too many sins to be forgiven

The people of Jerusalem cannot be cleaned from their sin. (See: [clean](#), [cleans](#), [cleaned](#), [cleanse](#), [cleansed](#), [cleansing](#), [wash](#), [washing](#), [washed](#), [washes](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Jerusalem is compared to a pot, so rusted that it cannot be cleaned from its rust. They have been completely rotted by their sin. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 24:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 24:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Almost nine years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the tenth day of the tenth month of that year, Yahweh gave me this message: <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, write down what day of the month this is. On this day the army of the king of Babylon has surrounded Jerusalem.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me in the ninth year, in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, write for yourself the name of this day, this exact day, for this exact day the king of Babylon has besieged Jerusalem.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**in the ninth year**

"in the 9th year." This refers to how long they had been in exile under King Jehoiachin. AT: "in the ninth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month**

"the tenth day of the tenth month" or "the 10th day of the 10th month." This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**the king of Babylon has besieged**

The army of Babylon is referred to by its leader. AT: “the army of the king of Babylon has besieged”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Tell those rebellious Israelite people in Babylon a parable. Say this to them: This is what Yahweh the Lord says:

‘Pour water into the cooking pot  
and put the pot on the fire.

<sup>4</sup> Put into the pot some pieces of meat from one of your best sheep:  
put in the leg and shoulder, which are the best pieces.

Then fill the rest of the pot with the best bones.

<sup>5</sup> Pile wood on the fire,  
and cook the bones and the meat in the boiling water.’

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> So speak a proverb against this rebellious house, a parable. Say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this:

Place the cooking pot. Place it and pour water into it.

<sup>4</sup> Gather pieces of food within it, every good piece—the thigh and shoulder—  
and fill it with the best bones.

<sup>5</sup> Take the best of the flock and pile up the bones under it.  
Bring it to a boil and cook the bones in it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

**this rebellious house**

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). AT: “this rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Gather pieces of food**

Here “food” refers specifically to meat. AT: “Place pieces of meat” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the best of the flock**

Here the “flock” refers to sheep, not birds.

**pile up the bones under it**

Some cultures add bones to a fire because they burn longer than wood. This refers to the bones that remained after the best bones were placed in the pot. AT: “place the rest of the bones under the pot to fuel the fire” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [proverb](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [house](#)
- [parable, parables](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:6****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Do that because this is what Yahweh the Lord says:

’Terrible things will happen to Jerusalem; it is city that is full of murderers,  
a city that is like a corroded copper pot,  
and the corrosion cannot be removed.

Take the pieces of meat out of the pot,  
but do not choose which pieces to take out.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the city of blood, a cooking pot that has rust in it and that rust will not come out of it. Take piece after piece from it, but do not cast lots for it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

**the city of blood**

Here “blood” is a reference to “murder.” AT: “the city of murderers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a cooking pot**

Yahweh continues to compare Jerusalem to a cooking pot. AT: “it is like a cooking pot” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**rust**

the red material that forms on metal. Rust eats away at metal and eventually destroys it

**Take piece after piece**

Yahweh does not give this command to a specific person. This is a general command given to an unspecified person within this metaphor.



**but do not cast lots for it**

Casting lots was a way of choosing which pieces of meat to take out, but because Yahweh wants to take out all of the pieces of meat, there is no need to cast lots.

**translationWords**

- [woe](#)
- [blood](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> The blood of the people who were murdered in Jerusalem is still there;  
they were murdered on the bare rocks,  
not on the soil, where their blood could be covered.

<sup>8</sup> But I am the one who caused the blood of those who were murdered to be smeared on the bare rock,  
where their blood could not be covered;  
I did that in order that I could see it and then be angry and get revenge.'

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> For her blood is in the midst of her. She has set it on the smooth rock; she has not poured it out on the ground to cover it with dust, <sup>8</sup> so it brings fury up to exact vengeance. I placed her blood on the smooth rock so it could not be covered.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

**For her blood is in the midst of her**

This means that the blood from those who were murdered in Jerusalem is still there. AT: “For the blood of those who were murdered among her is still there” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**her**

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem, which is represented by the cooking pot.

**She has set it on the smooth rock; she has not poured it out on the ground to cover it with dust**

This personifies Jerusalem as a person who murdered the people and chose where to put their blood. AT: “They were murdered on the smooth rocks; not on the dirt where the dust would hide their blood” or “Their blood fell on the smooth rocks; it did not fall on the ground where the dust would cover it” (See: [Personification](#))

**has set it on the smooth rock**

“has put the blood on bare rocks”

**so it brings fury up to exact vengeance**

Here Yahweh is speaking about himself taking revenge on those who murdered the people in Jerusalem. AT: “in order that I could see it and then be angry and get revenge” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**so it could not be covered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that no one could cover it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say:

‘Terrible things will happen to that city that is full of murderers!

It will be as though I also will pile high the wood in the fire.

<sup>10</sup> So heap on the wood

and light the fire!

Cook the meat well,

and mix some spices with it;

cook it until the bones are black.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the city of blood. I will also enlarge the pile of wood.

<sup>10</sup> Stack up the wood and kindle the fire. Cook the meat well and mix in the spices and let the bones be charred.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

**the city of blood**

Here “blood” is a reference to “murder.” AT: “the city of murderers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will also enlarge the pile of wood**

It is implied that the pile of wood is under the cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. “I will make the pile of wood on the fire under you even bigger” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**kindle the fire**

“light the fire”

### let the bones be charred

This can be stated in active form. AT: “burn the bones” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then set the empty pot on the coals of the fire  
until the pot becomes very hot and the copper glows,  
so that the corrosion will disappear.

<sup>12</sup> It is as though I tried to get rid of that corrosion,  
but I was not able to do it,  
not even by putting that pot on the fire.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then set the pot on its coals empty, in order to heat and scorch its bronze, so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed.' <sup>12</sup> She has become weary because of toil, but her corrosion has not gone out of her by the fire.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

**scorch**

to burn the surface of something

**so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "to melt the uncleanness within it and to consume its corrosion" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**uncleanness**

A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**corrosion**

"rust"

**consumed**

“burnt away”

**She has become weary**

Here the word “she” refers to the cooking pot. This is the cooking pot that is metaphorical for Jerusalem. AT: “Jerusalem has become tired” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**toil**

difficult labor

**but her corrosion has not gone out of her by the fire**

The phrase “has not gone out of her” is an idiom. AT: “but the fire did not burn away her corrosion” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [bronze](#)
- [unclean](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:13****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> The corrosion in the pot represents your immoral behavior. I tried to cleanse you from your wicked behavior, but you did not allow me to do that. So you will not be cleansed from the guilt of your sin until I have punished you and I am no longer angry.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Your shameful behavior is in your uncleanness, because I cleaned you, but still you would not become clean. You will still not be free from your uncleanness until my fury rests from you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

**until my fury rests from you**

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people in his anger as if it were his “fury” that were punishing them. AT: “until I am finished punishing you and am no longer furious with you” or “until I have punished you and I am longer angry with you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 24:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> I, Yahweh, have said that I will surely punish you. And it is time for me to do that. I will not change my mind; I will not refrain from punishing you, and I will not pity you. I will judge you and punish you as you deserve to be punished for your sinful behavior. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> I, Yahweh, have declared it, and I will do it. I will not relent nor will I rest from it. As your ways were, and as your activities, they will judge you!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through the end of this verse. (See: [Parables](#))

**nor will I rest from it**

“nor will I rest from punishing you.” The word “it” refers to Yahweh punishing the people.

**As your ways were, and as your activities, they will judge you**

This speaks of Yahweh judging the people for their ways as if their “ways” were actually judging them. AT: “I will judge you by your activities and your ways” (See: [Personification](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [rest](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> One day Yahweh gave me this message: <sup>16</sup> "Son of man, I am going to suddenly take from you your wife by means of a disease, your wife, whom you love very much. But when she dies, do not show that you are sad or lament or cry. <sup>17</sup> Groan quietly; do not cry openly for her. Keep your turban wrapped around your head, and instead of being barefoot, keep your sandals on your feet. Do not cover the lower part of your face to show that you are sad. And do not eat the kind of food that people who are mourning usually eat."

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>16</sup> "Son of man! Behold, I am taking the desire of your eyes from you with a plague, but you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow. <sup>17</sup> You must groan silently. Do not conduct a funeral for the dead. Tie your turban on you and place your sandals on your feet, but do not veil your facial hair or eat the bread of men who mourn for having lost their wives."

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the desire of your eyes**

This refers to Ezekiel's wife. Yahweh refers to Ezekiel by the part of his body he uses to see his wife. AT: "your wife, whom you love very much," (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**with a plague**

"by a disease"

**you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow**

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Ezekiel is not to cry about his wife dying. AT: "you must not mourn nor weep" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**the dead**

This refers to his dead wife. AT: "your dead wife" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**turban**

a head covering made of a long cloth wrapped around the head

**sandals**

a simple shoe held onto the foot with straps around the ankles

**do not veil your facial hair**

In Israel, men would shave their beards to express sorrow, then cover their faces until their facial hair grew back. Yahweh told Ezekiel not to cover his facial hair in order to show that he had not shaved his face to express his sorrow. AT: “do not mourn by veiling your facial hair” or “do not mourn by shaving and covering your beard” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**translationWords**

- [plague](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [veil](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:18****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> So one morning I talked to the people as usual, and that evening my wife suddenly died. The next morning I did what Yahweh had told me to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> So I spoke to the people in the morning, and my wife died in the evening. In the morning I did what I had been commanded to do.

**translationNotes****In the morning**

“The next morning”

**translationWords**

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Then the people asked me, “What do the things that you are doing signify to us?”

<sup>20</sup> I answered them, “This is what Yahweh told me: <sup>21</sup> ‘Tell the Israelite people that I am about to destroy the temple, the building that you are very proud of, the building that you delight to look at. Your children whom you left in Jerusalem when you were forced to come to Babylon—your enemies will kill them.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> The people asked me, “Will you not tell us what these things mean, the things that you are doing?”

<sup>20</sup> So I said to them, “The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>21</sup> ‘Say to the house of Israel, the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will desecrate my sanctuary—the pride of your power, the delight of your eyes, and the yearning of your soul, and your sons and your daughters whom you left behind will fall by the sword.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The people of Israel question Ezekiel, and Ezekiel tells them what Yahweh has said to them.

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Behold**

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**I will desecrate my sanctuary—the pride of ... of your soul, and your sons**

“I will desecrate my sanctuary which is the pride ... of your soul. Your sons”

**desecrate**

“defile”

**the pride of your power**

This describes the temple as the building that the people are proud of. This speaks of it as being their “pride” instead of the source of their pride. AT: “the building that you are proud of” or “the source of your strong pride” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the delight of your eyes**

Here Yahweh refers to the people by their “eyes.” AT: “the building that you delight to look at” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the yearning of your soul**

Here Yahweh refers to the people by their “soul” to emphasize their inner feelings. AT: “the building that you truly love” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**your sons and your daughters ... will fall by the sword**

This refers to their enemies by their swords. AT: “your sons and daughters ... will be killed in war” or “your enemies will kill your sons and your daughters ... with their swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [lust](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> When that happens, you will do as I have done: You will not cover the lower part of your faces, or eat the kinds of food that people who are mourning usually eat. <sup>23</sup> You will keep your turbans wrapped around your heads and keep your sandals on your feet. You will not mourn or cry, but your bodies will become very thin and slowly die; I will not forgive your sins at all. And you will groan for each other. <sup>24</sup> Ezekiel will be a warning to you, and you must do what he has done. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh the Lord have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then you will do exactly as I have done: you will not veil your facial hair, nor eat the bread of mourning men! <sup>23</sup> Instead, your turbans will be on your heads, and your sandals on your feet; you will not mourn nor weep, for you will melt away in your iniquities, and each man will groan for his brother. <sup>24</sup> So Ezekiel will be a sign for you, as everything that he has done you will do when this comes. Then you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!”

**translationNotes****you will melt away**

Here “melt away” is a metaphor for wasting away and dying. AT: “you will become very thin and slowly die” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in your iniquities**

This implies that God will not forgive the sins of these people. AT: “and I will not forgive your sins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**groan**

This is the sound a person makes who wants help, but who has too much pain or sorrow to speak.

**So Ezekiel will be a sign for you**

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 12:6](#). AT: “So Ezekiel will be a warning for you” (See: [Metaphor](#))



**translationWords**

- iniquity, iniquities
- Ezekiel
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- know, knowledge, make known

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 24:25-27****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, soon I will destroy their sacred temple, which they rejoice about and which they respect and delight to look at, and I will get rid of their sons and daughters also. <sup>26</sup> On that day, someone will escape from Jerusalem and come and tell you what has happened there. <sup>27</sup> When that happens, you will be able to speak again without constraint. You two will talk together. You will be a warning to the people; and they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> "But you, son of man, on the day that I capture their temple, which is their joy, their pride, and what they see and desire—and when I take away their sons and daughters—<sup>26</sup> on that day, a refugee will come to you to give you the news! <sup>27</sup> On that day your mouth will be opened up to that refugee and you will speak—you will no longer be silent. You will be a sign for them so that they will know that I am Yahweh."

**translationNotes****that I capture their temple**

Here Yahweh speaks of destroying the temple as if it were someone that he was capturing. AT: "that I destroy their temple"

**which is their joy, their pride**

The abstract nouns "joy" and "pride" can be translated as noun phrases. AT: "which is what they are joyful about and what they are proud of" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**refugee**

someone who has been forced to leave their country because of war or another disaster

**your mouth will be opened up**

This can be stated in active form. Ezekiel being given understanding and the ability to speak is represented by his mouth being opened. AT: "I will open your mouth" or "you will know what to say" or "I will cause you to know what to say" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**you will speak—you will no longer be silent**

Both of these phrases mean that Ezekiel will speak. In the second phrase it is stated in negative form to emphasize that he will speak. (See: [Litotes](#))

**You will be a sign for them**

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 12:6](#). AT: “You will be a warning for them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [joy, joyful](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 24 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 25 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

### Prophecy against other nations

This chapter includes prophecies against some Gentile nations. Ammon, Moab, Edom and Philistia will all be destroyed. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Links:

- [Ezekiel 25:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 25:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Some time later, Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, turn toward where the Ammon people group lives, and prophesy about the terrible things that will happen to them.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, set your face against the people of Ammon and prophesy against them.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**set your face against the people of Ammon**

This is a command to stare at the people of Ammon as a symbol of punishing them. AT: "stare at the people of Ammon" or "stare at the people of Ammon so that they will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face against the people of Ammon**

Ammon was far away, so Ezekiel could not see the people there, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming the people. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). AT: "Turn toward the people of Ammon and stare" or "stare toward Ammon so that the people there will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the people of Ammon**

"the descendants of Ammon" or "those who live in the land of Ammon"

**prophecy against them**

“prophecy about the bad things that will happen to them.” This means to prophesy about the horrible things that will happen to the people of Ammon. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:7](#).

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 25:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Say about them, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: You shouted joyfully when my temple in Jerusalem was destroyed, and when the country of Israel was ruined, and when the people of Judah were exiled to Babylon. <sup>4</sup> Therefore, I am going to allow an army of the people in the east to come and conquer you. They will set up their tents in your country and live there. They will eat the fruit from your fruit trees and drink the milk from your cattle. <sup>5</sup> I will cause your capital city of Rabbah to become a pasture for camels, and the rest of Ammon, where your people are now living, to become only a resting place for sheep. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Say to the people of Ammon, 'Hear the word of the Lord Yahweh. This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because you said, "Aha!" over my sanctuary when it was profaned, and against the land of Israel when it was desolate, and against the house of Judah when they went into exile, <sup>4</sup> therefore, behold, I am giving you to a people in the east as their possession. They will set up camp against you and set up their tents among you. They will eat your fruit and they will drink your milk. <sup>5</sup> I will make Rabbah a pasture for camels and the people of Ammon a field for flocks. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel what to say to the people of Ammon.

**Hear the word of the Lord Yahweh**

"Listen to this message from the Lord Yahweh"

**you said, "Aha!"**

"you cheered." The word "Aha" is a sound people make when they are happy about something. In this case the people were happy because bad things happened to Israel and Judah.

**over my sanctuary when it was profaned**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "against my sanctuary when the enemy army profaned it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**against the land ... against the house**

“over the land ... over the house”

**the house of Judah**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**behold**

“indeed.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**I am giving you to a people in the east as their possession**

This speaks of the enemy army conquering the land of Ammon and taking possession of the land and everything in it as if the enemy were taking the people of Ammon as their possession. It is not implied here that the enemy took the people of Ammon as slaves. AT: “I will cause an army from a land that is east of you to come and conquer you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They will set up camp against you and set up their tents among you**

“They will set up tents and live in your country”

**They will eat your fruit and they will drink your milk**

It may be helpful to specify the source of the fruit and milk. AT: “They will eat the fruit from your trees and drink the milk from your cattle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the people of Ammon a field for flocks**

Here the phrase “the people of Ammon” refers to the land that belonged to the people of Ammon. Also, the understood information at the beginning of this phrase may be supplied. AT: “I will make the rest of the land of Ammon a field for flocks” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))



**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sanctuary
- profane
- Israel, Israelites
- desolate, desolation
- house
- Judah
- exile, the Exile
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Rabbah
- camel
- flock, herd
- know, knowledge, make known

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 25:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You clapped your hands joyfully and stomped your feet, and laughed because you despised the people in the land of Israel. <sup>7</sup> Therefore, I will use my power against you, and I will enable other nations to conquer you and take you away like any other possessions of yours. I will destroy you completely, and you will no longer be one of the nations. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this: You have clapped your hands and stamped your feet, and rejoiced with all the contempt within you against the land of Israel. <sup>7</sup> Therefore, behold! I will strike you with my hand and give you as plunder to the nations. I will cut you off from the peoples and make you perish from among the countries! I will destroy you, and you will know that I am Yahweh.’

**translationNotes****You have clapped your hands and stamped your feet**

These actions are ways to show strong emotions. In this case the people are cheering and showing their contempt against Israel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**all the contempt within you against the land of Israel**

Here the phrase “the land of Israel” represents the people who live there. AT: “all of the hatred you feel towards the people who live in Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**behold**

“indeed.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**I will strike you with my hand**

“I will hit you with my powerful hand.” Here Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were literally hitting them with his hand. AT: “I will punish you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**give you as plunder to the nations**

The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon but is also a metonym for their land and their possessions. AT: “I will allow enemies to defeat you and take you, your land, and your possessions as plunder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will cut you off from the peoples ... make you perish from among the countries**

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will completely destroy the people of Ammon so that they are no longer a nation. AT: “I will completely destroy you so that you are no longer a nation” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- [rejoice](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [nation](#)
- [cut off](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 25:8-11****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> This is also what the Lord Yahweh says: The people of Moab south of Ammon and the people of Seir south of Moab despised Israel and said, “The people of Israel have become as unimportant as all the other nations!” <sup>9</sup> Therefore I will destroy the cities that protect the borders of Moab, starting at Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiriathaim, the finest cities in Moab. <sup>10</sup> I will enable people from the east to conquer Moab and also to conquer Ammon. As the result, just as I will cause Ammon to be no longer remembered by other nations, <sup>11</sup> I will also punish the people of Moab. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, ‘Because Moab and Seir say, “Behold! The house of Judah is like every other nation.”’ <sup>9</sup> Therefore, behold! I will open the slopes of Moab, starting at his cities on the border—the splendor of Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiriathaim— <sup>10</sup> to the people of the east who have been against the people of Ammon. I will give them up as a possession so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered among the nations. <sup>11</sup> So I will perform judgments against Moab, and they will know that I am Yahweh.’

**translationNotes****Moab and Seir**

These places refer to the people who live in them. AT: “the people of Moab and Seir” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Behold**

“Indeed.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**The house of Judah is**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “The Judah people group are” or “The people of Judah are” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will open the slopes of Moab, starting at his cities on the border**

This means that he will destroy the cities on the border of Moab first to clear the way for the army to attack Moab itself. AT: “I will open the path to Moab by destroying the cities on its border” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**starting at his cities**

Here the city of Moab is spoken of with the masculine pronoun “his.” AT: “starting at its cities” (See: [Personification](#))

**the splendor of Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiriathaim**

“I will start at the great cities of Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiriathaim.” These three places are cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**to the people of the east who have been against the people of Ammon**

“I will send the same army from the people in the east who attacked Ammon”

**I will give them up as a possession**

Here Yahweh speaks of allowing the armies from the east to conquer Ammon as if Ammon were a possession that he was giving them. AT: “I will allow the armies to conquer them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered among the nations**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that the nations will not remember the people of Ammon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 25:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "You people of Edom are guilty of getting revenge on the people of Judah. <sup>13</sup> Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I will use my power against the people of Edom and will get rid of their men and their animals. I will ruin the land from the region of Teman in central Edom to the region of Dedan in the south of Edom, and their enemies will kill many of their men.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, 'Edom has taken vengeance against the house of Judah and has committed wrong in doing so. <sup>13</sup> Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: I will strike Edom with my hand and destroy every person and animal there. I will make them a ruined, abandoned place, from Teman to Dedan. They will fall by the sword.

**translationNotes****Edom has taken**

Here "Edom" refers to the people who live there. AT: "The people of Edom have taken" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the house of Judah**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Judah people group" or "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will strike Edom with my hand**

Here Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were literally hitting them with his hand. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 25:7](#). AT: "I will punish Edom" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will make them ... from Teman to Dedan**

"I will make all of Edom ... from Teman to Dedan." These are two cities at opposite ends of Edom. This means that Yahweh will destroy all of Edom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**They will fall by the sword**

The word "fall" represents being killed and the word "sword" refers to their enemies who will kill them in battle. AT: "Their enemies will kill them with their swords" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 25:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> The Israelite people will use their power to get revenge on the people of Edom. They will show the people of Edom that I have been angry with them and that I will punish them. I will get revenge on the people of Edom. Then they will know that I, Yahweh the Lord, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel, and they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury, and they will know my vengeance—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

**translationNotes****I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel**

Here the “hand” of Israel is a metonym for Israel’s army. Yahweh speaks of taking revenge on the people of Edom as if his vengeance were like a sheet that he covered them with. The abstract noun “vengeance” can be translated with the verb “to punish.” AT: “I will use my people Israel to punish the people of Edom” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury**

“they will show Edom my anger and fury” or “they will punish Edom according to my anger and fury against the people of Edom”

**my anger and my fury**

The word “fury” means basically the same thing as and intensifies the word “anger.” AT: “my furious anger” or “my extreme anger” (See: [Doublet](#))

**they will know my vengeance**

The abstract noun “vengeance” can be translated with the verb “to punish.” AT: “the people of Edom will know that I have punished them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))



**translationWords**

- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 25:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> This is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "The Philistia people group wanted very much for a long time to get revenge on the people of Judah. They very maliciously wanted to destroy Judah. <sup>16</sup> Therefore this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am about to use my power against the Philistia people. I will get rid of the Kereth people group and all those who live along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. <sup>17</sup> I will get great revenge on them and show that I am angry with them by the way I punish them. And when I get revenge on them, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, "The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again. <sup>16</sup> So this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold! I will reach out with my hand against the Philistines, and I will cut off the Kerethites and destroy the remnant who are along the seacoast. <sup>17</sup> For I will take great vengeance against them with furious acts of punishment, so they will know that I am Yahweh, when I take my vengeance on them."

**translationNotes****The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again**

The phrase "from within themselves" is an idiom. AT: "The Philistines hate Judah and have tried to take revenge against it by their own strength again and again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**to destroy Judah**

Here "Judah" refers to the people who live there. AT: "to destroy the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Behold**

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. AT: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**I will reach out with my hand against the Philistines**

Here Yahweh's power is represented by his "hand." AT: "I will turn my powerful hand against the Philistines" or "I will turn my great power against the Philistines" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will cut off**

This is an idiom. AT: “I will destroy” or “I will get rid of” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Kerethites**

“The people of Kereth.” This is a people that lived in the city of Kereth in Philistia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 26 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section of prophecy against Tyre. The Babylonians will destroy Tyre. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Links:

- [Ezekiel 26:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 26:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> It was almost eleven years after the Babylonians had taken the Israelites to their land, on the first day of the month, Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, the people of the city of Tyre shouted joyfully and they said about Jerusalem, 'Jerusalem, the city from which traders went to many nations, is now destroyed. Now people from all over the world will come to us to buy and sell things. We will prosper because Jerusalem has now been ruined!'

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> So it was in the eleventh year, on the first day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, because Tyre has said against Jerusalem, 'Aha! The gates of the people are broken! She has turned to me; I will be filled up because she is ruined.'

**translationNotes****in the eleventh year**

"in year 11." This means the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. AT: "in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**on the first day of the month**

"on day 1 of the month." It is uncertain which month of the Hebrew calendar Ezekiel meant. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**Tyre has said against Jerusalem**

Here the city names "Tyre" and "Jerusalem" represent the people of those cities. AT: "the people of Tyre have said against the people of Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Aha!**

The word “Aha” is a sound people make when they discover something. AT: “Yes!” or “This is great!” (See: [Exclamations](#))

**The gates of the people are broken**

The people of Tyre use these words to refer to Jerusalem as if it were a city gate through which traders from the surrounding nations pass. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Armies have broken down the gates of the people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**She has turned to me**

Here the word “she” refers to the word “gates” which have “turned” on their hinges to open to Tyre. This phrase means that Tyre has now replaced Jerusalem as the city through which the traders from many nations pass. AT: “The gateway has opened to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will be filled up**

Here to be “filled up” represents being prosperous. AT: “I will become prosperous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**she is ruined**

“Jerusalem is ruined”

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [month](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions

**Ezekiel 26:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: 'I am now your enemy, you people of Tyre. I will cause the armies of many nations to come and attack your city, as the waves of the sea beat against the shores. <sup>4</sup> Their soldiers will destroy the walls around Tyre and tear down your towers. The city will be completely destroyed. Then they will scrape away the rubble and cause the city to become a bare rock.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I am against you, Tyre, and I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves. <sup>4</sup> They will destroy the walls of Tyre and tear down her towers. I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock.

**translationNotes****Behold!**

"Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

**I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves**

Here the word "nations" refers to their armies. AT: "I will gather armies from many nations that will beat against you like the waves in the raging sea" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

**I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock**

Yahweh speaks of how he will cause Tyre to be completely destroyed. AT: "I will cause the armies to completely destroy the city, and they will leave nothing there" (See: [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [nation](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 26:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Out in the sea, the part of your city that is on an island will become a place where men spread their fishing nets to dry them. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have predicted it: People from many nations will carry off everything of value in your city. <sup>6</sup> The people in small villages on the coast near Tyre—your enemies will kill them with their swords. Then people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.’

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> She will become a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea, since I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—and she will become plunder for the nations. <sup>6</sup> Her daughters who are in the fields will be slaughtered by the swords, and they will know that I am Yahweh.’

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**She will become**

The city of Tyre is spoken of here as if it were a woman. AT: “Tyre will become” or “It will become” (See: [Personification](#))

**a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea**

Part of Tyre was an island. This expression is a metonym for the results of Tyre’s destruction. AT: “an empty island used for drying fishing nets” or “a deserted island where people dry out their fishing nets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**she will become plunder for the nations**

“Plunder” means things that people steal or take by force. Here Tyre becoming plunder represents its wealth being carried off by other nations. AT: “the armies of the nations will take away every valuable thing from Tyre” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Her daughters who are in the fields will be slaughtered by the swords**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The enemy armies will slaughter with swords her daughters who are in the fields” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Her daughters who are in the fields**

Possible meanings are 1) “Her daughters” were the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields or 2) “Her daughters” is a metonym for nearby towns and villages on the mainland that supported the main city of Tyre. AT: “Her daughter communities who are on the mainland” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [sword](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 26:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say is going to happen: From the north, I am going to bring the most powerful king in the world, King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon, with his army to attack Tyre. They will bring horses and chariots, and men who ride the horses and men who drive the chariots; it will be a huge army. <sup>8</sup> In the battles in the small villages on the coast, their soldiers will kill many people with their swords. Then they will build up walls outside the city of Tyre. They will build a dirt ramp up to the top of the wall, and they will all hold up shields to protect themselves from arrows being shot from the ground.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> For this is what Yahweh says: Behold, from the north I am bringing Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings, against Tyre, with horses and chariots, and with horsemen and a great many people. <sup>8</sup> He will kill your daughters in the field. He will set up a siege work and build a ramp against your walls and raise up shields against you.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Behold**

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings**

The phrase “king of kings” was a title, meaning that he was the greatest of kings, the king that other kings obeyed. AT: “Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the greatest king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a great many people**

This emphasizes the great size of Nebuchadnezzar’s army.

**He will kill**

Here the word “He” refers to Nebuchadnezzar and is a metonym for his army. AT: “His army will kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**your daughters in the field**

Possible meanings are 1) “your daughters” refers to the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields or 2) “your daughters” is a metonym for nearby towns and villages on the mainland that supported the main city of Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 26:6](#). AT: “your daughter communities who are on the mainland.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 26:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> The king will direct the soldiers who operate the rams to batter the wall, and those who will use iron bars to tear down the towers in the wall. <sup>10</sup> The king will have a huge number of horses, and the stamping of their hooves will raise dust to cover the whole city. It will be as though the walls tremble because of the noise made by the horses, the supply wagons, and the chariots when they enter the city where the enemy has broken down the walls. <sup>11</sup> The horses will trample all of the streets of the city with their hooves. The soldiers will kill the people with their swords; they will cause the monuments that celebrated their strength to collapse.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> He will place his battering rams to hit against your walls, and his tools will tear down your towers. <sup>10</sup> His horses will be so many that their dust will cover you. Your walls will shake with the sound of horsemen, wagons, and chariots. When he enters your gates, he will enter as men come into a city whose walls have been broken down. <sup>11</sup> The hoofs of his horses will trample all of your streets. He will kill your people with the sword and your mighty stone pillars will fall to the ground.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “he” and “his” in these verses refer to Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, and represent the soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar’s army doing these actions. The word “your” refers to the city of Tyre. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**He will place his battering rams to hit against your walls, and his tools will tear down your towers**

Although the battering rams and tools are spoken of as acting against the walls and towers of Tyre, they would have been used by the soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar’s army against the walls and towers. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**battering rams**

“Battering rams” are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:2](#).

**tools**

Weapons or instruments made of iron used to tear down the towers

**When he enters your gates, he will enter as men come into a city whose walls have been broken down**

Here Yahweh uses a simile to describe how Nebuchadnezzar's army will enter into the city of Tyre. (See: [Simile](#))

**whose walls have been broken down**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "after breaking down its walls" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [hoof, hoofed, hooves](#)
- [sword](#)
- [pillar, column](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 26:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> They will take away all the people's valuable possessions and steal the things that the merchants sell. They will tear down the walls of the houses and destroy their fine houses. Then they will throw into the sea the stones from the walls of those houses and the timber and the rubble. <sup>13</sup> No longer will the people sing noisy songs or play their harps. <sup>14</sup> They will cause the city to become a bare rock and only a place where men spread their fishing nets. And the city will never be rebuilt." Those things will certainly happen because the Lord Yahweh has declared that they will happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> They will plunder your riches and loot your merchandise. They will tear down your walls and destroy your luxurious homes. Your stones, your timber, and the rubble they will throw into the waters. <sup>13</sup> I will stop the noise of your songs. The sound of your harps will be heard no more. <sup>14</sup> I will make you a bare rock, you will become a place where nets are spread out to dry. You will never be built again, for I, Lord Yahweh have spoken—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The word "They" in these verses refers to the soldiers in the armies of Nebuchadnezzar. The words "your" and "you" refer to the city of Tyre.

**They will plunder your riches and loot your merchandise**

The phrases "plunder your riches" and "loot your merchandise" mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**luxurious**

expensive and comfortable

**Your stones, your timber, and the rubble**

These refer to what is left after the walls and homes are torn down.

**into the waters**

“into the sea”

**The sound of your harps will be heard no more**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one will hear the sound of your harps anymore” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I will make you a bare rock**

This metaphor describes the results after Yahweh completely destroys Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 26:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will become a place where nets are spread out to dry**

This metaphor also describes the results after Yahweh destroys Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 26:5](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will become a place where nets**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will make you a place where nets” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [harp](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 26:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> This is also what the Lord Yahweh says about the people of Tyre: When the people in Tyre groan because the enemy has wounded them, when many people die, and when the enemy destroys the city, the people living along the coast will tremble because they are afraid. <sup>16</sup> Then all the kings in the cities along the coast will step down from their thrones and lay aside their robes and their embroidered clothes. They will be terrified, and they will sit on the ground, trembling. They will be shocked because of what has happened to the city of Tyre.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this to Tyre, 'Will not the islands quake with the sound of your downfall, and with the groans of the wounded when the terrible slaughter is in your midst? <sup>16</sup> Then all the princes of the sea will step down from their thrones and remove their robes and cast off their embroidered garments. They will clothe themselves with trembling, they will sit on the ground and tremble every moment, and they will be appalled because of you.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**Will not the islands quake ... in your midst?**

This question expects a positive answer and emphasizes the results of Tyre's destruction. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "The islands will quake ... in your midst." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Will not the islands quake**

Here "the islands" represents the people living on the islands. AT: "Will not the people of the islands quake with fear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**princes of the sea**

"princes of the coastlands"

**They will clothe themselves with trembling**

This metaphor represents the princes trembling enough to seem like it was their clothing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**appalled**

“astonished” or “dismayed”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [chief](#)
- [throne](#)
- [robe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 26:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then they will sing a sad song about the city, like this:

'The famous city, in which many men who sailed on the seas lived,  
is now no more!

The people of that city had great power as they sailed, but now they are at the bottom of the sea;  
they terrified all the people living near them.

<sup>18</sup> But now everyone living along the coast is terrified because the enemy has destroyed the great city.

It is as though the land along the coast itself were trembling;  
the people on the islands in the sea are terrified because that city exists no more.'

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> They will lift up a lament for you and say to you,

How you, who were inhabited by sailors, have been destroyed. The famous city that was so strong—it is now gone from the sea.

The ones living in her once spread a terror about themselves upon everyone who lived near them.

<sup>18</sup> Now the coasts tremble on the day of your downfall.

The islands in the sea are terrified, because you have died.'

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

In these verses, "They" refers to the "princes of the sea" in the previous verse, and "you" refers to Tyre.

**lift up**

"sing"

**How you, who were inhabited by sailors, have been destroyed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “How your enemies have destroyed you—you who were inhabited by sailors” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**spread a terror about themselves upon everyone who lived near them**

The abstract noun “terror” can be translated using the adjective “terrified.” AT: “caused all the people around them to be terrified” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Now the coasts tremble on the day of your downfall. The islands in the sea are terrified, because you have died**

These two lines are similar in meaning and emphasize the response of the surrounding people to the destruction of Tyre. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Now the coasts tremble**

Here “the coasts” represents the people living there. AT: “Now the people of the coastlands tremble” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The islands in the sea are terrified**

Here “the islands in the sea” represents the people living there. AT: “The people of the islands are terrified” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you have died**

The destruction of Tyre is spoken of as if it was a person who had died. AT: “you have departed” or “you exist no more” (See: [Personification](#))

**translationWords**

- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 26:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> This is also what the Lord Yahweh says: 'When I cause everyone to leave the city of Tyre, like people have left other cities in which no one lives any longer, and when I cause the huge waves of the sea to cover the city, <sup>20</sup> then I will bring the people of that city down to be with everyone else who is dead, those who died long ago. I will cause them to live in the place below the earth that is like old ruins, with those who have gone down to that pit previously, and they will never return to the earth, to where people are alive. <sup>21</sup> I will cause them to die in a horrible way, and that will be the end of them. People will search for that city, but it will no longer exist.' This is what the Lord Yahweh declares will happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this: When I make you a desolate city, like the other cities that are not inhabited, when I raise up the deeps against you, and when the great waters cover you, <sup>20</sup> then I will bring you down to the people of ancient times, like the others who have gone down into the pit; for I will make you live in the lowest realms of the earth as in ruins of ancient times. Because of this you will not come back and stand in the land of the living. <sup>[1]</sup> is supplied by an ancient version. The Hebrew has , which does not seem to fit the context here. <sup>21</sup> I will place disaster on you, and you will be no more forever. Then you will be sought, but you will never be found ever again—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

---

26:20 <sup>[1]</sup>The expression *and stand in the land of the living I will place glory in the land of the living*

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**When I make you**

The word "you" here refers to the city of Tyre. In the original language "you" here is feminine singular.

**When I make you a desolate city, like the other cities that are not inhabited**

Here Tyre is compared to other cities that no longer had people living in them. (See: [Simile](#))

**the deeps**

Here “the deeps” means the deep waters of the sea. AT: “the deep waters” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**then I will bring you down to the people of ancient times, like the others who have gone down into the pit; for I will make you live in the lowest realms of the earth as in ruins of ancient times**

What Yahweh would do to Tyre is compared to people going to the grave and cities falling into ruin. (See: [Personification](#) and [Simile](#))

**the pit**

This refers to the grave. Because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**stand in the land of the living**

This represents being restored to the city’s former existence. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will place disaster on you**

The abstract noun “disaster” can be translated using the adjective “terrible” or the verb “destroy.” AT: “I will bring you to a terrible end” or “I will destroy you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Then you will be sought, but you will never be found ever again**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Then people will seek you but not be able to find you ever again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [water, waters](#)
- [pit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 26 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 27 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The prophecy against Tyre continues in this chapter. Tyre has become wealthy from trade as far as Spain, but Tyre will be destroyed. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Tyre is compared to a ship built with the very best materials. Despite its strength and power, Yahweh will destroy it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 27:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 27:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said this to me: <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, sing a funeral song about Tyre. <sup>3</sup> The city of Tyre is on an island at the edge of the sea, and their merchants traded with people groups who live along many seacoasts. This is what Yahweh the Lord says that you should tell them:

You people of Tyre said that your city was very beautiful.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Now you, son of man, begin a lamentation concerning Tyre, <sup>3</sup> and say to Tyre, who lives within the gates of the sea, merchants of peoples to many islands, the Lord Yahweh says this to you:

Tyre, you have said, 'I am perfect in beauty.'

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**begin a lamentation**

The abstract noun "lamentation" can be translated using the verb "lament." AT: "begin to lament" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**say to Tyre**

Here the word "Tyre" represents the people living in Tyre. AT: "say to the people of Tyre" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who lives within the gates of the sea**

"who lives at the gates of the sea" or "who lives at the entry to the sea"



**Tyre, you have said**

Here the word “Tyre” represents the people living in Tyre. AT: “People of Tyre, you have said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I am perfect in beauty**

The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful.” AT: “I am perfectly beautiful” or “I am entirely beautiful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- lament, laments, lamentation
- Tyre, Tyrians
- gate, gate bar
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- perfect

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> You controlled what people bought and sold—the people who lived along the sea.

Those who built your city made it very beautiful.

<sup>5</sup> You and your city were like a huge ship

that you built from fir trees on Mount Hermon.

Then you took cedar wood from Lebanon to make a mast for the ship.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Your borders are in the heart of the seas; your builders have perfected your beauty.

<sup>5</sup> They have made all your planks with cypress from Mount Hermon;

they took cedar from Lebanon to make a mast for you.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

“Your” and “you” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The city of Tyre is described here and in the following verses as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Your borders**

“Your boundaries”

**heart of the seas**

“middle of the seas”

**planks**

long, flat pieces of wood; thick boards

**a mast**

a large pole on a ship that holds up the sails of the ship

**translationWords**

- [fir](#)
- [Mount Hermon](#)
- [cypress](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:6-7****UDB:**

- <sup>6</sup> You carved oars from oak trees from the region of Bashan.  
You made the deck from cypress wood from the island of Cyprus,  
and you covered the decks with ivory.
- <sup>7</sup> You made the sails from fine embroidered linen from Egypt;  
those sails were like flags that people could see far away.

**ULB:**

- <sup>6</sup> They made your oars from the oaks of Bashan;  
they made your decks out of cypress wood from Cyprus, and they overlaid them with ivory.
- <sup>7</sup> Your sails were made from colorful linen from Egypt that served as your banner;  
the colors of blue and purple from the coasts of Elishah are used for the awning on your boat.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**General Information:**

“They” in these verses refers to the builders of Tyre. “Your” refers to Tyre.

**oars**

long pieces of wood with flat blades at one end that people use to make a boat move

**decks**

the parts of the boat that people can walk on

**overlaid them**

“covered them”

**ivory**

a white, beautiful, and hard material that is made from the long teeth of some animals

**sails**

large pieces of cloth that move a ship when the wind blows on them

**Your sails were made from colorful linen from Egypt that served as your banner**

The sails of the ship are compared to the banners or flags of Tyre. (See: [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [oak](#)
- [Bashan](#)
- [Cyprus](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Men from the cities of Sidon and Arvad pulled your oars;  
the men who steered the ship were experienced sailors from Tyre.

<sup>9</sup> Experienced craftsmen from Gebal were on board. They caulked the seams of your ships.  
Sailors from many countries came in their ships to buy and sell goods with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Those who were living in Sidon and Arvad were your rowers;  
the sages of Tyre were within you; they were your pilots.

<sup>9</sup> Highly experienced craftsmen from Byblos filled your seams;  
all the ships of the sea and their sailors among you were carrying your merchandise for trade.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Arvad**

This is the name of a small island off the coast of Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**sages**

“wise men”

**pilots**

A pilot is a person who controls where a ship goes by steering the ship.

**Byblos**

This is the name of a city on the Syrian coast. Other versions call it by the name “Gebal.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Textual Variants](#))

**filled your seams**

“repaired your cracks” or “repaired your leaks”

**sailors**

A sailor is one of the team of workers on a ship.

**translationWords**

- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Men who came from the far away lands of Persia, Lud, and Put were soldiers in your army.

They hung their shields and helmets on the walls of your city;

this caused many people to admire your city.

<sup>11</sup> Men from the cities of Arvad and Helek were watchmen on your city walls;

men from the city of Gammad were in your towers.

They also hung their shields on your walls;

they also made your city very beautiful.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Persia, Lydia, and Libya were in your army, your men of war.

they hung shield and helmet within you; they showed your splendor.

<sup>11</sup> The men of Arvad and Helek in your army were on your walls surrounding you, and the people of Gammad were in your towers. They hung up their shields on your walls all around you! They completed your beauty.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Persia, Lydia ... Libya ... Arvad ... Helek ... Gammad**

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**your men of war**

“men who fought in your wars” or “serving as your warriors”

**your splendor**

The abstract noun “splendor” can be translated using the adjective “splendid.” AT: “how splendid you were” or “how majestic you were” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))



**They completed your beauty**

The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful.” AT: “They finished making you beautiful” or “They made you perfectly beautiful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [shield](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Because of the many things that you had to trade, men from Tarshish sent merchants who brought silver, iron, tin, and lead to trade for things that you had.

<sup>13</sup> Merchants from the regions of Greece, Tubal, and Meshech brought slaves and things made from bronze to trade for things that you had.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Tarshish was a trading partner with you because of your abundant wealth of goods to sell: Silver, iron, tin, and lead. They bought and sold your wares! <sup>13</sup> Javan, Tubal, and Meshech—they traded slaves and in items made of bronze. They handled your merchandise.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The word “your” in these verses refers to Tyre.

**Silver, iron, tin, and lead**

metals that were used during that time period

**wares**

“merchandise”

**Javan**

This is the name of a coastal region also known as Ionia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**They handled your merchandise**

“They traded for your merchandise”

**translationWords**

- [Tarshish](#)
- [silver](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [Meshech](#)
- [bronze](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Men from Beth Togarmah brought work horses, war horses, and mules to trade for things that you had.

<sup>15</sup> Merchants came to you from the island of Rhodes.

People from many nations by the sea traded with you;

they brought ivory and valuable black ebony wood to trade for things that you had.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Beth Togarmah provided horses, stallions, and mules as your merchandise. <sup>15</sup> The men of Rhodes were your traders on many coasts. Merchandise was in your hand; they sent back horn, ivory, and ebony as tribute!

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The word “your” in these verses refers to Tyre.

**Beth Togarmah ... Rhodes**

These were the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**stallions**

adult male horses

**Merchandise was in your hand**

Having things in the hands here is probably a metaphor for carrying those things or having them in their possession. AT: “You owned things that you sold to them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**horn**

This refers to the tusks or elongated teeth of certain animals.

**ebony**

a dark brown to black hardwood that is very dense or heavy

**translationWords**

- [horse](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [tribute](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Because you had very many things to trade, people from the land of Aram brought to you valuable turquoise stones, purple cloth, embroidered cloth, fine linen cloth, and jewelry made from coral and rubies to you.

<sup>17</sup> Men from Judah and Israel brought wheat from the city of Minnith in Ammon, and cakes, honey, olive oil, and ointment to trade for your things.

<sup>18</sup> Because you had very many things to sell, men from the city of Damascus brought wine from the town of Helbon and white wool from the area of Zahar to trade for many things that you had.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Aram was a dealer in your many products; they provided emeralds, purple, colored cloth, fine fabric, pearls, and rubies as your merchandise. <sup>17</sup> Judah and the land of Israel were trading with you. They provided wheat from Minnith, cakes, honey, oil, and balsam as your merchandise. <sup>18</sup> Damascus was a trader of all your products, of all your enormous wealth, and of the wine of Helbon and the wool of Zahar.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Aram was a dealer**

Here “Aram” refers to the people of Aram. AT: “The people of Aram were dealers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**dealer**

“trader”

**emeralds**

An emerald is a type of green precious stone.

**purple**

Here purple cloth or yarn is referred to by just its color. AT: “purple cloth” or “purple yarn” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**pearls**

beautiful beads of hard white material that come from creatures in the sea

**rubies**

A ruby is a type of red precious stone.

**Judah and the land of Israel were trading with you**

Here “Judah and the land of Israel” refers to the people of those places. AT: “The people of Judah and Israel were trading with you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Minnith ... Helbon ... Zahar**

These were names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**cakes**

The meaning of the Hebrew word translated here as “cakes” is uncertain. Other versions may translate it as another type of food.

**balsam**

a sweet-smelling gum or resin that comes from a tree

**enormous**

“abundant” or “great”

**translationWords**

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [oil](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 27:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Men from the tribe of Dan and Greek men from the area of Izal brought things made of iron, cassia spice, and fragrant calamus seeds to trade for things that you had.

<sup>20</sup> Merchants came from Dedan in southern Edom bringing saddle blankets to trade for things that you had.

<sup>21</sup> Men from Arabia and all the rulers of the region of Kedar sent merchants to trade lambs and rams and male goats for things that you had.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Dan and Javan from Izal provided you with merchandise of wrought iron, cinnamon, and calamus. This became merchandise for you. <sup>20</sup> Dedan was your dealer in fine saddle blankets. <sup>21</sup> Arabia and all the chiefs of Kedar were traders with you; they provided you with lambs, rams and goats.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Dan ... Javan ... Izal ... Dedan ... Arabia ... Kedar**

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Dan and Javan**

This is a metonym for the people of Dan and Javan. AT: “The people of Dan and Javan” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**wrought iron**

a form of iron that can be shaped with a hammer

**cinnamon**

This is a type of spice that comes from the bark of a tree. “Cassia” is another name for this spice. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**calamus**

a type of grass that people used as perfume and for medicine (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Dedan was**

This is a metonym for the people of Dedan. AT: “The people of Dedan were” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**saddle blankets**

A saddle blanket is a piece of cloth that people place on a horse beneath a saddle or seat.

**Arabia**

This is a metonym for the people of Arabia. AT: “The people of Arabia” or “The Arabians” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Dan](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [chief](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Merchants from Sheba and Raamah in Arabia brought many kinds of very good spices and jewels and gold to exchange for things that you had.

<sup>23</sup> Men came from Haran, Kanneh, Eden, Sheba, Ashur and Kilmad in Mesopotamia with their goods.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> The traders of Sheba and Raamah came to sell you the best of every spice and in all kinds of precious gems; they traded gold for your merchandise. <sup>23</sup> Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Sheba ... Raamah ... Haran ... Kanneh ... Eden ... Sheba ... Ashur ... Kilmad**

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**precious gems**

“valuable stones”

**Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad**

This refers to the people from these places. AT: “The people of Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with the people of Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Sheba](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Haran](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> They brought beautiful things to trade with you: Blue cloth, embroidered cloth, and rugs of many colors that were rolled up and tied with ropes.

<sup>25</sup> Cargo ships from Tarshish carried all those things that you sold;

the warehouses on your island were full of all those things and brought you great honor.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> These were your dealers in ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors, and in blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth in your marketplaces. <sup>25</sup> The ships of Tarshish were the transporters of your merchandise!

So you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo in the heart of the seas!

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**These were your dealers**

“They traded with you”

**ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors**

“purple robes with many different colors”

**blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth**

“blankets with many colors that had designs and were of high quality”

**The ships of Tarshish were the transporters of your merchandise**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The ships of Tarshish carried your merchandise” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo**

Tyre's abundance is spoken of as if it was a ship that was full of cargo. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**heart of the seas**

“middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

**translationWords**

- [robe](#)
- [Tarshish](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> The men who row your ships took the ships full of cargo out onto the large seas.

But now the strong east wind has wrecked those ships.

<sup>27</sup> Everything in the ships has been lost—

all the valuable cargo and many of the sailors and ship pilots,  
the ship workers and merchants and soldiers.

On the day that the ships were wrecked,

all their crews sank to the bottom of the sea.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Your rowers have brought you into vast seas;

the eastern wind has broken you in the middle of them.

<sup>27</sup> Your wealth, merchandise, and trade goods; your sailors and pilots, and ship builders; your traders of merchandise and all the men of war who are in you, and all your crew—they will sink into the depths of the sea on the day of your destruction.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**General Information:**

The city of Tyre is described here and in the following verses as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Your rowers**

“The people that row you”

**vast seas**

“great waters”

**the eastern wind**

“the strong wind from the east”

**middle of them**

“heart of the seas” or “middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

**sailors**

“seamen”

**crew**

team of workers

**depths of the sea**

“heart of the seas” or “middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

**on the day of your destruction**

The abstract noun “destruction” can be translated using the verb “destroy.” AT: “at the time you are destroyed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 27:28-30****UDB:**

- <sup>28</sup> The people in cities along the coast trembled  
when they heard your ship pilots cry out.
- <sup>29</sup> All the men who pulled the oars will leave the ships;  
the sailors and pilots will come to the shore and stand on the beach.
- <sup>30</sup> They will cry aloud because of what has happened to you,  
and they weep bitterly.  
They will throw earth on their heads  
and roll around in ashes.

**ULB:**

- <sup>28</sup> Cities at the sea will tremble at the sound of your pilots' cry;
- <sup>29</sup> All those who handle oars will come down from their ships;  
mariners and all the pilots on the sea will stand on the land.
- <sup>30</sup> Then they will make you listen to their voice and will wail bitterly;  
they will cast dust up on their heads. They will roll about in ashes.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**Cities at the sea will tremble**

Here “Cities at the sea” represents the people in those cities. AT: “The people of the cities by the sea will tremble” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**All those who handle oars**

“All the rowers”

**wail bitterly**

“cry out sadly”

**they will cast dust up on their heads. They will roll about in ashes**

These are expressions of grieving and mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**translationWords**

- [voice](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:31-33****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> They shave their heads to show that they are very sad because of what has happened to you, and they put on rough sackcloth to mourn.

They weep for you very bitterly  
and mourn for you.

<sup>32</sup> While they wail and mourn because of what has happened to you they sing this sad funeral song:

'There was certainly never a city like Tyre,  
which now is silent,  
covered by the waves of the sea.'

<sup>33</sup> The goods that your merchants traded  
were things that pleased the people of many countries.

Kings in very distant places became rich  
from the money they made by buying and selling with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> They will shave their heads bald for you and bind themselves with sackcloth, and they will weep bitterly over you and they will cry out.

<sup>32</sup> They will lift up their wails of lamentation for you and sing dirges over you,  
Who is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea?

<sup>33</sup> When your merchandise went ashore from the sea, it satisfied many peoples;  
you enriched the kings of the earth with your great wealth and merchandise!

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**General Information:**

The word "they" in these verses refer to the people mentioned in verses 28 and 29. The words "you" and "your" refer to Tyre.

**They will shave their heads bald for you and bind themselves with sackcloth**

These are expressions of grieving and mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**bald**

having no hair on the head

**They will lift up their wails of lamentation**

The abstract noun “lamentation” can be translated using the verb “lament.” AT: “They will cry out and lament” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**dirges**

“funeral songs”

**Who is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea?**

This question expects a negative answer and emphasizes Tyre being different from all other cities. It can be expressed as a statement. AT: “No other city is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**who has now been brought to silence**

This can be expressed in active form. AT: “who its enemies have now silenced” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**When your merchandise went ashore**

This can be expressed in active form. AT: “When people brought your merchandise ashore” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**ashore**

“onto the land”

**you enriched the kings of the earth**

“you made the kings of the earth rich”

**translationWords**

- sackcloth
- lament, laments, lamentation
- Tyre, Tyrians
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- king
- earth, earthly

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 27:34-36****UDB:**

<sup>34</sup> But now your city is like a ship wrecked in the sea;  
and everything in it is broken, and it is now at the bottom of the sea.

All of your cargo and your sailors have sunk to the bottom of the sea.

<sup>35</sup> All the people who live along the seacoast are appalled  
because of what has happened to you.

Their kings are very horrified;  
they shake with fear as they watch.

<sup>36</sup> The merchants of the other nations shake their heads  
because it is difficult for them to believe what has happened;  
now your city has disappeared,  
and it will not exist anymore.”

**ULB:**

<sup>34</sup> But when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters,  
your merchandise and all your crew sank!

<sup>35</sup> All the inhabitants of the coasts were appalled at you,  
and their kings shuddered in horror! Their faces trembled!

<sup>36</sup> The merchants of the people hiss at you;  
you have become a horror, and you will be no more forever.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

**when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters**

This can be expressed in active form. AT: “when the seas, the deep waters, shattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**shattered**

To “shatter” is to break up into pieces.

**crew**

team of workers

**were appalled at you**

“were shocked and terrified by what happened to you”

**their kings shuddered in horror**

The abstract noun “horror” can be translated using the adverb “fearfully.” AT: “their kings shuddered fearfully” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**shuddered**

“shook” or “trembled”

**Their faces trembled**

Here “faces” represents the whole person. AT: “They appear to be trembling” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**hiss at you**

Hissing was making a whistling sound through the teeth. It may have been out of dismay, grief, or surprise. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**you have become a horror**

The abstract noun “horror” can be translated using the adjective “dreadful.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “you have become dreadful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [water, waters](#)
- [king](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 27 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 28 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The prophecy against Tyre concludes in this chapter. Tyre will be destroyed because of its pride and unfair business practices. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 28:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 28:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then Yahweh gave me another message. He said: <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, give to the king of Tyre this message from me, Yahweh the Lord:

'You have very proudly claimed that you are a god,

and that you are untouchable, since you sit on a throne in a city on an island in the sea!

You boast that you are a god,

but you are in reality only a man, not a god.

<sup>3</sup> You think that you are wiser than Daniel was,

and you think that you can understand every secret.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, say to the ruler of Tyre, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Your heart is arrogant! You have said, "I am a god! I will sit in the seat of the gods in the heart of the seas!" Even though you are a man and not a god, you make your heart like the heart of a god; <sup>3</sup> you think that you are wiser than Daniel, and that no secret amazes you!

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**Your heart is arrogant**

Here "heart" represents the will or thoughts of the ruler of Tyre. AT: "You are arrogant" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**arrogant**

"proud"

**I will sit in the seat of the gods**

“I will sit on the throne of the gods.” Here sitting in the seat of the gods represents claiming to be in the same exalted position as if he were one of the gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**heart of the seas**

“middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

**you make your heart like the heart of a god**

Here “heart” represents the mind or thinking. A god thinks of himself as better than people. AT: “you think that you have the mind of a god” or “you have allowed yourself to think that you are better than other people” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

**you think that you are wiser than Daniel**

Here the ruler of Tyre compares himself to Daniel the prophet in how wise he thought he was. (See: [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [arrogant](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [God](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [Daniel](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Because you were wise and shrewd in business, you have become very rich; you have acquired much gold and silver for your treasuries.

<sup>5</sup> Yes, it is true that by buying and selling wisely, you have become very rich; and because you are rich, you have become very proud.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You have made yourself wealthy with wisdom and skill, and obtained gold and silver in your treasuries! <sup>5</sup> By great wisdom and by your trading, you have multiplied your wealth, so your heart is arrogant because of your wealth.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the ruler of Tyre.

**You have made yourself wealthy with wisdom and skill**

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “skill” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “skillful.” AT: “You have become wealthy by your own wisdom and skill” or “You have become wealthy by being wise and skillful” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**obtained**

“stored up”

**treasuries**

places to store valuable objects and keep them safe

**By great wisdom and by your trading, you have multiplied your wealth, so your heart is arrogant because of your wealth**

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “wealth” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “wealthy.” AT: “By being very wise and by your trading, you have become more and more wealthy, so your heart is arrogant because of how wealthy you are” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**your heart is arrogant**

Here “heart” represents the will or thoughts of the ruler of Tyre. AT: “you are arrogant” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [arrogant](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, Yahweh the Lord says that  
 because you think that you are as wise as a god,  
<sup>7</sup> he will bring a foreign army to attack your country,  
 an army that causes other nations to be terrified.  
 They will pull out their swords to strike you,  
 you who think that you have marvelous wisdom,  
 and they will ruin all your beautiful things and make them ugly.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: Because you have made your heart like the heart of a god,  
<sup>7</sup> I will therefore bring foreigners against you, terrifying men from other nations. They will bring their swords against the beauty of your wisdom, and they will profane your splendor.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the ruler of Tyre.

**you have made your heart like the heart of a god**

Here “heart” represents the mind or thinking. A god thinks of himself as better than people. See how you translated the similar phrase in [Ezekiel 28:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

**the beauty of your wisdom**

The abstract nouns “beauty” and “wisdom” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful” and the adverb “wisely.” AT: “the beautiful things that you have so wisely made” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**profane your splendor**

The abstract noun “splendor” can be translated using the adjective “splendid.” AT: “profane how splendid you are” or “defile how majestic you are” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [nation](#)
- [sword](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [profane](#)
- [splendor](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> They will bring you down to your grave;  
 you will die violently  
 like those who died in the sea.

<sup>9</sup> Then you will certainly not tell those who are killing you  
 that you are a god,  
 because they will know that you are not a god;  
 you are only a man.

<sup>10</sup> You will die like other people die, those who are unacceptable to God,  
 those whom foreigners kill. That will surely happen because Yahweh has said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> They will send you down to the pit, and you will die the death of those who die in the heart of the seas. <sup>9</sup> Will you truly say, “I am a god” to the face of one who kills you? You are a man and not God, and you will be in the hand of the one who pierces you. <sup>10</sup> You will die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of foreigners, for I have declared it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

**General Information:**

The word “They” refers to foreign armies. The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

**down to the pit**

Here “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. AT: “down to the grave” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in the heart of the seas**

“in the middle of the seas”



**Will you truly say, “I am a god” to the face of one who kills you?**

This question expects a negative answer to emphasize the irony when one who claims to be a god is destroyed by men. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “You will not say ‘I am a god’ to the face of one who kills you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

**to the face of**

Here the face represents being in the presence of another person. AT: “in the presence of” or “before” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**in the hand of**

Here being in the hand of someone represents being under their control. AT: “under the control of” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**by the hand of foreigners**

Here “hand” is a metonym for the actions of the foreigners’ army. AT: “by an army of foreigners” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [pit](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [face](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh also gave me this message: <sup>12</sup> "Son of man, sing a sad song about the king of Tyre. Tell him that Yahweh the Lord says this to him:

'You were completely perfect,  
extremely wise and handsome.

<sup>13</sup> You had a wonderful life, because you were in my beautiful garden in Eden.

Your clothes were decorated with many kinds of very valuable stones—  
ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl stones.

Those stones were set in gold mountings  
which I prepared for you on the day that I created you.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> The word of Yahweh came again to me, saying, <sup>12</sup> "Son of man, lift up a lament for the king of Tyre and say to him, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. <sup>13</sup> You were in Eden, the garden of God. Every precious stone covered you: ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl. Your settings and mountings were made from gold. It was on the day you were created that they were prepared.

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came again to me, saying,**

The idiom "The word of Yahweh came again to" is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 18:1](#). AT: "Yahweh gave a message to me a second time. He said," or "Yahweh spoke this second message to me." (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**lift up**

"sing"

**You were the model of perfection**

The abstract nouns “model” and “perfection” can be translated using the words “completely” and “perfect.” AT: “You were completely perfect” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**full of wisdom and perfect in beauty**

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “beauty” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “beautiful.” AT: “fully wise and perfectly beautiful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Every precious stone covered you**

“You wore every kind of precious stone”

**ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl**

These are all precious stones of different colors. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**settings and mountings**

pieces of metal that hold the precious stones

**It was on the day you were created that they were prepared**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I prepared them on the day that I created you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**prepared**

“made ready”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [Eden, garden of Eden](#)
- [gold](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> I appointed you to be a strong angel to guard the people.

I placed you on my holy mountain,  
and you walked among fiery stones.

<sup>15</sup> You were completely good in all that you did  
from the day that you were created,  
until you started to do wicked things.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> I placed you on the holy mountain of God as the cherub I anointed to guard mankind. You were in the midst of the fiery stones where you walked about. <sup>15</sup> You had integrity in your ways from the day you were created until injustice was found within you.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

**General Information:**

The word “you” in these verses refers to the king of Tyre.

**cherub**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:9](#).

**the fiery stones**

“the stones of fire.” Possible meanings are 1) a metaphor for the colorful and bright stones mentioned in [Ezekiel 28:13](#) or 2) other fiery stones on the “holy mountain of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**from the day you were created until injustice was found within you**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “since the day that I created you until I found injustice within you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [God](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [integrity](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then you became busy buying and selling things,  
you started to act violently,  
and you sinned.

So I disgraced you.

You, the angel who was supposed to guard the people—I forced you to leave my own mountain;  
I forced you to leave those fiery stones.

<sup>17</sup> You were extremely proud  
because you were very handsome.

Because you loved beautiful things,  
you did things that wise people do not do.

So I threw you to the ground,  
and allowed other kings who saw you to laugh at you.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Through your great trade you were filled with violence, and so you sinned. So I threw you out of the mountain of God, as a one who was defiled, and I destroyed you, guardian cherub, and drove you from among the fiery stones. <sup>17</sup> Your heart was arrogant with your beauty; you ruined your wisdom because of your splendor. I have sent you down to the earth. I have placed you before kings so they may see you.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

**great trade**

“large volume of trade”

**you were filled with violence**

Yahweh speaks of the king of Tyre as if he were a container that was filled up with violence. The king is a synecdoche for himself and his people. The abstract noun “violence” can be translated using the adjective “violent.” AT: “you and your people became completely violent” or “you and your people were completely violent” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**guardian cherub**

“guarding cherub”

**the fiery stones**

“the stones of fire.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 28:14](#). Possible meanings are 1) a metaphor for the colorful and bright stones mentioned in [Ezekiel 28:13](#) or 2) other fiery stones on the “holy mountain of God.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Your heart was arrogant**

Here the “heart” represents the whole person, emphasizing the person’s thoughts. AT: “You were arrogant” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**arrogant**

“proud”

**Your heart was arrogant with your beauty; you ruined your wisdom because of your splendor**

The abstract nouns “beauty,” “wisdom” and “splendor” can be translated using the adjectives “beautiful,” “wise” and “splendid.” AT: “Your heart was arrogant because you were beautiful; you became unwise because you were so splendid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**before**

“in front of”

**so they may see you**

“so they may look at you”

**translationWords**

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- defile, be defiled
- God
- cherubim, cherub
- heart, hearts
- arrogant
- ruin, ruins
- splendor

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 28:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> By committing many sins  
 and by buying and selling things dishonestly,  
 you caused the places where people worshiped me to become unacceptable to me.  
 So I will make a fire that will burn your city down.  
 Your city will be burned completely,  
 and the people who watch it will see  
 that what is left of the city will only be ashes.

<sup>19</sup> All the people who knew what your city was like previously  
 will be appalled.  
 Now your city will disappear,  
 and it will not exist anymore.”

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Because of your many sins and your dishonest trade, you have defiled your holy places. So I have made fire come out from you; it will consume you. I will turn you into ashes on the earth in the sight of all who look at you. <sup>19</sup> All the ones who knew you among the peoples will shudder at you; they will be horrified, and you will be no more forever.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

**it will consume you**

“it will devour you.” The fire is spoken of here as if it was eating him up. AT: “it will burn you up” (See: **Idiom**)

**turn you into ashes**

This idiom means burning up until only ashes are left. AT: “burn you up to ashes” or “burn you up completely” (See: [Idiom](#))

**shudder**

“shake” or “tremble”

**you will be no more forever**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:36](#).

**translationWords**

- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [fire](#)
- [consume](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>21</sup> "Son of man, turn toward the city of Sidon, and announce the terrible things that will happen to it. <sup>22</sup> Give the people of Sidon this message from Yahweh the Lord. Tell them:

'I am your enemy, you people of Sidon.

By what I do to you,

I will show you how great I am,

and you will know that it is Yahweh who punishes you and judges you with justice.

You will know that I am different from you, and that I will be honored by what I do to you!

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>21</sup> "Son of man, set your face against Sidon and prophesy against her. <sup>22</sup> Say, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Sidon! For I will be glorified in your midst so your people will know that I am Yahweh when I execute justice within you. I will be shown to be holy in you.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**set your face against Sidon**

Sidon was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). AT: "Turn toward Sidon and stare" or "stare toward Sidon so that the people there will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**prophecy against**

“prophecy about the bad things that will happen to.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:7](#).

**Behold!**

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**I will be glorified in your midst**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will reveal my glory among you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**when I execute justice within you**

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated using the verb “judge.” AT: “when I judge you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I will be shown to be holy in you**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will use you to show you that I am holy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [glorify, glorifies](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> I will send a plague on you,  
and I will send enemies to come and kill you in your streets.

They will attack you from every direction,  
and they will slaughter your people inside the walls of your city.

Then everyone will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.’

<sup>24</sup> No longer will people who live near the people of Israel hurt them as painful briars and sharp thorns hurt people. And then the Israelites will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> I will send out a plague in you and blood in your streets, and the slain will fall in your midst. When the sword comes against you from all around, then you will know that I am Yahweh. <sup>24</sup> Then there will no longer be pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people, so they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh!’

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Sidon.

**General Information:**

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Sidon.

**blood in your streets**

Here “blood” refers to the blood of the people of Sidon and represents those whom their enemies would kill. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the slain will fall**

Here “the slain” means the people of Sidon whom their enemies would kill. AT: “the slain people will fall” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**When the sword comes against you**

Here “sword” is a metonym for an attacking enemy army. AT: “When enemy armies attack you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people**

Here the briars and thorns represent what would cause suffering and pain. AT: “people anywhere around the house of Israel who wound them like briars, hurt them like thorns, and despise them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel’s descendants. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [plague](#)
- [blood](#)
- [slay, slain](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 28:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> And this is also what Yahweh the Lord says: "I will gather them from distant countries where I have scattered them. And the other people groups will see that I am set apart and honored, when the house of Israel makes their homes in the land I gave my servant Jacob! <sup>26</sup> My people will live safely in Israel; they will build houses and plant vineyards. And when I punish the nearby people groups that despised them, my people will know that it is I, Yahweh their God, who has done this."

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, 'When I gather the house of Israel from the peoples among whom they were scattered, and when I am set apart among them, so the nations may see, then they will make their homes in the land I will give to my servant Jacob. <sup>26</sup> Then they will live securely within her and build houses, plant vineyards, and live securely when I execute justice on all the ones who now despise them from all around; so they will know that I am Yahweh their God!'"

**translationNotes****the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel's descendants. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**among whom they were scattered**

This can be expressed in active form. AT: "among whom I scattered them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**so the nations may see**

"in such a way as the nations will see it"

**my servant Jacob**

Here "Jacob" represents the descendants of Jacob. AT: "the descendants of my servant Jacob" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**within her**

"in the land"

### **when I execute justice on all**

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated using the verb “judge.” AT: “when I judge all” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### **translationWords**

- [set apart](#)
- [nation](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 29 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter begins a prophecy against Egypt and its king, Pharaoh. Because Egypt did not fulfill its promise of protecting Judah, it will be conquered by Babylon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#) and [promise](#), [promises](#), [promised](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 29:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 29:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Almost ten years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the twelfth day of the tenth month of that year, Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, turn toward Egypt and proclaim the terrible things that will happen to the king of Egypt and all his people. <sup>3</sup> Give the king this message from me, for I am Yahweh the Lord:

'Know this, Pharaoh, king of Egypt that I, Yahweh, am your enemy.

You are like a great monster that lies in the streams of the Nile River.

You are so bold to say that the Nile River is yours,

and that you made it for yourself.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> In the tenth year, in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, set your face against Pharaoh, the king of Egypt; prophesy against him and against all of Egypt. <sup>3</sup> Declare and say, "The Lord Yahweh says this:

Behold! I am against you, Pharaoh, king of Egypt.

You, the great sea monster that lurks in the midst of the river,

that says, "My river is my own. I have made it for myself."

**translationNotes****In the tenth year**

It can be stated clearly that this was the tenth year of Jehoiachin's exile. AT: "In the tenth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month**

"on the twelfth day of the tenth month." This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twelfth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**set your face against Pharaoh**

This is a command to stare at Pharaoh as a symbol of punishing him and his people. Pharaoh was far away, so Ezekiel could not see him, but staring in his direction would be a symbol of harming him and his people. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). AT: “turn toward Pharaoh and stare” or “stare toward Pharaoh so that he and his people will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**prophecy against him and against all of Egypt**

“tell the terrible things that will happen to him and everyone in Egypt”

**the great sea monster**

“the huge creature that lives in the water.” Yahweh calls Pharaoh a monster that lives in the water. The monster is probably a crocodile. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But it will be as though I will put hooks in your jaws  
and drag you out onto the land,  
with fish sticking to your scales.

<sup>5</sup> I will leave you and all those fish to die in the desert;  
you will fall to the ground,  
and no one will pick up your corpse to bury you,  
because I declare that your body will be food for the wild animals and birds.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> For I will place hooks in your jaw, and the fish of your Nile will cling to your scales; I will lift you up from the middle of your river along with all the fish of the river that cling to your scales.

<sup>5</sup> I will throw you down into the wilderness, you and all the fish from your river.  
You will fall on the open field; you will not be gathered nor lifted up.  
I will give you as food to the living things of the earth and to the birds of the heavens.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh, speaking of him as though he were a monster in the water and the people of Egypt were fish. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

**hooks**

sharp and bent pieces of metal or wood that people use to catch fish and other animals in the water

**scales**

hard pieces of skin that are on fish, crocodiles, and other animals

**you will not be gathered nor lifted up**

This can be stated in active form. The implication is that they would die in the wilderness. AT: “no one will gather you or pick you up” or “no one will gather your bodies and bury you” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
- desert, wilderness
- face
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> When that happens, all the people of Egypt will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

The Israelite people have trusted that you would help them. But you have been like a reed pole in their hands. <sup>7</sup> And when they leaned on that pole, it broke and tore open their shoulders. When they leaned on you, you were like a pole that broke in their hand, and as a result you caused their legs to be wrenched and that made it impossible for them to stand.'

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then all the inhabitants of Egypt will know that I am Yahweh,  
because they have been a reed stalk to the house of Israel.

<sup>7</sup> When they took hold of you in their hand, you broke and tore open their shoulder;  
and when they leaned on you, you were broken, and you caused their legs to be unsteady.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they have been a reed stalk**

The word “they” refers to the inhabitants of Egypt. A reed stalk is unreliable because it is easily broken. Yahweh speaks of them as a reed stalk because the people of Israel relied on the Egyptians to help them in war, but the Egyptians did not help them. AT: “they have been as unreliable as a reed stalk” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**reed**

a plant that grows near water and looks like very large grass

**stalk**

the part of a reed that is long and like a thick stick. People can use them like sticks, but the stalks of reeds are not as strong as wood and can break suddenly.

**When they took hold of you in their hand**

God speaks of Israel relying on Egypt as if they were taking hold of a reed stalk in order to use it as a crutch. AT: “When they relied on you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**When they took hold of you**

The word “they” refers to the Israelites and the word “you” refers to Pharaoh or Pharaoh and Egypt.

**you caused their legs to be unsteady**

Because Egypt did not help the Israelites, the Israelites could not defend themselves against their enemy, the Babylonians. God speaks of the Israelites being unable to defend themselves as if their legs were unsteady. AT: “you caused them to be like people whose legs are unsteady” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Therefore Yahweh the Lord says, 'I will bring Egypt's enemies to attack them with their swords; they will kill Egypt's people and animals. <sup>9</sup> Egypt will become an empty desert. Then the people of Egypt will know that it is I, Yahweh, who has the power to do what he says he will do, and that he will punish the people of Egypt for saying that the Nile River is theirs because they made it. <sup>10</sup> I am against you and your streams, and I will ruin Egypt and make it into an empty desert, from the city of Migdol in the north to Syene in the south, as far south as the border of Cush.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will bring a sword against you. I will cut off both man and beast from you. <sup>9</sup> So the land of Egypt will become desolate and a ruin. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, because the sea monster had said, "The river is mine, for I have made it." <sup>10</sup> Therefore, behold! I am against you and against your river, so I will give the land of Egypt over to desolation and waste, and you will become a wasteland from the Migdol to Syene and the borders of Cush.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

**Behold!**

"Look!" or "Listen!" This word adds emphasis to what is said next. This is the Lord's message to Pharaoh. AT: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

**I will bring a sword against you**

Here "sword" is a metonym for battle, and "bring a sword against you" is a metaphor for causing an enemy army to come fight against Egypt. AT: "I will cause your enemies to come fight against you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a sword against you**

The word "you" refers to the nation of Egypt. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**I will cut off both man and beast from you**

Here "cut off man and beast" is a metaphor for destroying the people and animals. God would do this by causing the enemy army to do it. (See: [Metaphor](#))



**I am against you and against your river**

The word “you” refers to Pharaoh. God speaks to Pharaoh as if Pharaoh were a monster in the river.

**I will give the land of Egypt over to desolation and waste**

“I will put Egypt into the power of desolation and waste.” Desolation and waste are spoken of as if they were people who could be given power over Egypt. AT: “I will cause Egypt to become a desolate waste” (See: [Personification](#))

**you will become a wasteland**

Here “you” refers to Pharaoh and represents Egypt, the country he rules over. AT: “your country will become a wasteland” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from the Migdol to Syene and the borders of Cush**

This refers to all of Egypt. Where these places are can be stated clearly. AT: “throughout all of Egypt, from Migdol in the north to Syene in the south and the borders of Cush further south” (See: [Merism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Migdol**

This is the name of a place in the far northern part of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Syene**

This the name of a town in southern Egypt. It is now called Aswan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the borders of Cush**

These borders of Cush were south of Syene. Some versions say Sudan or Ethiopia, the modern names of countries south of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [sword](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [Cush](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> For forty years no one will walk through that area, and no one will live there. <sup>12</sup> Egypt will be barren, and it will be surrounded by other abandoned nations. The cities of Egypt will be empty and without people for forty years, and the surrounding lands will be the same. I will scatter the people of Egypt to countries far away.'

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> No man's foot will pass through it, and no wild animal's foot will pass through it. It will not be inhabited for forty years. <sup>12</sup> For I will make the land of Egypt a desolation in the midst of uninhabited lands, and its cities in the midst of wasted cities will become a desolation for forty years; then I will scatter Egypt among the nations, and I will disperse them though the lands.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

**No man's foot will pass through it**

Here "man's foot" represents people. AT: "No man will walk through the land of Egypt" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**no wild animal's foot will pass through it**

Here "animal's foot" represents animals. AT: "not even a wild animal will walk through it" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**For I will make the land of Egypt a desolation**

The abstract noun "desolation" can be expressed with the adjective "desolate." AT: "For I will make the land of Egypt desolate" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I will scatter Egypt among the nations**

Here "Egypt" represents the people of Egypt, and "scatter" represents causing them to move to other places. AT: "I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations" or "I will make the people of Egypt go and live among the nations" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [waste, wasteland](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [nation](#)
- [disperse, dispersion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> But Yahweh the Lord also says this: 'At the end of forty years, I will enable the people of Egypt to return home again. <sup>14</sup> I will bring back the people of Egypt whom their enemies had captured, and I will allow them to live again in the region of Pathros in the south, where they lived previously. But Egypt will continue to be a very unimportant kingdom.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this: At the end of forty years I will gather Egypt from the peoples among whom they were scattered. <sup>14</sup> I will restore the fortunes of Egypt and bring them back to the region of Pathros, to the land of their origin. Then they will be a lowly kingdom there.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

**I will gather Egypt**

Here "Egypt" is a metonym for the people of Egypt, and "gather" is a metaphor for causing them to return to Egypt. AT: "I will cause the people of Egypt to return to Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**among whom they were scattered**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "among whom I scattered them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I will restore the fortunes of Egypt**

The phrase "fortunes of Egypt" is a metaphor for the people of Egypt who had been taken away to other countries. AT: "I will bring back the people of Egypt" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the region of Pathros**

the southern part of Egypt between the Delta and the land of Cush. This is also called Upper Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a lowly kingdom**

Here "lowly" represents unimportant. AT: "an unimportant kingdom" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- restore, restores, restored, restoration
- lowly, lowliness
- kingdom

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> It will be the least important of all the nations; it will never again be greater than the nearby countries. I will cause Egypt to be very weak, and they will never again rule over other nations. <sup>16</sup> When that happens, the leaders of Israel will no longer think of asking Egypt to help them. When I punish Egypt, the Israelites will be reminded that they previously sinned by trusting that Egypt could help them. And the people of Israel will know that Yahweh the Lord has the power to do what he says he will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> It will be the lowliest of the kingdoms, and it will not be lifted up any more among the nations. I will diminish them so they will no longer rule over nations. <sup>16</sup> The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence for the house of Israel. Instead, they will be a reminder of the iniquity that Israel committed when they turned to Egypt for help. Then they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

**the lowliest of the kingdoms**

Here “lowliest” represents least important. AT: “the least important of the kingdoms” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**it will not be lifted up any more among the nations**

Here “be lifted up” represents becoming important. AT: “it will not become important again among the nations” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will diminish them**

“I will make them small.” Here “diminish them” represents making Egypt weak or unimportant. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence for the house of Israel**

The abstract noun “confidence” can be translated with the verbs “trust” or “rely on.” AT: “The house of Israel will no longer trust in the Egyptians” or “The house of Israel will no longer rely on the Egyptians” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents the people of Israel. AT: “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they will be a reminder of the iniquity that Israel committed**

How Egypt would be a reminder can be stated clearly. The abstract nouns “reminder” and “iniquity” can be expressed with the verbs “remember” and “sin.” AT: “when Israel sees what I do to Egypt, Israel will remember how Israel sinned” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**when they turned to Egypt for help**

Here “turn ... for help” is a metonym for “ask ... for help.” AT: “whenever they asked Egypt to help them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [kingdom](#)
- [nation](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 29:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Almost twenty-seven years after we Israelites prisoners had been taken to Babylonia, on the first day of the new year, Yahweh gave me this message: <sup>18</sup> "Son of man, the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon fought very hard against Tyre, with the result that their heads were rubbed bare under their helmets, and their shoulders became raw. But Nebuchadnezzar and his army did not get any valuable things from Tyre to reward them for their hard work in that campaign.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then it came about in the twenty-seventh year on the first of the first month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>18</sup> "Son of man, Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon stationed his army to do hard work against Tyre. Every head was rubbed until it was made bald, and every shoulder was made raw. Yet he and his army received no payment from Tyre for the hard work that he carried out against it.

**translationNotes****it came about**

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in the twenty-seventh year**

This was after King Jehoiachin and the people of Judah were taken as exiles to Babylon. AT: "in the twenty-seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**on the first of the first month**

"on the first day of the first month." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the beginning of April. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**to do hard work against Tyre**

The kind of hard work they did can be stated clearly. AT: “to work hard at attacking Tyre” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Every head ... every shoulder**

This refers to the heads and shoulders of the Babylonian soldiers.

**Every head was rubbed until it was made bald**

Either their helmets or the heavy things they carried on their heads rubbed the hair off their heads.

**every shoulder was made raw**

Either their armor or the heavy things they carried on their shoulders rubbed the skin off their shoulders. AT: “every shoulder was rubbed raw” or “every shoulder was rubbed bare”

**he and his army received no payment from Tyre**

Here “payment” represents the valuable things that Nebuchadnezzar’s army would steal from Tyre as a reward for defeating it. God speaks of these things as if they were what God would pay them for working for him. AT: “he and his army did not get any valuable things from Tyre as reward” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, Yahweh the Lord says that he will enable King Nebuchadnezzar's army to conquer Egypt. They will carry away from there all the valuable things, in order that the king can give them to his soldiers. <sup>20</sup> Yahweh says that he will enable them to conquer Egypt as payment for what they did to Tyre, because Nebuchadnezzar and his army were working for him, doing what he wanted them to do, which was to destroy Tyre."

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold! I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, and he will take away its wealth, plunder its possessions, and carry off all he finds there; that will be his army's wages. <sup>20</sup> I have given him the land of Egypt as the wages for the work they did for me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****Behold!**

"Look!" or "Listen!" This word adds emphasis to what is said next. AT: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

**I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon**

Yahweh speaks of causing the army of Babylon to defeat Egypt as if God were giving Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar. AT: "I will cause the army of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, to defeat Egypt" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that will be his army's wages**

God speaks of these things that Nebuchadnezzar's army would take as if they were what God would pay them for working for him. AT: "his army will receive those things as if they were payment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 29:21****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh said to me, “Some day I will make Israel become a mighty nation. When that happens, I will make them listen to what you tell them. Then they will know that all this has happened because I, Yahweh, will have done this.”

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> On that day I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel, and I make you speak in their midst, so that they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel**

An animal horn represents the animal's strength, so horn is a metonym for strength. God speaks of making Israel strong as if Israel were an animal, and he were to cause its horn to grow. AT: “I will make the people of Israel strong” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. Here it refers to the people of Israel, the descendants of Jacob whom God called Israel. AT: “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**speak in their midst**

“speak to them”

**translationWords**

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 30 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. Babylon will destroy all the towns of Egypt and their allies will not be able to help them. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 30:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 30:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, prophesy about what will happen to Egypt. Say that this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say:

'Weep and wail,

because terrible things will happen one day that is coming.

<sup>3</sup> That day is near,

the day when I, Yahweh, will punish people;

it will be like a day of full of storm clouds and disaster for many nations.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, prophesy and say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this:

Wail, "Woe is the coming day."

<sup>3</sup> The day is near. The day is near for Yahweh. It will be a day of clouds, a time of doom for nations.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel tells about a message that Yahweh gave him.

**The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**Wail**

"Cry out with grief." This command is to Egypt and the nations around Egypt.

**Woe is the coming day**

This exclamation expresses the fear that people would feel about a certain day when terrible and frightening things will happen. AT: “Oh that day” or “Oh, what a frightening day is coming” (See: [Exclamations](#))

**The day is near**

“That day is soon” or “It will soon be that day”

**The day is near for Yahweh**

It is implied that on that day, Yahweh will punish people. AT: “It will soon be the day when Yahweh will punish you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a day of clouds**

Dark storm clouds represent danger and fear. AT: “It will be like a day with dark clouds” or “It will be frightening like a day with dark clouds” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a time of doom for nations**

The abstract noun “doom” can be translated with the phrase “terrible things will happen.” AT: “a time when terrible things will happen to the nations” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [woe](#)
- [nation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 30:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> An enemy army will come to attack Egypt with their swords,  
and there will be great distress for the people in Cush.

The enemy army will kill many people in Egypt;  
they will take away everything of value,  
and they will even tear the buildings down to their foundations.

<sup>5</sup> Soldiers of Cush, Libya, Lydia, and all the foreigners in the land of Egypt, together with the Jews living in Egypt—they will all die because of war.’

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then a sword will come against Egypt, and there will be anguish in Cush when the killed people fall in Egypt—

when they take her wealth, and when her foundations are ruined.

<sup>5</sup> Cush and Put, Lydia and all Arabia, and Libya, together with the people belonging to the covenant—they will all fall by the sword.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words about Egypt.

**Then a sword will come against Egypt**

The word “sword” here represents war or an army that attacks. AT: “There will be war against Egypt” or “An enemy army will attack Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**there will be anguish in Cush**

The abstract noun “anguish” can be expressed in terms of how the people feel. AT: “the people of Cush will be very sad” or “the people of Cush will suffer” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**when the killed people fall in Egypt**

Possible meanings are that 1) “fall” is a euphemism for dying. AT: “when people in Egypt die in war” or 2) “fall” refers to their bodies falling and lying on the ground. AT: “when people in Egypt die in war and lie fallen” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**when they take her wealth**

“when the attackers take away the wealth of Egypt”

**when her foundations are ruined**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “when the attackers destroy the foundations of the buildings in Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Cush and Put, Lydia and all Arabia, and Libya**

These names refer to the people of these countries. AT: “The people of Cush and Put, Libya, and all Arabia, and Lydia” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Libya**

Libya is a country west of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Lydia**

This probably refers to the kingdom of Lydia which was in what is now Turkey.

**the people belonging to the covenant**

Possible meanings are 1) the “covenant” refers to the agreement that Yahweh made with the Israelites. AT: “the Jews who live in Egypt” or 2) the “covenant” refers to an agreement that Egypt made with other nations. AT: “the people of the nations that had a covenant with Egypt” or “Egypt’s allies” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**will all fall by the sword**

Here the sword represents battle. AT: “will all die in battle” or “will all die in the war” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will all fall by the sword**

The word “all” here is a generalization. It means that many people will die. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**translationWords**

- sword
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Cush
- foundation, founded

- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> This is what Yahweh says:

'This army will defeat Egypt's allies,  
and the power that the people of Egypt are so proud of will end.

From the city of Migdol in the north to the city of Syene in the south, they will kill the soldiers of Egypt's allies.

This is what Yahweh the Lord declares.

<sup>7</sup> Egypt's allies' soldiers will be shocked, and her allies' cities will be destroyed, surrounded by ruined cities in nearby nations.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh says this:

So the ones who support Egypt will fall, and the pride of her strength will go down.

From Migdol to Syene their soldiers will fall by the sword—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

<sup>7</sup> They will be appalled in the midst of the abandoned lands, and their cities will be among all the ruined cities.

**translationNotes****Yahweh says this**

"This is what Yahweh says." This sentence introduces what the Lord would say.

**So the ones**

"In this way, the peoples" or "In this manner, the nations"

**who support Egypt**

"who help Egypt"

**will fall**

"will die" or "come to ruin"

**the pride of her strength will go down**

This represents Egypt no longer being proud of their strength. The reason that they will not be proud is that they will no longer be strong. AT: “Egypt will no longer be proud about being strong” or “Egypt will no longer have the strength that they were so proud of” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**From Migdol to Syene**

Ezekiel names towns on the borders of Egypt in order to refer to all of Egypt. AT: “In all of Egypt” or “From the northern border of Egypt to the southern border of Egypt” (See: [Merism](#))

**their soldiers will fall by the sword**

Here “fall” represents dying, and “the sword” represents battle. AT: “Egypt’s soldiers will die in battle” or “an attacking army will kill Egypt’s soldiers in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**They will be appalled in the midst of the abandoned lands**

“The soldiers of the allies of Egypt will be appalled when they are left surrounded by nothing but abandoned lands”

**in the midst of**

“among” or “surrounded by”

**their cities will be among all the ruined cities**

Being “among” the ruined cities represents being ruined like the ruined cities of other countries. AT: “their cities will be ruined like the cities of other countries” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then, when I cause everything in Egypt to be burn down,  
and when I cause their enemies to defeat all their allies,  
people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

<sup>9</sup> At that time, I will send messengers to go swiftly up the Nile River in boats to terrify the people of Cush, who still think they are safe. They will be horrified when they hear that Egypt has been destroyed. This will soon happen!

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I set fire in Egypt, and when all of her helpers are destroyed. <sup>9</sup> In that day messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush, and there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom. For behold! It is coming.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

**Then they**

Possible meanings are 1) "Then people" or 2) "Then the Egyptians."

**they will know that I am Yahweh**

Yahweh is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated as similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: "they will understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God" or "they will realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**when I set fire in Egypt**

Here "set fire in Egypt" represents sending an army to attack Egypt and set fires. AT: "when I send an army to burn Egypt with fire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all of her helpers are destroyed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I destroy all of the allies of Egypt" or "when armies destroy all of those who help Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush**

Messengers will bring the news of Egypt's destruction to Cush, who will be frightened by the news.

**to terrorize a secure Cush**

“in order to frighten Cush, who now feels safe from danger”

**there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom**

The abstract noun “anguish” and “doom” can be translated with the words “suffer” and “punish.”

AT: “the people of Cush will also suffer when I punish Egypt” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**behold!**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “indeed!”

**It is coming**

“It” refers to the “great pain” or “great sorrow” that Cush will have when they are punished along with Egypt.

**translationWords**

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [fire](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [Cush](#)
- [doom](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 30:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say:

By the power of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon

I will destroy very many people in Egypt.

<sup>11</sup> Nebuchadnezzar and his army, whose soldiers have no pity on anyone,

will come to destroy Egypt.

They will pull out their swords

and fill Egypt with the corpses of those whom they have killed.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon. <sup>11</sup> He and his army with him, the terror of nations, will be brought to destroy the land; they will draw out their swords against Egypt and fill the land with dead people.

**translationNotes****The Lord Yahweh says this**

The word “this” refers to what follows. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:5](#).

**I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt**

“I will make it so that Egypt will no longer have many people.”

**by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar**

Here “the hand” represents Nebuchadnezzar’s military power. Nebuchadnezzar will be the one who brings this punishment about.

**He and his army with him ... will be brought to destroy the land**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will bring Nebuchadnezzar and his army ... to destroy the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**He and his army ... will be brought to destroy the land**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will cause him and his army ... to go destroy the land of Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**He and his army with him, the terror of nations**

Yahweh calls Nebuchadnezzar “the terror of the nations” because all of the nations are greatly afraid of his army. AT: “He and his army with him, the one who terrifies many nations” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**they will draw out their swords against Egypt**

Here “draw out their swords” represents fighting with their swords. AT: “they will use their swords and fight against Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**fill the land with dead people**

This is an exaggeration to show that the Babylonians will kill very many Egyptians. There will be so many dead Egyptians that it will seem that their dead bodies cover all of the land of Egypt. AT: “they will kill so many people that it will seem like their dead bodies are everywhere” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#)).

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [nation](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will cause the streams of the Nile River to become dry,  
and I will sell the nation of Egypt to evil men.

By the power of foreigners

I will ruin the land and everything that is in it.

That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it will happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> I will make the rivers into dry ground, and I will sell the land into the hand of wicked men. I will make the land and its fullness desolate by the hand of strangers—I, Yahweh, have spoken.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

**I will make the rivers into dry ground**

“I will dry up the rivers of Egypt”

**I will sell the land into the hand of wicked men**

Yahweh will give the Babylonians control over Egypt just as a person who sells something gives the one who buys it control over that thing. AT: “I will give control of the land to wicked men” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will make the land and its fullness desolate by the hand of strangers**

Here “hand of strangers” represents the actions of strangers. “I will cause people from another nation to destroy the land and everything in it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**its fullness**

“everything in the land”

**translationWords**

- hand, right hand, to hand over
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- desolate, desolation

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> This is also what I, Yahweh the Lord, say:

I will cause the enemy to destroy the idols  
in the city of Memphis.

No longer will there be a king in Egypt,  
and I will terrify everyone in the land of Egypt.

<sup>14</sup> I will cause all people to leave the region of Pathros in southern Egypt.

I will start fires in the city of Zoan in northeast Egypt  
and punish the people in the city of Thebes in southern Egypt.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: I will destroy idols, and I will bring an end to the worthless idols of Memphis. There will no longer be a prince in the land of Egypt, and I will put terror on the land of Egypt. <sup>14</sup> Then I will make Pathros desolate and set fire in Zoan, and I will execute acts of judgment on Thebes.

**translationNotes****The Lord Yahweh says this**

The word “this” refers to what follows. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:5](#).

**I will bring an end to the worthless idols**

“I will destroy the worthless idols”

**Memphis**

Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. It was near modern-day Cairo. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a prince in the land of Egypt**

“an important ruler in the land of Egypt”

**I will put terror on the land of Egypt**

Here “put terror on the land” represents causing the people of the land to be very afraid. AT: “I will make the people of Egypt very afraid” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Pathros**

This was a region in southern Egypt.

**set fire in Zoan**

“I will burn Zoan with fire”

**Zoan**

Zoan was another important city in Egypt.

**I will execute acts of judgment on Thebes**

The phrase “acts of judgment” refers to punishment. AT: “I will punish Thebes” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Thebes**

This was the capital city of southern Egypt.

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [fire](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> I will punish the soldiers in the fortress of Pelusium in northern Egypt,  
and I will destroy the people in Thebes.

<sup>16</sup> I will burn Egypt with fire;  
the people in Pelusium will suffer severe pain.

Enemies will conquer Thebes,  
and the enemies of Memphis will attack the people who live there every day.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> For I will pour out my fury on Pelusium, the stronghold of Egypt, and cut off the multitude of Thebes. <sup>16</sup> Then I will set fire in Egypt; Pelusium will be in great agony, Thebes will be broken up, and Memphis will face enemies every day.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

**For I will pour out my fury on Pelusium**

Here "pour out my fury" represents punishing the people because of his great anger. AT: "For I will act in great anger against Pelusium" or "Because I am so angry, I will punish Pelusium severely" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Pelusium**

Pelusium is the name of a fortress in northern Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**cut off the multitude of Thebes**

Here "cut off" represents killing the people. AT: "kill the very large number of people in Thebes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Thebes**

This was the capital city of southern Egypt. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:14](#).

**Then I will set fire in Egypt**

Here “set fire” is an idiom meaning “start a fire.” AT: “I will start a fire in Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Pelusium will be in great agony**

Here “Pelusium” is a metonym for the people of the city near Pelusium, and “be in great agony” can be translated with the verb “suffer.” AT: “The people of Pelusium will suffer terribly” or “The people of Pelusium will feel terrible pain” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Thebes will be broken up**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “enemies will break up the walls and buildings in Thebes” or “enemies will destroy the Thebes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Memphis will face enemies every day**

Here “face enemies” represents seeing or having enemies. The name of the city is a metonym for the people who live in the city. AT: “The people of Memphis will have enemies every day” or “Enemies will fight against the people of Memphis every day” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Memphis**

Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 30:13](#).

**translationWords**

- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [fire](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 30:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> The enemy will kill many young men in the cities of Heliopolis and Bubastis in northern Egypt, and the people who are left will have to go to Babylon.

<sup>18</sup> It will be a dark day of destruction at the city of Tahpanhes in northeast Egypt when I cause the power of Egypt to end; that country will no longer be strong.

It will be as though a dark cloud will cover Egypt, because the people of its villages will go to Babylon as prisoners.

<sup>19</sup> That is how I will punish Egypt, and people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> The young men in Heliopolis and Bubastis will fall by the sword, and their cities will go into captivity. <sup>18</sup> In Tahpanhes, the day will hold back its light when I break the yoke of Egypt there, and the pride of her strength will be finished. There will be a cloud covering her, and her daughters will walk into captivity. <sup>19</sup> I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt, so they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words about Egypt.

**Heliopolis and Bubastis**

These were cities in northern Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**will fall by the sword**

The word “sword” is used here to refer to a battle or war. AT: “will die in battle” or “will die in the war” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**their cities will go into captivity**

Here “cities” represents the people of the cities. The abstract noun “captivity” can be expressed with the more concrete noun “captive” or the verb “capture” AT: “the people of their cities will become captives” or “their enemies will capture their people and take them away” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Tahpanhes**

This was an important city in northern Egypt.

**the day will hold back its light**

The day is spoken of as if it were able to keep its own light from shining. AT: “the day will be dark” (See: [Personification](#))

**when I break the yoke of Egypt there**

The word “yoke” here refers to Egypt’s power to oppress people. AT: “when I stop Egypt from oppressing people” or “when I end Egypt’s power to cruelly control other nations” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the pride of her strength will be finished**

This represents Egypt no longer being proud of their strength. The reason that they will not be proud is that they will no longer be strong. AT: “Egypt will no longer be proud about being strong” or “Egypt will no longer have the strength that they were so proud of” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**There will be a cloud covering her**

Possible meanings are 1) the dark cloud represents how sad the people of Egypt will feel. AT: “It will be as if there is a cloud over Egypt” or 2) there will be a cloud of dust over Egypt from everything that is destroyed. AT: “A cloud of dust will be over Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**her daughters**

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the Egyptian towns or 2) the daughters of the Egyptian people

**I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt**

The phrase “acts of judgment” refers to punishment. AT: “I will punish Egypt in many ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**so they**

“so the Egyptians”

**translationWords**

- [captive, captivity](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Almost eleven years after the Babylonians took us Israelites to their country, Yahweh gave me another message on the seventh day of the first month of that year. He said, <sup>21</sup> "Son of man, I have enabled the army of Nebuchadnezzar to defeat the army of the king of Egypt. It is as though I have broken one of the arms of the king of Egypt, and it has not been bandaged in order that it could be healed, and it has not been put in splints in order that after it heals the arm will be strong enough to hold a sword.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then it came about in the eleventh year, in the first month, in the seventh day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>21</sup> "Son of man, I have broken the arm of Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. Behold! It has not been bound up, or set to heal with a bandage, so that it will become strong enough to grasp a sword.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God speaks of making Pharaoh's army weak as if he were to break Pharaoh's arm, and of the army not being able to become strong again as if Pharaoh's arm could not be healed. (See: [Parables](#))

**Then it came about**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**in the eleventh year**

This is the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 26:1](#).

**in the first month, in the seventh day of the month**

"in the seventh day of the first month." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**I have broken the arm of Pharaoh**

Here “arm” represents the powerful army of a king. (See: [Parables](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Behold**

“Look” or “Listen.” This word adds emphasis to what is said next. AT: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**It has not been bound up**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one has bound up his arm” or “No one has wrapped up his arm” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**or set to heal with a bandage**

Here “set to heal with a bandage” refers to the arm being wrapped tightly in a bandage so that the parts of the bone will stay together and heal.

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [king](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I am the enemy of the king of Egypt. I will completely destroy Egypt's power; it is as though now I will break both of the king's arms, the good one and the broken one, and cause the sword to fall from his hand. <sup>23</sup> I will scatter the people of Egypt among the nations. <sup>24</sup> It is as though I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon and put a sword in his hand, and as though I will break the arms of the king of Egypt, and he will groan in front of the king of Babylon like a soldier who is wounded and about to die.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this, 'Behold, I am against Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. For I will break his arm, both the strong one and the broken one, and I will make the sword fall from his hand. <sup>23</sup> Then I will scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands. <sup>24</sup> I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon and place my sword in his hand so that I might destroy Pharaoh's arms. He will groan before the king of Babylon with the groans of a dying man.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues speaking of Pharaoh's army as if it were a broken arm. He also speaks of strengthening the army of Babylon as if it were the arms of the king of Babylon. (See: [Parables](#))

**the Lord Yahweh says this**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:11](#).

**both the strong one and the broken one**

"both the arm that is healthy and the arm that is already broken"

**I will make the sword fall from his hand**

"I will knock the sword out of Pharaoh's hand"

**scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated similar phrases in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

**lands**

“countries”

**I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon**

“I will make the arms of the king of Babylon strong”

**He will groan before the king of Babylon**

“When the king of Babylon comes to attack Egypt, Pharaoh will groan.”

**groan**

A groan is a noise that people make when they have a lot of pain or are dying.

**with the groans of a dying man**

“as a man who is dying groans” or “like a man who is dying”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [nation](#)
- [disperse, dispersion](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 30:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> I will cause the king of Babylon to become stronger and stronger, and the king of Egypt to become completely weak. When that happens, when I make the Babylonian army strong, they will use that power to attack Egypt. <sup>26</sup> I will scatter the people of Egypt among the nations. And when that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> For I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon, while Pharaoh's arms will fall. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I put my sword into the hand of the king of Babylon; for he will attack the land of Egypt with it. <sup>26</sup> So I will scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

God continues speaking of the armies of Egypt and Babylon as if the armies were the arms of their kings. He also speaks of making the army of Babylon strong to attack others as if he had a sword and put it in the Babylonian king's hand. (See: [Parables](#))

**For I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon**

Here “arms” are a metonym for the army. AT: “I will make the army of the king of Babylon strong” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**while Pharaoh's arms will fall**

Here “Pharaoh's arms” is a metonym for his army, and “will fall” represents being weak. AT: “but Pharaoh's army will be unable to defeat enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Then they**

The word “they” possibly refers to 1) “the Egyptians” or 2) “all people who hear what Yahweh has done.”

**for he will attack the land of Egypt with it**

“and the king of Babylon will attack the land of Egypt with my sword”



**scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated similar phrases in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- [disperse, dispersion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 30 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 31 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. God told Egypt to remember what happened to Assyria when it became proud. This same things will now happen to Egypt. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 31:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 31:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Almost eleven years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, Yahweh gave me another message, on the first day of the third month of that year. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, say to the king of Egypt and to the immense numbers of his people,

'You think that there is no country whose power is as great as the power of your country.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then it came about in the eleventh year, in the third month, on the first day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, say to Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, and to his multitudes around him,

'In your greatness, who are you like?

**translationNotes****it came about**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in the eleventh year**

"in year 11." This means the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 26:1](#). AT: "in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in the third month, on the first day of the month**

"on the first day of the third month." This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. This first day is near the beginning of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**In your greatness, who are you like?**

“Who is as great as you are?” Yahweh uses this question to introduce a new topic. Pharaoh thought that his nation was the greatest, but God is about to talk about another great nation. AT: “You think that there is no country whose power is as great as the power of your country.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [like, likeness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> You think that your country is as great as Assyria was.

Well, Assyria was like a tall cedar tree in Lebanon;  
it had big beautiful branches  
that provided shade for other trees in the forest.

It was very tall;

and the branches of the tallest trees made a treetop that was a roof over the forest.

<sup>4</sup> Water came to it from deep springs,

and as a result that cedar tree grew tall and very green.

Then water flowed around the base of the tree

into channels that took water to other nearby trees in the open countryside.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Behold! Assyria was a cedar in Lebanon with beautiful branches, giving shade to the forest, and the tallest in height, and the branches formed its treetop.

<sup>4</sup> Many waters made it tall; the deep waters made it huge. Rivers flowed all around its area, for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are God's words to Pharaoh about Assyria. God gives his message in the form of a parable about a great cedar tree. (See: [Parables](#))

**Behold!**

"Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

**Assyria was a cedar**

In this parable, God speaks about Assyria as if it were a great tree to emphasize how great and powerful the Assyrians were. This parable continues until 31:9. AT: "Assyria was like a cedar" (See: [Parables](#))

**the branches formed its treetop**

“its top was above the branches of the other trees.” Some versions of the Bible translate this as “the top of the tree was in the clouds.”

**Many waters made it tall**

“Because the cedar had a lot of water, it grew very tall”

**the deep waters made it huge**

“the water deep in the ground made the cedar grow very big”

**for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field**

“and streams flowed from the rivers to all the trees of the field”

**translationWords**

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [water, waters](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> That huge tree grew very tall,  
higher than all the other trees around it.

Its branches grew very thick and long  
because of the abundant water at the base of the tree.

<sup>6</sup> Birds built their nests in the branches,  
and wild animals gave birth to their young under those branches.

And it was as though people of all the great nations lived in the shade of that tree.

<sup>7</sup> It was majestic and beautiful;  
its branches spread out widely

because the roots of the tree grew down into the ground where there was a plentiful supply of water.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field, and its branches became very many;

its branches grew long because of many waters as they grew.

<sup>6</sup> Every bird of the heavens nested in its branches, while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage.

All of the many nations lived under its shade.

<sup>7</sup> For it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches, for its roots were in many waters.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

**Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field**

“The cedar was taller than any of the other trees of the field”

**its branches became very many**

“it grew very many branches”

**because of many waters as they grew**

“because it had a lot of water”

**Every bird of the heavens nested in its branches**

“All kinds of birds that fly in the sky made nests in its branches”

**while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage**

“and all of the creatures that live in the field gave birth under the cedar’s branches”

**All of the many nations lived under its shade**

“All of the great nations lived in the shade of that tree.” Here “nations” represents the people who live there. AT: “The people from all the nations lived in the shade of that tree” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches**

“It was beautiful because it was very big and its branches were very long”

**translationWords**

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [nation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 31:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> The cedar trees in my garden in Eden were not as great as that tree,  
and the branches of the fir trees were not as long and thick as the branches of that cedar tree.  
And the branches of the plane trees were not as long and thick, either.  
No tree in my garden was as beautiful as that cedar tree.

<sup>9</sup> Because I caused that tree to become very beautiful  
because of its magnificent green branches,  
all the leaders of other countries represented by those other trees in Eden envied the country  
represented by that tree.'

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Cedars in the garden of God could not equal it.

None among the cypress trees matched its branches, and the plane tree could not equal its boughs.

There was no other tree in the garden of God that was like it in its beauty.

<sup>9</sup> I made it beautiful with its many branches  
and all the trees of Eden that were in the garden of God envied it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

**Cedars in the garden of God could not equal it**

Since these were God's words to Pharaoh, it can also be translated with the first person. AT: "The cedar trees in my garden were not as great as that tree" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**the garden of God**

This is another way of referring to "the garden of Eden."

**None among the cypress trees matched its branches**

Yahweh was comparing how many branches the trees had. AT: "None of the cypress trees had as many branches as the cedar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**cypress trees**

Cypress trees have very many branches. They can grow very tall. See how you translated “cypress” in [Ezekiel 27:5](#).

**the plane tree could not equal its boughs**

It was implied Yahweh was comparing the long branches of the cedar tree with the long branches of the plane tree. AT: “the plane tree did not have branches like the cedar tree” or “no plane tree had branches as long as the branches of the cedar tree” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**plane tree**

A plane tree was a large, leafy tree with strong branches. It is similar to a sycamore tree. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**was like it in its beauty**

“was as beautiful as the cedar tree”

**I made it beautiful with its many branches**

“I made the cedar beautiful by giving it many long branches”

**envied it**

“were jealous of the cedar tree”

**translationWords**

- [Eden, garden of Eden](#)
- [envy, covet](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: "That tree, which represents Assyria, grew very tall; its top was higher than the other trees, and it became very proud because it was so tall. <sup>11</sup> Therefore, I enabled another mighty nation to conquer it, to destroy it as it deserved to be destroyed. I have already discarded it.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Because it was tall in height, and it set its treetop between its branches, it lifted up its heart because of its height. <sup>11</sup> I have given it into the hand of a mighty one of the nations, to deal with it according to what its wickedness deserves. I have thrown it out.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

**Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this**

Since Yahweh is speaking this can be stated in first person. AT: "Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**it set its treetop between its branches**

"its top was above the branches of the other trees." Some versions of the Bible translate this as "the top of the tree was in the clouds."

**I have given it into the hand of a mighty one of the nations**

The word "hand" represents control. AT: "I put it in the power of the strongest nation" or "I gave the strongest nation power over it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I have thrown it out**

"I sent the cedar away from the cedar's land because the cedar was wicked"

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [nation](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> A foreign army, one that has caused people of other nations to be terrified, cut it down and left it. Its branches fell on the mountains and in the valleys. Some of its branches lay broken in all the ravines in the land. All the people of other nations came out from being under its shade and left it.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Foreigners who were the terror of all the nations cut it off and left it to die. Its branches fell on the mountains and all the valleys, and its boughs lay broken in all the ravines of the land. Then all the nations on earth came out from under its shade and they went away from it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

**who were the terror of all the nations**

The abstract noun "terror" can be stated as "afraid." And here "nations" represents the people of the nations. AT: "who made the people of all the nations afraid" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**cut it off**

"cut the cedar down"

**its boughs lay broken**

"the foreigners broke the boughs of the cedar"

**boughs**

Boughs are very large branches that grow on trees. Usually, many smaller branches grow on the boughs.

**came out from under its shade**

"left the shade of the cedar"

**translationWords**

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Birds of the sky settled on the fallen tree, and wild animals lived among its branches. <sup>14</sup> As a result, no other tree, even if the tree has plenty of water, will ever grow to such great height, or lift its top above the branches higher than other trees. They will all certainly die and decay; they will go to the place of the dead; they will go to the grave.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> All the birds of the sky rested on the trunk of the fallen tree,  
and every animal of the field came to its branches.

<sup>14</sup> This happened so that no other trees that grow by the waters will lift up their foliage to the height of the tallest trees, and that no other trees that grow beside the waters will reach up to that height. All of them have been assigned to death, to the earth below, among the children of humanity, with those that go down to the pit.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh’s parable about the cedar continues.

**All the birds of the sky**

“All the birds that fly in the sky”

**rested on the trunk of the fallen tree**

“rested on the remains of the cedar”

**trunk**

The trunk is a very thick part of the tree that comes out of the ground and holds up the rest of the tree.

**every animal of the field came to its branches**

“the wild animals lived in the branches of the cedar”

**that no other trees that grow by the waters**

“that no other trees that get a lot of water”

**will lift up their foliage to the height of the tallest trees**

“will grow taller than the branches of other trees.” Some Bibles translate this as “will set their tops among the clouds.”

**that no other trees that grow beside the waters will reach up to that height**

“that no other trees that get a lot of water will ever grow that tall again”

**All of them have been assigned to death, to the earth below**

This can be stated in active form. And the abstract noun “death” can be stated “die.” AT: “For I made it so that they all will die and go deep under the ground” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**among the children of humanity, with those that go down to the pit**

“to be with those people who have died and gone down to the grave”

**the pit**

This refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 26:20](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [pit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 31:15****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> This is what Yahweh the Lord says: "When that great tree was cut down, it was as though the springs that watered it mourned for it, because I caused the plentiful water from the springs to dry up. It was as if I had caused the mountains in Lebanon to mourn for it, and all the trees there to weep.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol I brought mourning to the earth. I covered the deep waters over it, and I held back the ocean waters. I kept back the great waters, and I brought mourning to Lebanon for him. So all the trees of the field mourned because of it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues. Here, Yahweh speaks about the great sadness caused by the tree being cut down as if even the waters, Lebanon, and the wild trees all mourned for the cedar.

**On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol**

The phrase "went down to Sheol" means "died." AT: "On the day that the cedar died" or "On the day that the cedar was chopped down" (See: [Idiom](#))

**I brought mourning to the earth**

The abstract noun "mourning" can be stated as a verb. AT: "I caused the earth to mourn" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I covered the deep waters over it**

The word "covered" possibly refers to putting on clothes for mourning. AT: "I made the water from the springs mourn for the cedar" or "it was as though the springs that watered it mourned for it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I held back the ocean waters**

"I kept the water in the ocean from watering the earth"

**I kept back the great waters**

“I made it so that there would not be a lot of water anymore”

**I brought mourning to Lebanon for him**

The abstract noun “mourning” can be stated as a verb. AT: “I made Lebanon mourn for the cedar”  
(See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:16****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> I caused the people of other nations to tremble when they heard that tree fall to the ground—when they heard that Assyria had been destroyed. All the other people groups had also been like beautiful, well-watered trees in Lebanon, but they were comforted when the king represented by that cedar tree arrived among them in the place where they were as dead people.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> I brought shuddering to the nations at the sound of its downfall, when I threw it down to Sheol with those who went down into the pit. So I comforted all the trees of Eden in the lowest parts of the earth. These had been the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

**when I threw it down to Sheol with those who went down into the pit**

Here “threw it down to Sheol” is an idiom that means to kill. “The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 31:14](#). AT: “when I killed the cedar and it went to Sheol with everyone else that is dead” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#)).

**in the lowest parts of the earth**

“that were already deep down in the ground.” This is an idiom. AT: “that had already died and are now in Sheol” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters**

“the best trees of Lebanon that everyone would want; trees that got a lot of water.” This is describing the trees of Eden that were in the lowest parts of the earth.

**the choicest**

This is something that everyone would want because it is very good.

**translationWords**

- nation
- Hades, Sheol
- pit
- comfort, comforter
- Eden, garden of Eden
- earth, earthly
- Lebanon

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 31:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> The people represented by the trees that grew in the shade of that huge tree, the allies of the great nation that the cedar tree represents, had also died and gone down to where the dead people are.

<sup>18</sup> This parable is a warning to you people of Egypt. You think that there is no other nation that is as great and glorious as yours is. But your nation will also be destroyed, along with those other nations. Your people will be there among the other people who are not fit to worship me, people who have been killed by their enemies' swords. That is what will happen to the king of Egypt and all his many people." This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared will happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> For they also went down with it to Sheol, to the ones who had been killed by the sword. These were its strong arm, those nations who had lived in its shade. <sup>18</sup> Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness? For you will be brought down with the trees of Eden to the lowest parts of the earth among the uncircumcised; you will live with those who were killed by the sword.'

This is Pharaoh and all of his multitudes—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

**they also went down with it to Sheol**

Here "went down ... to Sheol" is an idiom that means to die. AT: "those trees of Lebanon also died and went down to Sheol with the cedar" (See: [Idiom](#))

**who had been killed by the sword**

Here "sword" represents enemies who fought them in battle. This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom enemies had killed with swords" or "who had died in battle" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**These were its strong arm**

"These trees of Lebanon were its strong arm." The phrase "strong arm" represents "power." AT: "These trees of Lebanon were the power of the cedar" or "These trees strengthened the cedar" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness?**

“Which of these trees in Eden had as much glory as you and was as great as you?” God asks Pharaoh this question to show him that the parable applies to him and his country. It can start with “So Pharaoh” or “So Egypt.” AT: “None of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**For you will be brought down**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “For I will bring you down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with the trees of Eden**

“like the other trees of Eden”

**to the lowest parts of the earth**

“to a place deep in the ground”

**among the uncircumcised**

“where you will be with people who are not circumcised”

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Eden, garden of Eden](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 31 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 32 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The prophecy against Egypt and its king concludes in this chapter. Egypt will have its army destroyed, just as happened to so many other nations. Beginning in verse 1, the land of Egypt is addressed through Pharaoh, its king, so God refers to Egypt as “he” and “him.” However, beginning in verse 12, Egypt is referred to as “she” and “her,” as if she were a woman. It was common in Hebrew for lands and countries to be referred to as if they were women. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 32:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 32:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Almost twelve years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, Yahweh gave me another message, on the first day of the twelfth month of that year. He told me, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, sing a sad song about Pharaoh the king of Egypt. Sing this to him:

'People think that you are like a lion among the nations;

but you are like a sea monster in the river

thrashing around in the water,

churning up the water with your feet

and making all the water muddy.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then it happened in the twelfth month of the twelfth year, on the first of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, lift up a lament concerning Pharaoh the king of Egypt; say to him, 'You are like a young lion among the nations,

but you are like a monster in the seas; you churn up the water,

you stir up the waters with your feet and muddy their waters.

**translationNotes****Then it happened**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in the twelfth month ... on the first of the month**

This is the twelfth and final month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of February. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**of the twelfth year**

This refers to the twelfth year of the reign of King Jehoiachin. AT: "of the twelfth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))



**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**lift up**

“sing”

**You are like a young lion ... like a monster in the seas**

Possible meanings are 1) he thought he was like a lion, but he was really only a monster, or 2) he was like a lion and a monster.

**like a young lion among the nations**

Egypt was stronger than other nations, like lions are stronger than other animals. (See: [Simile](#))

**like a monster in the seas**

Pharaoh was powerful, but he only caused trouble for others, like this monster in the water. (See: [Simile](#))

**monster**

A monster is an animal that is big and dangerous. This one might be a crocodile. See how you translated this word in [Ezekiel 29:3](#).

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

- [lion](#)
- [nation](#)
- [water, waters](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> But I, the Lord Yahweh, say to you

that I will send many people to throw my net over you,  
and that they will haul you up onto the land.

<sup>4</sup> They will throw you into a field, where I will leave you to your fate.

I will allow the birds to sit on you,

and all the wild animals will eat the flesh of your corpse until their stomachs are full.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this:

So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples, and they will lift you up in my net.

<sup>4</sup> I will abandon you in the land. I will throw you into a field

and cause all the birds of the heavens to settle on you; the hunger of all living animals on earth will be satisfied by you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to speak of him as if he were a monster, perhaps a crocodile, in the water.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:5](#).

**So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples**

God's punishment of Pharaoh is spoken of as if the king were the river monster caught in a net. AT: "So I will gather many peoples and throw my net over you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will abandon you in the land**

"I will leave you helpless on the land." The monster that was fearsome and powerful when it was in the water cannot do anything when it is left on dry land.

**all the birds of the heavens**

“all the birds that fly in the sky”

**the hunger of all living animals on earth will be satisfied by you**

This can be put into active form. AT: “I will let all the animals of the earth eat your body until they are hungry no longer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> I will cause them to scatter your flesh on the hills  
and fill the valleys with the parts of your rotting body.

<sup>6</sup> I will cause them to fill the land with your blood,  
and also the mountains;  
they will fill the ravines with your blood.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> For I will put your flesh on the mountains, and I will fill the valleys with your worm-filled corpse.

<sup>6</sup> Then I will pour your blood over the mountains,  
and the stream beds will be filled with your blood.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to compare him to a monster that lives in the water.

**your worm-filled corpse**

The worms help the dead body to rot. AT: “your rotting body” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the stream beds will be filled with your blood**

This can be put into active form. AT: “I will fill the streams with your blood” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [flesh](#)
- [blood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> When I kill you,  
I will cover the sky and not allow the stars to shine.  
I will put a dark cloud in front of the sun,  
and the moon will not shine.

<sup>8</sup> I will cause the stars in the sky to be dark,  
and there will be darkness over your entire land;  
this will surely happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Then when I extinguish you, I will cover the heavens and darken their stars;  
I will cover the sun with clouds, and the moon will not shine its light.

<sup>8</sup> All the shining lights in the heavens I will darken over you,  
and I will put darkness over your land—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Pharaoh what he will do to Egypt.

**when I extinguish you**

It was common to speak of a person’s life as if it were a lamp that could be put out. AT: “When I destroy you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will cover the heavens**

Yahweh speaks of making the stars dark as if he were putting a cover over the sky. AT: “I will make everything in the sky go dark” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will put darkness over your land**

Darkness is spoken of as if it were something that someone could spread over everything. AT: “I will make it dark in your land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [light](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> And I will terrify the people of many nations when they hear how I destroy you,  
there where I will send you,  
in countries that you have never known about.

<sup>10</sup> I will cause many people to be shocked because of what has happened to you;  
their kings will be horrified and shudder because I destroyed you,  
when I swung my sword in front of them to kill you.

At the time that you die,  
all of them will tremble,  
fearing that I will kill them, too.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> So I will terrify the heart of many peoples in lands that you do not know, when I bring about your collapse among the nations, among lands that you have not known. <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient and modern versions have . <sup>10</sup> I will shock many peoples concerning you; their kings will shudder in horror concerning you when I swing my sword before them. Every moment each one will tremble because of you, on the day of your downfall.

---

32:9 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *when I bring about your collapse among the nations when I take you into captivity among the nations*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.

**I will terrify the heart of many peoples**

Here “heart” represents the people’s emotions. AT: “I will make the hearts of many peoples afraid” or “I will cause many people to be terrified” (See: [Metonymy](#))



**in lands that you do not know**

The way that Yahweh destroys Egypt will make afraid even people in lands that Pharaoh never knew about.

**when I bring about your collapse among the nations**

The nation of Egypt, symbolized by its king, is spoken of as if it were a building that was collapsing. AT: “when nations hear about the way I destroyed you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**when I swing my sword**

Here swinging a sword represents using the sword. AT: “when I use my sword” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Every moment each one will tremble because of you**

Here “tremble” is an action that people often do when they are very afraid. AT: “Every one of them will keep shaking because of their fear”

**on the day of your downfall**

The idea of falling down (“downfall”) represents dying. AT: “when I destroy you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [terror, terrify](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [nation](#)
- [king](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> I, the Lord Yahweh tell you, Egypt,  
that the swords of the army of the king of Babylon will strike you.

<sup>12</sup> I will cause the mighty soldiers of Babylonia  
to kill your best soldiers—  
the soldiers of Babylonia, who are more ruthless than those of any other nation.  
They will cause the people of Egypt to quit being proud,  
because they will kill very many of your people.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this: The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you.

<sup>12</sup> I will cause your multitudes to fall by warriors' swords—each warrior a terror of nations.  
These warriors will devastate the pride of Egypt and destroy all of its multitudes.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.

**The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you**

Here “sword” represents an army. AT: “The army of the king of Babylon will attack you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**each warrior a terror of nations**

The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as “terrifies” or “afraid.” AT: “Each warrior terrifies the nations” or “each one of them makes the nations afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**will devastate the pride of Egypt**

The abstract noun “pride” can be stated as “proud.” AT: “will cause the Egyptians to no longer be proud” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**destroy all of its multitudes**

Here “all” is probably a generalization that refers to the killing of large numbers of soldiers, and perhaps other people also. AT: “kill a very large number of people who live in Egypt” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [sword](#)
- [king](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [nation](#)
- [devastate, devastation](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> I will destroy all the cattle in Egypt,  
which graze alongside the streams.

As a result, the water in those streams will never again become muddy  
because of people and cattle walking in them.

<sup>14</sup> Then I will allow the streams in Egypt to become calm again  
and to flow as smoothly as olive oil flows.” This is what the Lord Yahweh announces.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> For I will destroy all the livestock from beside the plentiful waters;  
the foot of man will no longer stir the waters up, neither will the hooves of cattle stir them.

<sup>14</sup> Then I will calm their waters and make their rivers run like oil—  
this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking.

**from beside the plentiful waters**

“in the places where there is a lot of water”

**the foot of man will no longer stir the waters up**

The foot here is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “people will no longer stir the waters up with their feet” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**stir the waters**

make clear water muddy

**the hooves of cattle stir them**

The hoof is a synecdoche for cattle. AT: “cattle stir them with their hooves” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Then I will calm their waters**

Possible meanings are 1) “I will make the water calm” or 2) “I will make the water clear.” When no one stirs up the water, the dirt settles down and the water becomes clear.

**make their rivers run like oil**

Oil flows slowly and smoothly. AT: “make the rivers run smoothly like oil” (See: [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [livestock](#)
- [hoof, hoofed, hooves](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [oil](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> He also says this: "When I cause Egypt to become empty,  
when I strip off everything that grows on the land,  
and when I get rid of all the people who live there,  
people will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

<sup>16</sup> There will be a sad song that people will sing about Egypt.

Women of many nations will sing it;

they will chant it about Egypt and all its many people."

This will surely happen because Yahweh has said that it would happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> When I make the land of Egypt an abandoned place, when the land is made bare of all its fullness,

when I attack all the inhabitants in her, they will know that I am Yahweh.

<sup>16</sup> There will be a lament; the daughters of the nations will lament over her; they will lament over Egypt,

over all her multitudes they will lament—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking.

**When I make the land of Egypt an abandoned place**

This can be put into active form. AT: "When I make the land of Egypt a place where no one is living" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**when the land is made bare of all its fullness**

"when the country is made to lose all its wealth"

**when I attack all the inhabitants in her**

Here the idea of attacking represents destroying. AT: "when I destroy all who live in her" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in her ... over her**

It was normal in biblical language to represent countries and lands as if they were women. AT: “in it ... over it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the daughters of the nations**

Possible meanings are 1) “the women of other nations” or 2) “people of other nations”

**over Egypt, over all her multitudes**

“about Egypt, about all her multitudes” or “about the disaster that happened to Egypt, about the disaster that happened to all her multitudes”

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> On the fifteenth day of that same month, Yahweh gave me another message. He said,

<sup>18</sup> "Son of man, wail about the many people of Egypt, because I will send them to the place under the earth, where they and people of other mighty nations will be. I will send them there, along with others, down to the place where the dead are.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then it happened in the twelfth year, on the fifteenth day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

<sup>18</sup> "Son of man, weep for the multitudes of Egypt and bring them down—

her and the daughters of majestic nations—to the lowest earth with those who have gone down to the pit.

**translationNotes****Then it happened**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new message. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**in the twelfth year**

Possible meanings are 1) This happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took the Israelites to Babylon or 2) this happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took Jehoiachin to Babylon. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"



**bring them down—her and the daughters of majestic nations**

God is perhaps telling Ezekiel to cause this to happen by giving a prophetic command.

**her**

Once again, the land of Egypt is referred to as a woman.

**the daughters of majestic nations**

Possible meanings are 1) “the people of powerful nations” or 2) “other powerful nations.”

**the lowest earth**

“to the places under the ground.” When people died, they were put in the ground. So “bring them down ... to the lowest earth” means “make them die.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**with those who have gone down to the pit**

“with everyone else who has died and gone into the ground”

**the pit**

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 31:16](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [majesty](#)
- [nation](#)
- [pit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Say to them, 'You people of Egypt, you think that you are more beautiful than the people of other nations. But you also will descend to the place where the godless dead people are. <sup>20</sup> You will die along with many others whom their enemies have killed. Their enemies have begun to attack, and they will drag away a huge number people of Egypt. <sup>21</sup> In the place where the dead people are, mighty leaders of other countries will make fun of you people of Egypt and your allies. They will say that you have come to lie dead with them, those godless people whom their enemies killed.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> 'Are you really more beautiful than anyone else? Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised.'

<sup>20</sup> They will fall among those who were killed by the sword. The sword has been drawn! She has been given to the sword; they will seize her and her multitudes.

<sup>21</sup> The strongest of the warriors in Sheol will declare about Egypt and her allies,

'They have come down here! They will lie with the uncircumcised, with those who were killed by the sword.'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He speaks of the people of Egypt as if they were a woman. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Are you really more beautiful than anyone else? Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised.**

This is a question and command that the prophet is to ask the Egyptians. AT: "Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised. Ask them all: 'Are you really more beautiful than anyone else?'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Go down**

It is implied that they must go down to Sheol. AT: "Go down to Sheol" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lie down**

as in death. If your language has a word for dead people lying down that is different from the word for live people lying down to sleep, use it here.

**Are you really more beautiful than anyone else?**

This question really makes a statement. AT: “You are not more beautiful than anyone else.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**They**

“Egypt and her people”

**who were killed by the sword**

The word “sword” is a metonym for a soldier who kills people with a sword. This can be put into active form. AT: “whom enemy soldiers killed with swords” or “who died in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**The sword has been drawn!**

The word “sword” here is a metonym for war that people fight with swords. This can be translated in active form. AT: “War has begun” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**She has been given to the sword**

This can be put in active form. AT: “I have given Egypt to the sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they will seize her and her multitudes**

“her enemies will seize Egypt and her people”

**about Egypt and her allies**

“about the Egyptians and those who join them”

**translationWords**

- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> The dead of the people of Assyria and their army will also be there. They will be surrounded by the dead of others whom their enemies killed. <sup>23</sup> Their graves will be there in the deep pit, and the dead soldiers of their army will lie around their graves. The dead of all those who had terrified so many others will also be there, for their enemies will have killed them, too.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Assyria is there with all her assembly. Her graves surround her;  
all of them were killed by the sword.

<sup>23</sup> Those whose graves are set in the recesses of the pit are there, with all her assembly.  
Her graves surround all of those who were killed, who fell by the sword,  
those who brought terror on the land of the living.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol. Because what God is showing Ezekiel may be for future time, either the present tense or the future tense is suitable for these verses and the following verses.

**Assyria is there with all her assembly**

The land of Assyria is represented as a woman. AT: “The people of Assyria and all its army are there in Sheol” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**her assembly**

“all her people together”

**all of them were killed by the sword**

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. This can be put in active form. AT: “Soldiers used swords to kill them all” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**are set in the recesses of the pit**

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:18](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all of those who were killed, who fell by the sword**

This can be put in active form. AT: “all those whom enemies killed in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**fell by the sword**

The word “fell” here is a euphemism for “died.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**those who brought terror on the land of the living**

The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as “afraid.” AT: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the land of the living**

This represents the people who were alive. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [sword](#)
- [pit](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Many, many people from the country of Elam will be there, too, and Elam's servants, because their enemies will have killed them. These were soldiers who had terrified people in many places. At that time they will lie there in that deep pit below the earth, and they, along with the others who have gone there, will be disgraced.

<sup>25</sup> The people of Elam in their huge numbers will lie there among others who were slaughtered, surrounded by the graves of a huge crowd of other people. While they were alive, they caused people of other nations to be terrified; but they were godless, and now, because their enemies will have killed them, they will lie with others in that deep pit, disgraced.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Elam is there with all her multitudes. Her graves surround her; all of them were killed.

Those who fell by the sword, who have gone down uncircumcised to the lowest parts of the earth,

who brought their terrors on the land of the living and who carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit.

<sup>25</sup> They set a bedroll for Elam and all her multitudes in the midst of the slain; her graves surround her.

All of them are uncircumcised, pierced by the sword, because they had brought their terrors on the land of the living.

So they carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit among all those who have been killed, those who are going down to the pit. Elam is among all those who were killed.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.

**Elam is there**

Here "Elam" refers to the people of that country. AT: "The people of Elam are also there in Sheol" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**her multitudes**

Possible meanings are 1) her many people or 2) her army.

**Her graves surround her**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:22](#).

**all of them were killed**

This can be put in active form. AT: “Her enemies killed them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Those who fell by the sword**

Translate “who fell by the sword” as in [Ezekiel 32:23](#).

**by the sword**

Here “the sword” is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. AT: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who have gone down uncircumcised**

“who were uncircumcised when they went down”

**to the lowest parts of the earth**

“to places deep down in the ground” or “to the land deep down in the ground.” See how you translated “in the lowest realms of the earth” in [Ezekiel 26:20](#).

**who brought their terrors**

The abstract noun “terrors” can be stated as “afraid.” See how you translated “brought terror” in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). AT: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the land of the living**

This represents the people who were alive. See how you translated “the land of the living” in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who carry their own shame**

Shame is spoken of as if it were an object that one could carry where he goes. AT: “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced” (See: [Metaphor](#))



**the pit**

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**They set a bedroll for Elam and all her multitudes**

Space being made in Sheol for the dead is spoken of as if the dead were given beds to lie on. AT: “They gave beds to Elam and all its people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the midst of the slain**

“with all the other people who were killed”

**All of them are uncircumcised**

The Israelites did not respect people who were not circumcised. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**pierced by the sword, because**

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. AT: “their enemies have killed them with swords because” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Elam is among all those who were killed**

This is very similar to the first part of the verse. AT: “The dead people gave Elam a place to lie among themselves”

**translationWords**

- [Elam](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [sword](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [pit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> The dead of all the soldiers of the lands of Meshech and Tubal will be there, surrounded by the graves of a huge crowd. While they were alive, they also caused people in many places to be terrified. They are uncircumcised people whom their enemies will have killed. <sup>27</sup> They will not lie there beside the uncircumcised warriors who have gone to the grave highly honored with their shields over their bodies and their swords under their heads. While they were alive, they terrified many people on the earth.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Meshech, Tubal, and all their multitudes are there! Their graves surround them.

All of them are uncircumcised, killed by the sword, because they had brought their terrors on the land of the living.

<sup>27</sup> They do not lie with the fallen warriors of the uncircumcised who have gone down to Sheol with all their weapons of war, and with their swords placed under their heads

and their iniquities over their bones. For they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.

**Meshech ... Tubal**

See how you translated these names in [Ezekiel 27:13](#).

**Their graves surround them**

See how you translated “her graves surround her” in [Ezekiel 32:22](#).

**killed by the sword**

Here “the sword” represents warfare. AT: “killed in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they had brought their terrors on the land of the living**

Causing people to fear is spoken of as if it were the act of bringing an object to them. The abstract noun “terrors” can be translated with a verb. AT: “they terrified everyone in the land of the living” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**All of them ... land of the living**

See how you translated “All of them ... land of the living” in [Ezekiel 32:25](#).

**their iniquities over their bones**

The warriors’ iniquities cover their bodies, although one would expect that their shields would cover them in death. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living**

“while they were still alive, they made other warriors very afraid”

**in the land of the living**

The time during which these warriors were living is spoken of as if it were a place. AT: “while they were alive” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Meshech](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> You king of Egypt, I will kill you also, and you will lie there with other godless people whom their enemies will have killed.

<sup>29</sup> People of Edom will be there, along with their kings and leaders. They were powerful, but I will kill them. They will lie there in the place where the other godless people lie.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> So you, Egypt, will be broken in the midst of the uncircumcised! You will lie alongside those who were pierced by the sword.

<sup>29</sup> Edom is there with her kings and all her leaders. They have been placed in their strength with those killed by the sword. With the uncircumcised they lie, with those who have gone down to the pit.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking.

**you ... will be broken**

“Broken” here represents “destroyed.” This can be put in active form. AT: “I will destroy you” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**in the midst of**

“in the middle of”

**those who were pierced**

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). AT: “those whose enemies have killed them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**by the sword**

This represents being in warfare. AT: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Edom is there with her kings and all her leaders**

Here “Edom” represents all the people of Edom. AT: “the people of Edom are in Sheol with their kings and all their leaders” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the pit**

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [king](#)
- [pit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:30****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> All the rulers of countries north of Israel, including people from the city of Sidon, will be there. Because of their power, they terrified other people, but they will lie there. They were godless, and they will lie there along with others whom their enemies will have killed. They, along with everyone else who goes down into that deep pit, will be disgraced.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> The princes of the north are there—all of them and all the Sidonians who went down with the ones who had been pierced. They were powerful and made others to be afraid, but now they are there in shame, uncircumcised with those who were pierced by the sword. They carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit.

**translationNotes****The princes of the north**

“The princes who ruled nations in the north”

**are there**

“are in Sheol”

**went down**

“went down to Sheol”

**had been pierced**

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. See how you translated similar words in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). AT: “whom enemies had killed with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**by the sword**

This represents being in warfare. AT: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**They carry their own shame**

Shame is spoken of as if it were an object that one could carry where he goes. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). AT: “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the pit**

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:29](#).

**translationWords**

- [prince, princess](#)
- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 32:31-32****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> The king of Egypt and all his army will see them, and they will be comforted about the death of their many people, because they know that there were other huge groups of people whom their enemies killed. <sup>32</sup> While that king was living, I allowed him to terrify others in many countries, but he and his huge army will be there among other godless people whom their enemies have killed.” This will certainly surely happen because the Lord Yahweh has said that it would happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> Pharaoh will look and be comforted about all his multitudes who were pierced by the sword—Pharaoh and all his army—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. <sup>32</sup> I put him as my terrifying one in the land of the living, but he will be laid down in the midst of the uncircumcised, among those pierced by the sword, Pharaoh and all his multitudes—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****Pharaoh will look**

It can be made explicit who Pharaoh will see. AT: “Pharaoh will see all the dead people from other nations” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**be comforted about all his multitudes**

It is implied that Pharaoh will be comforted because the armies of other great kings also died. AT: “will comfort himself that he was not the only king whose entire army died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**who were pierced by the sword**

See how you translated “who had been killed by the sword” in [Ezekiel 31:17](#).

**I put him as my terrifying one in the land of the living**

“While Pharaoh was still alive, I made him to terrify people”

**he will be laid down in the midst of the uncircumcised**

This can be put in active form. AT: “Others will lay him in the midst of the uncircumcised” (See: [Active or Passive](#))



**translationWords**

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [comfort, comforter](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 32 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 33 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Repentance

God does not want sinners to die. He wants them to repent and live. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [repent](#), [repents](#), [repented](#), [repentance](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 33:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 33:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, speak to your fellow Israelites and say this to them: 'Suppose that I bring an enemy army to attack a country, and the people of that country choose one of their own people to be a watchman. <sup>3</sup> And suppose that he sees the enemy army come into view, and that he blows a trumpet to warn everyone. <sup>4</sup> If anyone hears the trumpet but pays no attention, and if that person then dies because of the enemy, that person is responsible for his own death.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, declare this to your people; say to them, 'When I bring a sword against any land, then the people of that land take one man from among themselves and make him a watchman for them. <sup>3</sup> He looks for the sword as it comes on the land, and he blows his horn to warn the people! <sup>4</sup> If the people hear the sound of the horn but do not pay attention, and if the sword comes and kills them, then each one's blood is on his own head.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**a sword against any land**

The word "sword" refers to an enemy army that attacks. Also, "land" refers to the people who live there. AT: "an army to attack the people of any land" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**make him a watchman**

"appoint him as a guard" or "make him guard"

**He looks for the sword**

Here “sword” represents an enemy army. AT: “He looks for an enemy army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**do not pay attention**

“ignore the warning”

**each one’s blood is on his own head**

Here “blood” represents death. The phrase “on his own head” is an idiom that means the person will be held responsible. AT: “it is their own fault if they die” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [sword](#)
- [watch, watchman](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [blood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> If he had paid attention, he would have saved his own life. But as it is, he will die, and it will be his own fault.

<sup>6</sup> Now suppose that the watchman sees the enemy army coming and does not blow the trumpet to warn the people. Then suppose that one of his people dies because of the enemy. That person will die because of his own mistake, but I will hold the watchman responsible for it.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> If someone hears the sound of the horn and pays no attention, his blood is on him; but if he pays attention, he will save his own life.

<sup>6</sup> However, if the watchman sees the sword as it is coming, but if he does not blow the horn, with the result that the people are not warned, and if the sword comes and takes anyone's life, then that person dies in his own sin, but I will require his blood from the watchman.'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

**his blood is on him**

Here "blood" represents a person's death. The phrase "on him" is an idiom that means that person is considered responsible. AT: "it will be his own fault that he dies"

**save his own life**

"will keep himself from dying"

**the sword as it is coming**

The word "sword" refers to an enemy army. AT: "the enemy army as it is coming" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with the result that the people are not warned**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "and he does not warn the people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the sword comes and takes anyone's life**

Here “sword” represents an enemy army. AT: “the enemy army comes and kills anyone” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that person dies in his own sin**

“that person dies because of his own sin”

**I will require his blood from the watchman**

Here “blood” represents a person's death. The phrase “I will require his blood from” is an idiom that means to consider someone responsible. AT: “I will consider that person's death to be the fault of the watchman” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [blood](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [sword](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Son of man, this parable has a meaning for you. I have appointed you to be a watchman for the Israelites. So always listen to what I say, and warn the people for me. <sup>8</sup> When I say to some wicked person, ‘You wicked person, you will surely die because of your sins,’ you must tell him what I said. If you do not speak to that person to warn him to turn away from his sins, that wicked person will die because of his sins, but I will make you responsible for his death. <sup>9</sup> But if you warn that wicked person that he should turn away from his sins, but if he does not do so, then he will die because of his sins, but you will have saved your own life.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Now you yourself, son of man! I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel; you will hear the words from my mouth and warn them on my behalf. <sup>8</sup> If I say to a wicked person, ‘Wicked one, you will surely die!’ but if you do not announce this so as to warn the wicked about his way, then he who is wicked will die in his sin, but I will require his blood from your hand! <sup>9</sup> But you, if you warn the wicked about his way, so that he might turn back from it, and if he does not turn back from his way, then he will die in his sin, but you yourself will have saved your own life.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. AT: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you will hear the words from my mouth and warn them on my behalf**

Here “mouth” represents what Yahweh says. AT: “you will hear the message that I speak and you will warn them on my behalf” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**warn them on my behalf**

“warn them as my representative” or “give them the warning from me”

**do not announce this**

“do not say this”

**about his way**

“the way he acts” or “the things he does.” See how you translated “your ways” in [Ezekiel 7:3](#).

**I will require his blood from your hand**

Here “blood” represents a person’s death. The phrase “require ... from your hand” is an idiom that means to consider someone responsible. AT: “I will consider you responsible for his death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**he might turn back from it, and if he does not turn back from his way**

A person no longer behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if he physically turns and goes back on a path. AT: “he might stop doing bad things, and if he does not stop doing bad things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will have saved your own life**

“will have kept yourself alive”

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [blood](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 33:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Son of man, say to the Israelite people, ‘This is what you all are saying: “The guilt that we feel for disobeying God’s laws and sinning is like a heavy weight on us, and our sins are hurting us, and we are slowly dying. So what can we do to continue to remain alive?”’ <sup>11</sup> Say to them, ‘Yahweh the Lord says, “As surely as I am alive, I am not happy when wicked people die; I would prefer that they turn away from their wicked behavior and continue to live. So repent! Turn away from your evil behavior! You Israelite people, do you really want to die?”’

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So you, son of man, say to the house of Israel, ‘You are saying this, “Our transgressions and our sins are on us, and we are decaying in them! How can we live?”’ <sup>11</sup> Say to them, ‘As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I do not delight in the death of the wicked, for if the wicked repents from his way, then he will live! Repent! Repent from your wicked ways! For why should you die, house of Israel?’

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

**the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. AT: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**You are saying this**

“This is what you have said”

**Our transgressions and our sins are on us**

Possible meanings are 1) “on us” is a metaphor that means they feel guilty for their transgressions and sins or 2) “on us” is a metaphor that means they realize that Yahweh is punishing them for their transgressions and sins. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we are decaying in them**

“we are rotting away because of them.” Being destroyed because of sin is spoken of as if the person’s flesh were rotting. AT: “they are destroying us” or “they are killing us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in them**

“because of them”

**How can we live?**

The people ask this question to emphasize that they have no hope of living. AT: “We have no hope of living.” or “We will certainly die.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**I do not delight in the death of the wicked**

The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “die.” And the nominal adjective “the wicked” can be stated as “wicked people.” AT: “It does not make me happy when wicked people die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**if the wicked repents from his way**

Here “way” represents how a person behaves. AT: “if the wicked person stops doing bad things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**For why should you die, house of Israel?**

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he does not want the people of Israel to die. AT: “Do not choose to die, house of Israel!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Therefore, Son of man, say to your fellow Israelites that if good people start to disobey me, the fact that they were previously righteous will not keep me from punishing them. Similarly, if wicked people turn away from their wicked behavior, they will not die because of those sins. And if good people start to sin, I will not allow the fact that they had been good to keep me from punishing them now. <sup>13</sup> If I tell those who do what is right that they will surely remain alive because of all the good they do, but then if they turn away and become proud of all their good deeds, then I will ignore all the good things that they had done before. I will make sure that they will die because of the evil things that they have done.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> So now you, son of man, say to your people, 'The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins! The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish if he repents from his sin! For the righteous person will not be able to live because of his righteousness if he sins. <sup>13</sup> If I say to the righteous, "He will surely live!" and if he trusts in his righteousness and then commits injustice, I will not call to mind any of his righteousness. He will die for the wickedness he committed.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

**The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins!**

The abstract noun "righteousness" can be stated as the adjective "right." It is implied that they will not be saved from God's punishment. AT: "If righteous people start to sin, the fact that they did what was right before will not stop me from punishing them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish**

The abstract noun "wickedness" can be stated as the adjective "wicked." AT: "A person who does what is wicked will not perish" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**if he trusts in his righteousness**

The person thinks that because he was righteous, Yahweh will not punish him, even if he sins. The abstract noun "righteousness" can be stated as the adjective "right." AT: "if he depends on the right things he has done" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**commits injustice**

“does what is evil” or “does wicked things”

**I will not call to mind**

This is an idiom. AT: “I will not think about” or “I will not recall” (See: [Idiom](#))

**for the wickedness he committed**

The abstract noun “wickedness” can be stated as the adjective “wicked” AT: “because of the wicked things he has done” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Continue to tell the people these things: If I say to some wicked person, ‘You will surely die because of your sins,’ perhaps that person will stop doing evil and start doing what is just and right. <sup>15</sup> For example, he might return what he took from another person to guarantee that that person would pay back what he owes, or he might return things that he has stolen, or he might obey the laws that will enable those who obey them to remain alive. If this happens, he will surely remain alive; he will not die because of the sins that he committed previously. <sup>16</sup> I will ignore the sins that he previously committed; he will surely remain alive.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> So if I say to the wicked, “You will surely die,” but if he then repents from his sins and does what is just and right—<sup>15</sup> if he restores the loan guarantee that he wickedly demanded, or if he makes restitution for what he has stolen, and if he walks in the statutes that give life and no longer commits sin—then he will surely live. He will not die. <sup>16</sup> None of the sins that he has committed will be called to mind for him. He has acted justly and rightly, and so, he will surely live!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

**to the wicked**

The nominal adjective “the wicked” can be stated as “the wicked person.” AT: “to the wicked person” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**if he restores the loan guarantee**

“if he gives back the loan guarantee”

**loan guarantee**

something a person leaves with another person to show that he will keep his promise to pay back what he has borrowed

**makes restitution for what he has stolen**

“returns what he has stolen” or “pays back the value of what he stole”

**walks in the statutes that give life**

Acting or behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if it were walking. AT: “lives according to the laws that give life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will be called to mind for him**

The phrase “call to mind” is an idiom that means to remember. The phrase “will be called” can be stated in active form. AT: “will I think about” or “will I recall” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:17-20****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Tell the people this: That they say that what I do is not fair, but that it is really what they do that is not fair. Then tell them these things, also: <sup>18</sup> If a good person stops doing what is good and starts to do what is evil, it is fair that he should die because of his sins. <sup>19</sup> And if a wicked person turns away from his wicked behavior and does what is right and fair, it is fair for him to remain alive because of doing that. <sup>20</sup> Remind the people that they are still saying that what I do is not fair. They can talk all they want, but I will punish each of them for what they do. Tell them this.”

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> But your people say, “The way of the Lord is not fair!” but it is your ways that are not fair! <sup>18</sup> When the righteous person turns away from his righteousness and commits sin, then he will die in it! <sup>19</sup> When the wicked turns away from his wickedness and does what is just and righteous, he will live because of those things! <sup>20</sup> But you people say, “The way of the Lord is not fair!” I will judge each of you according to his way, house of Israel!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

**your people**

These are the people of Israel. The word “your” refers to Ezekiel.

**The way of the Lord ... your ways that are not fair**

Behaviors or actions is spoken of as if they were a way or road on which a person travels. AT: “What the Lord does ... the things you do that are not fair” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**but it is your ways**

The word “your” refers to the people of Israel. This can be stated in third person. AT: “but it is their ways” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**turns away from his righteousness**

No longer doing something is spoken of as if it were physically turning away from something. AT: “stops doing what is right” (See: [Metaphor](#))



**die in it**

“die because of his sins”

**turns away from his wickedness**

No longer doing something is spoken of as if it were physically turning away from something. AT: “stops doing wicked things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**because of those things**

“because he does what is just and righteous”

**you people**

These are the people of Israel.

**house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. AT: “people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Almost twelve years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the fifth day of the tenth month of that year, a man who had escaped from Jerusalem came to me in Babylon and said, “Jerusalem has been captured!” <sup>22</sup> The evening before that man arrived, Yahweh took control of me. So when that man arrived, Yahweh enabled me to speak again; I was no longer forced to be silent.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> It happened in the twelfth year, on the fifth day of the tenth month of our captivity, that a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem and said, “The city has been captured!” <sup>22</sup> The hand of Yahweh had been on me in the evening before the fugitive came, and my mouth was opened by the time that he came to me in the dawn. So my mouth was open; I was no longer mute!

**translationNotes****It happened**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**the twelfth year ... fifth day ... tenth month**

“the 12th year ... 5th day ... 10th month” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**on the fifth day of the tenth month**

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**of our captivity**

Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the time the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem, but not to the reader. AT: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem**

“someone escaped from Jerusalem and came to me” The Babylonians had destroyed Jerusalem and killed the people of Jerusalem, but a few people escaped.

**The city has been captured**

The phrase “the city” refers to “Jerusalem.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Babylonians have destroyed Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**The hand of Yahweh had been on me**

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that person. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 1:3](#). AT: “Yahweh was controlling me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**my mouth was opened**

This phrase is an idiom that means to be able to speak. It can be stated in active form. See how you translated “I will open your mouth” in [Ezekiel 3:27](#). AT: “I was able to speak” or “Yahweh enabled me to speak” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**dawn**

The word “dawn” refers to the time early in the morning when the light of the sun first appears.

**I was no longer mute**

“I was no longer forced to be silent” or “I was no longer unable to speak” Ezekiel had been unable to speak anything except prophetic words since [Ezekiel 3:26](#).

**translationWords**

- [year](#)
- [day](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> Then Yahweh gave a message to me. He said, <sup>24</sup> "Son of man, the people who are living in the ruins in Israel are saying, 'Abraham was only one person, but Yahweh promised him that he and his descendants would possess this land. But we are many; so surely Yahweh has given us this land to possess.'

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>24</sup> "Son of man, the ones inhabiting those ruins in the land of Israel are talking and say, 'Abraham was only one person, and he inherited the land, but we are many! The land has been given to us as a possession.'

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**those ruins**

Possible meanings are 1) "those ruined buildings" or 2) "those ruined cities"

**he inherited the land**

Yahweh giving the land to Abraham is spoken of as if Abraham inherited the land. AT: "Yahweh gave him the land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the land**

"the land of Israel"

**The land has been given to us**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh has given us the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**as a possession**

The abstract noun "possession" can be stated as "possess." AT: "so that we can possess it" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- ruin, ruins
- Israel, Israelites
- Abraham, Abram
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> So send a message to them. Say, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: "You eat meat that still has the animal's blood in it. You still worship idols. And you still murder others. So should this land belong to you? <sup>26</sup> You rely on using your swords to obtain things that you want. You do many detestable things. Each of you sleeps with other men's wives. So should you really possess the land of Israel?"'

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Therefore say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: You eat blood, and you lift up your eyes towards your idols, then you pour out people's blood. Should you really possess the land? <sup>26</sup> You have depended on your swords and have done disgusting things; each man defiles his neighbor's wife. Should you really possess the land?'

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.

**You eat blood**

It is implied that they eat blood by eating meat that still has blood in it. Yahweh had commanded them to drain out the blood. AT: "You eat meat with blood in it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you lift up your eyes towards your idols**

"you look to your idols" This is an idiom. AT: "you worship your idols" (See: [Idiom](#)).

**you pour out people's blood**

Here "blood" represents a person's life. To pour out blood is an idiom that means to murder. AT: "you murder people" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**Should you really possess the land?**

Yahweh used this question to rebuke the people. AT: "You should not possess this land!" or "You do not deserve this land!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**You have depended on your swords**

Here “swords” represent doing violent things. AT: “You have committed violent acts with your swords to get what you want” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**done disgusting things**

“done things that I hate very much”

**each man defiles his neighbor’s wife**

It is implied that they defile their neighbor’s wives by sleeping with them. AT: “each man sleeps with his neighbor’s wife” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [blood](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [sword](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [neighbor](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:27-29****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> Send this message to them and tell them that this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say to them: 'As surely as I am alive, those who are left in the ruins in Jerusalem—their enemies will also kill them. And those who are living in the countryside—wild animals will kill them. Those who are living in forts and caves will die from disease. <sup>28</sup> I will cause your country to become a desolate wasteland. You will no longer be proud of being a strong country. The mountains of Israel will become very desolate, with the result that no one will walk across them.' <sup>29</sup> Then, when I have caused their country to become a desolate wasteland because of all the disgusting things that you have done, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> You will say this to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: As I live, surely the ones in the ruins will fall by the sword, and I will give those in the fields to the living creatures as food, and those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues. <sup>28</sup> Then I will turn the land into a desolation and a horror, and the pride of its might will end, for the mountains of Israel will be deserted, and there will be no one to pass through them.' <sup>29</sup> So they will know that I am Yahweh, when I make the land a desolation and a horror because of all the abominations that they have done.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.

**As I live**

"As surely as I am alive." Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "I solemnly swear" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the ones in the ruins will fall by the sword**

The phrase "fall by the sword" is an idiom. AT: "enemies will kill the ones living in the ruins" (See: [Idiom](#))

**those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues**

"plagues will kill the people who live in fortresses and caves"



**fortresses**

A fortress is a building that people build to protect themselves from enemies who attack them.

**caves**

Caves are natural holes in the side of a mountain or down in the ground. They are usually made of rock.

**a horror**

The abstract noun “horror” refers to something that makes people very afraid when they see it. This can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “something that horrifies people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the pride of its might will end**

The word “it” refers to the land, which refers to the people of the land. AT: “the people of the land will not be proud anymore that they are strong” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the mountains of Israel will be deserted**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one will live in the mountains of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**there will be no one to pass through them**

“there will be no one left to travel through the land or over the mountains”

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**all the abominations that they have done**

The abstract noun “abominations” can be stated as “things I hate.” AT: “all the things they have done that I hate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**they have done**

“the people have done”

### translationWords

- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)
- [plague](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> As for you, Son of man, your fellow Israelites here in Babylon stand beside the city wall or at the doors of their houses and are talking with each other. They are saying, ‘Come and listen to the message that has come from Yahweh.’ <sup>31</sup> My people come to you as they often have done, and they sit in front of you to listen to what you say. But they do not do what you tell them that they must do. With their mouths they say that they love me, but in their inner beings they are eager to acquire things by doing what is unjust.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> So now you, son of man—your people are saying things about you beside the walls and the gates of the houses, and each says to one another—each man to his brother, ‘Let us go and listen to the prophet’s word that comes out from Yahweh!’ <sup>31</sup> So my people will come to you, as they often do, and will sit in front of you and listen to your words, but they will not obey them. Right words are in their mouths, but their hearts are going after unjust profit.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**that comes out from Yahweh**

“that Yahweh tells him to speak” or “that Yahweh gives him”

**Right words are in their mouths, but their hearts are going after unjust profit**

Here “mouths” represent speaking. Possible meanings are 1) AT: “They speak about loving me, but their hearts are going after unjust profit” or 2) AT: “They speak about the things they lust after, and their hearts are going after unjust profit” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**their hearts are going after unjust profit**

Here “hearts” represents desire. AT: “in their hearts they want to get their unjust profit” or “they desire to get things in ways that are not just” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)

- brother, brothers
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word, words
- Yahweh
- obey, obedient, obedience
- heart, hearts
- profit, profitable

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 33:32-33****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> To them, you are only a man who sings them beautiful songs and plays a musical instrument well. They hear what you say, but they do not do what you tell them to do.

<sup>33</sup> The terrible things that I have said will happen to them will surely happen. And then they will know that a prophet has been among them, and that you are that prophet.”

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> For you are like a lovely song to them, a beautiful sound that is well played on a stringed instrument, so they will listen to your words, but none of them will obey them. <sup>33</sup> So when all of this happens—behold! it will happen!—then they will know that a prophet has been among them.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.

**you are like a lovely song to them**

Here “you” refers to Ezekiel, and here he represents the message he speaks. This compares Ezekiel’s message to a lovely song, which means the people enjoy listening to him, but they do not think his message is important enough to obey. AT: “they think that your words are like a lovely song” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

**a lovely song**

Possible meanings are 1) “a beautiful song” or 2) “a love song” or “a song about love.”

**that is well played on a stringed instrument**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that someone plays very well on a stringed instrument” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**stringed instrument**

something that has strings and people use to make music

**when all of this happens**

The word “this” refers to all of the things that had God said would happen and that Ezekiel told the people about.

**behold!**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “indeed!”

**that a prophet has been among them**

“that I really sent you as a prophet to them”

**translationWords**

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 33 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 34 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God protects the people

God is against those who exploit others. He will protect and take care of his people. (See: [people of God, my people](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

The people of Israel are compared to sheep and God and the son of David as good shepherds. This is a common metaphor in scripture. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 34:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 34:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, speak my message against the leaders of Israel. They should be taking care of my people, like shepherds take care of their flocks. Say to them that this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have to tell them: 'You shepherds of Israel, terrible things will happen to you because you take care only of yourselves. You should certainly take care of my sheep. <sup>3</sup> But you are like shepherds who eat the fat sheep, who slaughter the best animals for their wool. You are not real shepherds at all.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel. Prophesy and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this to the shepherds: Woe to the shepherds of Israel who are shepherding themselves. Should not shepherds guard the flock? <sup>3</sup> You eat the fatty portions and you dress in wool. You slaughter the fatlings of the flock. You do not shepherd at all.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

In chapter 34, Yahweh speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel were the shepherds that were supposed to care for the flock but have not. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**the shepherds of Israel**

The leaders of Israel are spoken as if they were shepherds. They were supposed to take care of their people like shepherds take care of their flock. AT: "the leaders of Israel who are like shepherds" (See: [Metaphor](#))



**are shepherding themselves**

The leaders taking care of themselves instead of the people are spoken of as if they were shepherding themselves. AT “are feeding and taking care of themselves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Should not shepherds guard the flock?**

Yahweh uses this question to scold the leaders for not taking care of the people. AT: “Shepherds should feed the flock and take care of it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**You eat the fatty portions ... dress in wool**

This continues speaking of the leaders of Israel as if they were bad shepherds that kill the best animals in their flock for food and clothing. AT: “You are like shepherds who eat the fatty portions ... dress in wool” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You eat the fatty portions**

The fatty portions come from the sheep and the goats. AT: “You eat the fatty parts of the sheep and goats” or “You eat the best parts of the sheep and goats” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**dress in wool**

“wear the wool from the sheep”

**the fatlings**

“the youngest and fattest sheep and goats”

**do not shepherd at all**

“do not feed and take care of the flock”

**translationWords**

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Son of Man, son of man
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- shepherd, to shepherd
- Israel, Israelites
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- woe
- flock, herd
- slaughter

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> You have not taken care of the sick sheep; you have paid no attention to those who are wounded. You have not looked for the sheep who have wandered off. You rule over them with force and violence. <sup>5</sup> Because you did not take care of them, my people have wandered away like sheep. And while they are scattered, wild animals attack and kill them, and then eat their flesh. <sup>6</sup> My people wander like sheep all over the high hills and mountains. They are scattered all over the earth, and no one is searching for them.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You have not strengthened those who have diseases, nor do you heal the ones who are ill. You do not bind up the ones who are broken, and you do not restore the outcasts or seek the lost. Instead, you rule over them through strength and violence. <sup>5</sup> Then they were scattered without a shepherd, and they became food for all the living beasts in the fields, after they were scattered. <sup>6</sup> My flock strays on all of the mountains and on every high hill, and it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth. Yet no one is searching for them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**have diseases**

Possible meanings are 1) “are sick” or 2) “are weak”

**You do not bind up the ones who are broken**

“You do not wrap cloth around the broken bones of those who are wounded”

**the ones who are broken**

“the sheep that have broken bones” or “the sheep that are injured”

**you do not restore**

“you do not bring back”

**the outcasts**

“the sheep that have been chased away” or “those that others have chased away”

**the lost**

The words “the sheep or goats” are left out of this phrase, but they are intended to be understood.

AT: “the sheep or goats that are lost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**through strength and violence**

“forcefully and cruelly”

**Then they were scattered without a shepherd**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Then they scattered because they did not have a shepherd”

(See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they became food for all the living beasts in the fields**

“all of the wild animals could attack and eat them”

**it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth**

“my flock is spread out all over the earth”

**translationWords**

- [heal, cure](#)
- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)
- [disperse, dispersion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, you who should be acting like shepherds, listen to what I, Yahweh the Lord, have to say to you. <sup>8</sup> As surely as I am alive, my people are like a flock of sheep without any shepherd, and as a result it is as though wild animals have attacked my people and eaten them. You shepherds did not search for them; instead, you only wanted to provide food for yourselves.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, shepherds, hear the word of Yahweh: <sup>8</sup> As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—because my flock has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields, because there was no shepherd and none of my shepherds sought my flock, but the shepherds guarded themselves and did not shepherd my flock.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**hear the word of Yahweh**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce a special message from God. AT: “listen to Yahweh’s message” (See: [Idiom](#))

**As I live**

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh declares” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, declare” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**because my flock has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields**

This can be stated in the active form. AT: “because all the beasts in the fields steal my flock and eat them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**plunder**

things that are stolen

**all the beasts in the fields**

Here “all” is a generalization that refers to all the wild animals that eat sheep. AT: “all the wild animals in the fields” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**because there was no shepherd**

“because they did not have a shepherd”

**none of my shepherds sought my flock**

“none of my shepherds tried to find my flock”

**guarded themselves**

“shepherded themselves” or “fed and cared for themselves”

**did not shepherd my flock**

“did not feed and care for my flock”

**translationWords**

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, you who should be shepherds of my people, listen to me. <sup>10</sup> I am opposed to you leaders. I will punish you for mistreating my people. I will remove you from taking care of my people; you will no longer feed yourselves while ignoring them. I will rescue my people from you, and you will no longer be able to butcher them and eat them.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, shepherds, hear the word of Yahweh: <sup>10</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against the shepherds, and I will require my flock from their hand. Then I will dismiss them from shepherding the flock; neither will the shepherds any longer shepherd themselves since I will take away my flock from their mouths, so that my flock will no longer be food for them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**hear the word of Yahweh**

“listen to Yahweh’s message.” This is an idiom that is used to introduce a special message from God. (See: [Idiom](#))

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

This can be stated in the first person. AT: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed!”

**I am against the shepherds**

“I am opposed to the shepherds”

**I will require my flock from their hand**

The phrase “require ... from their hand” is an idiom that means to hold or consider someone responsible for something. AT: “I will hold them responsible for all the bad things that happen to my flock” or “I will punish them for all the bad things they let happen to my flock” (See: [Idiom](#))

**I will dismiss them from shepherding the flock**

“I will not let them shepherd the flock any longer” or “I will not let them be the shepherds of the flock any longer”

**shepherd themselves**

“feed and take care of themselves”

**from their mouths**

Here “mouths” represent eating. AT: “so they cannot eat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**my flock will no longer be food for them**

“the shepherds will no longer eat the sheep and the goats of my flock”

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 34:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> I, the Lord Yahweh, tell you leaders that I myself will search for my sheep and take care of them. <sup>12</sup> As a shepherd takes care of his sheep, I will rescue my people from all the places to which you scattered them, when disasters struck them and they were afraid. <sup>13</sup> I will bring them back from those countries and gather them together again in their own land. I will lead my sheep to good pastureland on the hills of Israel, in the ravines, and in the villages of Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> For the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I myself will seek out my flock and I will look after them, <sup>12</sup> like a shepherd seeking his flock on the day he is within the midst of his scattered flock. Thus I will seek my flock, and I will rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on the day of clouds and darkness. <sup>13</sup> Then I will bring them out from among the peoples; I will gather them from the lands and bring them to their land. I will put them in pastures on the mountainsides of Israel, by the streams, and in every settlement in the land.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. Here he speaks of himself as if he were their shepherd and will take care of them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**For the Lord Yahweh says this**

This can be stated in first person. AT: “For this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here alerts the shepherds to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**will seek out**

“will look for”

**within the midst of his scattered flock**

“with his scattered flock”

**they were scattered**

It is implied that the animals in the flock scattered because they did not have a shepherd to care for them or protect them. This can be stated in active form. AT: “they scattered because they did not have a shepherd to care for them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**on the day of clouds and darkness**

“on the cloudy and dark day.” Disasters are spoken of as if they were a day of darkness. AT: “when terrible disasters happened to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**bring them**

“bring my sheep and my goats” or “bring my flock”

**from among the peoples**

“from the places where they lived with other peoples”

**I will put them in pastures ... every settlement in the land**

Yahweh bringing his people back from exile to their land so that he can care for them and keep them safe is spoken of as if he were their shepherd who puts his flock in a place where there is plenty of land, food, and water. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**pastures**

land that has grass and small plants that sheep and goats can eat

**settlement**

This is a place where people live. Usually they live in houses in a settlement.

**translationWords**

- [flock, herd](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> My sheep will graze in good pastures on the mountaintops. They will lie down in good grazing areas. <sup>15</sup> I myself will take care of my people and allow them to lie down and rest. This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, promise. <sup>16</sup> I will search for those who are lost; I will bring back the ones who have strayed away. I will bandage those who have been injured and strengthen those who are weak. But I will destroy those who are fat and powerful. I will act fairly toward my sheep, my people.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> I will put them in good pastures; the high mountains of Israel will be their grazing places. They will lie down there in good places for grazing, in abundant pastures, and they will graze on the mountains of Israel. <sup>15</sup> I myself will shepherd my flock, and I myself will make them lie down—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration— <sup>16</sup> I will seek the lost and restore the outcast. I will bind up the broken sheep and heal the sick sheep but the fat and the strong I will destroy. I will shepherd with justice.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. Here he speaks of himself as their shepherd who will take care of them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**their grazing places**

“places where they can eat”

**abundant pastures**

“lands that have a lot of grass and plants to eat”

**graze**

eat grass and other plants

**I myself**

The word “myself” adds emphasis. God would do this because the shepherds were not doing it. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**will shepherd**

“will feed and take care of”

**will make them lie down**

“will let them lie down”

**the lost**

The words “the sheep or goats” are left out of this phrase, but they are intended to be understood. AT: “the sheep or goats that are lost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**restore the outcast**

“bring back those that others have chased away”

**bind up the broken sheep**

“wrap a cloth around any sheep’s broken bone” or “wrap a cloth around any sheep’s wound”

**the fat and the strong**

The word “sheep” is understood. AT: “the fat sheep and the strong sheep” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**translationWords**

- [declare, declaration](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> And as for you, my people, my sheep, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: 'I will judge between each of you; I will separate those who are peaceful from those who are cruel and powerful. <sup>18</sup> You leaders, you who are like strong sheep who do evil to the others: It is bad that you keep the best pastures for yourselves. It is even worse that you trample the good grass with your feet. It is bad that you yourselves drink the clear water. It is even worse that with your feet you cause the rest of the water to become muddy. <sup>19</sup> You are forcing my flock to eat the grass that you have trampled and to drink the water that you have caused to become muddy!

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> So now you, my flock—this is what the Lord Yahweh says—behold, I will be a judge between sheep and sheep and between rams and male goats. <sup>18</sup> Is it not enough to feed on the good pasture, that you must trample down with your feet what is left of the pasture; and to drink from clear waters, that you must muddy the rivers with your feet? <sup>19</sup> Must my sheep eat what you have trampled with your feet, and drink what you have muddied with your feet?

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel his message. Now it is to the people of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this is what the Lord Yahweh says**

This can be stated in first person. AT: “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**behold**

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “indeed”

**I will be a judge between sheep and sheep**

“I will judge between one sheep and another”

**rams and male goats**

The male sheep and goats are usually the strongest in the flock and can get whatever they want from the other animals in the flock.

**Is it not enough ... feet**

God uses these questions to scold Israel's leaders, who are spoken of as if they were the stronger animals in the flock that were unkind to the weaker ones. You can translate this as a statement as in the UDB. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [flock, herd](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [judge](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to you: I myself will judge between those of you who are like the fat sheep and the rest of my people, those who are like the thin sheep. <sup>21</sup> You who are like strong sheep, with your shoulders and buttocks you have shoved the others away. You butted them with your horns, until you chased them all away from the good pastureland.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this to them: Behold! I myself will judge between the fat sheep and the thin ones, <sup>21</sup> for you have pushed them with your sides and shoulders, and you have gored all of the weak ones with your horns until you have scattered them away from the land.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the Lord Yahweh says this**

This can be stated in first person. AT: “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**to them**

“to my flock”

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed!”

**I myself**

The word “myself” emphasizes that it is Yahweh who will judge. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**will judge between the fat sheep and the thin ones**

“will make sure that the fat sheep and goats and the skinny sheep and goats are treating each other fairly”



**the fat sheep and the thin ones**

The leaders and strong people in Israel are spoken of as if they were fat and strong animals in the flock. The poor and weak people in Israel are spoken of as if they were the thin and weak animals in the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for you**

The word “you” refers to the sheep and goats that were not treating other sheep and goats well.

**with your sides**

“with the sides of your body”

**have gored**

Possible meanings are 1) “have pushed” or “have shoved” 2) “have stabbed” or “have pierced”

**scattered them**

“made them go in many different directions”

**away from the land**

“away from the land of Israel”

**translationWords**

- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> But I will rescue my people, and you will no longer steal from them. I will judge between one person and another. <sup>23</sup> And I will appoint one leader for them, someone who will be like King David, who served me very well. That leader will take care of them and be like their shepherd. <sup>24</sup> I, Yahweh, will be their God, and the one who is like King David will be their king. That will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said it.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> I will save my flock and they will no longer be plunder, and I will judge between one sheep and another! <sup>23</sup> I will set over them one shepherd, my servant David. He will shepherd them, he will feed them, and he will be their shepherd. <sup>24</sup> For I, Yahweh, will be their God, and my servant David will be a prince among them—I, Yahweh, have declared this.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they will no longer be plunder**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will not allow anyone to plunder them” or “I will not allow anyone to steal them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**plunder**

“things that are stolen.” The shepherds and wild animals have been stealing the sheep and the goats from Yahweh’s flock.

**I will set over them one shepherd**

The phrase “set over” is an idiom that means to cause a person to rule someone else. AT: “I will assign one shepherd to be in charge of my sheep and the goats” (See: [Idiom](#))

**my servant David**

Here “David” refers to a descendant of David. AT: “a descendant of my servant David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**He will shepherd them**

The descendant of David who will be king over the people of Israel is spoken of as if he would be their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will be a prince among them**

“will be their ruler”

**translationWords**

- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:25-27****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> I will make a covenant with the people of Israel. I will promise to give them peace. I will promise to get rid of all the wild animals in Israel, in order that my people may live safely, even in the wilderness and in the forests. <sup>26</sup> I will bless them, and I will bless all the region close to Mount Zion, where they will worship me in my temple. I will bless them by sending them rain showers at the right season; they will be showers to bless them. <sup>27</sup> The fruit trees will produce fruit, and the ground will produce crops. And my people will live safely in their land. When I rescue them from people who made them slaves, they will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then I will make a covenant of peace with them and remove the evil wild animals from the land, so that they will live securely in the wilderness and safely sleep in the forests. <sup>26</sup> I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill, for I will send out showers in due season. These will be showers of blessing. <sup>27</sup> Then the trees of the field will produce their fruit, and the earth will yield its produce. My sheep will be secure in their land; then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I break the bars of their yoke, and when I rescue them from the hand of those who enslaved them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a covenant of peace**

“a covenant that brings peace”

**the evil wild animals**

These are wild animals that could kill the sheep and the goats.

**I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill**

Some versions of the Bible translate this as “I will also turn them and the places around my hill into a blessing.”

**my hill**

This refers to Mount Zion. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will send out showers**

“I will cause it to rain”

**in due season**

“at the right time”

**These will be showers of blessing**

“This rain will be a blessing”

**the earth will yield its produce**

“the earth will grow food” or “food will grow on the earth”

**will be secure**

“will be safe”

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**when I break the bars of their yoke**

Slavery is spoken of as if it were a yoke that people wear like some animals. AT: “when I free them from being slaves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**from the hand of those who enslaved them**

Here “hand” represents power or control. AT: “from the control of those who made them slaves” or “from those who made them slaves” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- covenant, covenants
- peace, peaceful
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- desert, wilderness
- bless, blessed, blessing
- send, send out, sent
- know, knowledge, make known
- yoke
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- enslave, in bondage

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 34:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> Soldiers from other nations will no longer take away their valuable possessions, and wild animals will no longer attack them. They will live safely, and no one will make them afraid. <sup>29</sup> I will cause their land to be peaceful and to produce good crops. There will no longer be famines in the land, and people in other nations will no longer mock them.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> They will no longer be plunder for the nations, and the wild animals on the earth will no longer devour them. For they will live securely, and no one will frighten them. <sup>29</sup> For I will provide them a land known for its crops; so they will not be victims of famine in the land, and they will not bear the scorn of the nations.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

**They will no longer be plunder for the nations**

Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. AT: “The people of the nations will no longer steal from them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**plunder**

These are things that are stolen or taken by force. See how you translated “plunder” in [Ezekiel 7:21](#).

**a peaceful planting place for them**

“a peaceful place for them to plant crops”

**be starved with hunger**

“be starved” or “be starving because of lack of food”

**the nations will not bring insults against them**

Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. The abstract noun “insults” can be stated as a verb. AT: “the people of the nations will no longer insult them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### translationWords

- [nation](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 34:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then they will know that I, Yahweh their God, am helping them, and they will know that they, the Israelite people, are my people. <sup>31</sup> It is as though you, my people, are my sheep whom I take care of, and I am your God. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then they will know that I, Yahweh their God, am with them. They are my people, the house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. <sup>31</sup> For you are my sheep, the flock of my pasture, and my people, and I am your God—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****I, Yahweh their God, am with them**

Here “I ... am with them” is an idiom that means Yahweh helps them. AT: “I, Yahweh their God, am helping them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**with them. They are my people**

This can be stated as one sentence. AT: “with them, and that they are my people”

**the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. AT: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**For you are my sheep, the flock of my pasture**

This speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and Yahweh is their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 34 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 35 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Edom**

Because the people of Edom rejoiced at the destruction of Israel, they too will be destroyed.

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 35:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 35:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, turn toward Edom and prophesy what will happen to its people. Say this to them: <sup>3</sup> 'You who live near Mount Seir in Edom, I am your enemy. I will use my power to strike you and ruin your country.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, set your face against Mount Seir and prophesy against it. <sup>3</sup> Say to it, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a horror.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak a prophecy. Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir, but the message is for all of the people of Edom.

**the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**set your face against Mount Seir**

Mount Seir was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but Yahweh commands him to stare in that direction as a symbol of harming the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). AT: "turn toward Mount Seir and stare" or "stare toward Mount Seir so that the people there will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Mount Seir and prophesy against it**

"the mountain of Seir." Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for all of the people of Edom. AT: "Mount Seir and prophesy against it because of what the people of Edom have done" (See: [Personification](#))

**to it**

“to the mountain” or “to the people of Edom”

**Behold! I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a horror**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for all of the people of Edom. AT: “Listen, Mount Seir, I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a horror because of what your people did” (See: [Personification](#))

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Listen!” or “Indeed!”

**I am against you**

“I am your enemy” or “I oppose you”

**I will strike you with my hand**

Here “hand” represents power. AT: “I will use my power to strike you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**make you a desolation and a horror**

The abstract nouns “desolation” and “horror” can be translated as adjectives.” AT: “make you desolate and ruined” or “make you a desolate wasteland” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 35:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> I will destroy your cities, and everyone will leave them. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

<sup>5</sup> You have always been enemies of the Israelite people. You rejoiced when they experienced a great disaster, when their enemies attacked them, when I was punishing them most severely for the sins that they had committed. <sup>6</sup> Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, I will allow your enemies to slaughter you. They will attack you again and again. You enjoyed watching other people die, so I will slaughter you.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> I will make your cities ruins, and you yourself will become desolate; then you will know that I am Yahweh. <sup>5</sup> Because you have always been hostile to the people of Israel, and because you poured them out into the hands of the sword at the time of their distress, at the time their punishment was at its greatest. <sup>6</sup> Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—I will prepare you for bloodshed, and bloodshed will pursue you! Since you did not hate bloodshed, bloodshed will pursue you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you poured them out into the hands of the sword**

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) “you gave them over to their enemies who killed them with swords” or 2) “you killed them with swords.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**at the time of their distress**

“at a time of disaster”

**as I live**

“as surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**I will prepare you for bloodshed**

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. AT: “I will make it easy for your enemies to kill many of you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**bloodshed will pursue you**

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Yahweh speaks of bloodshed as if it were a person who could chase them. AT: “your enemies will chase you down and kill you you” (See: [Personification](#))

**Since you did not hate bloodshed**

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. AT: “Since you did not hate it when enemies brutally killed the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [sword](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 35:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> I will therefore make everyone leave Mount Seir, and I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it. <sup>8</sup> I will cause your mountains to be filled with the corpses of those who have been killed. The corpses of those whom your enemies have killed will lie on your hills, in your valleys, and in all your ravines. <sup>9</sup> I will cause your land to be forever without people. No one will live in your towns again. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> I will make Mount Seir a complete desolation when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again. <sup>8</sup> I will fill its mountains with those who were killed; on your high hills and valleys and in all your streams those who were killed by the sword will fall. <sup>9</sup> I will make you a perpetual desolation. Your cities will not be inhabited, but you will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

**when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again**

Possible meanings are 1) “cut off” is a metaphor that means to destroy. AT: “I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it” or 2) “cut off” is a metaphor that means to stop someone from doing something. AT: “I will make it so that people do not travel back and forth through it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**with its dead**

The nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. AT: “with dead people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**those killed by the sword**

Here “sword” represents enemies who fought them in battle. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 31:17](#). AT: “those whom enemies have killed with swords” or “those who have died in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))



**a perpetual desolation**

“desolate forever.” This may be an exaggeration to emphasize the destruction. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**Your cities will not be inhabited**

This can be stated in active form. This may be an exaggeration for emphasis. AT: “People will not live in your cities” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**but you will know**

Here “you” is plural. God is speaking to the people of Mount Seir, rather than to a single mountain. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**translationWords**

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 35:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Your people said, ‘Israel and Judah will become ours. We will take over their territory!’ You said that even though I, Yahweh, was still there and protecting them. <sup>11</sup> Therefore, I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that as surely as I am alive, I will punish you for being angry with my people, for envying them, and for hating them. And when I punish you, I will make sure that the Israelites know that it is I who have punished you.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> You have said, “These two nations and these two lands will become mine, and we will possess them,” even when Yahweh was present with them. <sup>11</sup> Therefore, as I live—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—so I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy that you had in your hatred of Israel, and I will show myself to them when I judge you.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

**You have said**

The word “You” refers to the mountain of Seir. Ezekiel is to speak to the mountain as if it can hear him. The message is for the people of Edom. AT: “Your people said” (See: [Personification](#))

**these two lands**

“the lands of Israel and Judah”

**will become mine**

The word “mine” can be stated in plural form. AT: “will become ours”

**we**

The word “we” refers to the people of Edom.

**even when Yahweh was present with them**

It is implied that Yahweh was protecting Israel and Judah. AT: “but Yahweh was there protecting Israel and Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy**

Possible meanings are 1) “I will punish you because of your anger and jealousy” or 2) “just as you acted against the people of Israel with anger and jealousy, I will act against you with anger and jealousy.”

**translationWords**

- [nation](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 35:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have heard all the disgusting things that you have said about the land of Israel; you said that the land was ruined, and that you could capture it for yourselves.

<sup>13</sup> You insulted me; I heard everything that you said about me.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> So you will know that I am Yahweh. I have heard all the insults you spoke against the mountains of Israel, when you said, “They have been destroyed; they have been given over to us to devour.”

<sup>13</sup> You exalted yourselves against me with what you said, and you multiplied the words you said against me; and I heard it all.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

**against the mountains of Israel**

Here “mountains” represents the whole land of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**They have been destroyed**

This phrase can be stated in active form. AT: “They are in ruins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they have been given over to us to devour**

The people of Mount Seir taking the land of Israel and using it for themselves is spoken of as if they were wild animals that would devour the mountains of Israel. AT: “they are here for us to devour” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [contempt, contemptible](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [devour](#)
- [boast, boasts, boastful](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 35:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You people who live on Mount Seir and in all the other places in Edom, when I make everyone leave your land, everyone else in the world will rejoice. <sup>15</sup> You were happy when the land of the Israelite people was ruined, so I will do the same thing to your land. When that happens, people will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: I will make you a desolation, while the entire earth rejoices. <sup>15</sup> As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the people of Israel because of its desolation, I will do the same to you. You will become a desolation, Mount Seir, and all of Edom—all of it! Then they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

This can be stated in first person. AT: “This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**I will make you a desolation**

Here “you” refers to Mount Seir, but the message is for the people of Edom. The abstract noun “desolation” can be stated as an adjective. AT: “Because of what your people did I will make you desolate” (See: [Personification](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the entire earth rejoices**

Here “earth” represents the people of the earth. The word “entire” is a generalization that refers only to people near Mount Seir. AT: “people who know that I have destroyed you rejoice” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the people of Israel because of its desolation**

This speaks of the land that Yahweh gave to the Israelites as their inheritance. AT: “As you rejoiced when I made the land of the Israelites desolate” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will do the same to you**

Possible meanings are 1) "I will make your land desolate" or 2) "I will rejoice when your land is desolate" or 3) "I will make other people rejoice because of your desolation."

**You will become a desolation, Mount Seir, and all of Edom**

Yahweh continues telling Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for the people of Edom. AT: "I will make you, Mount Seir, and all of Edom desolate" (See: [Personification](#))

**Then they will know**

The word "they" possibly refers to 1) "the people of the earth" or 2) "the people of Israel and Judah."

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 35 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 36 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel restored

Israel is promised to be restored by Yahweh. Because of his honor, God will bring Israel back to their land. (See: [promise, promises, promised](#) and [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#))

#### New hearts

God will forgive Israel's sin and give them the desire to obey him. This is expressed by the metonym "heart." (See: [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness](#) and [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 36:01 Notes](#)



**Ezekiel 36:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Ezekiel, "Son of man, give a message to the hill country and mountains in Israel just as if they were people. Tell them to listen to my message for them. <sup>2</sup> This is it: The enemies of Israel, those people groups who live nearby, are now very happy, because they are saying that Jerusalem has been destroyed, so the ancient mountains of Israel will now belong to them. <sup>3</sup> So you, Ezekiel, must tell the mountains of Israel what I, the Lord Yahweh, am saying to them: 'Armies of other nations attacked you from every direction, and everyone has left you. Those foreign armies are now in your land. They have spoken very maliciously about your people, the Israelites, and have told all kinds of lies about them.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> "Now you, son of man, prophesy to the mountains of Israel and say, 'Mountains of Israel, listen to the word of Yahweh. <sup>2</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: The enemy has said about you, "Aha!" and "The ancient high places have become our possession.'" <sup>3</sup> Therefore prophesy and say, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Because of your desolation and because of the attacks that came on you from all sides, you have become a possession of the other nations; you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people's stories.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak a prophecy. Ezekiel is to speak to the mountains of Israel, but the message is for all of the people of Israel.

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**prophesy to the mountains of Israel**

God wants Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people. The message is for the people of Israel. (See: [Personification](#))

**Aha**

This is an expression of joy. It can be translated as "I am very happy" or "This is great."

**The ancient high places**

“The very old mountains.” This refers to the high mountains of Israel.

**have become our possession**

“now belong to us”

**Because of your desolation**

The abstract noun “desolation” can be stated as “desolate.” AT: “Because you, mountains of Israel, have become desolate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**because of the attacks that came on you from all sides**

“because you were attacked from every direction” or “because your enemies attacked you from every direction”

**you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people’s stories**

Here, “lips” and “tongues” represent people speaking. AT: “people are saying bad things about you, and the nations are telling bad stories about you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [high places](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [slander, slanderer](#)
- [tongue](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:4****UDB:**

<sup>4-6</sup> Therefore, you mountains of Israel, listen to this message from me. I, Yahweh the Lord, have something to say to you, the hills and mountains, and to you, the ravines and valleys, and to you, the towns and cities which the enemy burned down, where no one is living any longer, from where the enemy has taken everything valuable, and whose people the people groups all around are mocking. "This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare: I am very angry with the people of Edom and the other people groups; they have insulted your Israelite people and happily taken all their land as pastures. So Ezekiel must speak for me to you, the land of Israel, mountains and hills, valleys and ravines: I, Yahweh the Lord, am very angry because the enemy has insulted you.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Therefore, mountains of Israel, listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh: The Lord Yahweh says this to the mountains and the high hills, to the streambeds and valleys, to the uninhabited desolations and the forsaken cities that have become plunder and a subject of mocking for the other nations that surround them— <sup>5</sup> therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: I have certainly spoken in the fire of my fury against the other nations, against Edom and all who took my land for themselves as a possession, against all those who had both joy in their heart and disdain in their spirit, as they seized my land that they might claim its pasturelands for themselves.' <sup>6</sup> Therefore, prophesy to the land of Israel and say to the mountains and to the high hills, to the streambeds and to the valleys, 'the Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! In my fury and in my anger I am declaring this because you have borne the insults of nations.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues the message that Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to the mountains of Israel. The message is for all of the people of Israel.

**General Information:**

It may be helpful to use a verse bridge here, as the UDB does, to arrange the text in a more logical order. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

**listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh**

“listen to the message of the Lord Yahweh”

**the uninhabited desolations**

The abstract noun “desolations” can be stated as “desolate cities.” AT: “the desolate cities which have no people living in them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the forsaken cities**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the cities that people have left behind” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**that have become plunder**

“that enemies have stolen from”

**a subject of mocking for the other nations that surround them**

“that the other, surrounding nations mock”

**in the fire of my fury**

This speaks of Yahweh’s fury as if it were a fire. Yahweh loves Israel very much, so he becomes jealous and angry when other nations mock it. AT: “because of my intense jealousy” or “because of my very strong anger” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**against Edom and all**

“and against all of Edom”

**had both joy in their heart and disdain in their spirit, as they seized my land**

Here “heart” and “spirit” represent a person’s inner being. The UDB reverses the order of these phrases. AT: “insulted my people and joyfully took my land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “Indeed!”

**In my fury and in my anger**

The words “fury” and “anger” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of his anger. AT: “Because I am extremely angry” (See: [Doublet](#))

**you have borne the insults of nations**

“other nations have insulted you” or “other nations have mocked you”

**translationWords**

- desolate, desolation
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker
- nation
- fire
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- joy, joyful
- heart, hearts
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- seize
- angry, anger
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: I solemnly declare I will shame the people of the nations that are around you.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, the Lord Yahweh says this: I myself will lift up my hand to swear that the nations that surround you will certainly carry their own shame.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

**I myself will lift up my hand to swear**

Here "lift up my hand" is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. AT: "I solemnly swear" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**that the nations that surround you will certainly carry their own shame**

The people experiencing shame are spoken of as if they will carry their shame. AT: "that people will certainly mock the nations that surround you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**surround you**

The word "you" refers to the mountains of Israel.

**translationWords**

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [nation](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But I say to you mountains of Israel that huge crops of fruit will grow on your trees for my Israelite people, because they will soon return home from Babylonia. <sup>9</sup> I will work to help you, and I will be kind to you. I will enable farmers to plow the ground and plant seed in you.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> But you, mountains of Israel, you will grow branches and bear fruit for my people Israel, since they will soon come back to you. <sup>9</sup> For behold, I am for you, and I treat you with favor; you will be plowed and sown with seed.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

**you will grow branches and bear fruit**

Here "you" refers to the mountain of Israel which here represents the trees on the mountain that will grow fruit. AT: "your trees will grow branches and bear fruit" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**behold**

The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "indeed"

**I am for you**

"I want to do good things to you." The word "you" refers to the mountains of Israel.

**I treat you with favor**

"I will be kind to you"

**you will be plowed and sown with seed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "my people, Israel, will plow your ground and sow it with seed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [plow](#)
- [sow, sower, plant](#)
- [seed, semen](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 36:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> I will cause the number of people who live there on you mountains and everywhere else in Israel to greatly increase. People will live in the cities and rebuild houses where there are now only ruins. <sup>11</sup> I will cause the number of people and domestic animals to increase. People will have many children. I will enable people to live there as they did previously, and I will enable them to prosper as they did before. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do. <sup>12</sup> I will enable my Israelite people to walk through your mountains. They will own the land on you; you will belong to them forever. You will always grow enough food for them to eat, so they will never again go hungry and die.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So I will multiply upon you the number of your people, even the whole house of Israel. The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt. <sup>11</sup> I will multiply man and beast on you mountains so that they will multiply and be fruitful. Then I will cause you to be inhabited as you previously were, and I will make you prosper more than you did in the past, for you will know that I am Yahweh. <sup>12</sup> I will bring men, my people Israel, to walk on you. They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance, and you will no longer cause their children to die.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

**So I will multiply upon you**

Yahweh is speaking to the mountains. This can be stated explicitly. AT: "So, mountains of Israel, I will multiply upon you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**even the whole house of Israel**

Here "house" represents people. AT: "all of the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Then people will live in the cities and will rebuild the ruins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they will multiply and be fruitful**

Here “be fruitful” is an idiom that means to have many children and descendants. AT: “they will become very many people and have very many children” (See: [Idiom](#))

**you to be inhabited as you previously were**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “people to live on you mountains as they did before” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance**

The people living in the mountains and land of Israel permanently is spoke of as if the people would inherit them. AT: “They will possess you permanently” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will no longer cause their children to die**

It is implied that in the past children died because there was not enough food in the land. Now the land would produce enough food. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [children, child](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> I, Yahweh the Lord, am telling you mountains this: It is true that people have said they could not grow many crops on you, and so they died from hunger. <sup>14</sup> But that will no longer happen. <sup>15</sup> No longer will the other people groups ridicule you mountains. No longer will they laugh at you; no longer will you mountains make your nation suffer defeat. I, the Lord Yahweh, am telling you this myself.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Because they are saying to you, “You devour people, and your nation’s children have died,” <sup>14</sup> therefore you will not consume people any longer, and you will no longer make your nation mourn their deaths. This is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. <sup>15</sup> Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer; you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples or cause your nation to fall—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This continues Yahweh’s message to the mountains of Israel. The message is meant for the people of Israel.

**they are saying to you**

“other nations are saying to you mountains”

**You devour people**

Not enough food growing in Israel so that people die is spoken of as if the mountains of Israel were devouring the people. AT: “You cause many people to die” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your nation’s children have died**

“you cause your people’s children to die.” It is implied that the mountains do this by not growing good crops. This can be made explicit as in the UDB. See (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you will not consume people any longer**

Not enough food growing in Israel so that people die is spoken of as if the mountains of Israel were consuming the people. AT: “you will no longer cause the people to die” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer**

This speaks of the mountains as if they were able to hear when people insult them. AT: “I will no longer allow the other nations to insult you” (See: [Personification](#))

**you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples**

Experiencing shame is spoken of as if the mountains could bear shame. AT: “the peoples will no longer cause you to feel ashamed” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**or cause your nation to fall**

Here “to fall” is an idiom that means to be defeated in battle. AT: “or cause your people to suffer defeat” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [devour](#)
- [nation](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>17</sup> "Son of man, when the Israelite people were living in their own land, they defiled it by the things that they did. They made it unacceptable to me. I considered that their behavior was as disgusting as the rags that women use during their monthly menstrual periods. <sup>18</sup> So I severely punished them, because they had murdered many people and because they had worshiped idols there. They made their entire land unacceptable to me.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>17</sup> "Son of man, when the house of Israel inhabited their land, they defiled it with their ways and their deeds. Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me. <sup>18</sup> So I poured out my fury against them for the blood that they poured out on the land and for their pollution of it by their idols.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**the house of Israel**

Here "house" represents people. AT: "the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with their ways and their deeds**

"by the way they lived and the things they did"

**Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me**

This compares how the people behaved to a woman's unclean menstruation rags. This emphasizes how disgusting their behaviors were to Yahweh. AT: "Their ways were as disgusting to me as the unclean menstruation of a woman" (See: [Simile](#))

**menstruation of a woman**

the blood that comes out of a woman every month when she is not pregnant

**I poured out my fury against them**

Yahweh punishing people because he is angry is spoken of as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out. AT: “I did things to them that showed how angry I was” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for the blood that they poured out on the land**

This is an idiom that refers to killing someone. AT: “because they made the blood of many people spill onto the land” or “because they murdered many people” (See: [Idiom](#))

**for their pollution of it by their idols**

The people worshiping idols is spoken of as if the idols made the land physically dirty. AT: “because they defiled the land with their idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [blood](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> So I made their enemies scatter them into other lands. I punished them as they deserved to be punished because they had done so many evil things. <sup>20</sup> Wherever they went among those lands, they caused other people to mock me, when they should have honored me. Those people have been saying, ‘The Israelites belong to Yahweh, but he was not strong enough to protect them. They had to leave the land that he had given to them.’ <sup>21</sup> The people of Israel had disgraced me among the people groups to which they had to go, but I deserve that those people groups worship me instead.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> I scattered them among the nations; they were dispersed through the lands. I judged them according to their ways and their deeds. <sup>20</sup> Then they went to the nations, and wherever they went, they profaned my holy name when people said of them, ‘Are these really the people of Yahweh? For they have been thrown out of his land.’ <sup>21</sup> But I had compassion for my holy name that the house of Israel had defiled among the nations, when they went there.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about Israel.

**I scattered them among the nations; they were dispersed through the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). AT: “I caused them to separate and live in separate lands” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**they were dispersed through the lands**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I dispersed them through the lands” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**their ways and their deeds**

Here “ways” and “deeds” mean basically the same thing. AT: “the things that they have done” (See: [Doublet](#))

**they profaned my holy name**

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. AT: “they mocked me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**when people**

“because other people said”

**Are these really the people of Yahweh?**

The people use a question to express their surprise at what they saw. AT: “I cannot believe these are really the people of Yahweh!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**For they have been thrown out of his land**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “For Yahweh has forced them out of his land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**his land**

This refers to the land of Israel.

**But I had compassion for my holy name that the house of Israel had defiled among the nations, when they went there**

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. AT: “When the house of Israel went among the nations, they caused me disgrace, but I wanted people to know that I am holy” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I had compassion for my holy name**

“I cared about my holy name”

**the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. AT: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [nation](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [profane](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> So you, Ezekiel, say to the Israelite people that I, the Lord Yahweh, am telling them this: 'You Israelite people, it is not for your sake that I am going to rescue you from your enemies. Instead, I will do this so that the people in these other lands will worship me as God. You have done your best to disgrace me wherever you have gone. <sup>23</sup> I will show that these other people groups should worship me as God, even though they would never know it by watching how you act. When I prove to them that I am powerful and can do anything, then they will know that I will carry out everything that I say I will do. And they will see you honor me as the God who is holy.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore say to the house of Israel, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: I am not doing this for your sake, house of Israel, but for my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone. <sup>23</sup> For I will make my great name holy, which you have profaned among the nations—in the midst of the nations, you profaned it. Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—when you see that I am holy.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel, and he gives him a message to Israel.

**the house of Israel**

Here "house" represents people. AT: "the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**for your sake**

"because of you" or "in order to help you"

**but for my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone**

Here "name" represents Yahweh and his reputation. AT: "but so that the people of the nations, who mock me because of you, will know that I am holy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone**

"you have caused the people of the nations to mock everywhere you have gone"

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [profane](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> I will take you out of those distant lands. I will gather you from all those places where you had to go, and I will bring you back to your own land. <sup>25</sup> It will be as though I will sprinkle clean water on you, and then you will be clean. I will make you clean from everything that has made me reject you, and I will cause you to stop worshiping idols.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> I will take you from the nations and gather you from every land, and I will bring you to your land. <sup>25</sup> Then I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols**

Yahweh forgiving the people and causing them to no longer sin is spoken of as if he would cleanse them with water. The phrase “you will be purified” can be stated in active form. AT: “I will purify you as if I were sprinkling you with pure water, and I will cause you to stop worshiping idols” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**all of your impurities**

“all the things that made you unclean”

**translationWords**

- [nation](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> I will give you a completely new way of thinking. I will enable you to stop being stubborn, and I will enable you to obey me from your inner beings. <sup>27</sup> I will put my Spirit within you and enable you to carefully obey all my laws. <sup>28</sup> You will again live in the land that I gave to your ancestors. You will be my people, and I will be your God.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> I will give you a new heart and a new spirit in your innermost parts, and I will take away the heart of stone from your flesh. For I will give you a heart of flesh. <sup>27</sup> I will set my Spirit in you and enable you to walk in my statutes and keep my decrees, so you will do them. <sup>28</sup> Then you will inhabit the land that I gave to your ancestors; you will be my people, and I will be your God.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**I will give you a new heart and a new spirit in your innermost parts, and I will take away the heart of stone from your flesh. For I will give you a heart of flesh**

Yahweh causing the people to no longer be stubborn but to love and serve Yahweh is spoken of as if he will take away their old heart and give them a new heart and spirit. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a new heart and a new spirit**

Here “heart” and “spirit” represent a person’s thoughts, attitudes, and emotions. See how you translated “heart” and “spirit” in [Ezekiel 11:19](#).

**in your innermost parts**

“within you” or “inside of you”

**the heart of stone**

This speaks of people being stubborn as if their hearts were made of stone. See how you translated “stone heart” in [Ezekiel 11:19](#). AT: “the heart that is as hard as stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**your flesh**

“your body”

**a heart of flesh**

People being willing to serve Yahweh is spoken of as if their hearts were soft like flesh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:19](#). AT: “a heart that is soft like flesh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**enable you to walk in my statutes**

A person acting or behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if it were a person walking. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:20](#). AT: “enable you to obey my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:29-31****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> I will free you from everything that made me reject you. I will cause your grain to be plentiful, and I will not send a famine to you again. <sup>30</sup> I will cause your fruit trees to produce plenty of fruit and your ground to produce plenty of good crops, with the result that the people of other lands will not mock you because you do not have enough food. <sup>31</sup> When that happens, you will think about your previous evil behavior and wicked deeds, and you will be very displeased with yourselves for your sins and the detestable things that you did.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> For I will save you from all of your uncleanness. I will summon the grain and multiply it. I will no longer put famine upon you. <sup>30</sup> I will multiply the fruit of the tree and the produce of the field so that you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations. <sup>31</sup> Then you will think of your wicked ways and your deeds that were not good, and you will show loathing on your faces because of your own sins and your disgusting deeds.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**For I will save you from all of your uncleanness**

Something that is unacceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. AT: “For I will save you from everything that made me reject you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will summon the grain**

“I will call the grain to come.” This phrase presents the grain as a servant of Yahweh. AT: “I will cause there to be grain in the land of Israel” (See: [Personification](#))

**I will no longer put famine upon you**

Yahweh causing a famine in the land is spoken of as if he put famine on the people. AT: “I will no longer cause there to be a famine” or “I will no longer cause there to be no food” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations**

Experiencing shame is spoken of as if the people had to carry the shame. AT: “the nations will no longer make you feel ashamed because you suffer from famine” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- save, saves, saved, safe
- unclean
- grain
- famine
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- nation
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 36:32-34****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> But I, the Lord Yahweh, tell you this: It is not for your sake that I will do those things. You Israelite people ought to be ashamed of your behavior.

<sup>33</sup> I, the Lord Yahweh, also tell you this: At the time that I cleanse you from all the sins that you have committed, I will enable you to live in your cities again and to build houses where there are now only ruins. <sup>34</sup> People who walk through your country will see that you are once again cultivating your land, and that your people are living in it again.

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> I am not doing this for your sake—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—let this be known to you. So be ashamed and disgraced because of your ways, house of Israel. <sup>33</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I purify you from all your iniquity, I will cause you to inhabit the cities and to rebuild the ruined places. <sup>34</sup> For you will plow the ruined land until it is no longer a ruin before the eyes of all who pass by.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**for your sake**

“for you”

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**let this be known to you**

“know this” or “you can be sure of this.” Yahweh says this to emphasize that it is not because the people are good that he will restore them. This phrase can be moved to the beginning of the verse. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**So be ashamed and disgraced**

The words “ashamed” and “disgraced” share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of the shame. AT: “So be very ashamed” (See: [Doublet](#))

**because of your ways**

“because of what you do”

**house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. AT: “people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you will plow the ruined land**

“you will farm the ruined land”

**before the eyes of all who pass by**

The eyes represent sight. AT: “to those who pass by and see it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:35-36****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> Then they will say, “This land that was ruined has become very fertile, like the garden of Eden. The cities that were piles of ruins, empty and destroyed, now have houses around them, and people are living in those cities.” <sup>36</sup> When that happens, the people who are still left in the lands that are around you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have enabled you to rebuild what was destroyed, and to again plant crops in the fields that had nothing growing in them. I, Yahweh, have said that it will happen, and I will cause it to happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> Then they will say, “This land was desolate, but it has become like the garden of Eden; the desolate cities and the uninhabited ruins that were torn down are now fortified and inhabited.” <sup>36</sup> Then the other nations around you will know that I am Yahweh, that I built up the ruins and replanted the abandoned places. I am Yahweh. I have declared it and I will do it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**Then they**

The word “they” refers to the people who walk through the land of Israel.

**the uninhabited ruins**

“the ruins that no one lived in”

**that were torn down**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) AT: “that enemies had torn down” or 2) AT: “that people could not get into.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**are now fortified and inhabited**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the people have now rebuilt them and have started living there again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**that I built up the ruins**

“and that I built up the cities that enemies had torn down”

**replanted the abandoned places**

“planted crops in the desolate land”

**translationWords**

- [desolate, desolation](#)
- [Eden, garden of Eden](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [nation](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 36:37-38****UDB:**

<sup>37</sup> This is also what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: Again I will answer your pleas for me to make your people become as numerous as sheep. <sup>38</sup> I will make them as numerous as the flocks of sheep that will be needed for offerings in Jerusalem during your regular festivals. The cities that are now ruined will be filled with people, and then you will know that I, Yahweh, have done this.”

**ULB:**

<sup>37</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Again I will be asked by the house of Israel to do this for them, to increase them like a flock of people. <sup>38</sup> Like the flock is set apart for sacrifices, like the flock in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts, so will the ruined cities be filled with flocks of people and they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**I will be asked by the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. This can be stated in active form. AT: “The people of Israel will ask me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**to increase them like a flock of people**

Yahweh causing the people to multiply greatly and quickly is spoken of as if they were a flock of sheep. Sheep multiply very quickly. AT: “to make them multiply like a flock of sheep” or “to make the people multiply quickly like sheep” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Like the flock is set apart for sacrifices, like the flock in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts**

The phrase “is set apart” can be stated in active form. AT: “Like the great number of sheep that the people set apart for sacrifices or bring to Jerusalem for the appointed feasts” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**so will the ruined cities be filled with flocks of people**

This speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. This can be stated in active form. AT: “so will the great number of people be who will be living in the cities that are now ruined but the people will rebuild” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- flock, herd
- Jerusalem
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- feast
- desolate, desolation

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 37 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel restored

God will unite the two kingdoms of Israel and Judah and the Messiah will rule over them. This will come in a prophesied day of restoration. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#) and [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

The people are discouraged and compare themselves to skeletons, but God will cause them to become a nation again. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Ezekiel 37:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 37:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day Yahweh gave me another vision. In the vision I felt the power of God on me, and by his Spirit he took me to the middle of a valley. It was full of bones of people who had been killed. <sup>2</sup> He led me to walk back and forth among those bones. I saw that there were very many bones there, bones that were very dry. <sup>3</sup> He asked me, “Son of man, do you think that these bones can become living people again?”

I replied, “Yahweh my Lord, only you know if that can happen.”

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The hand of Yahweh was upon me, and he brought me out by the Spirit of Yahweh and set me down in the midst of a valley; it was full of bones. <sup>2</sup> Then he made me pass through them round and round. Behold! A great many of them were in the valley. Behold! They were very dry. <sup>3</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, can these bones live again?” So I said, “Lord Yahweh, you alone know.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel is speaking.

**The hand of Yahweh was upon me**

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 1:3](#). AT: “Yahweh was controlling me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in the midst**

“in the middle”

**round and round**

“in every direction”

**Behold!**

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.



**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, "Speak a message for me to these bones. Say to them, 'You dry bones, listen to what Yahweh says. <sup>5</sup> This is what Yahweh the Lord says to you bones: I am going to put my breath into each of you, and you will become alive again. <sup>6</sup> I will fasten tendons to your bones and cause your bones to be covered with flesh. I will cover the flesh with skin. Then I will breathe into you, and you will become alive. When that happens, you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do.'"

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, "Prophecy over these bones and say to them, 'Dry bones. Listen to the word of Yahweh. <sup>5</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this to these bones: Behold! I am about to put breath into you, and you will live. <sup>6</sup> I will place sinews over you and bring flesh onto you. I will cover you with skin and put breath within you so you will live. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.

**Listen to the word of Yahweh**

"Listen to Yahweh's message"

**Behold**

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**to put breath into you**

The noun "breath" can be stated as the verb "breathe." AT: "I will cause you to breathe"

**breath**

The Hebrew word translated as "breath" in these verses is translated as "spirit" by a few modern versions. It is also translated as "wind" in [Ezekiel 37:9](#).

**sinews**

the tissue that connects muscles to bones

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [breathe, breath](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> So I spoke to the bones as Yahweh commanded me to speak. As I was speaking, there was a noise, a sound of shaking, and the bones came together, bones joining to each other. <sup>8</sup> While I was looking, I saw tendons fastening to them and flesh covering them, and then skin covered the flesh, but they were not breathing.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> So I prophesied as I was commanded; as I prophesied, behold, a sound came, that of shaking. Then the bones drew together—bone against bone. <sup>8</sup> I looked and, behold, sinews were now on them, and flesh grew up and skin covered them. But there was still no breath in them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel is speaking.

**as I was commanded**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “as Yahweh had commanded me to speak” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**behold**

The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**sinews**

This refers to the parts of human bodies that are like hard strings and hold the bones and muscles together. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 37:6](#).

**But there was still no breath in them**

The noun “breath” can be stated as the verb “breathing.” AT: “But they were not breathing” or “But they were not alive”

**translationWords**

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then he said to me, “Son of man, speak a message for me to the wind. Say to the wind, ‘Wind, Yahweh says to you, blow from all four directions. Breathe into these people who have been killed, in order that they can come alive again!’” <sup>10</sup> So I said what he commanded me to say, and then breath entered them, and they began to breathe. They became alive and stood up, like a huge army.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, “Prophecy to the breath, prophecy, son of man, and say to the breath, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Breath, come from the four winds, and breathe on these who have been killed, so they may live.’” <sup>10</sup> So I prophesied as I was commanded; the breath came into them and they lived. Then they stood on their feet, a very great army.

**translationNotes****the breath**

Possible meanings are: 1) “breath” or 2) “spirit” or 3) “wind.”

**from the four winds**

“from the four directions that the wind can blow in.” This is an idiom. AT: “from every direction” (See: [Idiom](#))

**these who have been killed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “these people that enemies and disasters have killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**as I was commanded**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “as Yahweh had commanded me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then he said to me, "Son of man, these bones represent all the Israelite people. The people say, 'It is as though our bones are dried up; we can hope for nothing good any longer; our nation is destroyed.' <sup>12</sup> So speak my message to them and say, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says: My people, it will be as though I will open your graves and cause your corpses to become alive again. I will bring you back to Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, these bones are the entire house of Israel. Behold! They are saying, 'Our bones have dried up, and our hope is gone. We have been cut off.' <sup>12</sup> Therefore prophesy and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will open your graves and lift you out from them, my people. I will bring you back to the land of Israel.

**translationNotes****the entire house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Behold!**

The word "Behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: "Indeed!"

**We have been cut off**

The people being destroyed and removed from their land is spoken of as if they had been cut off like a person would cut off a branch or piece of cloth. AT: "Our nation is destroyed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will open your graves and lift you out from them**

Yahweh restoring the people and bringing them back to their land is spoken of as if he will bring them back to life again. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then when that happens, you my people will know that I, Yahweh, have done this. <sup>14</sup> I will put my spirit in you, and it will be as though you will become alive again, and I will enable you to live in your own land again. Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who said that it would happen and who has caused it to happen. That is what I, Yahweh, declare.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when I open your graves and bring you out from them, my people. <sup>14</sup> I will place my Spirit within you so you will live, and I will cause you to rest in your land when you know that I am Yahweh. I declare and will do it—this is Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

These are Yahweh’s words to the house of Israel.

**to rest in your land**

“to live peacefully in your own land”

**this is Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [rest](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said, <sup>16</sup> "Son of man, take a wooden stick and write on it, 'This represents Judah and all the tribes of Judah.' Then take another one and write on it, 'This represents Israel and all the tribes of Israel.' <sup>17</sup> Then join them together to become as though they were one larger wooden stick in your hand.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>16</sup> "So now you, son of man, take one stick for yourself and write on it, 'For Judah and for the people of Israel, his companions.' Then take another stick and write on it, 'For Joseph, the branch of Ephraim, and for all the people of Israel, their companions.' <sup>17</sup> Bring both of them together into one stick, so that they become one in your hand.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**For Judah**

Here "For" means "representing." AT: "Representing Judah" or "Belonging to Judah"

**Judah**

The tribe of Judah lived in the southern kingdom of Israel which was called Judah. Here the name is used to refer to the whole southern kingdom. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the people of Israel, his companions**

This refers to the Israelites who lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. AT: "all the tribes of Judah" or "the tribes of Israel who are part of the kingdom of Judah"

**For Joseph, the branch of Ephraim**

Joseph was Ephraim's father. The tribe of Ephraim lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. Here the names are used to represent the whole northern kingdom. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**all the people of Israel, their companions**

This refers to the Israelites who lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. AT: “all the tribes of Israel” or “the Israelites who were part of the kingdom of Israel”

**into one stick**

“so that they become one stick”

**translationWords**

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [companion](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> When your fellow Israelites ask you, ‘What does this action mean?’, <sup>19</sup> tell them, ‘This is what the Lord Yahweh says: One of the pieces of wood in Ezekiel’s hand represents Israel and all the tribes of Israel. I am joining it to the piece of wood that represents Judah, to form one stick in his hand.’  
<sup>20</sup> Then, Son of man, hold up the pieces of wood that you have written on, in order that the people can see them.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> When your people speak to you and say, ‘Will you not tell us what these things of yours mean?’  
<sup>19</sup> then say to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am taking the branch of Joseph that is in the hand of Ephraim and the tribes of Israel his companions and joining it to the branch of Judah, so that they will make one branch, and they will become one in my hand.’ <sup>20</sup> Hold in your hand the branches that you wrote on before their eyes.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**what these things of yours mean**

“what your sticks mean” or “why you have these sticks”

**Behold!**

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. AT: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**the branch of Joseph**

“the stick of Joseph.” This represents the kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that is in the hand of Ephraim**

The word “hand” refers to power. AT: “that is in the power of Ephraim” or “that the tribe of Ephraim rules over” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the tribes of Israel his companions**

“the other tribes of Israel who are his companions” or “the other tribes of Israel who are part of that kingdom”

**the branch of Judah**

“the stick of Judah.” This represents the kingdom of Judah. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**before their eyes**

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. AT: “while they watched you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Say to the people, 'This is what Yahweh the Lord says: I will take you Israelite people out of the countries to which you have been forced to go. I will gather you from all those lands, back to your own land. <sup>22</sup> And I will cause you to again be one nation in your land, on the mountains of Israel. And there will be one king to rule over all of you. Never again will you be two nations or divided into two kingdoms. <sup>23</sup> No longer will you defile yourselves by worshiping idols and disgusting statues of your gods, because I will enable you to stop sinning and to stop rejecting me. You will be my people, and I will be your God.'

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Declare to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am about to take the people of Israel from among the nations where they went. I will gather them from the surrounding lands and I will bring them to their land. <sup>22</sup> I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and there will be one king as king over all of them, and they will no longer be two nations. They will no longer be divided into two kingdoms. <sup>23</sup> Then they will no longer defile themselves with their idols, their disgusting things, or any of their other sins. For I will save them from all of their faithless actions with which they have sinned, and I will purify them, so they will be my people and I will be their God. <sup>[1]</sup> . However, the Hebrew text reads , which many think makes little sense in this context.

---

37:23 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient and most modern versions read in this way: *from all of their faithless actions from their dwelling places*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**Behold!**

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**they will be my people and I will be their God**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:20](#).

### translationWords

- nation
- king
- kingdom
- defile, be defiled
- idol, idolatrous
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- save, saves, saved, safe
- faithless, faithlessness
- pure, purify, purification

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 37:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> The king who rules over them will always come from the family of King David. David was the one who served me well. There will be one shepherd to watch over them and to take care of all of them. They will carefully obey all my laws. <sup>25</sup> They will live in the land that I gave to Jacob, who also served me well; they will live in the land where your ancestors lived. They and their children and their grandchildren will live there forever, and the one who will be like King David will be their king forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> David my servant will be king over them. So there will be one shepherd over them all, and they will walk according to my decrees and they will keep my statutes and obey them. <sup>25</sup> They will live in the land that I have given to my servant Jacob, where your fathers had stayed. They will live in it forever—they, their children, and their grandchildren, for David my servant will be their chief forever.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

**David my servant**

Yahweh said “David” to refer to a descendant of David. See how you translated “my servant David” in [Ezekiel 34:23](#). AT: “A descendant of my servant David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**one shepherd over them**

This speaks of a king ruling a people as if he were a shepherd leading sheep. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 34:23](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**over them**

“over the people of Israel”

**will walk according to my decrees**

This speaks of acting or behaving in a certain way as if it were a person walking. AT: “will live as I have commanded” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## had stayed

“had lived”

## translationWords

- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [decree](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [forever](#)

## Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 37:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> I will make a covenant with them to give them peace; it will be a covenant that will last forever. I will give them that land again and cause their population to increase. And I will put my temple among them forever. <sup>27</sup> My home, where I will live, will be among them; I will be their God, and they will be my people. <sup>28</sup> Then, when my temple is there again among them, the people of nations will know that I, Yahweh, set apart Israel for my honor.”

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> I will establish a covenant of peace with them. It will be an everlasting covenant with them. I will establish them and multiply them and set my holy place in their midst forever. <sup>27</sup> My dwelling place will be with them; I will be their God, and they will be my people. <sup>28</sup> Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh who sets Israel apart, when my holy place is among them forever.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh is speaking about the people of Israel.

**I will establish**

“I will set up” or “I will create”

**a covenant of peace**

“a covenant that brings peace.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 34:25](#).

**I will establish them**

It was implied that Yahweh would establish them in the land of Israel. AT: “I will set them in the land of Israel” or “I will cause them to live securely in the land of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**multiply them**

“cause their people to increase in number”

**my holy place**

“my holy sanctuary” or “my holy temple”

**in their midst**

“among them”

**My dwelling place**

“The place where I live”

**I will be their God, and they will be my people**

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 11:20](#).

**translationWords**

- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [set apart](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 38 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter begins a section prophesying against Gog. Later Gog will try to conquer Israel.

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 38:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 38:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh gave me another message. He said to me, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, turn and face Magog, the country where Gog is the king. He is also the ruler of the nations of Meshech and Tubal. Announce my message about the terrible things that will happen to him. <sup>3</sup> Say this: 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Gog, you who rule Meshech and Tubal, I am your enemy.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Son of man, set your face toward Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal; and prophesy against him. <sup>3</sup> Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal.

**translationNotes****The word of Yahweh came**

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

**set your face toward Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince ... Tubal**

This is a command to stare at Gog and Magog as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). AT: "Stare at the land of Magog and at Gog, the chief prince ... Tubal" or "Stare at Gog, the chief prince ... Tubal, and at the land of Magog so that they will be harmed" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**set your face**

Here "face" is a metonym for attention or gaze, and "set your face" represents staring. AT: "stare" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Gog, the land of Magog**

It is implied that Magog is the land over which Gog rules. AT: "Gog who rules over the land of Magog" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Gog**

This is the name of a leader or king who ruled in the land of Magog. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Magog**

This is the name of an ancient nation that was probably located in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia.

**the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal**

This expression occurs twice in these verses. Some modern versions, however, interpret the Hebrew expression as “the chief of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.” This is another title for Gog. AT: “who is the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Meshech ... Tubal**

See how you translated these names in [Ezekiel 32:26](#).

**Behold!**

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows. It can be translated as “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**I am against you**

This idiom means “I am your enemy.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [face](#)
- [Meshech](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> It will be as though I will turn you around and put hooks in your jaws and bring you to Israel—you and all of your army, including your horses and the men carrying weapons who ride those horses, and many other soldiers carrying large shields and small shields, all of them carrying swords. <sup>5</sup> Your soldiers also include armies from Persia, Ethiopia, and Put, all of them with shields and helmets— <sup>6</sup> also all the soldiers from Gomer and an army from Beth Togarmah—both of these lands that are far north of Israel. Armies of many nations will come with you.’

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> So I will turn you around and set hooks in your jaw; I will send you out with all your army, horses, and horsemen, all of them dressed in full armor, a great company with large shields and small shields, all of them holding swords! <sup>5</sup> Persia, Cush, and Libya are with them, all of them with shields and helmets! <sup>6</sup> Gomer and all her troops, and Beth Togarmah, from the far parts of the north, and all its troops! Many peoples are with you!

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

**General Information:**

These verses list the various nations who will join Gog’s army.

**set hooks in your jaw**

Here “hooks in your jaw” represents God’s control over Gog. People put hooks in the mouths of animals so that they could lead the animals wherever they wanted. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in full armor ... holding swords ... with shields and helmets**

These phrases describe an army that is ready for battle.

**Gomer**

a nation that lived north of the Black Sea

**Beth Togarmah**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:14](#).



**translationWords**

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [horse](#)
- [armor](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [Cush](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Tell Gog this: 'Get ready, and be prepared to be the commander of all those soldiers. <sup>8</sup> At some future time, Yahweh will command you to lead those armies to attack Israel, a country whose buildings have been rebuilt after they were destroyed in wars. Their people will have been brought back from many nations to live again on the hills of Israel, where no one had been living for long time. Yahweh bring the Israelites back from other lands, and they will be living peacefully. <sup>9</sup> You and all those armies from many nations will go up to Israel, advancing like a great storm. Your army will be like a huge cloud that covers the land.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Get ready! Yes, prepare yourself and your troops assembled with you, and be their commander. <sup>8</sup> You will be called after many days, and after some years you will go to a land that has recovered from the sword and that has been gathered from many peoples, gathered back to the mountains of Israel that had been a continuous ruin. But the land's people will be brought out of the peoples, and they will live in safety, all of them! <sup>9</sup> So you will go up as a storm goes; you will be like a cloud covering the land, you and all your troops, all the many soldiers with you.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

**your troops assembled with you**

“all of your troops that you have gathered to yourself” or “all of your army that you have brought together for yourself”

**You will be called**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will call you to come for war” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**recovered from the sword**

Here the “sword” represents war. AT: “recovered from war” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**that has been gathered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I have gathered together” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**from many peoples**

“from many nations”

**a continuous ruin**

“destroyed for a long time”

**the land's people will be brought out**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will bring the Israelites out” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you will go up as a storm goes**

This simile means Gog will bring destruction like a large storm does. (See: [Simile](#))

**a cloud covering the land**

This simile means the army will be so large that it will cover the entire land. (See: [Simile](#))

**translationWords**

- [commander](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [sword](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> But this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: On that day, you will plan to do something very evil. <sup>11</sup> You will say this to yourself: "My army will invade a country where the villages do not have walls around them. We will attack people who are peaceful and think that no one will harm them. Their towns and villages do not have walls with gates and bars. <sup>12</sup> So it will be easy for us to attack these people. They are people who come back together from many countries where they had lived for many years, people who now live safely in their land with all their livestock and other possessions. They are living in the country that is in the middle of the most important countries in the world. Our soldiers will take away all their valuable possessions."

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: It will happen on that day that plans will form in your heart, and you will devise wicked schemes.' <sup>11</sup> Then you will say, 'I will go up to the open land; I will go to the quiet people living in safety, all of them living where there are no walls or bars, and where there are no city gates. <sup>12</sup> I will capture booty and steal plunder, in order to bring my hand against the ruins that are newly inhabited, and against the people gathered from the nations, people who are gaining livestock and property, and who are living at the center of the earth.'

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

**on that day that**

"at that time"

**plans will form in your heart ... you will devise wicked schemes**

These phrases mean the same thing and can be combined into a single phrase. AT: "you will plan to do something very evil" (See: [Doublet](#))

**plans will form in your heart**

Here "heart" refers to his thinking. This can be stated in active form. AT: "you will think of plans" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will**

Gog will not do these things alone. His army will do most of them. AT: “My army and I will” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the open land**

The following phrases explain that this refers to a land without walls or bars or gates.

**capture booty and steal plunder**

These phrases mean the same thing and can be combined into a single phrase. AT: “take away all their valuable possessions” (See: [Doublet](#))

**bring my hand**

Here “hand” refers to Gog’s military power. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**against the ruins**

Here “ruins” refers to the people who live in the destroyed cities. AT: “against the people who live in the ruins” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**at the center of the earth**

“in the middle of the most important countries in the world”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [nation](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:13****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then people of Sheba and Dedan and the merchants of Tarshish will come and say to you, “Are you gathering all your soldiers in order to attack Israel and take away all their silver and gold? Do you plan to take away their livestock and all their other valuable possessions?”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Sheba and Dedan, and the traders of Tarshish along with all its young warriors will say to you, ‘Have you come to plunder? Have you assembled your armies to take away spoil, to carry off silver and gold, to take their livestock and property and to haul away much plunder?’

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

**Sheba**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:22](#).

**Dedan**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 25:13](#).

**Have you come to plunder? Have you assembled your armies ... to haul away much plunder?**

These two questions are used to accuse Gog of attacking Israel without cause. These can be translated as statements. AT: “It is not right for you to assemble your army to plunder, to carry off silver and gold, to take their livestock and property, and to haul away much plunder!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**to take their livestock and property ... to haul away much plunder**

These phrases have similar meaning and can be combined into a single phrase. AT: “to take away their livestock and all their valuable possessions” (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [Tarshish](#)
- [gold](#)
- [livestock](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Therefore, Son of man, take my message about Gog and say to him, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says: At that time, when my people of Israel are living safely, you will certainly think about them. <sup>15</sup> You will come from your place far north of Israel, with the armies of many other nations, all riding horses, a huge army. <sup>16</sup> You will march toward my Israelite people, and your soldiers will cover the land like a huge cloud. Gog, I will bring your army to attack the country that belongs to me, but what I will do to you will show the people of other nations that I am holy.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Therefore prophesy, son of man, and say to Gog, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: On that day, when my people Israel are living securely, will you not learn about them? <sup>15</sup> You will come from your place far away in the north with a great army, all of them riding on horses, a great company, a large army. <sup>16</sup> You will attack my people Israel like a cloud that covers the land. In the latter days I will bring you against my land, so the nations might know me when I show myself through you, Gog, to be holy before their eyes.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel what he is to say to Gog.

**son of man**

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “mortal person” or “human”

**On that day ... learn about them?**

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that Gog will indeed hear about the people living in Israel. AT: “On that day, when my people Israel are living securely, you will hear about them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**like a cloud that covers the land**

This simile means the army will be so large that it will cover the entire land. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 38:9](#). (See: [Simile](#))



**In the latter days**

This refers to the distant future before the world ends. AT: “In the last days” or “At the end of time” or “In the distant future”

**In the latter days ... to be holy before their eyes**

All the nations will understand that Yahweh is holy when they see what he does to Gog.

**might know me**

“might know who I am”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say to Gog: In past years, when I gave messages to my servants, the prophets in Israel, there were messages about you. At that time, they said for many years that I would bring your armies to attack my people. <sup>18</sup> So this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say will happen: When your army attacks Israel, I will be very angry with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: Are you not the one of whom I spoke in former days by the hand of my servants, the prophets of Israel, who prophesied in their own time for years that I would bring you against them? <sup>18</sup> So it will come to be in that day when Gog attacks the land of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—my wrath will mount up in my anger.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues telling Ezekiel what he is to say to Gog.

**Are you not the one ... bring you against them?**

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he was the one who brought Gog to the land of Israel. AT: “You are the one ... bring you against them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**of whom I spoke**

“that I spoke about”

**in former days**

“in the past” or “a long time ago”

**by the hand of my servants**

Here “hand” refers to the fact that these prophets wrote down Yahweh’s message. AT: “by means of my servants” or “through my servants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**against them**

“against the people of Israel”

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**my wrath will mount up in my anger**

Here "mount up" means "rise up" and expresses that his wrath will increase. The words "wrath" and "anger" mean the same thing and emphasize how intense his anger will be. AT: "my anger will greatly increase" or "I will be very angry with you" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> I will be furious, and to show that I am angry, there will be a great earthquake in Israel, where your armies will be. <sup>20</sup> The fish in the sea, the birds, the wild animals, and the animals that crawl on the ground, and all the people on the earth will tremble because of what I will do. Mountains will fall down, cliffs will crumble, and walls everywhere will fall to the ground.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> In my zeal and in the fire of my anger, I declare that on that day there will be a great earthquake in the land of Israel. <sup>20</sup> They will shake before me—the fish of the sea and the birds of the skies, the beasts of the fields, and all the creatures that crawl on the earth, and every person who is on the surface of the land. The mountains will be thrown down and the cliffs will fall, until every wall falls to the earth.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.

**In my zeal**

Here “zeal” refers to Yahweh’s desire to defend his honor against Gog’s attacks.

**in the fire of my anger**

The intensity of Yahweh’s anger is spoken of as if it were as hot as fire. AT: “because my anger was intense” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They will shake before me**

They will shake because they are afraid. This can be explicitly stated. AT: “They will shake with fear before me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The mountains will be thrown down**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will make mountains fall down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [angry, anger](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 38:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Gog, on all the mountains in the country that belongs to me I will cause your soldiers to fight against each other. <sup>22</sup> I will punish you and your soldiers with plagues, and I will kill them. I will send down from the sky, on you and your troops who have come from many lands, huge amounts of rain, hail, and burning sulfur. <sup>23</sup> In this way, I will cause the people of many nations to know that I am very great, and I will show them my holiness. And they will see who I am and they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> I will summon a sword against him on all my mountains—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—each man’s sword will be against his brother. <sup>22</sup> Then I will judge him by plague and blood; and overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur I will rain down upon him and his troops and the many nations that are with him. <sup>23</sup> For I will show my greatness and my holiness and I will make myself known in the eyes of the many nations, and they will know that I am Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog. He speaks of the people of Gog as if they were one man. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will summon a sword against him**

The word “sword” here is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. AT: “I will cause soldiers to attack him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**on all my mountains**

This refers to the land of Israel. AT: “on all the mountains of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**each man’s sword will be against his brother**

Here “sword” is a metonym for the person who uses the sword to fight. AT: “all of his soldiers will fight each other” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**his brother**

“his fellow soldier”

**I will judge him by plague and blood**

Here “blood” is a metonym for injury and death. AT: “I will judge him by causing him to be sick and by sending soldiers to kill him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur I will rain down upon him**

It may be helpful to change the order of this sentence. AT: “I will rain down overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur upon him”

**hailstones**

ice that falls out of the sky

**show my greatness and my holiness**

The abstract nouns “greatness” and “holiness” can be stated as adjectives. AT: “show that I am great and holy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I will make myself known in the eyes of the many nations**

Here “eyes” refers to sight, which is a metonym for understanding. AT: “I will cause many nations to understand who I am” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sword](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [plague](#)
- [blood](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 38 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 39 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter concludes the prophecy against Gog. God will destroy Gog and his army.

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 39:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 39:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, speak for me about the terrible things that will happen to Gog. Say this to him: 'Gog, I am your enemy, you who rule Meshech and Tubal. <sup>2</sup> I will turn you around and drag you and your armies from far north of Israel and send you to fight on the mountains of Israel. <sup>3</sup> When you are there, I will snatch your bows from your left hands and cause your arrows to fall from your right hands.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> "Now you, son of man, prophesy against Gog and say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief of Meshech and Tubal. <sup>2</sup> I will turn you and lead you on; I will bring you up from the far north and bring you to the mountains of Israel. <sup>3</sup> Then I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to Gog.

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**Behold!**

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. AT: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

**I am against you**

"I am your enemy"

**chief of Meshech and Tubal**

Some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression as "prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal." This is another title for Gog. See how you translated these names in [Ezekiel 38:2-3](#). AT: "who is the prince of Meshech and Tubal" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will turn you and lead you on**

God speaks of leading Gog as if Gog was an animal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**bring you up**

God speaks of bringing Gog “up” to Israel because it was located in the mountains.

**I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.**

Knocking Gog’s bow and arrows out of his hands is spoken of as if God is destroying Gog’s military power. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [Meshech](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> You and all the soldiers that are with you will die on the mountains of Israel. I will give your corpses to be food for the birds that eat dead flesh, and to the wild animals. <sup>5</sup> You will die in the open fields. This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said that it will happen. <sup>6</sup> I will cause many fires to burn in Magog and to all those who live safely in the areas along their coasts, and they will know that it is I, Yahweh, who have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> You will fall dead on the mountains of Israel—you and all your troops and the soldiers who are with you. I will give you to the birds of prey and the wild beasts of the fields for food. <sup>5</sup> You will fall dead on the surface of the field, for I myself declare it—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. <sup>6</sup> Then I will send out fire on Magog and on those living in safety on the coasts, and they will know that I am Yahweh.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

**your troops and the soldiers**

These refer to the same people. It can be stated as a single phrase. AT: “all your soldiers” (See: [Doublet](#))

**I will give you to the birds of prey and the wild beasts of the fields for food**

The scavengers eating the corpses is spoken of as if Yahweh was giving food to them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**I will send out fire on Magog**

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh will send literal fire down on Gog and his army or 2) “fire” is a metonym for the destruction that it causes. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Magog**

This is the name of an ancient nation that probably lived in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 38:2](#).

**know that I am Yahweh**

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). AT: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [fire](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> I will enable my Israelite people to know that I am holy. I will no longer allow them to mock me, and the people groups in the other lands will know that I am Yahweh, the God whom Israel worships and honors. <sup>8</sup> That day is fast approaching. I, Yahweh the Lord, declare that those things will happen soon.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> For I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel, and I will no longer allow my holy name to be profaned; the nations will know that I am Yahweh, the Holy One in Israel. <sup>8</sup> Behold! The day is coming, and it will take place—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

**I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel**

Here the metonym “my holy name” refers to Yahweh’s character. This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will make my people, Israel, know that I am holy” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Behold!**

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. AT: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

**is coming ... will take place**

These two phrases have similar meaning and emphasize the fact that this will really happen. AT: “is surely going to happen” (See: [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [profane](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Holy One](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> At that time, the people who live in the cities of Israel will go out and gather the weapons from the dead soldiers, and will use them to make fires to cook their food. They will burn the small and large shields, the bows and arrows, the war clubs, and spears. There will be enough weapons to use as firewood for seven years. <sup>10</sup> They will not need to gather firewood in the fields or cut wood from trees in the forests, because those weapons will be all the firewood that they will need. And they will take valuable things from those who took valuable things from them, and steal things from people who stole things from them. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare will happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> The ones living in the cities of Israel will go out and they will use weapons to kindle and make fires and burn them—small shields, large shields, bows, arrows, the clubs and spears; they will make fires with them for seven years. <sup>10</sup> They will not gather wood from the fields or cut down trees from the forests, since they will burn the weapons; they will take from those who wanted to take from them; they will plunder those who wanted to plunder them—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

**to kindle and make fires**

These two phrases mean the same thing. The Israelites will use the wood from the weapons as kindling for fires. AT: “to start fires” (See: [Doublet](#))

**small shields, large shields, bows, arrows, the clubs and spears**

This list includes all the typical weapons of war of that day. It may represent weapons in general.

**clubs**

wooden sticks used as a weapon

**wanted to take ... wanted to plunder**

Here “to take” and “to plunder” mean the same thing. Gog intended to take Israel’s possessions, but Yahweh prevented him so that he was not able to do that. (See: [Doublet](#))



**will plunder ... wanted to plunder**

Translate “plunder” as in [Ezekiel 23:46](#).

**translationWords**

- [shield](#)
- [spear](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:11****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> At that time I will create a graveyard for you, Gog, and your soldiers, in the valley east of the Dead Sea. That graveyard will block the road that travelers usually walk on, because you, Gog and all the soldiers of your huge army will be buried there. So it will be named the Valley of Hamon Gog.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then it will happen on that day that I will make a place there for Gog—a grave in Israel, a valley for those who journey to the east of the sea. It will block those who wish to cross over. There they will bury Gog with all his multitudes. They will call it the Valley of Hamon Gog.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh begins to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

**it will happen on that day that**

This signals an important event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could use it here.

**to the east of the sea**

A few modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “to the east toward the sea.”

**It will block**

Possible meanings are 1) “The grave will block” or 2) “The dead army will block.”

**There they**

“There the house of Israel”

**They will call it**

“People will call it”

**Valley of Hamon Gog**

“Valley of the Great Army of Gog”

**translationWords**

- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> For seven months the people of Israel will be burying your corpses. It will be necessary to bury all of them, in order that the land will not be defiled because of any unburied corpses. <sup>13</sup> All the people of Israel will do the work of burying them. The day when I win that victory they will honor me, and they will remember that day forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> For seven months the house of Israel will bury them in order to purify the land. <sup>13</sup> For all the people of the land will bury them; it will be a memorable day for them when I am glorified—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

**seven months**

“7 months.” (See: [Numbers](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will bury them in order to purify the land**

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**bury them**

“bury the soldiers of Gog’s army”

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [month](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> After those seven months are ended, the Israelite people will designate men to go throughout the land to bury any remaining corpses, in order that the land might not remain defiled. <sup>15</sup> When they go through the land, whenever one of them sees a human bone, he will set up a marker beside it. When the gravediggers see the markers, they will pick up the bones and bury them in the Valley of Hamon Gog. <sup>16</sup> There will be a city there named Hamonah. And by doing this work of burying the corpses, they will cleanse the land.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then they will designate men to continually go through the land, to find those who were traveling through, but who died and their bodies remained on the surface of the land, so that they may bury them, in order to cleanse the land. At the end of the seventh month they will begin their search. <sup>15</sup> As these men pass through the land, when they see any human bone, they will put a marker by it, until gravediggers come and bury it in the Valley of Hamon Gog. <sup>16</sup> There will be a city there by the name of Hamonah. In this way they will purify the land.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

**through the land**

“through the land of Israel”

**those who were traveling through, but who died and their bodies remained on the surface of the land**

This refers to the dead bodies of Gog’s soldiers whom Yahweh killed as they entered the land.

**so that they may bury them**

“so that the designated men may bury the dead bodies”

**to cleanse the land ... purify the land**

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**seventh month**

This “seventh” is the ordinal number for seven. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**any human bone**

Bones would be all that remained of the corpses after a period of time.

**they will put a marker by it, until gravediggers come and bury it**

There are apparently two groups of men. The first will mark the location of corpses, and the second group will bury them.

**Hamonah**

This name means “Great Army.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [month](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say: Summon every kind of bird and wild animal. Say to them, 'Gather together from everywhere and come to the feast that Yahweh is preparing for you. It will be a great feast on the mountains of Israel. There you will eat men's flesh and drink their blood. <sup>18</sup> You will eat the flesh of strong soldiers and drink the blood of kings as if they were fat animals from the region of Bashan—as if they were male sheep, lambs, goats, and bulls.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Now to you, son of man, the Lord Yahweh says this: Say to all the winged birds and all the wild beasts in the fields, 'Gather together and come. Gather from all around to the sacrifice that I myself am making for you, a large sacrifice on the mountains of Israel, so that you may consume flesh and drink blood. <sup>18</sup> You will consume the flesh of warriors and drink the blood of the princes of the earth; they will be rams, lambs, goats, and bulls, they were all fattened in Bashan.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh gives Ezekiel a message for the birds and the wild animals about what they will do to Gog.

**son of man**

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "mortal person" or "human"

**to the sacrifice**

"to the feast" or "to the slaughter." Yahweh means that he will give the birds and animals a very good meal and not that he is worshiping them.

**they will be rams, lambs, goats, and bulls**

Yahweh is speaking with irony. Normally people sacrificed animals to God. Here, God is sacrificing people to animals. AT: "as if they were male sheep, lambs, goats, and bulls" (See: [Irony](#))

**they were all fattened in Bashan**

That can be stated in active form. AT: "they all became fat while grazing in Bashan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))



**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- sacrifice, offering
- flesh
- blood
- prince, princess
- sheep, ram, ewe
- lamb, Lamb of God
- goat, kid
- Bashan

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> At the feast that Yahweh is preparing for you, you will eat fat until your stomachs are full, and you will drink blood until it is as though you are drunk. <sup>20</sup> It will be as though you are eating at a table that I have set up for you. You will eat all you want of the flesh of horses and their riders, strong soldiers of every kind.’ That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Then you will eat fat to your satisfaction; you will drink blood until drunkenness; this will be the sacrifice that I will slaughter for you. <sup>20</sup> You will be satisfied at my table with horse, chariot, warrior, and every man of war—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.’

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message for the birds and the wild animals about what they will do to Gog.

**to your satisfaction**

The abstract noun “satisfaction” can be stated as a verb. AT: “until you are satisfied” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**until drunkenness**

The abstract noun “drunkenness” can be stated as an adjective. AT: “until you become drunk” or “until you are intoxicated” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**chariot**

The metonym “chariot” refers to the men in the chariots. AT: “chariot driver” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**warrior, and every man of war**

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. They can be combined into a single phrase. AT: “every kind of soldier” (See: [Doublet](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> 'I will show people of the nations that I am powerful, and all the nations will see how I punish them. <sup>22</sup> At that time, the Israelite people will learn that I, Yahweh their God, have the power to do what I say that I will do.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> I will set my glory among the nations, and all the nations will see my judgment that I perform and my hand that I have set against them. <sup>22</sup> The house of Israel will know that I am Yahweh their God from that day onward.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh gives Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

**I will set my glory among the nations**

Yahweh speaks of his glory as if he will place it in the middle of the nations where they can see it. AT: "I will make the nations see my glory" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**my judgment that I perform and my hand that I have set against them**

Both of these phrases refer to the punishment that Yahweh will inflict upon Israel and are repeated for emphasis. They can be combined into a single phrase. AT: "the way that I will judge them" (See: [Doublet](#))

**my hand**

Here the metonym "hand" refers to Yahweh's power that he uses to bring punishment. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**against them**

"against Gog and his great army"

**The house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [nation](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> And the people of the other lands will know that the Israelites had been forced to go to other countries because they sinned by not being faithful to me. I turned away from of them, and I allowed their enemies to capture them and kill many of them. <sup>24</sup> I punished them as they deserved because of their disgusting behavior and sins, and I turned away from them.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> The nations will know that the house of Israel went into captivity because of their iniquity by which they betrayed me, so I hid my face from them and gave them into the hand of their adversaries so that all of them fell by the sword. <sup>24</sup> I did to them according to their uncleanness and their sins, when I hid my face from them.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**because of their iniquity by which they betrayed me**

The abstract noun “iniquity” can be stated as a verb. AT: “because they sinned and betrayed me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**I hid my face from them**

Here “face” refers to Yahweh’s help and protection. AT: “I stopped protecting them and taking care of them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**gave them into the hand of their adversaries**

Here the metonym “hand” refers to power. AT: “gave their enemies power over them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**all of them fell by the sword**

Here falling represents being killed, and the sword represents battle. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). AT: “their enemies killed them all in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**their uncleanness and their sins**

This speaks of the people’s disgusting behavior as if they were physically unclean. Here “unclean-ness” means basically the same as “sins.” AT: “their disgusting behavior and their sins” or “their sins” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

**translationWords**

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [betray, betrayer](#)
- [face](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [sword](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:25-27****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Therefore, this is now what I, the Lord Yahweh say: I will now bring back from exile the descendants of Jacob; I will have mercy on all the Israelite people, and I will also make sure that they honor me. <sup>26</sup> When the Israelite people are back in their own country, they will live safely in their land, with no one to cause them to be afraid. They will forget about the disgraceful and unfaithful things that they did previously. <sup>27</sup> When I have brought them back from their enemies' countries and gathered them together in Israel, the people of many nations will know how holy I am because of what I did for my people.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Now I will restore the fortunes of Jacob, and I will have compassion on all the house of Israel, when I act with zeal for my holy name. <sup>26</sup> Then they will bear their shame and all the treason in which they betrayed me. They will forget all this when they rest in their land in safety, with no one to terrify them. <sup>27</sup> When I restore them from the peoples and gather them from the lands of their enemies, I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

**will restore the fortunes of Jacob**

Translate “will restore the fortunes” as in [Ezekiel 16:53](#). However, some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “will bring Jacob back from captivity.”

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**act with zeal for my holy name**

“make sure that they honor me”



**they will bear their shame and all the treason**

Experts do not agree on the meaning of this phrase. Possible meanings are 1) “they will regret their shame and all the treason” or 2) “they will forget their shame and all the treason.”

**the treason**

“the unfaithfulness”

**I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations**

Here “sight” is a metonym for understanding. AT: “many nations will understand that I am holy because of what I did for the house of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- restore, restores, restored, restoration
- Jacob, Israel
- compassion, compassionate
- zeal, zealous
- holy, holiness
- name, names, named
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- betray, betrayer
- rest
- terror, terrify
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 39:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> The Israelite people will know that I, Yahweh, have done this. They will know that because I forced them to go to other countries, and then I gathered them together in their own country. I will not leave any of them in those countries. <sup>29</sup> I will no longer turn away from them; I will give my Spirit to the Israelite people. This will certainly happen because I, Yahweh the Lord, have said it.”

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God, for I sent them into captivity among the nations, but then I will gather them back to their land. I will not leave any of them among the nations. <sup>29</sup> I will no longer hide my face from them when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

**I sent them into captivity ... I will gather them back to their land**

At the time when Ezekiel wrote, Israel was still in captivity in Babylon.

**I will no longer hide my face from them**

Here “no longer hide my face” is an idiom that means Yahweh will not continue to abandon Israel to exile in Babylon. AT: “I will no longer abandon them” (See: [Idiom](#))

**when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel**

Here to give the Spirit abundantly is spoken of as to “pour out” the Spirit. AT: “when I generously give my Spirit to the house of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 40 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **The new temple and city**

In a vision, Ezekiel saw a man measuring the wall of a new temple. The next chapters will give precise measurements for the construction of a temple to be built. This was not the temple of Ezra's day. (See: [temple](#))

#### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 40:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 40:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Almost twenty-five years after the Babylonians had taken us Israelites to their land, on the tenth day of the first month of that year, almost fourteen years after Jerusalem had been destroyed, Yahweh grabbed hold of me with his power, and he took me in a vision to Israel. <sup>2</sup> He set me on a very high mountain. On the south side of that mountain there were some buildings that looked like part of a city.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> In the twenty-fifth year of our captivity at the beginning of the year on the tenth day of the month, in the fourteenth year after the city was captured—on that same day, the hand of Yahweh was upon me and he took me there. <sup>2</sup> In visions from God he brought me to the land of Israel. He brought me to rest on a very high mountain; to the south were what appeared to be buildings of a city.

**translationNotes****twenty-fifth ... tenth ... fourteenth**

These words are the ordinal forms of 25, 10, and 14. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**of our captivity**

Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem, but not to the reader. AT: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#))

**the beginning of the year on the tenth day of the month**

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is in April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**the city was captured**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “the Babylonians captured the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the hand of Yahweh**

Here “hand” refers to Yahweh’s power to show Ezekiel supernatural visions. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:3](#).

### He brought me to rest

“He put me down”

### translationWords

- year
- captive, captivity
- day
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh
- vision
- God
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> When he took me there, I saw a man who looked as if he had been made of bronze. He was standing inside the city gate, and he was holding a linen cord and a measuring stick in his hand. <sup>4</sup> He said to me, “Son of man, look carefully at everything that I am going to show you, and pay attention to everything that I say and everything that I will show you, because that is why God brought you here. And then later you must tell the Israelite people everything that you have seen here.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then he brought me there. Behold, a man! His appearance was like the appearance of bronze. A linen cord and a measuring stick were in his hand, and he stood in the city gate. <sup>4</sup> The man said to me, “Son of man, look with your eyes and listen with your ears, and fix your mind on all that I am revealing to you, for you were brought here so I could reveal them to you. Report everything that you will see to the house of Israel.”

**translationNotes****he brought me there**

“Yahweh brought me to the place that had the buildings”

**Behold**

Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**His appearance was like the appearance of bronze**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “The way he appeared was like the way bronze appears” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**linen cord**

“a rope made of linen.” This is a tool for measuring very long distances.

**linen**

This is a type of cloth. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

**measuring stick**

This is a tool for measuring shorter distances.

**Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**fix your mind on**

This idiom means “pay attention to” or “think about.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [bronze](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [mind](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [report](#)
- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 40:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> In the vision I saw that there was a wall that completely surrounded the temple area. The measuring stick in the man's hand was three and one-tenth meters long. He measured the wall and it was three and one-tenth meters thick and three and one-tenth meters high.

<sup>6</sup> Then he went to the gate in the temple wall on the temple's east side. He climbed the steps and measured the gateway that faced outward; it was three and one-tenth meters deep. <sup>7</sup> Next, there were alcoves for the temple guards, each being three and one-tenth meters long and deep. The distance of the wall between each alcove was two and three-quarters meters. The gateway that faced inward, which led to the temple portico, was also three and one-tenth meters deep.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> There was a wall surrounding the temple area. The length of the measuring stick in the man's hand was six long cubits. Each long cubit was a cubit and a handbreadth in length. So he measured the wall, and it was one measuring stick thick and one rod high. <sup>6</sup> Then he went to the temple gate that faced east. He went up its steps and measured the threshold of the gate—one stick in depth. <sup>[1]</sup> , the Hebrew text reads in addition: . Many modern versions, however, leave this expression out, because it seems to be a repetition of preceding text. <sup>7</sup> The guard chambers were each one stick in length and one stick in width; there were five cubits between any two of the chambers, and the threshold of the temple gate by the temple portico was one stick deep.

---

40:6 <sup>[1]</sup>After one stick in depth one threshold one stick in depth”

**translationNotes****surrounding the temple area**

“entirely around the temple area”

**Each long cubit was a cubit and a handbreadth in length**

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UDB does. AT: “These were the long cubits, which were the length of a regular cubit plus a handbreadth” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**handbreadth**

“the width of a hand.” This was about 8 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**one stick**

“it was one stick wide.” This was about 3.2 meters.

**the temple gate that faced east**

This gate was part of the wall that surrounded the temple area. It was not part of the temple building itself. AT: “the gate on the eastern side of the wall surrounding the temple” or “the gate on the eastern wall of the temple courtyard”

**up its steps**

“up the steps of the gate”

**in depth**

“from the front edge of the threshold to its back edge”

**The guard chambers**

These were rooms that were built inside of the gate where guards stayed to protect the gate.

**five cubits**

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**there were five cubits between any two of the chambers**

“the chambers next to each other were five cubits apart” or “there were five cubits between a chamber and the one next to it”

**the chambers**

“the rooms”

**portico**

This was a covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**translationWords**

- [temple](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [threshold](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then he measured the portico that was after the gate; it was three and one-tenth meters long. <sup>9</sup> He also measured the depth, which was three and one-tenth of a meter. The doorposts on either side were one meter thick. This was the portico attached to the temple gate on the gate's inner side, facing the temple. <sup>10</sup> Inside the east gate there were three alcoves for guards on each side of the gate. They all had the same length and depth. And the distance of wall between them was the same.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> He measured the portico of the gate; it was one stick in length. <sup>9</sup> He measured the portico of the gate. It was one stick deep. The doorposts were two cubits in width. This was the portico of the gate facing the temple. <sup>10</sup> There were three guard chambers on either side of the east gate, and each of them had the same measurement, and the walls that separated them had the same measurement.

**translationNotes****the portico of the gate facing the temple**

Here “facing the temple” means that the portico was attached to the gate in the temple courtyard. AT: “the portico of the gate on the inner side of the wall that surrounded the temple”

**portico**

This was a covering in front of a doorway or gateway with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**one stick**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

**two cubits**

about one meter (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

**had the same measurement**

“were the same size”

**translationWords**

- [doorpost](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then he measured the opening of the gate; it was five and two-fifths meters wide, and the entrance from the gate was seven meters long. <sup>12</sup> Running along in front of the alcoves was a low wall one-half meter high. Each of the alcoves was three and one-tenth meters long on all sides. <sup>13</sup> Then the man measured the gateway's width from the roof of the alcove on one side, to the roof of the alcove on the other side. The distance was 13 and one-half, from one alcove's entrance to that of the other.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then the man measured the width of the gateway entrance—ten cubits; and he measured the length of the gateway entrance—thirteen cubits. <sup>12</sup> He measured the wall that was bordering the front of the chambers—one cubit high. The chambers measured six cubits on each side. <sup>13</sup> Then he measured the gateway from the roof of one chamber to that of the next chamber—twenty-five cubits, from the entrance of the first chamber to that of the second.

**translationNotes****gateway entrance**

“the opening which was the entrance of the gate”

**ten cubits**

about 5.4 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**thirteen cubits**

about 7 meters

**The chambers measured six cubits**

“The chambers were 6 cubits long”

**the chambers**

“the alcoves” or “the rooms”

**six cubits**

about 3.2 meters

**one cubit**

“54 centimeters” or “about one-half meter”

**twenty-five cubits**

about 13.5 meters

**that of the second**

“the entrance of the second chamber”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then the man measured along the wall that separated the alcoves from each other; it was thirty-two meters long. He measured them as far as the gate's portico. <sup>15</sup> The distance from the entrance of the gate to the far end of its portico was twenty-seven meters. <sup>16</sup> There were narrow windows in the walls of all the alcoves, and also in the inner walls between the alcoves. The portico also had these same windows on its inner side. The wall that ran between the alcoves was decorated with carvings of palm trees.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then he measured the wall that went between the guard chambers—sixty cubits in length; he measured as far as the gate's portico. <sup>15</sup> The entrance from the front of the gate to the other end of the gate's portico was fifty cubits. <sup>16</sup> There were closed windows toward the chambers and toward their pillars within the gates all around; and likewise for the porches. There were windows all around the inside, and each jamb was decorated with palm trees.

**translationNotes****guard chambers**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

**sixty cubits**

about 32 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**portico**

This was a covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**fifty cubits**

about 27 meters

**closed windows**

Possible meanings are 1) “closed windows” or 2) “windows with shutters” or 3) “narrow windows.”



**likewise for the porches**

“the porches also had closed windows all around”

**each jamb**

jamb is the side of a wooden frame of a door

**translationWords**

- [palm](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then the man brought me to the temple's outer courtyard. There I saw some rooms, and a stone pavement in the courtyard. There were thirty rooms facing the courtyard. <sup>18</sup> The stone pavement was all around the courtyard, and it extended out from the walls into the courtyard for the same distance as the gate entrances. That was the lower pavement. <sup>19</sup> Then the man measured the distance across the outer courtyard of the temple, between the outer gate and inner courtyard; it was fifty-four meters on the east side, and the same distance on the north side of the courtyard.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then the man brought me to the outer courtyard of the temple. Behold, there were rooms, and there was pavement in the courtyard, with thirty rooms next to the pavement. <sup>18</sup> The pavement went up to the side of the gates, and its width was the same as the gates' length. This was the lower pavement. <sup>19</sup> Then the man measured the distance from the front of the lower gate to the front of the inner gate; it was one hundred cubits on the east side, and the same on the north side.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

There were two walls surrounding the temple. The outer wall surrounded the outer courtyard, and within that, the inner wall surrounded the inner courtyard. The inner courtyard was higher than the outer courtyard. Each wall had gates on the east, north, and south sides.

**the man brought me to the outer courtyard of the temple**

“The man brought me from outside the temple area into the outer courtyard of the temple”

**outer courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

**Behold**

The word “Behold” here indicates that Ezekiel saw something interesting.

**pavement**

a flat floor that is made out of rocks

**with thirty rooms next to the pavement**

“and there were 30 rooms all around the pavement” (See: [Numbers](#))

**went up to**

“went all the way to”

**the front of the lower gate to the front of the inner gate**

The lower gate was on the wall of the outer courtyard, and the inner gate was on the wall of the inner courtyard. AT: “the front of the outer gate to the front of the inner gate”

**one hundred cubits**

about 54 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**the same on the north side**

“it was the same on the north side” or “on the north side, the distance from the outer gate to the inner gate was also one hundred cubits”

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then he measured how long and how wide was the gateway on the north side, which was an entrance into the outer courtyard of the temple complex. <sup>21</sup> There were three alcoves for guards on each side of that gateway. From the gateway to the end of its portico was twenty-seven meters, and they were thirteen and one-half meters wide.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then he measured the length and width of the gate that was at the north of the outer court. <sup>21</sup> There were three chambers on either side of that gate, and the gate and its portico measured the same as the main gate—fifty cubits in total length and twenty-five cubits in width.

**translationNotes****chambers**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

**portico**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**measured the same**

“had the same measurement”

**fifty cubits**

about 27 meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**twenty-five cubits**

about 13.5 meters

**the main gate**

This refers to the gate on the eastern side of the outer courtyard. AT: “the main gate, which was on the eastern side of the outer wall”

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> It had the same windows, portico, guard alcoves, and palm tree decorations as the east gate had. Like the east gate, there were seven steps leading up to it and its portico. <sup>23</sup> Across the outer courtyard from the north gate was a gate leading to the inner courtyard, just as there was on the east side. The man measured the distance from the north gate to the gate leading to the inner courtyard; it was fifty-four meters in distance.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Its windows, portico, chambers, and its palm trees corresponded to the gate that faced east. Seven steps went up to it and to its portico. <sup>23</sup> There was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the gate facing north, just as also there was a gate to the east; the man measured from one gate to the other gate—one hundred cubits in distance.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Ezekiel continues to describe the vision of the temple and of the man who looked like bronze.

**Its windows**

The word “Its” refers to the gate that was on the north side of the outer courtyard. AT: “The northern gate’s windows”

**chambers**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

**corresponded to the gate that faced east**

“were like those of the eastern gate” or “were like those of the eastern gate of the outer courtyard”

**inner courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**in front of the gate facing north**

“directly across from the northern gate” or “across the outer courtyard from the northern gate”

**the gate facing north**

“the gate on the northern side of the outer courtyard”

**just as also there was a gate to the east**

“just as there was a eastern gate to the inner courtyard” or “just as there was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the eastern gate”

**from one gate to the other gate**

“from the outer gate on the north to the inner gate on the north”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**one hundred cubits**

about 54 meters

**translationWords**

- [palm](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 40:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> Then he brought me through the south gateway into the inner courtyard, and he measured the entrance. It measured the same as the other gateways. Its alcoves, its walls between the alcoves, and its entry room measured the same as the ones on the other sides. <sup>25</sup> The gateway and its portico had narrow windows along the walls, as on the other sides. The gateway and its portico measured twenty-five meters long and thirteen and one-half wide.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> Next the man brought me to the gate of the southern entrance, and its walls and portico measured the same as the other outer gates. <sup>25</sup> There were closed windows in the gateway and its portico just as at that gate. The south gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

### translationNotes

#### measured the same as the other outer gates

“had the same measurements as the northern and eastern gates”

#### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

#### fifty cubits

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

### translationWords

- [gate, gate bar](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 40:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> There were seven steps leading up to that gate and its portico. It also had carvings of palm trees on the walls that were between the rooms. <sup>27</sup> Across the outer courtyard from the south gate was a gate opening onto the inner courtyard. The man measured from that gateway to the entrance on the south side of the outer courtyard; it was also fifty-four meters in distance.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> There were seven steps up to the gate and its portico, and there were carvings of palm trees on the walls on either side. <sup>27</sup> There was a gate to the inner courtyard on the southern side, and the man measured from that gate to the gate of the south entrance—one hundred cubits in distance.

**translationNotes****portico**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#)

**on either side**

“on both sides”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**one hundred cubits**

about 54 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [palm](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:28-31****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> Then the man brought me through the south entrance into the inner courtyard, and he measured the south entrance. It measured the same as the other gates. <sup>29</sup> He measured its alcoves, its walls, and its portico with the same measuring standards he had been using. The gate and its portico had windows all around. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half wide. <sup>30</sup> The porticos of the inner gates, which led to the inner courtyard, were about thirteen and one-half meters long and two and three-quarters meters wide. <sup>31</sup> The portico's entrance faced the outer courtyard. Carvings of palm trees decorated the walls, and there were eight steps leading up to it.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by way of its southern gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates. <sup>29</sup> Its chambers, walls, and porticos measured the same as the other gates; there were windows all around in the portico. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width. <sup>30</sup> There were also porticos all around the inner wall; these were twenty-five cubits in length and five cubits in width. <sup>31</sup> This portico faced the outer courtyard with carved palm trees on its walls and eight steps going up to it.

**translationNotes****inner courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**by way of its southern gate**

“through its southern gate”

**chambers**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

**porticos**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**measured the same**

“had the same measurements”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**fifty cubits**

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**twenty-five cubits**

about 13.5 meters

**five cubits**

about 2.7 meters

**This portico faced the outer courtyard**

“The portico’s entrance was towards the outer courtyard”

**with carved palm trees**

“and it had carvings of palm trees”

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [face](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:32-34****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> Then the man led me to the east side of the inner courtyard, and he measured the gate. It had the same measurements as the other gates. <sup>33</sup> Its alcoves, walls, and portico measured the same as the others. The gate and its portico had windows all around. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half wide. <sup>34</sup> Its portico faced the outer courtyard. It also had carvings of palm trees decorating the walls, and it had eight steps leading up to it.

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by the eastern way and measured the gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates. <sup>33</sup> Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width. <sup>34</sup> Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

**translationNotes****to the inner courtyard by the eastern way**

“to the east side of the inner courtyard”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**fifty cubits**

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**twenty-five cubits**

about 13.5 meters

**Its portico faced the outer courtyard**

The entrance of its portico was towards the outer courtyard

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:35-37****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> Then he led me to the entrance on the north side and measured it. It measured the same as the other entrances. <sup>36</sup> And its alcoves and walls between them and the entry room all had small windows in the walls. It all measured the same as the other gates. The gate and its portico measured twenty-seven meters long and thirteen and one-half meters wide. <sup>37</sup> Its portico faced the outer courtyard. It also had carvings of palm trees decorating the walls, and it had eight steps leading up to it.

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> Next the man brought me to the northern gate and measured it; it measured the same as the other gates. <sup>36</sup> Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The gateway and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width. <sup>37</sup> Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

**translationNotes****measured the same**

“had the same measurements”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**fifty cubits**

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**twenty-five cubits**

about 13.5 meters

**Its portico faced the outer courtyard**

“The entrance of its portico was toward the outer courtyard”

**on either side of it**

“on both sides of it”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:38-39****UDB:**

<sup>38</sup> In each of the inner entrances there was a room with a door. They were rooms where the carcasses of the animals that were to be completely burned on the altar were washed. <sup>39</sup> In each portico were four tables, two on each side. On those tables would be slaughtered the animals that were to be completely burned, also the animals for offerings of sins that people had committed, and offerings that acknowledged their guilt for having sinned against other people.

**ULB:**

<sup>38</sup> There was a room with a door by each of the inner gateways. This was where they rinsed the burnt offerings. <sup>39</sup> There were two tables on each side of each portico, on which the burnt offering was slaughtered, and also the sin offering and the guilt offering.

**translationNotes****by each of the inner gateways**

“in each of the inner gates”

**they rinsed the burnt offerings**

Possible meanings for “they” are 1) the people who were bringing offerings or 2) the priests who killed the animals.

**the burnt offerings**

the animals that would be killed and burned as offerings

**There were two tables on each side of each portico**

there were four tables—two on each side of each portico

**the burnt offering was slaughtered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they killed the burnt offering” or “they killed the animals that they would burn as an offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [guilt offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 40:42-43****UDB:**

<sup>42</sup> There were also four tables of cut stone for the preparation of the offerings that were to be completely burned, four-fifths of a meter long on each side and one-half meter high. The priests would put on those stone tables the tools for slaughtering all the animals. <sup>43</sup> The meat for the offerings would be placed on those stone tables. There were hooks on which the meat was hung, each with two prongs, each eight centimeters long, fastened to the walls of the porticos.

**ULB:**

<sup>42</sup> There were four tables of cut stone for the burnt offerings, one and a half cubits in length, one and a half cubits in width, and one cubit tall. On them they laid the tools with which they slaughtered the burnt offerings for the sacrifices. <sup>43</sup> Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth in length were fastened in the portico all around, and the flesh of the offerings would be put on the tables.

**translationNotes****There were four tables of cut stone**

These were apparently different tables than the eight tables on which the sacrifices were killed. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “There were also four tables of cut stone” or “There were four other tables made of cut stone” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**of cut stone**

“that were made out of stone that had been cut”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**one and a half cubits**

about 0.8 meter (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**one cubit**

about one-half meter

**Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth in length were fastened in the portico all around**

“All around the portico, people had attached hooks that were a handbreadth long and had two prongs each”

**Two-pronged hooks**

something that has two long curved points, which people can hang things on

**a handbreadth in length**

about 8 centimeters (See: [Biblical Distance](#)).

**the flesh of the offerings would be put on the tables**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they would put the flesh of the offerings on the tables” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [flesh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:44-45****UDB:**

<sup>44</sup> Outside two of the inner gateways, on the inner courtyard side, there were rooms for those who led in singing during the worship, one on the north side and one on the south side. <sup>45</sup> The man said to me, "The room whose door faces south is for the priests who are working in the temple.

**ULB:**

<sup>44</sup> On the outside of the inner gate, within the inner courtyard, were singers' chambers, one on the north side facing south, and the other on the south side facing north. <sup>45</sup> Then the man said to me, "This room facing south is for the priests who are on duty in the temple.

**translationNotes****the inner gate**

This is the inner gate on the north.

**singers' chambers**

"rooms for singers." However, some ancient and modern versions read only "chambers" without the reference to singers.

**one on the north side facing south, and the other on the south side facing north**

The word "chamber" or "room" is understood from the previous phrase. The phrase "facing south" means that its door is on its south side, and "facing north" means that its door is on its north side. AT: "one room on the north side facing south, and the other room on the south side facing north" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**This room facing south**

This refers to the chamber on the north side of the inner courtyard. AT: "This room whose door is on its south side" or "This room on the north side of the inner courtyard"

**who are on duty in the temple**

"who are working in the temple" or "who are responsible for guarding the temple"

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [temple](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:46-47****UDB:**

<sup>46</sup> The room whose door faces north is for the priests who are in charge of the work at the altar. They are the descendants of Zadok; they are the only descendants of Levi who are permitted to approach Yahweh while they work for him.”

<sup>47</sup> Then he measured the courtyard; it was square, fifty-four meters long and fifty-four meters wide. The altar was in front of the sanctuary.

**ULB:**

<sup>46</sup> The room facing north is for the priests on duty at the altar. These are the sons of Zadok who come near to Yahweh to serve him; they are among the sons of Levi.” <sup>47</sup> Next he measured the courtyard—one hundred cubits in length and one hundred cubits in width in a square, with the altar in front of the house.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The man continues speaking to Ezekiel in the vision.

**The room facing north**

This refers to the room on the south side of the inner courtyard. The door of the room was on the north side of the room. AT: “This room whose door is on its north side” or “This room on the south side of the inner courtyard”

**the priests on duty at the altar**

“the priests who were offering sacrifices on the altar”

**come near to Yahweh to serve him**

“approach Yahweh in his temple in order to serve him”

**he measured**

“the man measured”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**one hundred cubits**

about 54 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**with the altar**

“and the altar was”

**the house**

This refers to the temple.

**translationWords**

- altar, altars
- son, sons
- Zadok
- Yahweh
- serve, service
- Levite, Levi
- house

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 40:48-49****UDB:**

<sup>48</sup> Then he brought me to the portico of the sanctuary and measured the doorposts and their walls on each side of the entrance; they were about two and three-quarters meters thick. The doorway was seven meters wide, and the sides on each side of it were one and three-fifths meters wide. <sup>49</sup> The portico was eleven meters wide, and its depth was six meters on each side. There were steps leading up to it, and there were columns on each side of the portico.

**ULB:**

<sup>48</sup> Then the man brought me to the portico of the house and measured its doorposts—they were five cubits thick on either side. The entryway itself was fourteen cubits in width, and the walls on each side of it were three cubits in width. <sup>[1]</sup>, the Hebrew text reads , but this seems to be a mistake, judging from the preceding words in this verse. <sup>49</sup> The length of the portico was twenty cubits, and its depth was eleven cubits. There were steps that went up to it and columns that stood on either side of it. <sup>[2]</sup>, some ancient and modern versions read . <sup>[3]</sup>, some ancient and modern versions read .

---

40:48 <sup>[1]</sup>Instead of *the walls on each side of it were three cubits in width the entrance was three cubits in width*

40:49 <sup>[2]</sup>Instead of *steps ten steps*

40:49 <sup>[3]</sup>Instead of *eleven cubits twelve cubits*

**translationNotes****portico**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**the house**

this refers to the temple

**its doorposts**

“the doorposts of the house”

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:05](#).

**five cubits**

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**fourteen cubits**

about 7.5 meters

**three cubits**

about 1.6 meters

**twenty cubits**

about 11 meters

**eleven cubits**

about 6 meters

**columns**

pieces of stone that were tall and narrow and supported the roof of the building

**translationWords**

- [doorpost](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 41 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on the courtyard of the temple. (See: [temple](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 41:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 41:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then in the vision the man brought me to into the holy place in the temple and measured the doorposts on either side of the entrance; they were each three and one-tenth meters wide. <sup>2</sup> The entrance was five and two-fifths meters wide, and the walls of each side of it were two and three-quarters meters long. He also measured the holy place. It was twenty-two meters long and eleven meters wide.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the man brought me into the temple's holy place and measured the doorposts—six cubits in width on either side. <sup>[1]</sup>, most ancient copies and some modern versions add . <sup>2</sup> The width of the doorway was ten cubits; the wall on each side was five cubits in length. Then the man measured the dimensions of the holy place—forty cubits in length and twenty cubits in width.

---

41:1 <sup>[1]</sup>After six cubits in width on either side the width of the tent

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The man in Ezekiel's vision ([Ezekiel 40:3](#)) continues to show Ezekiel around the temple.

**the temple's holy place**

the room in the temple in front of the “most holy place”

**six cubits in width on either side**

These cubits were the “long” cubits ([Ezekiel 40:5](#)), 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). “they were six cubits in width on both sides”

**six cubits**

about 3.2 meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**ten cubits**

about 5.4 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**five cubits**

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**the dimensions**

“the size”

**forty cubits**

about 22 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**twenty cubits**

about 11 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [temple](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [doorpost](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then he entered the inner room of the temple, the very holy place, and measured the walls to either side of the entrance; each was one meter wide. The doorway was three and one-tenth meters wide, and each of the walls on each side of the entrance was three and four-fifths meters long. <sup>4</sup> Then he measured the inner room; it was eleven meters long and eleven meters wide. Then he said to me, “This is the very holy place.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then the man went into the very holy place and measured the posts of the doorway—two cubits, and the doorway was six cubits in width. The walls on either side were seven cubits in width. <sup>4</sup> Then he measured the room’s length—twenty cubits. Its width—twenty cubits to the front of the temple hall. Then he said to me, “This is the most holy place.”

**translationNotes****two cubits**

about 1.1 meter (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:05](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**six cubits**

about 3.2 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**seven cubits**

about 3.8 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**twenty cubits**

about 11 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [holy place](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then he measured the wall of the temple; it was three and one-tenth meters thick. There was a row of rooms along the outside wall of the temple. Each of those rooms was two meters wide. <sup>6</sup> There were three stories of rooms, with thirty rooms on each story. There were ledges all around the wall of the temple that were supports for the side rooms above. There were no extra supports built into the sanctuary wall. <sup>7</sup> Each of the side rooms was wider than the one below it. The most narrow rooms were built first, at the bottom. Then a wider set of rooms was built over it, and the widest set was at the top. A set of stairs was built from the lowest level through the middle level to the highest level.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Then the man measured the wall of the house—it was six cubits thick. The width of each side room around the house was four cubits in width. <sup>6</sup> There were side rooms on three levels, one room above another, thirty rooms on each level. There were ledges around the wall of the house, to support all of the side rooms, for there was no support put in the wall of the house. <sup>7</sup> So the side rooms widened and went around going up, for the house went around higher and higher all around; the rooms widened as the house went up, and a stairway went up to the highest level, through the middle level.

**translationNotes****the house**

the temple

**six cubits**

about 3.2 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:05](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**four cubits**

about 2 meters

**three levels**

“three stories”

**There were ledges around the wall of the house**

“The house had ledges all around for the side rooms all around.” This way the side rooms could rest on the ledge of the wall.

**to support**

“so that the ledges could support”

**for there was no support put in the wall of the house**

“for there were no supports in the wall of the house.” The people who built the temple did not want stones or wood that would support the side rooms to be sticking out from the wall of the sanctuary.

**translationWords**

- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> I saw that there was a terrace around the temple. The terrace was the foundation for those side rooms; it was three and one-tenth meters high. <sup>9</sup> The outer wall of those side rooms was two and three-quarters meters thick. All around the sanctuary there was an open area between those side rooms.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then I saw a raised part all around the house, the foundation for the side chambers; it measured a full stick in height—six cubits. <sup>9</sup> The width of the wall of the side rooms on the outside was five cubits. There was an open space to the outside of these rooms in the sanctuary.

**translationNotes****a raised part**

a platform

**chambers**

small rooms

**a full stick**

Translate “stick” as in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

**cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:05](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**six cubits**

about 3.2 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**five cubits**

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [sanctuary](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> The open areas were near the priests' rooms that were surrounding the courtyard; there was a distance of eleven meters between the two sets of side rooms all around the sanctuary. <sup>11</sup> There were two doors from those side rooms into another open area; one faced north and one faced south. This open area was two and three-quarters meters wide.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> On the other side of this open space were the priests' outer side rooms; this space was twenty cubits in width all around the sanctuary. <sup>11</sup> There were doors into the side rooms from another open space—one doorway was on the north side, and the other on the south side. The width of this open area was five cubits all around.

**translationNotes****the priests' outer side rooms**

“the side rooms of the priests that were further out from the sanctuary”

**twenty cubits**

about 11 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cubits**

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**five cubits**

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**The width of this open area was five cubits all around**

“The entire space between the chambers and the temple was five cubits wide, all around the temple”

**translationWords**

- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> There was a large building on the west side of the temple area. It was thirty-eight meters wide, and it had a wall two and three-quarters meters thick and forty-nine meters long.

<sup>13</sup> Then the man measured the temple. It was fifty-four meters long, and the temple courtyard, where the large building was, was fifty-four meters wide. The building and its wall measured the same. <sup>14</sup> The courtyard on the east side of the temple, across the front of the temple, was also fifty-four meters wide.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> The building that faced the courtyard on the west side was seventy cubits in width. Its wall measured five cubits thick all around, and it was ninety cubits in length. <sup>13</sup> Then the man measured the sanctuary—one hundred cubits in length. The separated building, its wall, and the courtyard also measured one hundred cubits in length. <sup>14</sup> The width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary was also one hundred cubits.

**translationNotes****The building that faced the courtyard on the west side was seventy cubits in width**

This can be stated as a separate sentence. AT: “There was a building on the west side of the temple area, and its entrance was towards the courtyard. It was seventy cubits in width”

**seventy cubits ... five cubits ... ninety cubits ... one hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). “70 cubits ... 5 cubits ... 90 cubits ... 100 cubits” or “about 38 meters ... about 2.7 meters ... about 49 meters ... about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then he measured the building on the west side. Including its walls, it was also fifty-four meters long.

The outer walls of the holy place, of the very holy place, and the portico, <sup>16</sup> the inner walls above and below the narrow windows, and the galleries on all the stories—all these things were covered with thin panels of wood. <sup>17</sup> All the walls inside the temple were decorated with carvings of winged creatures and palm trees; between each figure of a winged creature was a carving of a palm tree.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then the man measured the length of the building behind the sanctuary, to its west, and the galleries on either side—one hundred cubits. The holy place and the portico, <sup>16</sup> the inner walls and the windows, including the narrow windows, and the galleries all around on three levels, were all paneled in wood. <sup>17</sup> Above the entryway to the inner sanctuary and spaced along the walls there was a measured pattern.

**translationNotes****the galleries**

“the balconies.” The balconies were places that were built higher up than the rest of the building. People could go into balconies and look down on the main floor of the building.

**one hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). “100 cubits” or “about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**the portico**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**translationWords**

- [sanctuary](#)
- [holy place](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18-19</sup> Each winged creature had two faces. One face was the face of a human, and one was the face of a lion. Those figures were carved on the walls all around the inside of the temple, and each face looked at the carving of a palm tree. <sup>20</sup> They covered all the walls, from the floor to the wall above the entryway.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> It was decorated with cherubim and palm trees; with a palm tree between each cherub, and each cherub had two faces: <sup>19</sup> the face of a man looked toward a palm tree on one side, and the face of a young lion looked toward a palm tree on the other side. They were carved all around the entire house. <sup>20</sup> From the ground to above the doorway, cherubim and palm trees were carved on the outer wall of the house.

**translationNotes****decorated**

“made beautiful”

**cherubim**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

**cherub**

This is the singular form of “cherubim.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:9](#).

**the house**

“the temple”

**translationWords**

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [palm](#)
- [lion](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 41:21-24****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> At the entrance to the main room of the temple there were square doorposts, all the same in appearance. <sup>22</sup> In front of the very holy place there was a wooden altar. It was one and three-fifths meters high and one meter wide on all four sides. Its corners and base and sides were all made of wood. The man said to me, “This is the table that is in the presence of Yahweh.” <sup>23</sup> The holy place and the very holy place had folding doors. <sup>24</sup> Each door consisted of two parts that swung on hinges.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> The gate posts of the holy place were square. Their appearance was like the appearance of <sup>22</sup> the wooden altar in front of the holy place, which was three cubits high and two cubits in length on each side. Its corner posts, base, and frame were made of wood. Then the man said to me, “This is the table that stands before Yahweh.” <sup>[1]</sup>, some modern versions have . <sup>23</sup> There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place. <sup>24</sup> These doors had two hinged door panels each, two panels for one door and two panels for the other.

---

41:22 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *Their appearance was like the appearance of the wooden altar in front of the holy place, which was They all looked like each other. The wooden altar in front of the holy place was*

**translationNotes****Their appearance was like the appearance of the wooden altar**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “They appeared the same way the wooden altar appeared” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**three cubits ... two cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “about 1.6 meters ... about 1.1 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place**

“The holy place and the most holy place both had two doors”

**These doors had two hinged door panels each**

“Each door had two parts that were on hinges.” Hinges connect doors to the wall and allow the doors to swing.

**two panels for one door and two panels for the other**

“both of the doors for both the holy place and the most holy place had two parts”

**translationWords**

- [holy place](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 41:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> On these doors there were carvings of winged creatures and palm trees. There was also a wooden roof over the front portico of the sanctuary. <sup>26</sup> On the side walls of the portico were narrow windows with figures of palm trees carved on the sides of the windows. The side rooms around the temple also had projecting roofs.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Carved on them—on the doors of the holy place—were cherubim and palm trees just as the walls were decorated, and there was a wooden roof over the portico at the front. <sup>26</sup> There were narrow windows and palm trees on either side of the portico. These were the side rooms of the house, and they also had overhanging roofs.

**translationNotes****just as the walls were decorated**

“just as the walls also had carvings of cherubim and palm trees”

**portico**

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**translationWords**

- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 42 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focused on the storerooms for keeping the holy things of the temple. (See: [temple](#) and [holy, holiness](#))

### Links:

- [Ezekiel 42:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 42:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then in the vision the man led me out of the inner courtyard, through the gate on the north side. We entered the outer courtyard and came to rooms that were facing the northern outer wall. <sup>2</sup> The building with those rooms was fifty-four meters long and twenty-seven meters wide. <sup>3</sup> In that building there was one group of rooms that faced the inner courtyard. The distance between those rooms and the sanctuary, the main temple building, was eleven meters. These rooms were built on three stories. Each set of rooms had a walkway over the set of rooms below it. There were rooms that overlooked the open area of the outer courtyard.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Next the man sent me out to the outer courtyard on the north side, and he brought me to rooms in front of the outer courtyard and the northern outer wall. <sup>2</sup> Those rooms were one hundred cubits along their front and fifty cubits in width. <sup>3</sup> Some of those rooms faced the inner courtyard and were twenty cubits away from the sanctuary. There were three levels of rooms, and the ones above looked down on the ones below and were open to them, having a walkway. Some of the rooms looked out onto the outer courtyard.

**translationNotes****the outer courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

**one hundred cubits ... fifty cubits ... twenty cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “100 cubits ... 50 cubits ... 20 cubits” or “about 54 meters ... about 27 meters ... about 11 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**Some of those rooms faced the inner courtyard**

“Some of those rooms were toward the inner courtyard” or “The entrance of some of those rooms was toward the inner courtyard”

**inner courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**were open to them**

“looked out onto the inner courtyard”

### **having a walkway**

“because there was a place where one could walk along the rooms”

### **Some of the rooms looked out onto the outer courtyard**

“Some of the rooms were toward the outer courtyard” or “The entrance of some of the rooms was toward the outer courtyard”

### **translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 42:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> To one side of the rooms was a walkway that was five and two-fifths meters wide and fifty-four meters long. All the doors of the rooms were on their north side. <sup>5</sup> Each set of rooms was narrower than the set of rooms below them, because each upper sets had a walkway in front . <sup>6</sup> The rooms on the upper levels had no pillars to support them as there were in the courtyard, because those rooms were supported by the walls of the rooms below.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> A passage ten cubits in width and one hundred cubits in length ran in front of the rooms. The rooms' doors were toward the north. <sup>[1]</sup> . Ancient Hebrew copies and some modern versions read <sup>5</sup> But the upper halls were smaller, for the walkways took away from them more space than they did in the lowest and middle levels of the building. <sup>6</sup> For the halls on the third story had no columns, unlike the courtyards, which did have columns. So the highest level's rooms were smaller in size compared to the rooms in the lowest and middle levels.

---

42:4 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient versions and many modern versions read *one hundred cubits one cubit*.

**translationNotes****ten cubits ... one hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "10 cubits ... 100 cubits" or "about 5.4 meters ... about 54 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**smaller in size compared to the rooms**

"smaller than the rooms"

**translationWords**

- [pillar, column](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 42:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> The outer wall ran parallel to the rooms that faced the outer courtyard; this part of the outer wall was twenty-seven meters long. <sup>8</sup> The row of rooms that was along the outer courtyard was twenty-seven meters long, and the row of rooms that faced the temple was fifty-four meters long. <sup>9</sup> The bottom story had an entrance on its east side, coming from the outer courtyard.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> The outside wall ran along the rooms toward the outer courtyard, the courtyard that was in front of the rooms. That wall was fifty cubits in length. <sup>8</sup> The length of the rooms of the outer courtyard was fifty cubits, and the rooms facing the sanctuary were one hundred cubits in length. <sup>9</sup> There was an entrance to the lowest rooms from the east side, coming from the outer courtyard.

**translationNotes****fifty cubits ... one hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “50 cubits ... 100 cubits” or “about 27 meters ... about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 42:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> On the eastern side, along the outer wall of the outer courtyard, next to the temple courtyard, there was also a set of rooms. <sup>11</sup> There was a walkway in front of them. These rooms were like the rooms on the north side. They had the same length and width, and also the same kind of entrances. <sup>12</sup> There were also doorways into rooms on the south side that were similar to what was on the north side. There was an inside passage with an outer door; the passage had doors into all the rooms. At the east end of the passage was an outside door leading into it.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Along the wall of the outer courtyard on the eastern side of the outer courtyard, in front of the sanctuary's inner courtyard, there were also rooms <sup>[1]</sup>. However, some ancient copies and most modern versions read . <sup>11</sup> with a walkway in front of them. They were as the appearance of the rooms on the northern side. They had the same length and breadth and the same exits and arrangements and doors. <sup>12</sup> On the south side were doors into rooms that were just the same as on the north side. A passage on the inside had a door at its head, and the passage opened into the various rooms. On the east side there was a doorway into the passage at one end.

---

42:10 <sup>[1]</sup>Hebrew and some modern versions read *on the eastern side on the southern side*

**translationNotes****They were as the appearance of the rooms on the northern side**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “The way the rooms on the northern side appeared was the way these rooms appeared” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**at its head**

“at its beginning”

**translationWords**

- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 42:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then the man said to me, "The rooms on the northern and southern sides that overlook the temple sanctuary are only for Yahweh's special purposes. Here the priests who offer sacrifices to Yahweh will eat their portions of those offerings. Because these rooms are special, they will be used to store the offerings for Yahweh: The flour for the flour offerings, for the offerings for the sins that people have committed, and for the offerings that people make for their sins. <sup>14</sup> When the priests leave the temple, they will not be allowed to immediately enter the outer courtyard. First they must remove the clothes that they had been wearing inside the holy place, because those clothes are special, reserved for their work. They must put on other clothes before they enter the parts of the temple area where the other people gather."

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then the man said to me, "The northern rooms and the southern rooms that are in front of the outer courtyard are holy rooms where the priests who work nearest to Yahweh may eat the most holy food. They will put the most holy things there—the food offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering—for this is a holy place. <sup>14</sup> When the priests enter there, they must not go out of the holy place to the outer court, without laying aside the clothes in which they served, since these are holy. So they must dress in other clothes before going near the people."

**translationNotes****the food offering**

the grain or flour that the people offered to show that they were thankful to God

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [guilt offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 42:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> When the man had finished measuring the inside of the temple area, he led me out through the east entrance and measured all the surrounding area.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> The man completed measuring the inner house and then took me out to the gate that faced the east and measured all the surrounding area there.

### translationNotes

#### to the gate that faced the east

“out to the east gate” or “out through the east gate”

### translationWords

- [house](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [face](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 42:16****UDB:**

<sup>16-19</sup> He measured the four sides of the area. There was a wall around the area that was two-hundred and seventy meters long on each side.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> He measured the east side with a measuring stick—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[1]</sup> , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error. <sup>17</sup> He measured the north side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[2]</sup> which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error. <sup>18</sup> He also measured the south side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[3]</sup> , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error. <sup>19</sup> He also turned and measured the west side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[4]</sup> , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error.

---

42:16 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *five hundred cubits five hundred measuring sticks*

42:17 <sup>[2]</sup> Instead of *five hundred cubits, five hundred measuring sticks*

42:18 <sup>[3]</sup> Instead of *five hundred cubits five hundred measuring sticks*

42:19 <sup>[4]</sup> Instead of *five hundred cubits five hundred measuring sticks*

**translationNotes****He measured**

The word “he” refers to the man who looked like bronze. (See: [Ezekiel 40:3](#))

**measuring stick**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

**five hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “500 cubits” or “about 270 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 42:20****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> He measured the wall that separated what was sacred from the areas that were not sacred on four sides. The wall was five hundred cubits long and five hundred cubits wide.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> He measured it on four sides. It had a wall around it that was five hundred cubits in length, and five hundred cubits in width, to separate the holy from that which is common.

**translationNotes****It had a wall around it**

“The house had a wall all around it”

**five hundred cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “500 cubits” or “about 270 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**common**

not holy

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 43 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. God entered the temple. He told the people not to defile the temple by being idol worshipers or by having the funerals of their kings in the temple courtyard. He also told them what offerings to make each day. (See: [temple](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 43:01 Notes](#)



**Ezekiel 43:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the man brought me to the entrance on the east side. <sup>2</sup> Suddenly I saw the glory of the God of Israel coming from the east. The sound of his coming was like the roar of a rushing river, and all that area shone with his glory.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The man then brought me to the gate that opened to the east. <sup>2</sup> Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory.

**translationNotes****Behold!**

The word “Behold” here alerts the reader to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

**many waters**

This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to a loud river or a large waterfall or the waves crashing at the ocean. All of these are very loud. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:24](#).

**the earth shone with his glory**

“the earth was full of bright light from his glory”

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [voice](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> What I saw in this vision was like what I had seen in my earlier visions, first by the Kebar Canal and later when God came to destroy Jerusalem. I prostrated myself on the ground. <sup>4</sup> The glory of Yahweh entered the temple through the east entrance, <sup>5</sup> and then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner courtyard, while the glory of Yahweh filled the temple.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> It was according to the appearance of the vision that I saw, according to the vision that I saw when he had come <sup>[1]</sup> which some Hebrew copies and some ancient and many modern versions read, the Hebrew reads to destroy the city, and the visions were like the vision that I saw at the Kebar Canal—and I fell to my face. <sup>4</sup> So the glory of Yahweh came to the house by way of the gate that opened to the east. <sup>5</sup> Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner court. Behold! The glory of Yahweh was filling the house.

---

43:3 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *when he had come*, *when I came*.

**translationNotes****It was**

“The glory of God coming from the east was”

**according to the appearance of the vision**

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. AT: “just like what appeared in the vision” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**when he had come to destroy the city**

Possible meanings are 1) “when the God of Israel had come to destroy the city” or 2) “when I had come to see the God of Israel destroy the city.”

**Behold**

Your language may have a different word to show that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**translationWords**

- [vision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then, while the man was standing beside me, I heard someone speak to me from inside the temple. <sup>7</sup> He said, "Son of man, this is my temple, the place where I sit on my throne and where I rest my feet. This is where I will live with the Israelite people forever. The Israelite people and their kings will never again disgrace me by worshiping other gods at their hilltop places of idol worship, or by building lifeless idols of their past kings. <sup>8</sup> Your people placed their altars near mine, and the doorposts of their temples were next to the doorposts of my temple. There was only a wall between them. And they disgraced me by the detestable things that they did. So I was angry and destroyed them.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> The man was standing beside me, and I heard someone else speaking to me from the house. <sup>7</sup> He said to me, "Son of man, this is the place of my throne and the place for the soles of my feet, where I will live in the midst of the people of Israel forever. The house of Israel will no longer profane my holy name—they or their kings—with their faithlessness or with the corpses of their kings at their high places. <sup>8</sup> They will no longer profane my holy name by putting their threshold next to my threshold, and their gateposts next to my gateposts, with nothing but a wall between me and them. They profaned my holy name with their disgusting actions, so I consumed them with my anger.

**translationNotes****the corpses of their kings**

The idols that the people's kings worshiped are spoken of as if they are corpses because the idols are not alive. AT: "the lifeless idols that their kings worshiped" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**They profaned**

"The Israelites profaned"

**disgusting actions**

"the disgusting things they did." God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:9](#).

**consumed them with my anger**

The phrase "consumed" here means "completely destroyed." AT: "completely destroyed them because I was angry" (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- Son of Man, son of man
- throne
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- people of God, my people
- forever
- profane
- holy, holiness
- name, names, named
- king
- faithless, faithlessness
- threshold
- angry, anger

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:9****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Now they must stop this disgusting worship of idols and these rituals to honor kings' idols. If they stop doing those things, I will live among them forever.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Now let them remove their faithlessness and the corpses of their kings from before me, and I will live in their midst forever.

**translationNotes****the corpses of their kings**

The idols that the people's kings worshiped are spoken of as if they are corpses because the idols are not alive. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:7](#). AT: "the lifeless idols that their kings worshiped" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [faithless, faithlessness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Son of man, describe to the Israelite people what this temple that I have shown you in a vision is like, in order that they will be ashamed of the sins. <sup>11</sup> If they are ashamed of all the evil things that they have done, tell them all about the temple that I showed you: Its design, the exits and entrances, and everything else about it. And tell them all my laws and regulations about worshiping me there. Write all these things down while they watch you, in order that they will be able to faithfully obey them.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Son of man, you yourself must tell the house of Israel about this house so they will be ashamed of their iniquities. They should think about this description. <sup>11</sup> For if they are ashamed of all that they have done, then reveal to them the design of the house, its details, its exits, its entrances, and all its designs, all its decrees and rules. Then write this down before their eyes so they will keep to all its design and all its rules, so as to obey them.

**translationNotes****this description**

“this pattern” or “this plan”

**before their eyes**

Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:6](#). AT: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**will keep to all its design**

“will keep its pattern”

**translationWords**

- Son of Man, son of man
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- iniquity, iniquities
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- decree
- obey, obedient, obedience

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 43:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> And this is the supreme law about the temple: All of the area on top of the hill where the temple will be built must be kept sacred and holy.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> This is the regulation for the house: From the peak of the hill to all the surrounding border around it, it will be most holy. Behold! This is the regulation for the house.

**translationNotes****the regulation**

“the instruction” or “the rule”

**the surrounding border**

The word “border” probably refers to the wall that goes all the way around the temple.

**most holy**

“absolutely holy”

**Behold!**

“This is important!” Your language may have a way of indicating that the words that follow are important.

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> These are the measurements of the altar, using the same kind of measuring stick that was used for the temple area: There is a gutter around the altar that is one-half meter deep and one-half meter wide. There is a rim around it that is twenty-three centimeters wide. This will compose the base for the rest of the altar. <sup>14</sup> The lower part of the gutter is one meter high to the lower ledge that surrounds the altar. The lower ledge is one-half meter wide. From that ledge to the upper ledge, it is two meters. That ledge is also one-half meter wide.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> These will be the measurements of the altar in cubits—that cubit being a regular cubit and a handbreadth in length. So the gutter around the altar will be a cubit deep, and its width will also be a cubit. The border around its surrounding edge will be one span. This will be the base of the altar. <sup>14</sup> From the gutter at the ground level up to the lower ledge of the altar is two cubits, and that ledge itself is one cubit in width. Then from the small ledge up to the large edge of the altar, it is four cubits, and the large edge is a cubit in width.

**translationNotes****a cubit ... two cubits ... four cubits**

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UDB does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “about 54 centimeters ... about 1.1 meters ... about 2.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**The border around its surrounding edge**

“The border going around its edge”

**one span**

A span was 23 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UDB does. AT: “about 23 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**This will be the base of the altar**

“These will be the measurements of the base of the altar”

**the base of the altar**

“the bottom supporting the altar” or “the foundation of the altar”

**ledge**

a narrow and flat surface that sticks out from a wall

**translationWords**

- altar, altars

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> The hearth at the top of the altar is another two meters high, and there is a hornlike projection that juts up from each of the four corners. <sup>16</sup> That place at the top of the altar is square, six and one-half meters long on each side. <sup>17</sup> The upper ledge that borders the hearth is also a square, seven and three-fifths meters long on each side, and has a rim all around that is twenty-seven centimeters wide. There is a gutter measuring one-half meter at the bottom of the altar. There are steps leading up to the east side of the altar.”

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> The hearth on the altar for the burnt offerings is four cubits high, and there are four horns pointing upward on the hearth. <sup>16</sup> The hearth is twelve cubits in length and twelve cubits in width, a square. <sup>17</sup> Its border is fourteen cubits in length and fourteen cubits in width on each of its four sides, and its rim is a half cubit in width. The gutter is a cubit in width all around with its steps facing east.”

**translationNotes****The hearth**

the place where sacrifices were either cooked or burnt up with fire

**four cubits ... twelve cubits ... fourteen cubits ... a half cubit ... a cubit**

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UDB does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “about 2.2 meters ... about 6.5 meters ... about 7.6 meters ... about 27 centimeters ... about 54 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**horns**

The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar.

**with its steps facing east**

“with steps on the east side of the altar” or “and the altar’s steps are on its east side”

**translationWords**

- altar, altars

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Then the man said to me, "Son of man, this is what Yahweh the Lord says: These are the regulations for sacrificing offerings that will be completely burned and for sprinkling the blood against the sides of the altar when it is built: <sup>19</sup> You must present to the priests a young bull to be an offering for the sins of the priests, the descendants of Levi, from the clan of Zadok, who come near to the altar to serve me.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Next he said to me, "Son of man, the Lord Yahweh says this: These are the regulations for the altar on the day they make it, for raising the burnt offering onto it, and for sprinkling blood on it. <sup>19</sup> You will give a bull from the cattle as a sin offering for the Levitical priests who are the descendants of Zadok, those who come near to me to serve me—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****he said**

"Yahweh said"

**Son of man**

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: "Mortal person" or "Human"

**regulations**

"rules" or "instructions"

**You will**

The word "you" is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- blood
- sin offering
- Levite, Levi
- priest, priests, priesthood
- descendant, descended from
- Zadok
- serve, service
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> You must take some of the blood from the bull and smear it on the four projections of the altar and on the four corners of the upper ledge, and all around the rim, so I will accept the altar, and to make the altar belong only to me. <sup>21</sup> You must burn that bull outside the temple in the part of the temple area designated for that purpose.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then you will take some of its blood and place it on the altar's four horns and the four sides of its edge and on the surrounding rim; you will cleanse it and make atonement for it. <sup>21</sup> Then take the bull for the sin offering and burn it in the appointed part of the temple area outside of the sanctuary.

**translationNotes****Then you will take**

The word "you" is singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Forms of You](#))

**four horns**

The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:15](#).

**translationWords**

- [blood](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 43:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> The next day you must offer a male goat that has no defects, to be an offering, so I will accept the altar. Then you must purify the altar again, as you did with the bull that was sacrificed. <sup>23</sup> When you have finished doing all that, you must offer a young bull and a ram, both of them without any defects. <sup>24</sup> You must offer them to me, Yahweh. The priests must sprinkle salt on them and burn them completely on the altar as a sacrifice to me.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then on the second day you will offer a male goat without blemish from the goats as a sin offering; the priests will cleanse the altar just as they cleansed it with the bull. <sup>23</sup> When you finish its cleansing, offer an unblemished bull from the cattle and an unblemished ram from the flock. <sup>24</sup> Offer them before Yahweh; the priests will throw salt onto them and raise them up as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

**translationNotes****you will offer ... you finish ... offer ... offer**

All instances of “you” and the commands refer to Ezekiel and so are singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

**Offer them before Yahweh**

The altar on which they will sacrifice the bull and ram is in front of the temple, where the presence of Yahweh dwells.

**translationWords**

- goat, kid
- sin offering
- priest, priests, priesthood
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes
- sheep, ram, ewe
- flock, herd
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 43:25-27****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then, each day for seven days you must bring to the priest a male goat to be sacrificed for an offering, so I will accept the altar. You must also sacrifice a young bull and a ram, each without any defect, that the priests will provide. <sup>26</sup> For seven days the priests will consecrate the altar, so I will accept the altar. By doing that they will set it apart for my honor. <sup>27</sup> At the end of those seven days, starting on the following day, the priests will continue to put on the altar offerings to be completely burned and offerings to promise friendship with me. Then I will accept you. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.”

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> You must prepare a male goat as a sin offering daily for seven days, and the priests must also prepare an unblemished bull of the cattle and unblemished ram from the flock. <sup>26</sup> They must atone for the altar for seven days and purify it, and in this way they must consecrate it. <sup>27</sup> They must complete these days, and on the eighth day and onward it will come about that the priests will prepare your burnt offerings and your peace offerings on the altar, and I will accept you—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****You must prepare**

This is spoken to Ezekiel and so the word “You” is singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

**it will come about that**

This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the instructions. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**your burnt offerings ... your peace offerings ... accept you**

The words “your” and “you” are second person plural and refer to the people of Israel in general. (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

**will accept you**

“will gladly receive you”

### translationWords

- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- pure, purify, purification
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- priest, priests, priesthood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- peace offering
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 44 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. Foreigners and the Levites who have worshiped idols are not allowed in the temple. The priests alone will do the temple work. (See: [temple](#) and [priest, priests, priesthood](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 44:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 44:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the man brought me back to the outer entrance to the temple area, the one on the east side, but the gate was shut. <sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to me, "This gate must remain shut. It must not be opened by anyone; no one will be permitted to enter it. It must remain shut because I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, made it to be special to me when I came in through it. <sup>3</sup> Only the ruler of Israel will be permitted to sit inside this entrance to eat food in my presence. He must enter and leave the temple area through this gate."

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the man brought me back to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east; it was closed tightly. <sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to me, "This gate has been sealed shut; it will not be opened. No man will go through it, for Yahweh, the God of Israel, has come through it, so it has been closed tightly. <sup>3</sup> The ruler of Israel will sit in it to eat food before Yahweh. He will enter by way of the gate's portico and go out the same way."

**translationNotes****to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east**

"to the outer sanctuary gate on the east side of the temple"

**it will not be opened**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "no one will open it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the God of Israel**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:4](#).

**He will enter by way of the gate's portico and go out the same way**

He will enter the courtyard through another gate and then sit in the portico of the east gate and eat.

**portico**

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. In this case, the portico opens into the courtyard and is between the entrance to the temple and the inside of the gate. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### before Yahweh

“in front of Yahweh” or “in the presence of Yahweh”

### translationWords

- [sanctuary](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [face](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then the man brought me through the north entrance to the front of the temple. I looked and saw that the glory of Yahweh filled his temple, and I prostrated myself on the ground.

<sup>5</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, look carefully, and listen carefully to everything that I tell you about all the regulations concerning the temple. Note carefully the temple entrance and all the exits.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then he brought me by way of the northern gate to the front of the temple, and I looked, and behold, the glory of Yahweh filled the house of Yahweh, and I fell on my face. <sup>5</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, set your heart and look with your eyes and listen with your ears to all that I am declaring to you, to all the statutes of the house of Yahweh and all its regulations. Think about the house's entrance and exits.

**translationNotes****Then he**

Possible meanings are 1) "Then the man" or 2) "Then Yahweh."

**behold**

The word "behold" here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

**the glory of Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

**I fell on my face**

"I bowed down to the ground" or "I lay on the ground." Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

**set your heart**

"pay attention to" or "think about." Translate as you translated "fix your mind on" in [Ezekiel 40:4](#). (See: [Idiom](#))



**all its regulations**

“all the instructions about the house of Yahweh”

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Say this to the rebellious Israelite people: "This is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say: You Israelite people, I will no longer endure the detestable things that you do! <sup>7</sup> In addition to all the other detestable things that you do, you brought into my temple foreign men who had not been circumcised and who knew nothing about how to honor me. By doing that, you caused my temple to be an unacceptable place to worship me, while you offered food and fat and blood, and you disobeyed my covenant with you.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then say to the rebellious ones, the house of Israel, "The Lord Yahweh says this: Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you, house of Israel— <sup>7</sup> that you brought foreigners with uncircumcised hearts and uncircumcised flesh to be in my sanctuary, profaning my house, while you were offering me food, fat and blood—you have broken my covenant by all your disgusting actions.

**translationNotes****the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you**

"Your disgusting actions have been more than enough for you" or "You have done far too many disgusting deeds"

**disgusting actions**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:9](#).

**translationWords**

- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- Israel, Israelites
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- flesh

- [sanctuary](#)
- [profane](#)
- [bread](#)
- [blood](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Instead of doing what I commanded you to do in regard to my holy things, you appointed foreigners to be in charge of my temple. <sup>9</sup> But this is what I, Yahweh, have said: No foreigners, no men who are not circumcised, no godless people are permitted to enter my temple, not even foreigners who live among you Israelites permanently.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> You have not carried out your duties regarding my holy things, but you appointed others to take up your duties, and you assigned them to care for my holy place. <sup>9</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and flesh, from any of those who live among the people of Israel, may enter my holy place.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**translationWords**

- [holy place](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [flesh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Many of the descendants of Levi deserted me along with most of the Israelite people, and started to worship idols. I will punish them for their sin. <sup>11</sup> I will permit them to work in my temple and to be in charge of the temple gates. They will be able to slaughter the animals that will be completely burned on the altar, and to burn other sacrifices for the people, and they will be able to help the people. <sup>12</sup> But because they helped the people to worship idols and caused many of the people of Israel to sin by worshiping idols, I swear that I will punish them for their sin.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yet the Levites went far from me—they wandered away from me, going after their idols—but they will pay for their sin. <sup>11</sup> They are servants in my sanctuary, watching the gates of the house and serving in the house and they slaughter the burnt offerings and the people's sacrifices, and they will stand before the people and serve them. <sup>12</sup> But because they performed the sacrifices before their idols, they became stumbling blocks for sin for the house of Israel. Therefore I will lift up my hand to swear an oath against them—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—they will bear their punishment.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**went far from me ... wandered away from me, going after their idols**

The way a person lives is spoken of as walking on a path. AT: "stopped worshiping me ... stopped doing what I wanted them to do. Instead, they worshiped their idols" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**are servants in my sanctuary**

"will be the servants in my temple"

**watching the gates of the house**

"performing guard duty at the gates of the house"

**they will stand before the people and serve them**

"these Levites will stand before the people, so that they can serve the people"

**became stumbling blocks for sin for the house of Israel**

A person who causes another person to sin is spoken of as if he were something on a path over which people stumble. AT: “became people who caused the house of Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will lift up my hand to swear an oath**

In those days a person would raise his right hand to show that he realized that God would punish him if he did not do what he swore to do. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 20:6](#). AT: “I will solemnly swear” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**against them**

“that I will punish them”

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**they will bear their punishment**

The abstract noun “punishment” can be translated as a verb. AT: “I will certainly punish them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [house](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> They must not come near me to serve as priests. They must not come near any sacred things or the holy offerings. They will be ashamed of the things that they did, of which they are guilty. <sup>14</sup> But I will still put them in charge of the work in the temple, and allow them to do all the work that needs to be done there.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> They will not come near me to act as my priests or to approach any of my holy things, the most holy things. Instead, they will bear their reproach and their guilt for the disgusting actions that they have done. <sup>14</sup> But I will place them as keepers of the work in the house, for all of its duties and everything that is done in it.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**They**

the Levites ([Ezekiel 44:10](#))

**They will not come near**

“I will not permit them to come near.” Yahweh does not want them to come to him the way a servant comes to a king to receive commands, as the descendants of Zadok will do ([Ezekiel 40:46](#)).

**will bear their reproach and their guilt**

“will be ashamed and suffer when I punish them”

**disgusting actions**

“the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:9](#).

**keepers**

people who guard or take care of something



**that is done in it**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “that they need to do in it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> But the priests who are descended from Levi and from the clan of Zadok faithfully worked in my temple when the other Israelites deserted me. So they must come near to me to work for me. They will stand in my presence to offer sacrifices of animals' fat and blood. <sup>16</sup> They are the only ones who are permitted to enter my temple. They are the only ones who are permitted to come near my altar to serve me and do what I tell them to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then the Levitical priests, those sons of Zadok who fulfilled the duties of my sanctuary when the people of Israel were wandering away from me—they will come near me to worship me. They will stand before me to offer me the fat and the blood—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration. <sup>16</sup> They will come to my sanctuary; they will approach my table to worship me and to fulfill their duties to me.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**those sons of Zadok who fulfilled**

“who are descendants of Zadok and fulfilled”

**were wandering away from me**

This is an idiom. “stopped listening and obeying me” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [fulfill, fulfilled](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [worship](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> When they enter the gateway into the inner courtyard, they must wear white linen clothes. They must not wear any clothes made of wool while they do their work at the gates of the inner courtyard or inside the temple. <sup>18</sup> They must wear white linen turbans on their heads and linen undergarments around their waists. They must not wear anything that would cause them to perspire.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> So it will be that when they come to the gates of the inner courtyard, they will have to dress in linen clothes, for they must not come in wool inside the gates of the inner court and its house. <sup>18</sup> There should be linen turbans on their heads and linen underclothes on their hips. They must not dress in clothes that make them sweat.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**So it will be that**

“So”

**the inner courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**linen**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

**wool**

cloth or clothing made of the soft hair of sheep

**turbans**

A turban is a head covering that is that is made of a long cloth wrapped around the head.

**translationWords**

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:19****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Before they go out into the courtyard where other people are, they must take off the clothes that they have been wearing and leave them in the sacred rooms, and put on other clothes, in order that the people are not consecrated by touching the sacred clothes.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> When they go out to the outer courtyard, to the outer courtyard in order to go to the people, they must take off the clothes they wore when they served; they must take them off and lay them down in a holy room, so they do not make other people holy by contact with their special clothing.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about how the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests are to do their duties.

**outer courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

**translationWords**

- [serve, service](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> The priests must not shave their heads or let their hair become long; but they must keep their hair trimmed. <sup>21</sup> Priests must not drink wine before they enter the inner courtyard. <sup>22</sup> Also, priests must not marry widows of men who were not priests or women who have been divorced. They are permitted to marry only virgins or widows of other priests.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Also they must neither shave their heads nor allow their hair to hang loosely, but they must trim the hair of their heads. <sup>21</sup> No priest may drink wine when he comes to the inner court, <sup>22</sup> nor take a widow or a divorced woman as a wife for himself, but only a virgin from the line of the house of Israel or a widow who was previously married to a priest.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**must trim the hair of their heads**

must keep their hair neat

**widow**

a woman whose husband has died

**from the line of the house of Israel**

“who is a descendant of the people of Israel”

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [divorce](#)
- [virgin](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 44:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> They must teach the people the difference between things that are holy and things that are not, and teach them how to know what things are acceptable to me and what things are not.

<sup>24</sup> If there is a dispute between people, the priests are the ones who must serve as judges and decide matters according to my laws. They must obey all my laws and decrees concerning the sacred festivals, and they must treat my Sabbath days as special for me.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> For they will teach my people the difference between the holy and the profane; they will make them know the unclean from the clean. <sup>24</sup> In a dispute they will stand to judge with my decrees; they must be just. They will keep my law and my statutes in every feast, and they will celebrate my holy Sabbaths.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**In a dispute they will stand to judge with my decrees**

“When people are arguing, they will be the ones who decide who is right by applying my laws”

**translationWords**

- people of God, my people
- profane
- know, knowledge, make known
- unclean
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- decree
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- statute, statutes
- feast
- Sabbath

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:25-27****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Priests are permitted to go near the corpse of a father or mother or son or daughter or brother or unmarried sister. But they must not defile themselves by going near a corpse of anyone else. <sup>26</sup> If a priest touches the corpse of a close relative, he must perform the rituals to become acceptable to serve me again. After he performs those rituals, he must wait seven days. <sup>27</sup> Then, on the day that he enters the inner courtyard again to serve me in the temple, he must give an offering to remove his guilt for having sinned. That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> They will not go to a dead person so as to become unclean, unless it is their father or mother, son or daughter, brother or a sister who has not slept with a man; otherwise, they will become unclean. <sup>26</sup> After a priest has become unclean, they will count off a period of seven days for him. <sup>27</sup> On the day he enters the holy place, into the inner courtyard to serve in the holy place, he must bring a sin offering for himself—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#), or [Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> The priests will not own any land. They will have only what I provide for them. <sup>29</sup> They will eat the offerings made from flour, offerings to remove people's guilt for having sinned, and offerings made when people fail to give to me the things that they are required to give. Everything else in Israel that is dedicated to me will belong to the priests.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> This will be their inheritance: I am their inheritance, and you must give them no property in Israel; I will be their property! <sup>29</sup> They will eat the food offerings, the sin offerings, the guilt offerings, and everything devoted to Yahweh in Israel, will be theirs.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**you**

The word "you" refers to the people of Israel and so is plural. (See: [Pronouns](#))

**property**

land that a person owns and uses to provide for the needs of his family

**in Israel**

"in the land of Israel"

**translationWords**

- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [sin offering](#)
- [guilt offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 44:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> The best fruits of the first part of each harvest and all the other special gifts will belong to the priests. You must give them the first part of your ground flour, in order that I will bless the people who live in your house. <sup>31</sup> Priests must not eat the flesh of any bird or animal that is found dead or that has been killed by wild animals.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> The best of the firstfruits of all things and every contribution, anything from all of your contributions will belong to the priests, and you will give the best of your meal offerings to the priests so that blessing may rest on your house. <sup>31</sup> The priests will not eat any carcass or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

**every contribution, anything from all of your contributions**

“every gift of whatever kind from all your gifts” or “all gifts of every sort of all of your gifts”

**so that blessing may rest on your house**

This phrase means “so that I will bless your family and everything that belongs to you.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “or any creature that a bird or a wild animal has torn apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [firstfruits](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [meal offering, grain offering](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 translationQuestions](#)



## **Ezekiel 45 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There should be an area around the temple complex for the homes of the priests and Levites who work at the temple. People should celebrate the festivals. (See: [temple](#) and [priest, priests, priesthood](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 45:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 45:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> When the land of Israel is divided among the twelve tribes, you must present to Yahweh one part of the land to be a sacred district. It will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifths kilometers wide. This entire area will be reserved for Yahweh. <sup>2</sup> Part of that area, a square about 270 meters long on each side will be left empty all around the temple area. An additional strip of ground, about twenty-seven meters wide, will be left empty all around the temple area.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> When you cast lots to divide up the land as an inheritance, you must make an offering to Yahweh; this offering will be a holy part of the land, twenty-five thousand cubits in length, and ten thousand cubits in width. It will be holy, all its area round about. <sup>[1]</sup> , which the Hebrew text and some modern versions have, some ancient copies and many modern versions have . <sup>2</sup> From this there will be a five hundred cubits by five hundred cubits square surrounding the holy place, with a surrounding border fifty cubits in width.

---

45:1 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *ten thousand twenty thousand*

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**twenty-five thousand cubits in length ... ten thousand cubits in width ... five hundred cubits ... fifty cubits in width**

Each cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “25,000 cubits long ... 10,000 cubits wide ... 500 cubits ... 50 cubits wide” or “about 13.5 kilometers long ... about 5.4 kilometers wide ... about 270 meters ... about 27 meters wide” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**all its area round about**

“all of the area inside of the borders around it”

**translationWords**

- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Inside the sacred district, measure a section thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifths kilometers wide. It will be where the sanctuary is, and that is the most holy place. <sup>4</sup> It will be the sacred portion of the land for the priests who work in the temple, those who come near to Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place very special for Yahweh, for the priests' houses, as well as for the temple. <sup>5</sup> An area thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifths kilometers wide will be for the descendants of Levi who work in the temple. That area will belong to them, and they can build towns there to live in.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> From this area you will measure a portion that is twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand in width; it will be the sanctuary, the most holy place. <sup>4</sup> It will be a holy place in the land for the priests who serve Yahweh, who come near Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place for their houses and a holy area for the holy place. <sup>5</sup> So it will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand in width, and it will be for towns for the Levites who serve in the house.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**this area**

the temple and the border surrounding it

**a portion**

“a portion of land”

**twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “25,000 cubits ... 10,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers ... about 5.4 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [holy place](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

- [serve, service](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Alongside this sacred area will be a section of land that is thirteen and one-half kilometers long and two and three-quarters kilometers wide. It will be for a city where anyone in Israel may live.

<sup>7</sup> The ruler of Israel will have the land that is on each side of the area formed by the temple district and the city. It will extend to the west from the western end of those areas, and to the east from the eastern end of those areas. The far eastern and far western borders of the king's land will measure the same as the parallel borders of those other tracts.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> You will designate an area for the city, five thousand cubits in width and twenty-five thousand in length, that will be next to the area reserved for the holy place; this city will belong to all the house of Israel. <sup>7</sup> The prince's land will be on both sides of the area reserved for the holy place and the city. It will be to their west and to their east. The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions, from the west to the east.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**five thousand cubits ... twenty-five thousand**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "5,000 cubits ... 25,000 cubits" or "about 2.7 kilometers ... about 13.5 kilometers" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**reserved for the holy place**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "that you gave for the holy place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions**

It is implied that Ezekiel is comparing the prince's land with the size of the land given to each of the tribes. AT: "The length will be the same as the length of one of the portions given to the tribes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the west to the east**

It is implied that these are the western and eastern borders of the land of Israel. "from the western border of Israel at the sea to the eastern border at the Jordan River"

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prince, princess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:8****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> This portion of land will belong to the ruler. So the rulers will no longer have any excuse for oppressing my people and stealing their land. They will assign the remaining parts of the land in Israel to each tribe, to be divided up among the people.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> This land will be property for the prince in Israel. My princes will no longer oppress my people; instead, they will give the land to the house of Israel, for their tribes.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**This land will be property for the prince in Israel**

“This portion of the land will be the property of the prince among the people of Israel”

**translationWords**

- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [tribe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 45:9-12****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> This is what Yahweh the Lord says: You rulers of Israel must stop acting violently and oppressing the people! You must do what is fair and right. Stop taking land from the people; stop forcing them off their land! <sup>10</sup> Also, you must use accurate scales and accurate containers for measuring things. <sup>11</sup> The baskets for measuring dry things and containers for measuring liquids must be the same size; each must hold twenty-two liters—called an ephah (for dry measure) and a bath (for liquid measure). <sup>12</sup> When you weigh things, you must use weights that everyone accepts as being correct. The shekel is to be divided into twenty gerahs, and a mina will be worth sixty shekels.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: It is enough for you, princes of Israel! Remove violence and strife; do justice and righteousness! Quit your evictions of my people!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration. <sup>10</sup> You must have accurate scales, accurate ephahs, and accurate baths! <sup>11</sup> The ephah and the bath will be the same amount, so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer; the ephah will be a tenth of a homer. Their measure will be corresponding to the homer. <sup>12</sup> The shekel will be twenty gerahs; sixty shekels will make a mina for you.

**translationNotes****this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**It is enough for you**

“You have done too many bad things” or “You have been acting badly for far too long”

**scales**

an instrument that was used to weigh things that people sold or bought

**so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer**

“so that ten baths will be the same amount as a homer”

**homer**

about 220 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**shekel**

about 11 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

**gerahs**

about 0.55 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

**mina**

about 660 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- people of God, my people
- declare, declaration

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> You must present to the ruler one measure of wheat or barley for every sixty measures that you harvest. <sup>14</sup> You must give him one measure of olive oil for every one hundred measures that you produce. <sup>15</sup> Also, Yahweh declares that you must take one sheep or goat from every two hundred in your flocks in the lush pastures of Israel. You must offer a sheep or a goat for various offerings: Burnt offerings and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh, offerings to atone for the people's sins. "This is the Lord Yahweh's command."

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> This is the contribution that you must present: A sixth of an ephah for every homer of wheat, and you will give a sixth of an ephah for every homer of barley. <sup>14</sup> The regulation offering of oil will be a tenth of a bath for every cor (which is ten baths), or for every homer, since a homer is also ten baths. <sup>15</sup> One sheep or goat from the flock for every two hundred animals from the watered regions of Israel will be used for any burnt offering or peace offering to make atonement for the people—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**for every homer of wheat**

It is implied that this is the amount of wheat that the people harvest. AT: "for every homer of wheat from the harvest" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The regulation offering of oil will be a tenth of a bath**

"You must offer one tenth of a bath of oil"

**the watered regions of Israel**

"the parts of Israel that get a good amount of water"

**will be used for**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "you will use for" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- wheat
- oil
- sheep, ram, ewe
- goat, kid
- flock, herd
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- peace offering
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> All the people in the land must join in bringing these offerings to the ruler of Israel. <sup>17</sup> The ruler must provide the animals to be completely burned on the altar, flour for the offerings made from grain, and wine for the sacred festivals that Yahweh has appointed for the people Israel—including the festivals to celebrate the new moons, and the offerings for the Sabbath days. He must provide the animals for the offerings for the people to become acceptable to God, offerings of flour made from grain, offerings to be completely burned, and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh, to atone for the sins of the people of Israel.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> All the people of the land will give this contribution to the prince in Israel. <sup>17</sup> It will be the prince’s responsibility to furnish animals for the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the drink offerings at the festivals and the new moon celebrations, and on the Sabbath days—all the fixed festivals of the house of Israel. He will provide for the sin offerings, the grain offerings, the burnt offerings, and the peace offerings for atonement on behalf of the house of Israel.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**the fixed festivals**

the festivals that happen at the same time every year or month or week

**the house of Israel**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). AT: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [prince, princess](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [festival](#)

- [new moon](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [peace offering](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> This is also what the Lord Yahweh declares: "On the first day of the first month of each year you must take one young bull that has no defects and sacrifice it to purify the temple. <sup>19</sup> The priest must take some of the blood of the offering to atone for the people's sins, and he must smear it on the temple doorposts, on the four corners of the upper ledge surrounding the altar, and on the gateposts of the inner courtyard. <sup>20</sup> You must do the same thing on the seventh day of the month for any people who sin accidentally or without knowing that they sinned. By doing that you will purify the temple.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: In the first month, on the first day of the month, you will take an unblemished bull from the herd and perform a sin offering for the sanctuary. <sup>19</sup> The priest will take some of the blood of the sin offering and place it on the doorposts of the house and on the four corners of the border of the altar, and on the doorposts of the gate to the inner court. <sup>20</sup> You will do this on the seventh of the month for each person's sin by accident or ignorance; in this way you will atone for the temple.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:11](#). AT: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**In the first month, on the first day of the month**

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**you will take**

The word "you" is singular and refers to whoever is the prince in Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**on the seventh of the month**

"on the seventh day of the first month" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**for each person's sin by accident or ignorance**

“for each person who had sinned without meaning to or because he did not know he was sinning”  
or “for each person who had sinned by accident or because he did not know what was right”

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- day
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- flock, herd
- sin offering
- sanctuary
- priest, priests, priesthood
- blood
- doorpost
- house
- altar, altars
- gate, gate bar
- courtyard, court
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- temple

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)



## Ezekiel 45:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> In the first month of each year, on the fourteenth day of the month, you must start to celebrate the Passover festival. The festival will last for seven days. During that time you must not eat any bread made with yeast. <sup>22</sup> On the first day, the ruler must provide a bull as an offering for himself and for the other people of the country.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month, there will be for you a festival, a seven-day festival. You will eat unleavened bread. <sup>22</sup> On that day, the prince will prepare for himself and for all the people of the land a bull as a sin offering.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

#### In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### for you

The word “you” is plural and refers to the prince and the rest of the people of the house of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### translationWords

- [day](#)
- [festival](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [sin offering](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> And every day during those seven days he must provide seven bulls and seven rams that have no defects, to be an offering to make it possible for Yahweh to accept the people. <sup>24</sup> He must also provide twenty-two liters of flour as an offering with each bull, and the same amount of flour with each ram, and also four liters of olive oil with each offering of flour.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> For the seven days of the festival, the prince will prepare a burnt offering for Yahweh: Seven bulls and seven unblemished rams each day for seven days, and a male goat each day as a sin offering. <sup>24</sup> Then the prince will perform a food offering of an ephah for each bull and an ephah for each ram with a hin of oil for each ephah.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**food offering**

This is also called a “grain offering.”

**Seven bulls and seven unblemished rams**

“Seven bulls and seven rams that are completely healthy”

**an ephah**

You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “twenty-two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**a hin**

You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “four liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**each ephah**

You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “each twenty-two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**translationWords**

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [oil](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 45:25****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> During the seven days of the festival celebrating when the Israelites lived in tents during the exodus from Egypt, which starts on the fifteenth day of the seventh month of each year, the ruler must provide the same things for offerings to make it possible for God to accept the people, for offerings to be completely burned, for offerings of things made from grain, and for offerings of olive oil.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month, at the festival, the prince will perform offerings on these seven days: Sin offerings, burnt offerings, food offerings, and offerings of oil.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month**

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of October. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**at the festival**

This is a different festival from the festival Ezekiel was describing before.

**translationWords**

- [day](#)
- [sin offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 46 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on many of the temple's rules. (See: [temple](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 46:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 46:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> This is also what Yahweh the Lord declares: 'The east gateway of the inner courtyard must be shut during the six days you work each week, but on the Sabbath days and on the days when there is a new moon, the gateway must be open. <sup>2</sup> The ruler must enter the courtyard through the entry room of the gateway, and stand alongside the gateposts of the inner courtyard. Then the priests must sacrifice the animal that will be completely burned on the altar, and also his offering to promise friendship with me. The ruler must worship me at the entrance of the inner gateway, and then he must leave. But the gate will not be shut until that evening.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: The gate of the inner courtyard, facing east, will be shut for the six days of work, but on the Sabbath it will be opened, and on the day of the new moon it will be opened. <sup>2</sup> The prince will enter the outer courtyard by the way of the gate and its portico from outside, and he will stand before the doorposts of the inner gate while the priests perform his burnt offering and peace offering. Then he will worship at the threshold of the inner gate and go out, but the gate will not be shut until evening.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**The Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:11](#). AT: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**The gate of the inner courtyard, facing east**

"the gate on the east side of the inner courtyard" or "the eastern gate of the inner courtyard"

**inner courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**inner gate**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:19](#).

**translationWords**

- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God
- gate, gate bar
- courtyard, court
- face
- Sabbath
- new moon
- prince, princess
- doorpost
- priest, priests, priesthood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- peace offering
- worship
- threshold

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> On the Sabbath days and on the days when there is a new moon, the people also must worship me at the entrance of this gate. <sup>4</sup> The offering that the ruler brings to be completely burned on the Sabbath day must be six male lambs and one ram, all with no defects. <sup>5</sup> The offering that he gives with the ram is twenty-two liters of flour, and the flour that he offers with the lambs should be as much as he pleases, along with one liter of olive oil for every twenty-two liters of flour .

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> The people of the land will also worship before Yahweh at the entrance to this gate on the Sabbaths and new moons. <sup>4</sup> The burnt offering that the prince offers to Yahweh on the Sabbath day will be six unblemished lambs and an unblemished ram. <sup>5</sup> The grain offering with the ram will be an ephah, and the grain offering with the lambs will be what he wishes to give, and a hin of oil with each ephah of grain.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**before Yahweh**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:24](#).

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [oil](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 46:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then each day that there is a new moon, he must offer a young bull, six lambs and a ram, all with no defects. <sup>7</sup> He must also provide twenty-two liters of flour with the bull, the same amount of flour with the ram, and as much flour as he wants with the lambs, along with one liter of olive oil with every twenty-two liters of flour. <sup>8</sup> When the ruler enters the temple area, he must enter through gate and its entry room, and he must go out by the same way.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> On the day of the new moon he must offer an unblemished bull from a herd, six lambs, and an unblemished ram. <sup>7</sup> He must make a grain offering of an ephah for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and what he wishes to give for the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah of grain. <sup>8</sup> When the prince enters by the way of the gate and its portico, he must leave by the same way.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**unblemished**

perfectly healthy and normal

**portico**

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

**translationWords**

- [new moon](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [grain](#)
- [prince, princess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> When the people come to worship me at the festivals that I, Yahweh, have commanded, those who enter the temple area through the north gateway must go out through the south gateway. And those who enter through the south gateway must go out through the north gateway. People must not go out through the gateway through which they entered; they must go out through the opposite gateway. <sup>10</sup> The ruler must go in when the other people go in, and go out when the people go out.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> But when the people of the land come before Yahweh at the appointed festivals, anyone entering through the north gate to worship must leave through the south gate; and anyone entering through the south gate must leave through the north gate. No one may turn back to the gate through which he entered, for he must go out straight ahead. <sup>10</sup> The prince must be in their midst; when they go in, he must go in, and when they leave, he must leave.

**translationNotes****before Yahweh**

“in front of Yahweh” or “in the presence of Yahweh.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 44:3](#).

**appointed festivals**

Translate as you translated “appointed feasts” in [Ezekiel 36:37](#).

**translationWords**

- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [worship](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> During the festivals that you hold for me, the king must present twenty-two liters of flour along with a bull or a ram, and as much flour as he wants to with the lambs, along with one liter of olive oil with every twenty-two liters of flour. <sup>12</sup> When the ruler gives an offering that is not required, either one to be completely burned or an offering to celebrate fellowship with me, the gate on the east side must be opened for him. He must then present his offerings like he does on the Sabbath days. Then he will go out, and after he goes out, they must shut the gateway.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> At the festivals, the grain offering must be an ephah of grain for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and whatever he wishes to give with the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah. <sup>12</sup> When the prince gives a freewill offering, either a burnt offering or a peace offering to Yahweh, the gate facing east will be opened for him. He will offer his burnt offering or his peace offering as he does it on the Sabbath day. Then he must go out, and after he has gone out the gate will be shut.

**translationNotes****the gate facing east will be opened for him**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Levites will open the gate facing east for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the gate facing east**

“the eastern gate” or “the gate on the east side of the courtyard”

**translationWords**

- [festival](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> In the morning of every day, someone must provide a one year old lamb with no defects to be an offering to me, one that the priests will completely burn. <sup>14</sup> Someone must also provide each morning an offering of flour. It must be three and one-half liters of flour mixed with one liter of olive oil. You must never stop presenting these offerings of flour and olive oil to me, Yahweh, each day. <sup>15</sup> The lamb and the offering of flour and olive oil must be presented to me every morning, to be completely burned on the altar.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> In addition, you will give an unblemished lamb one year old as a burnt offering to Yahweh daily; you will do this morning after morning. <sup>14</sup> You will give a grain offering with it morning after morning, a sixth of an ephah and a third of a hin of oil to moisten the flour of the grain offering for Yahweh, according to a permanent statute. <sup>15</sup> They will prepare the lamb, the grain offering, and the oil morning after morning, a permanent burnt offering.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

**to moisten**

“which will soak”

**translationWords**

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> This is what Yahweh the Lord declares: If the ruler gives some of his land to one of his sons, to belong to him permanently, it will then eventually belong to his son's descendants. <sup>17</sup> However, if he gives some of his land to one of his servants, the servant is allowed to keep that land until the year of the celebration of Jubilee. Then the ruler must take possession of it again. But if the ruler gives land to his sons, that land will belong to them permanently. <sup>18</sup> The ruler must not take any land that the people own and force them to live somewhere else. The land that he gives to his sons must be from his own property, not from anyone else's property, in order that none of my people will be separated from his own property.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: If the prince gives a gift to any of his sons, it is his inheritance. It will be the property of his sons, it is an inheritance. <sup>17</sup> But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, then it will be that servant's until the year of liberty, and then it will return to the prince. His inheritance will certainly be for his sons. <sup>18</sup> The prince will not take the people's inheritance away from their own property; he must provide for his sons from his own property so that my people will not be scattered, each man from his own property.”

**translationNotes****The Lord Yahweh says this**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:11](#). AT: “I, the Lord Yahweh, say this” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**year of liberty**

This is the year that a servant gains freedom. This is also called the “Year of Jubilee.”

**translationWords**

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Then, in the vision, the man brought me through the entrance alongside the gateway to the sacred rooms on the north side, the rooms that belonged to the priests, and he showed me a place at the western end. <sup>20</sup> He said to me, “This is the place where the priests will cook the meat of the offerings that people make because they failed to do what they promised Yahweh that they would do, and offerings to cause people to become acceptable to God, and where they will bake bread made with the flour brought as offerings. They will cook those things in their rooms in order to avoid bringing them into the outer courtyard to cook them there, lest someone might be consecrated by touching them.”

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Next the man brought me through the entrance at the gate to the holy rooms for the priests, which faced north and behold! There was a place toward the west. <sup>20</sup> He said to me, “This is the place where the priests must boil the guilt offering and the sin offering and where they must bake the grain offering. They must not bring the offerings into the outer courtyard, for then the people would be consecrated.”

**translationNotes****which faced north**

“which had their main entrances to the north”

**behold!**

Ezekiel saw something interesting.

**outer courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

**translationWords**

- gate, gate bar
- holy, holiness
- priest, priests, priesthood
- face
- guilt offering
- sin offering



- [grain offering](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 46:21-24****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Then the man brought me to the outer courtyard and led me around to its four corners. In each corner I saw an enclosed area; <sup>22</sup> each was twenty-two meters long and sixteen meters wide. <sup>23</sup> Around the inside of each of these enclosed areas was a stone ledge, with places to make fires all around under the ledge. <sup>24</sup> The man said to me, “These are the kitchens where the descendants of Levi who work in the temple will cook the sacrifices that the people bring.”

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Then he brought me to the outer courtyard and he led me past the four corners of that courtyard, and I saw that in at every corner of the courtyard there was a another court. <sup>22</sup> In the four corners of the outer courtyard there were four small courtyards, forty cubits in length and thirty in width. There the same dimensions for all four of the courtyards. <sup>[1]</sup> is unclear. It is translated in this way by some ancient and some modern versions. However, other modern versions translate it differently. <sup>23</sup> There was a row made of stone all around the four of them, and cooking hearths were under the stone row. <sup>24</sup> The man said to me, “These are the places where the temple servants will boil the people’s sacrifices.”

---

46:22 <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew word translated here as *small*

**translationNotes****outer courtyard**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

**forty cubits ... thirty**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “40 cubits ... 30 cubits” or “about 21.6 meters ... about 16.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**cooking hearths**

places where people can build fire and cook food

**translationWords**

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [temple](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 translationQuestions](#)

## **Ezekiel 47 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There was a river flowing from the temple. The land was to be divided among the tribes. The landscape of Jerusalem will have changed in a significant way. (See: [temple](#))

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 47:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 47:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then in the vision, the man brought me back to the entrance of the temple. There I saw water coming out from under the entrance and flowing toward the east. The water was flowing down the south side of the entrance, to the right of the altar. <sup>2</sup> Then he brought me out through the north gate and led me around to the eastern gate at its exterior side.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then the man took me back to the entrance to the temple, and there was water flowing out from under the temple threshold of the house toward the east—for the front of the temple faced east—and the water was flowing down the south side of the temple, to the right of the altar. <sup>2</sup> So he brought me out through the northern gate and led around to the gate facing east, and there the water was flowing from this gate on its south side.

**translationNotes****for the front of the temple faced east**

“for the front of the temple was its east side”

**to the right of the altar**

This is the right side of the altar when a person looks at it while they are facing east, so it is on the south side of the altar. AT: “on the south side of the altar”

**the gate facing east**

“the eastern gate” or “the eastern gate of the outer wall”

**translationWords**

- temple
- threshold
- house
- face
- altar, altars
- gate, gate bar

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 47:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> As the man continued walking toward the east, I saw that he had a measuring line in his hand. He measured off 540 meters and then led me through water that covered my ankles. <sup>4</sup> Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my knees. Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was up to my waist. <sup>5</sup> Then he measured off another 540 meters and led me through water that was now a river that I could not cross, because the water was so deep; to continue farther would have required me to swim.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> As the man was going toward the east, there was a measuring line in his hand; he measured off one thousand cubits and brought me through the water to ankle-deep water. <sup>4</sup> Then he measured one thousand cubits again and brought me through the water to knee-deep water; and he measured another thousand cubits and brought me to hip-deep water. <sup>5</sup> Next he measured off another thousand cubits, but it was a river that I could not cross through because the water had risen and was deep enough to swim in—it was a river that could not be crossed.

**translationNotes****measuring line**

a string or a rope that people use to measure longer distances

**one thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. AT: “1,000 cubits” or “about 540 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**a river that could not be crossed**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “a river that no one could cross on foot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 47:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then he asked me, “Son of man, think about this carefully.” Then he led me onto the bank of the river

<sup>7</sup> and back along it toward in the direction from where we had come. There I saw many trees growing on each side of the river. <sup>8</sup> He said to me, “This water flows east and goes down into the Dead Sea. And when the water enters the Dead Sea, it stays fresh and restores the water of the Sea and makes it fresh again.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> The man said to me, “Son of man, do you see this?” and he brought me out and had me walk back along the riverbank. <sup>7</sup> As I walked back, there the riverbank had many trees on this side and also the other side. <sup>8</sup> The man said to me, “This water is going out to the eastern territory and down to the Arabah; this water flows into the Salt Sea and will make it fresh.

**translationNotes****Son of man**

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). AT: “Mortal person” or “Human”

**do you see this?**

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:15](#). AT: “think about this.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Arabah](#)
- [Salt Sea, Dead Sea](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 47:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Swarms of fish will live in the water wherever the river flows. There will be many fish in the Dead Sea, because the water that flows into it will cause the salt water to become fresh water. Wherever the river flows, everything alongside it will flourish. <sup>10</sup> Fishermen will stand along the riverbank to catch fish. From En Gedi on the western side to En Eglaim there will be places to spread fishing nets. There will be many kinds of fish, as there are in the Great Sea.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> It will be that every living creature that swarms will live where the water goes; there will be many fish, for these waters flow there. It will make the salt water fresh. Everything will live wherever the river goes. <sup>10</sup> Then it will happen that fishermen of En Gedi will stand by the water, and there will be a place to dry out the fishing nets by En Eglaim. There will be many kinds of fish in the Salt Sea, like the fish in the Great Sea for their abundance.

**translationNotes****Then it will happen**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:7](#).

**En Gedi**

This is the name of a very large spring on the western side of the Salt Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a place to dry out the fishing nets**

“a place for people to dry out their fishing nets”

**En Eglaim**

This is the name of a large spring on the eastern side of the Salt Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [fishermen, fishers](#)
- [kind, kinds](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 47:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> But the swamps and marshes along the shore will not become fresh; they will be left to make salt.

<sup>12</sup> Many kinds of fruit trees will grow on both sides of the river. Their leaves will not wither, and they will always have fruit. They will bear new fruit every month, because the water that comes from the temple flows continually to the trees. Their fruit will be good to eat and their leaves will be good for healing.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> But the Salt Sea’s swamps and marshes will not be made fresh; they will be for providing salt.

<sup>12</sup> Beside this river on its banks, on both sides, all kinds of trees will grow that bear food. Their leaves will not wither and their fruit will never fail to grow. Each month the trees will bear fruit, because the water from the sanctuary flows to them. Their fruit will be for food, and their leaves will be for healing.

**translationNotes****swamps**

places with shallow water and trees growing in deep mud

**marshes**

places with shallow water and grasses growing in deep mud

**translationWords**

- [Salt Sea, Dead Sea](#)
- [kind, kinds](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [sanctuary](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 47:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> In the vision, Yahweh also said this to me: "Here is a list of the twelve tribes of Israel and the territory that each tribe is to receive. The descendants of Joseph will receive two portions. <sup>14</sup> Divide the land equally among all of the tribes. I lifted up my hand to swear to your ancestors that I would give them this land to own permanently.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: This will be the way that you divide the land up for the twelve tribes of Israel: Joseph will have two portions. <sup>14</sup> You are to divide equally what I lifted up my hand and swore to give to your fathers. This land will come to you as an inheritance.

### translationNotes

#### Joseph will have two portions

The person is a metonym for his descendants. AT: "the descendants of Joseph will receive two areas of land" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### I lifted up my hand and swore

In those days a person would raise his right hand to show that he realized that God would punish him if he did not do what he swore to do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### translationWords

- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 47:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> These will be the boundaries of the land:

On the north side, it will extend from the Mediterranean Sea east along the road to Hethlon, and then on to Zedad,

<sup>16</sup> to Berothah, and then on to Sibraim, which is on the border between Damascus and Hamath. The boundary will run as far as Hazer Hattikon, which is on the border of the region of Hauran.

<sup>17</sup> So the boundary will extend from the Mediterranean Sea to Hazar Enan on the border between Hamath to the north and Damascus to the south. That will be the northern boundary.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> This will be the boundary of the land on the north side from the Great Sea by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad. <sup>[1]</sup>, but some modern versions imitate 48:1 and add . <sup>16</sup> Then the boundary will go to Berothah, to Sibraim, which is between Damascus and Hamath, and then to Hazer Hattikon, which is beside the boundary of Hauran. <sup>17</sup> So the boundary will go from the sea to Hazar Enan on the border with Damascus and Hamath to the north. This will be the north side.

---

47:15 <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew text reads *by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad Lebo Hamath*

**translationNotes****boundary**

the end of an area of land

**Hethlon ... Zedad ... Berothah ... Sibraim ... Hazer Hattikon ... Hauran ... Hazar Enan**

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**border**

where two areas of land meet

**translationWords**

- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 47:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> On the east side, the boundary will extend between Hauran and Damascus, south along the Jordan River between the region of Gilead and the territory of Israel, along the Dead Sea as far as Tamar. That will be the eastern boundary.

<sup>19</sup> On the south side, the boundary will extend from Tamar to the springs near Meribah Kadesh. Then it will extend west along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. That will be the southern boundary.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> On the east side, between Hauran and Damascus and between Gilead and the land of Israel will be the Jordan River. You must measure from the border to the eastern sea; all of this will be the eastern border. <sup>[1]</sup> . However, some ancient and modern versions read . <sup>19</sup> Then the south side, the boundary goes south of Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea, and the southern side toward the south. <sup>20</sup> Then the western boundary will be the Great Sea to where it goes opposite Lebo Hamath. This will be the western side.

---

47:18 <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew text reads *You must measure from the border to the eastern sea to the eastern sea as far as Tamar*

**translationNotes****Hauran ... Tamar ... Meribah Kadesh ... Hamath**

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Then the south side**

You may need to add the omitted word. AT: “Then measure the south side” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the brook of Egypt**

a very large ravine in the northeast part of the Sinai

**translationWords**

- [Gilead](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 47:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> You must distribute this land among yourselves, among the tribes of Israel. <sup>22</sup> You must assign the land as a permanent possession for yourselves and also for any foreigners who are living and raising their children among you. You must consider them to be like native born Israelites, and they must be assigned land among the tribes of Israel. <sup>23</sup> Wherever foreigners are living, you must give them some land to belong to them permanently.’ That is what the Lord Yahweh declares.”

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> In this way you will divide this land for yourselves, for the tribes of Israel. <sup>22</sup> So you will distribute the inheritances for yourselves and for the foreigners in your midst, those who have given birth to children in your midst and who are, with you, like the native born people of Israel. You will cast lots for inheritances among the tribes of Israel. <sup>23</sup> Then it will happen that the foreigner will be with the tribe among whom he is living. You must give him an inheritance—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

**translationNotes****Then it will happen that**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:7](#).

**this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 47 translationQuestions

## **Ezekiel 48 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There is more dividing of the land between the tribes in this chapter as well.

### **Links:**

- [Ezekiel 48:01 Notes](#)

**Ezekiel 48:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Here is a list of the tribes of Israel and the territory that each tribe is to receive. The northern boundary of Israel will start at the Mediterranean Sea and go east to the city of Hethlon, then to Lebo Hamath, and farther on to Hazar Enan, which is south of Damascus, and it will continue to Hamath. Each tribe will receive land that will extend from the eastern boundary of Israel west to the Great Sea.

The tribe of Dan will receive land alongside the northern border of Israel.

<sup>2</sup> South of their area will be the territory for the tribe of Asher.

<sup>3</sup> South of Asher's land will be territory for the tribe of Naphtali.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> These are the names of the tribes. The tribe of Dan will receive one portion of land; its boundary will run along the northern boundary of Israel by way of Hethlon and Lebo Hamath. Its boundary will go on to Hazar Enan and along the border with Damascus to the north and then on to Hamath. Dan's boundary will go from east all the way to the Great Sea. <sup>2</sup> Adjoining the border of Dan, from the east side to the west, Asher will have one portion. <sup>3</sup> Adjoining the border of Asher from the east side to the west, Naphtali will have one portion.

**translationNotes****one portion of land**

“one piece of the land that you will distribute”

**boundary will run ... boundary will go**

“boundary will be ... boundary will be”

**Hethlon ... Lebo Hamath ... Hazar Enan**

names of towns. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#).

**translationWords**

- [tribe](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Damascus](#)

- [Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:4-7****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> South of Naphtali's land will be territory for the tribe of Manasseh.

<sup>5</sup> South of Manasseh's land will be territory for the tribe of Ephraim.

<sup>6</sup> South of Ephraim's land will be territory for the tribe of Reuben.

<sup>7</sup> South of their land will be territory for the tribe of Judah.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Adjoining the border of Naphtali from the east side to the west, Manasseh will have one portion.

<sup>5</sup> Adjoining the border of Manasseh from the east side to the west, Ephraim will have one portion.

<sup>6</sup> Adjoining the border of Ephraim from the east side to the west, Reuben will have one portion. <sup>7</sup>

Adjoining the border of Reuben from the east side to the west, Judah will have one portion.

**translationNotes****one portion**

Translate as you translated "one portion of land" in [Ezekiel 48:1](#).

**from the east side to the west**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 48:3](#).

**translationWords**

- [Naphtali](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Judah](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> South of Judah's land will be an area that the entire nation will give to me; you will set it apart for special use. The temple will be in the center of this area. It will be as long as any of the portions of land assigned a tribe of Israel.

<sup>9</sup> This special area will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and five and two-fifths kilometers wide. This is what you will give to Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> The offering of land that you will make will be along the border with Judah and extend from the east side to the west side; it will be twenty-five thousand cubits in width. Its length will correspond to one tribe's portion from the east side to the west side, and the temple will be in the middle of it.

<sup>9</sup> This land that you will offer up to Yahweh will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

**twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "25,000 cubits ... 10,000 cubits" or "13.5 kilometers ... 5.4 kilometers" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Within this special area, these will what you will assign to the priests: you will assign them an area of land measuring thirteen and one-half kilometers on the northern and southern side; and five and two-fifths kilometers on the western and eastern sides. The temple of Yahweh will be in the middle of this special area. <sup>11</sup> The temple area will be for the priests, those set apart for my honor, who are descendants of Zadok. They are ones who served me faithfully and did not turn away from Yahweh as the descendants of Levi did. <sup>12</sup> When the land is distributed, you will offer that special area to me, for it to be the priests' special portion; it is land that you will treat as very special to me. Next to the priests' territory will be where the other descendants of Levi will live.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> These will be the assignments of this holy portion of land: The priests will have land assigned to them measuring twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the north side; ten thousand cubits in width on the west side; ten thousand cubits in width on the east side; and twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the south side, with the holy place of Yahweh in the middle of it. <sup>11</sup> This will be for the consecration of the priests of the line of Zadok, who have served me faithfully and who did not go astray when the people of Israel went astray, as the Levites did. <sup>12</sup> The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land, extending to the border of the Levites.

**translationNotes****The priests will have land assigned to them**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "The leaders of the Israelites will assign land to the priests" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "25,000 cubits ... 10,000 cubits" or "13.5 kilometers ... 5.4 kilometers" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land**

"This smaller portion within the holy portion of the land will belong to these priests, a portion that is more holy than the rest of the holy portion of the land"

**translationWords**

- [holy, holiness](#)



- priest, priests, priesthood
- holy place
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- Zadok
- serve, service
- faithful, faithfulness
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- Israel, Israelites
- Levite, Levi

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 48:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> The land that you will assign to the descendants of Levi will be the same size as the land that the priests will receive. So together, these two portions of land will be thirteen and one-half kilometers long and about eleven kilometers wide. <sup>14</sup> None of this special land, this best land, may ever be sold or traded or used by other people, because it belongs to Yahweh. It is set apart for him.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> The Levites' land along the border with the priests' land will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width. The entire length of the two tracts of land will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and twenty thousand cubits in width. <sup>14</sup> They must not sell it or exchange it; none of this firstfruits of the land of Israel must ever be separated from these tracts, for it all is holy to Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "25,000 cubits ... 10,000 cubits" or "13.5 kilometers ... 5.4 kilometers" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### this firstfruits

"this land which is the firstfruits." Here "firstfruits" probably means the best things among all the offerings set aside to give to God. This land is spoken of in that way, as land set aside for Yahweh's use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [firstfruits](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Another strip of land thirteen and one-half kilometers long and about two and three-quarters kilometers wide will be allotted for other people living in the special area to use. There they may build homes and have pasturelands, and there will be a city in the middle of this area. <sup>16</sup> The city will be square, two and two-fifths kilometers long on each side.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> The remaining land, five thousand cubits in width and twenty-five thousand cubits in length, will be for the collective use of the city, the houses, and the pastureland; the city will be in its midst. <sup>16</sup> These will be the city's measurements: The north side will be 4,500 cubits in length; the south side will be 4,500 cubits in length; the east side will be 4,500 cubits in length; and the west side will be 4,500 cubits in length.

**translationNotes****five thousand cubits ... twenty-five thousand cubits**

“5000 cubits ... 25,000 cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “almost 2.3 kilometers ... about 13.5 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

**will be for the collective use of the city**

“will be an area that all the people of the city will share and use”

**4,500 cubits**

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “about 2.4 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

**the houses, and the pastureland**

“as a place for houses and for an open space”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 48:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> There will be an open area around the city, within the special area, that will be about 135 meters deep in each direction. <sup>18</sup> Outside the city there will be a farming area that will extend five and two-fifths kilometers on the east side and five and two-fifths kilometers on the west side. Men who work there will produce food for the people who work in the city.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> There will be pasture for the city toward the north, 250 cubits deep; to the south, 250 cubits deep; to the east, 250 cubits deep, and to the west, 250 cubits deep. <sup>18</sup> The remaining area of the holy offering will stretch for ten thousand cubits to the east and ten thousand cubits to the west. It will stretch along the border of the holy offering, and its produce will be food for those working in the city.

### translationNotes

#### 250 cubits ... ten thousand cubits

“two hundred and fifty cubits ... 10,000 cubits.” A cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “about 135 meters ... about 5.4 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

#### its produce

“the food that grows there”

### translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Those who come from the various tribes to work in the city may also work in this farmland. <sup>20</sup> This entire special area, including the land given for Yahweh's use and the city, will be a square that is thirteen and one-half kilometers long on each side.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> The people who work in the city, people belong to all the tribes of Israel, will farm that land. <sup>20</sup> All the land offering will measure twenty-five thousand cubits by twenty-five thousand cubits. In this way you will make the holy offering of land, together with the land for the city.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

**twenty-five thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "25,000 cubits" or "about 13.5 kilometers" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**In this way you will make the holy offering of land, together with the land for the city.**

"You will offer the holy offering and also the property of the city"

**you**

This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the holy offering**

the land that the people of Israel gave to Yahweh for the Levites, the priests, and the temple

**translationWords**

- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> The tracts of land to the east and to the west of Yahweh's area and the city will belong to the ruler. One area will extend east to the eastern boundary of Israel, and the other will extend west to the Great Sea. Yahweh's area, which contains the temple, will be in the middle. <sup>22</sup> The area that belongs to the ruler will be between the tribe of Judah to the north and the tribe of Benjamin to the south.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> The rest of the land on either side of the holy offering and the city area will be for the prince. The prince's tract of land to the east will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits from boundary of the holy offering to the eastern border—and his tract to the west will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits to the western border. In the middle will be the holy offering, and the holy place of the temple will be in its midst. <sup>22</sup> The land extending from the property of the Levites and the area of the city in its midst will be for for the prince; it will be between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin—this land will be for the prince.

**translationNotes****the holy offering**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 48:18](#).

**twenty-five thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: "25,000 cubits" or "about 13.5 kilometers" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [prince, princess](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)



**Ezekiel 48:23-26****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> South of Yahweh's area, each of the other tribes will receive one portion of land that extends from the eastern boundary of Israel west to the Great Sea.

Just south of Yahweh's area will be territory for the tribe of Benjamin.

<sup>24</sup> South of Benjamin's land will be the land for the tribe of Simeon.

<sup>25</sup> South of Simeon's land will be the land for the tribe of Issachar.

<sup>26</sup> South of Issachar's land will be the land for the tribe of Zebulun.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> As for the remaining tribes, their portions will also run from the eastern side to the west side. Benjamin will receive one portion. <sup>24</sup> Adjoining the border of Benjamin from the east side to the west, Simeon will have one portion. <sup>25</sup> Adjoining the border of Simeon from the east side to the west, Issachar will have one portion. <sup>26</sup> Adjoining the border of Issachar from the east side to the west, Zebulun will have one portion.

**translationNotes****one portion**

Translate as you translated "one portion of land" in [Ezekiel 48:1](#).

**translationWords**

- [tribe](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:27-29****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> South of Zebulun's land will be the land for the tribe of Gad.

<sup>28</sup> The southern boundary of Gad's land will extend south from En Gedi to the springs at Meribah Kadesh, and then to the west along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea.

<sup>29</sup> This is a description of the land that you must assign to the tribes of Israel, for it to belong to them permanently.' That is what I, Yahweh the Lord, declare.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> To the south of Zebulun's boundary, running from the east side to the west side, will be the land of Gad—one portion. <sup>28</sup> The southern boundary of Gad will extend from Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea. <sup>29</sup> This is the land for which you will cast lots; it will be the inheritance of the tribes of Israel. These will be their portions. This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

**Tamar ... Meribah Kadesh**

names of towns. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the brook of Egypt**

a very large ravine in the northeast part of the Sinai. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**you**

This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**cast lots**

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 45:1](#).

**This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). AT: "This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [Zebulun](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

## Ezekiel 48:30-32

### UDB:

<sup>30</sup> Here are the city gates: On the north side, which is two and two-fifths kilometers long, <sup>31</sup> there will be three gates. Each gate will have the name of one of the tribes of Israel. The first one will be named for Reuben, the next for Judah, the next for Levi.

<sup>32</sup> On the east side, also two and two-fifths kilometers long, will be gates named for Joseph, Benjamin, and Dan.

### ULB:

<sup>30</sup> These will be the exits from the city: On the north side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, <sup>31</sup> will be three gates, named for tribes of Israel: one gate for Reuben, one gate for Judah, and one gate for Levi. <sup>32</sup> On the east side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Joseph, one gate for Benjamin, and one gate for Dan.

### translationNotes

#### 4,500 cubits

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). AT: “about 2.4 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### translationWords

- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Dan](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

**Ezekiel 48:33-35****UDB:**

<sup>33</sup> On the south side, also two-fifths of a kilometer long, will be gates named for Simeon, Issachar, and Zebulun.

<sup>34</sup> On the west side, also two-fifths of a kilometer long, will be gates named for Gad, Asher, and Naphtali.

<sup>35</sup> The distance around the city would be nine and three-quarters kilometers.

From that time on, the name of the city will be “Yahweh is there.”

**ULB:**

<sup>33</sup> On the south side, which is 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Simeon, one gate for Issachar, and one gate for Zebulun. <sup>34</sup> On the west side, which will measure 4,500 cubits, will be three gates: one gate for Gad, one gate for Asher, and one gate for Naphtali. <sup>35</sup> The distance around the city will be eighteen thousand cubits; from that day on, the city’s name will be “Yahweh Is There.”

**translationNotes****4,500 cubits**

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” This is about 2.4 kilometers. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

**translationWords**

- [Simeon](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48 translationQuestions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Ezekiel 1

#### Among whom was Ezekiel living when he had visions of God?

Ezekiel was living among the captives in the land of the Chaldeans when he had visions of God. [1:1]

#### Among whom was Ezekiel living when he had visions of God?

Ezekiel was living among the captives in the land of the Chaldeans when he had visions of God. [1:2]

#### Among whom was Ezekiel living when he had visions of God?

Ezekiel was living among the captives in the land of the Chaldeans when he had visions of God. [1:3]

#### What was in the middle of the great cloud Ezekiel saw coming from the north?

In the middle of the cloud was the likeness of four living creatures, each with four faces and four wings. [1:4]

#### What was in the middle of the great cloud Ezekiel saw coming from the north?

In the middle of the cloud was the likeness of four living creatures, each with four faces and four wings. [1:5]

#### What was in the middle of the great cloud Ezekiel saw coming from the north?

In the middle of the cloud was the likeness of four living creatures, each with four faces and four wings. [1:6]

#### How did the creatures move?

The creatures did not turn as they went but each one went straight forward. [1:9]

#### What appearances did the living creatures have on their faces?

Their faces had the appearance of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle. [1:10]

**What was directing the movement of the four living creatures?**

The Spirit was directing the movement of the four living creatures. [1:12]

**As the four living creatures moved back and forth, what did they look like?**

As they moved, the four living creatures looked like lightning. [1:14]

**What were the four wheels beside the four living creatures able to do?**

The four wheels were able to go in any direction without turning. [1:17]

**Why did the wheels go wherever the living creatures went?**

The wheels followed the living creatures because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. [1:20]

**Why did the wheels go wherever the living creatures went?**

The wheels followed the living creatures because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. [1:21]

**What was over the heads of the living creatures?**

An expansive dome was over the heads of the living creatures. [1:22]

**What did the living creatures do with their wings?**

Each one of the creature's wings stretched out straight and touched another creature's wings and each of the living creatures also had a pair of wings to cover his own body. [1:23]

**What does Ezekiel say the creatures' wings sounded like?**

The creatures' wings sounded like rushing water, like the voice of the Almighty, like a rainstorm, and like an army. [1:24]

**What was above the dome, which was over the creatures' heads?**

Above the dome was a throne, and on the throne was the appearance of one who looked like a man. [1:26]

**As what did the bright figure appear to Ezekiel?**

The bright figure appeared as the likeness of the glory of Yahweh. [1:28]

**What did Ezekiel do when he saw the bright figure?**

When he saw the bright figure, Ezekiel fell on his face. [1:28]



## **Ezekiel 2**

**What did the Spirit do to Ezekiel as the Spirit spoke to Ezekiel?**

The Spirit stood Ezekiel on his feet as he spoke to Ezekiel. [2:2]

**To whom did the Spirit send Ezekiel?**

The Spirit sent Ezekiel to the people of Israel. [2:3]

**According to the Spirit, what kind of people were the descendants of Israel?**

The descendants were a stubborn, hardhearted and rebellious people. [2:4]

**What was Ezekiel to say to the people of Israel?**

Ezekiel was to say, "This is what the Lord Yahweh says," to the people of Israel. [2:4]

**According to the Spirit, what kind of people were the descendants of Israel?**

The descendants were a stubborn, hardhearted and rebellious people. [2:5]

**What would the people of Israel know because of Ezekiel's speaking to them?**

The people of Israel would know that a prophet had been among them. [2:5]

**What did the Spirit tell Ezekiel not to do as he spoke to the people of Israel?**

The Spirit told Ezekiel not to be afraid of the people of Israel as he spoke to them. [2:6]

**How was Ezekiel supposed to be different than the people of Israel?**

Ezekiel was not to be rebellious like the people of Israel. [2:8]

**What was spread out before Ezekiel?**

A written scroll was spread out before Ezekiel. [2:9]

**What was written on the scroll?**

On the scroll were written lamentations, mourning, and woe. [2:10]

### **Ezekiel 3**

**What did the Spirit give to Ezekiel and what did Ezekiel do with it?**

The Spirit gave Ezekiel a scroll and Ezekiel ate it. [3:1]

**What did the Spirit give to Ezekiel and what did Ezekiel do with it?**

The Spirit gave Ezekiel a scroll and Ezekiel ate it. [3:2]

**What did the Spirit give to Ezekiel and what did Ezekiel do with it?**

The Spirit gave Ezekiel a scroll and Ezekiel ate it. [3:3]

**What did the Spirit tell Ezekiel to go and do?**

The Spirit told Ezekiel to go and speak the Spirit's words to the house of Israel. [3:4]

**According to the Spirit, if Ezekiel had been sent to a foreign people, how would they have responded to Ezekiel's words?**

If Ezekiel had been sent to a foreign people, they would have listened to Ezekiel's words. [3:6]

**According to the Spirit, how would the house of Israel respond to Ezekiel's words?**

The house of Israel would not be willing to listen to Ezekiel's words. [3:7]

**How has the Spirit made Ezekiel so that he will not be fearful or discouraged?**

The Spirit has made Ezekiel stubborn, and his brow like a diamond. [3:8]

**How has the Spirit made Ezekiel so that he will not be fearful or discouraged?**

The Spirit has made Ezekiel stubborn, and his brow like a diamond. [3:9]

**What did the great sound behind Ezekiel say to him?**

The great sound said, "Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!" [3:12]

**What did Ezekiel then do for seven days, and what was his condition?**

Ezekiel stayed with the captives for seven days, overwhelmed in amazement. [3:15]

**What did Yahweh say he had made Ezekiel for the house of Israel?**

Yahweh said he had made Ezekiel a watchman for the house of Israel. [3:17]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did warn the wicked about their evil deeds?**

If Ezekiel did warn the wicked, then Ezekiel would rescue himself. [3:19]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did not warn the wicked about their evil deeds?**

If Ezekiel did not warn the wicked, Yahweh would require their blood from Ezekiel's hand. [3:20]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did not warn the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly?**

If Ezekiel did not warn the righteous man who turns, Yahweh would require his blood from Ezekiel's hand. [3:20]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly?**

Yahweh said the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly would die in his sin. [3:20]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to Ezekiel if he did warn the righteous man who turns and acts unjustly?**

If Ezekiel did warn the righteous man who turns, then Ezekiel would rescue himself. [3:21]

**What did Ezekiel do when he saw the glory of Yahweh in the plain?**

When Ezekiel saw the glory of Yahweh, he fell on his face. [3:23]

**What did the Spirit tell Ezekiel to go and do?**

The Spirit told Ezekiel to go and shut himself up in his house. [3:24]

**What did the Spirit say Ezekiel would not be able to do by his own words?**

The Spirit said Ezekiel would not be able to rebuke the house of Israel by his own words. [3:26]

**What did the Spirit say Ezekiel would be able to do when the Spirit spoke to him?**

The Spirit said Ezekiel would be able to open his mouth and say, “Thus says the Lord Yahweh,” when the Spirit spoke to him. [3:27]

## **Ezekiel 4**

### **What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with a brick?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to carve the city of Jerusalem on a brick and then lay siege against it. [4:1]

### **What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with a brick?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to carve the city of Jerusalem on a brick and then lay siege against it. [4:2]

### **What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with a brick?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to carve the city of Jerusalem on a brick and then lay siege against it. [4:3]

### **Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do this with a brick?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to do this as a sign to the house of Israel. [4:3]

### **Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to lie on his left side?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to lie on his left side to carry the sin of the house of Israel. [4:4]

### **Why was Ezekiel to lie on his left side for 390 days?**

Ezekiel was to lie on his left side for 390 days to represent 390 years of punishment for the house of Israel. [4:5]

### **Why was Ezekiel to lie on his right side?**

Ezekiel was to lie on his right side to carry the sin of the house of Israel. [4:6]

### **Why was Ezekiel to lie on his right side for 40 days?**

Ezekiel was to lie on his right side for 40 days to represent 40 years of punishment for the house of Israel. [4:6]

### **What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to eat and drink while he lay on his side?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to eat barley cakes and to drink water. [4:9]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to eat and drink while he lay on his side?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to eat barley cakes and to drink water. [4:11]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to eat and drink while he lay on his side?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to eat barley cakes and to drink water. [4:12]

**Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to bake using human excrement within the sight of the house of Israel?**

Ezekiel was to bake using human excrement as a sign that the food the people of Israel would eat among the nations would be unclean. [4:12]

**Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to bake using human excrement within the sight of the house of Israel?**

Ezekiel was to bake using human excrement as a sign that the food the people of Israel would eat among the nations would be unclean. [4:13]

**Why did Yahweh then allow Ezekiel to use cow dung instead of man's dung to bake?**

Yahweh allowed cow dung because Ezekiel had never eaten anything unclean in his life. [4:14]

**Why did Yahweh then allow Ezekiel to use cow dung instead of man's dung to bake?**

Yahweh allowed cow dung because Ezekiel had never eaten anything unclean in his life. [4:15]

**What did Yahweh say would happen in Jerusalem regarding food and drink?**

Yahweh said that bread and water would be rationed. [4:16]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the people of Jerusalem during this time?**

Yahweh said the people of Jerusalem would be dismayed and would melt away. [4:17]

**Ezekiel 5****What was Ezekiel do to with each third of his hair?**

Ezekiel was to burn a third in the city, strike a third with the sword around the city, and scatter a third to the wind. [5:2]

**What did Yahweh say he would do after Ezekiel was finished?**

Yahweh said he would draw out a sword to chase after the people. [5:2]

**According to Yahweh, where is Jerusalem?**

Jerusalem is in the midst of the nations. [5:5]

**Why does Yahweh say he has surrounded Jerusalem with other lands?**

Jerusalem rejected Yahweh's decrees and did not walk in his statutes (laws). [5:6]

**What does Yahweh say he will do because of the nation of Israel's behavior?**

Yahweh says he will act against the nation of Israel and execute judgments within its midst. [5:8]

**What horrible things will the people of Israel do because of Yahweh's judgment on them?**

Fathers will eat their children, and sons will eat their fathers. [5:10]

**Why does Yahweh say he is not going to spare the people of Israel?**

Yahweh says will not spare them because they defiled Yahweh's sanctuary. [5:11]

**What will Yahweh do with each third of the people?**

A third will die by plague, a third will fall by the sword, and a third will be scattered. [5:12]

**What did Yahweh say he would do after the thirds of the people were judged?**

Yahweh said he would draw out a sword to chase after the people. [5:12]

**What does Yahweh say he will do with his wrath after this judgment?**

Yahweh says his wrath will be completed after this judgment. [5:13]

**What will other people say about Jerusalem after Yahweh's judgments?**

Other people will condemn and mock Jerusalem after Yahweh's judgments. [5:15]



**Ezekiel 6****What did Ezekiel prophesy against the high places of Israel?**

Ezekiel prophesied that the Lord Yahweh would destroy the high places of Israel with a sword. [6:2]

**What did Ezekiel prophesy against the high places of Israel?**

Ezekiel prophesied that the Lord Yahweh would destroy the high places of Israel with a sword. [6:3]

**What will happen before the idol altars of Israel?**

The Lord Yahweh will lay the dead bodies of the people of Israel before the altars. [6:5]

**What will happen to the cities of Israel?**

The cities of Israel will be laid waste. [6:6]

**As a result of all the destruction, what will the people of Israel know?**

The people of Israel will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [6:7]

**What will the remnant who escapes do after they are scattered?**

The remnant will remember Yahweh and will show loathing on their face for their wickedness. [6:8]

**What will the remnant who escapes do after they are scattered?**

The remnant will remember Yahweh and will show loathing on their face for their wickedness. [6:9]

**Why is Yahweh bringing sword, famine, and plague to the house of Israel?**

Because of all the evil wickedness of the house of Israel, Yahweh is bringing sword, famine, and plague. [6:11]

**What were the people of Israel doing on the mountain peaks and under the trees?**

The people of Israel were offering soothing fragrances to all their idols. [6:13]

**What will happen to the land when Yahweh strikes?**

The land will be a desolate and a waste when Yahweh strikes. [6:14]

**Ezekiel 7**

**According to the word of Yahweh, what was coming to the land of Israel?**

According to the word of Yahweh, an end was coming to the land of Israel. [7:1]

**According to the word of Yahweh, what was coming to the land of Israel?**

According to the word of Yahweh, an end was coming to the land of Israel. [7:2]

**Yahweh will judge Israel according to what?**

Yahweh will judge Israel according to its ways. [7:3]

**What time has come for Israel?**

The time of Israel's doom and destruction has come. [7:7]

**What is Yahweh pouring out and filling up against Israel?**

Yahweh is pouring out his fury and filling up his wrath against Israel. [7:8]

**What will not last in Israel?**

None of the multitude, none of their wealth, and none of their importance will last. [7:11]

**Why should the buyer not rejoice and the seller not mourn in Israel?**

The buyer should not rejoice and the seller not mourn because Yahweh's anger is upon the entire multitude. [7:12]

**How will those in the city die?**

Those in the city will die by famine and plague. [7:15]

**To where will the survivors escape?**

The survivors will escape to the mountains. [7:16]

**What will not be able to deliver the people of Israel?**

Their silver and gold will not be able to deliver the people of Israel. [7:19]

**What will happen to all the jeweled ornaments of the people of Israel?**

The ornaments will be given into the hands of strangers and the wicked as plunder. [7:21]

**What will happen to Yahweh's cherished place?**

Bandits will enter Yahweh's cherished place and defile it. [7:22]

**What will the people of Israel seek, but not find?**

The people of Israel will seek peace, but there will be none. [7:25]

**What will happen when the people seek a vision from the prophet?**

When the people seek a vision, the Law and counsel will perish. [7:26]

**How will the king and the people respond when Yahweh's judgment comes?**

When judgment comes, the king will mourn and the people will tremble in fear. [7:27]

**Ezekiel 8**

**Where was Ezekiel when the hand of the Lord Yahweh fell on him?**

Ezekiel was sitting in his house, with the elders of Judah sitting before him. [8:1]

**Where did the Spirit take Ezekiel, and what did he see there?**

The Spirit took Ezekiel to the inner Northern Gate in Jerusalem, where he saw the idol that provokes jealousy. [8:3]

**What did the Spirit say he was being forced to do because of the great abominations (wickedness) of the house of Israel?**

The Spirit said he was being forced to go far from his own sanctuary. [8:6]

**After Ezekiel dug into the wall and saw a door, what did the Spirit tell Ezekiel to do?**

The Spirit told Ezekiel to, “Go and see the wicked abominations that they are doing here.” [8:9]

**What were the elders saying about Yahweh as they worshiped their idols?**

The elders were saying that Yahweh does not see them and that Yahweh had forsaken the land. [8:12]

**What did Ezekiel see the women doing at the gate on the north side of Yahweh’s house?**

The women were sitting there mourning for Tammuz. [8:14]

**What did Ezekiel see in the inner courtyard of Yahweh’s house?**

There were twenty-five men with their faces to the east worshiping Shamesh. [8:16]

**Because of the abominations of the house of Israel, what did the Spirit say he was going to do?**

The Spirit said that he would act and not spare them, nor have compassion even though they cry with a loud voice. [8:18]

**Ezekiel 9****Who did the Spirit call to come up to the city?**

The Spirit called six men with weapons of destruction, and one man with a scribe's equipment. [9:1]

**Who did the Spirit call to come up to the city?**

The Spirit called six men with weapons of destruction, and one man with a scribe's equipment. [9:2]

**From where did the glory of the God of Israel move, and to where did it go?**

The glory of the God of Israel moved from the cherubim where it had been to the threshold of the house. [9:3]

**What did Yahweh tell the scribe to do?**

Yahweh told the scribe to make a mark on the foreheads of the men who groaned and sighed about the abominations being performed in the city. [9:4]

**What did Yahweh tell the six men with weapons of destruction to do?**

Yahweh told the six men to kill all of the people except those with the mark on their heads. [9:6]

**What question did Ezekiel ask Yahweh as he saw the six men striking the city?**

Ezekiel asked Yahweh if all the remnant of Israel would be destroyed by Yahweh's wrath. [9:8]

**What was Yahweh's answer to Ezekiel's question?**

Yahweh answered that the iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah was great, and that he would not spare them. [9:9]

**What was Yahweh's answer to Ezekiel's question?**

Yahweh answered that the iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah was great, and that he would not spare them. [9:10]

**What did the scribe report?**

The scribe reported that he had done all Yahweh had commanded him. [9:11]

**Ezekiel 10****What did Yahweh tell the man dressed in linen to do?**

Yahweh told the man dressed in linen to fill both his hands with fiery coals and to scatter them over the city. [10:2]

**What did the glory of Yahweh then do?**

The glory of Yahweh then rose up and stood over the threshold of the house, filling the house with a cloud and the courtyard with brightness. [10:4]

**How did the man dressed in linen receive the fire which was among the cherubim?**

The man dressed in linen went in, and a cherub lifted up the fire and placed it into the hands of the man. [10:7]

**What was the likeness of the wheels that were beside the cherubim?**

The wheels that were beside the cherubim were like a wheel intersecting another wheel. [10:10]

**What covered the cherubim and the four wheels?**

Eyes covered the cherubim and the four wheels. [10:12]

**What was the name given to the four wheels?**

The four wheels were called “Whirling”. [10:13]

**What did the wheels do as the cherubim moved?**

The wheels would go beside the cherubim when the cherubim moved. [10:16]

**What did the wheels do as the cherubim moved?**

The wheels would go beside the cherubim when the cherubim moved. [10:17]

**To where did the glory of Yahweh, the cherubim, and the wheels move?**

The glory of Yahweh, the cherubim, and the wheels moved to the eastern entrance of Yahweh’s house. [10:18]



**To where did the glory of Yahweh, the cherubim, and the wheels move?**

The glory of Yahweh, the cherubim, and the wheels moved to the eastern entrance of Yahweh's house. [10:19]

**Where had Ezekiel seen the same living creatures before?**

Ezekiel had seen the same living creatures before by the Chebar canal. [10:20]

**Where had Ezekiel seen the same living creatures before?**

Ezekiel had seen the same living creatures before by the Chebar canal. [10:21]

**Where had Ezekiel seen the same living creatures before?**

Ezekiel had seen the same living creatures before by the Chebar canal. [10:22]

**Ezekiel 11**

**What did Ezekiel see when the Spirit brought him to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house?**

Ezekiel saw twenty-five men, with the leaders of the people among them. [11:1]

**Of what did God say the twenty-five men were guilty?**

God said the men were guilty of devising iniquity and deciding wicked plans in the city. [11:2]

**With what had the twenty-five men filled the streets?**

The twenty-five men had filled the streets with the people they had killed. [11:6]

**What did the twenty-five men fear, and what did Yahweh say he would bring?**

The twenty-five men feared the sword, and Yahweh said he would bring the sword upon them. [11:8]

**Into whose hands was Yahweh going to put the twenty-five men?**

Yahweh was going to put the twenty-five men into the hands of foreigners. [11:9]

**Where were the twenty-five men to be judged and because of Yahweh's judgment upon them, what would the twenty-five men know?**

The twenty-five men were to be judged within the borders of Israel and because of Yahweh's judgment against them, the men would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [11:9]

**Where were the twenty-five men to be judged and because of Yahweh's judgment upon them, what would the twenty-five men know?**

The twenty-five men were to be judged within the borders of Israel and because of Yahweh's judgment against them, the men would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [11:10]

**What decrees had the twenty-five men carried out?**

The twenty-five men had carried out the decrees of the nations surrounding them. [11:12]

**What was Ezekiel afraid that Yahweh would do to Israel?**

Ezekiel was afraid that Yahweh would completely destroy the remnant of Israel. [11:13]

**What promise did Yahweh give Israel despite his judgments upon them?**

Yahweh promised to gather Israel from the peoples, and to assemble them in the land of Israel. [11:17]

**What did Yahweh promise to take from the people of Israel, and to give to them instead?**

Yahweh promised to take from them their stone heart, and to give to them a heart of flesh. [11:19]

**How would the people of Israel then walk?**

The people of Israel would then walk in Yahweh's statutes and decrees. [11:20]

**What did Yahweh say he would do for those who walk with affection towards their detestable things?**

Yahweh said he would bring their conduct on their own heads. [11:21]

**From where did the glory of Yahweh leave and to where did the glory of Yahweh go?**

The glory of Yahweh left the midst of the city and stood on the mountain east of the city. [11:23]

**What did Ezekiel do when the Spirit brought him into Chaldea?**

Ezekiel declared to the exiles all the things of Yahweh he had seen. [11:25]

## **Ezekiel 12**

### **Where did Yahweh say Ezekiel lived?**

Yahweh said Ezekiel lived in the midst of a rebellious house. [12:2]

### **What was Ezekiel to do in the sight of the people of Israel?**

Ezekiel was to prepare for exile, going out in their sight to another place. [12:3]

### **How did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to go out?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to dig a hole through the wall and go out through it. [12:5]

### **According to Yahweh, what was the purpose of Ezekiel's exile?**

Yahweh said that Ezekiel's exile was a sign to the house of Israel. [12:6]

### **What question was the house of Israel asking Ezekiel as he came out of his house?**

The house of Israel was asking, "What are you doing?" [12:9]

### **Who did Ezekiel's prophetic action concern?**

Ezekiel's prophetic action concerned the prince in Jerusalem and all the house of Israel. [12:10]

### **What did Yahweh say would happen to the prince in Jerusalem?**

Yahweh said that the prince in Jerusalem would go out through the wall, but would be caught and taken to Babylon where he would die without sight. [12:12]

### **What did Yahweh say would happen to the prince in Jerusalem?**

Yahweh said that the prince in Jerusalem would go out through the wall, but would be caught and taken to Babylon where he would die without sight. [12:13]

### **What did Yahweh say would happen to the army of the prince in Jerusalem?**

Yahweh said the army would be scattered, and he would send out a sword after them. [12:14]

**What two reasons did Yahweh give for sparing a few men?**

Yahweh said he would spare a few men so they could record the abominations of Israel, and so they would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [12:16]

**How did Yahweh say the the people of the land of Israel would eat and drink?**

Yahweh said the people would eat their bread with trembling and drink their water while shaking. [12:19]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the cities and the land?**

Yahweh said the cities would be desolate and the land would be a wasteland. [12:20]

**What did the people of Israel think about prophetic visions?**

The people thought that every prophetic vision was prolonged and failed. [12:22]

**What did Yahweh say there would no longer be within the house of Israel?**

Yahweh said there would no longer be any false visions or favorable divination within the house of Israel. [12:24]

**When did the house of Israel think the prophetic vision of Ezekiel would be fulfilled?**

The house of Israel had said, 'The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times.' [12:27]

**What did Yahweh say about the fulfillment of Ezekiel's vision.**

Yahweh said his words would no longer be delayed but the word that Yahweh had spoken would be done. [12:28]

**Ezekiel 13****From where were the false prophets of Israel getting their prophecies?**

The false prophets in Israel were getting their prophecies from their own minds and spirits. [13:2]

**From where were the false prophets of Israel getting their prophecies?**

The false prophets in Israel were getting their prophecies from their own minds and spirits. [13:3]

**What had the false prophets failed to do?**

The false prophets had failed to repair the breaks in the wall around the house of Israel. [13:5]

**What were the false prophets saying, even though Yahweh had not sent them?**

The false prophets were saying, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration,” even though Yahweh had not sent them. [13:6]

**What were the false prophets saying, even though Yahweh had not sent them?**

The false prophets were saying, “Such and such is Yahweh’s declaration,” even though Yahweh had not sent them. [13:7]

**What declaration did Yahweh make against the false prophets of Israel?**

Yahweh declared that his hand was against the false prophets, and they would not be enrolled in the record of the house of Israel. [13:8]

**What declaration did Yahweh make against the false prophets of Israel?**

Yahweh declared that his hand was against the false prophets, and they would not be enrolled in the record of the house of Israel. [13:9]

**What would the people know when Yahweh destroys the false prophets?**

The people would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [13:14]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to the wall and those who whitewashed it?**

Yahweh said he would annihilate the wall and those who whitewashed it. [13:15]

**What were the false prophets prophesying to the people concerning Jerusalem?**

The false prophets were prophesying peace for Jerusalem. [13:16]

**What was the “son of man” told to do about the daughters of his people who prophesy out of their own minds?**

The “son of man” was told to prophesy against them. [13:17]

**What were the magic charms and the veils the women made used for?**

The magic charms and veils the women made were used to hunt down people. [13:18]

**What did Yahweh say he would do for his people who are trapped?**

Yahweh said he would let his people who are trapped go free. [13:20]

**What did Yahweh say he would do for his people who are trapped?**

Yahweh said he would let his people who are trapped go free. [13:21]

**What were the false prophets doing to the righteous and the wicked person?**

The false prophets were discouraging the righteous and encouraging the wicked person. [13:22]

**What did Yahweh say the false prophets would no longer have?**

Yahweh said the false prophets would no longer have false visions or continue to make false predictions. [13:23]

## **Ezekiel 14**

### **Who came to Ezekiel to inquire of him?**

The elders of Israel came to Ezekiel to inquire of him. [14:1]

### **Why did Yahweh question if he should be inquired of by these men?**

Yahweh questioned because the elders had taken their idols into their hearts. [14:3]

### **How did Yahweh say he would answer those who take idols into their hearts?**

Yahweh said he would answer those who take idols into their hearts according to the number of their idols. [14:4]

### **What did Yahweh call the house of Israel to do?**

Yahweh called the house of Israel to repent and turn away from its idols. [14:6]

### **What did Yahweh say he would do to every man who worships idols and then seeks to inquire from a prophet of Yahweh?**

Yahweh said he would make that man a sign and a proverb by cutting him off from the people of Israel. [14:7]

### **What did Yahweh say he would do to every man who worships idols and then seeks to inquire from a prophet of Yahweh?**

Yahweh said he would make that man a sign and a proverb by cutting him off from the people of Israel. [14:8]

### **What did Yahweh say he would do to every deceived prophet?**

Yahweh said he would deceive that prophet and destroy him. [14:9]

### **What relationship did Yahweh say he wanted with the people of Israel?**

Yahweh said he wanted the people to be his people, and for him to be their God. [14:11]



**When Yahweh brought judgment, what would be all that even the most righteous in the land could do?**

When Yahweh brought judgment, even the most righteous in the land could only deliver their own souls. [14:14]

**Who did Yahweh use as examples of some of the most righteous men in history?**

Yahweh used as examples of some of the most righteous men in history Noah, Daniel, and Job. [14:14]

**Who did Yahweh use as examples of some of the most righteous men in history?**

Yahweh used as examples of some of the most righteous men in history Noah, Daniel, and Job. [14:16]

**When Yahweh brought judgment, who would the most righteous in the land not be able to deliver?**

When Yahweh brought judgment, the most righteous in the land would not be able to deliver their sons or daughters. [14:16]

**Who did Yahweh use as examples of some of the most righteous men in history?**

Yahweh used as examples of some of the most righteous men in history Noah, Daniel, and Job. [14:18]

**When Yahweh brought judgment, who would the most righteous in the land not be able to deliver?**

When Yahweh brought judgment, the most righteous in the land would not be able to deliver their sons or daughters. [14:18]

**Who did Yahweh use as examples of some of the most righteous men in history?**

Yahweh used as examples of some of the most righteous men in history Noah, Daniel, and Job. [14:20]

**When Yahweh brought judgment, who would the most righteous in the land not be able to deliver?**

When Yahweh brought judgment, the most righteous in the land would not be able to deliver their sons or daughters. [14:20]

**What four punishments did Yahweh say he would send to Jerusalem?**

Yahweh said he would send the four punishments of famine, sword, wild animals, and plague. [14:21]

**After Yahweh's judgment, who would be left?**

After Yahweh's judgment, a remnant would be left who would go out with sons and daughters. [14:22]

**What would cause Ezekiel to be comforted?**

When Ezekiel saw the ways and actions of the remnant of survivors, he would be comforted. [14:23]

**Ezekiel 15**

**What two things in the forest does Yahweh compare?**

Yahweh compares the vine to any tree with branches. [15:2]

**What did the Lord Yahweh say he had given the vine for?**

The Lord Yahweh said he had given the vine as fuel for fires. [15:6]

**How does Yahweh say the inhabitants of Jerusalem are like the vine?**

Yahweh says the inhabitants of Jerusalem are like the vine in that both are given as fuel for fires. [15:6]

**What will all know when Yahweh destroys the inhabitants of Jerusalem with fire?**

All will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [15:7]

**Why will Yahweh make the land into an abandoned wasteland?**

Yahweh will make the land into an abandoned wasteland because the inhabitants of Jerusalem have committed sin. [15:8]

## **Ezekiel 16**

**Where did Yahweh say Jerusalem had its beginning and birth?**

Yahweh said Jerusalem had its beginning and birth in the land of Canaan. [16:3]

**What was done with Jerusalem on the day it was born?**

Jerusalem was thrown out into the open field on the day it was born. [16:5]

**What did Yahweh do for Jerusalem after its birth?**

Yahweh made Jerusalem grow like a plant in a field after its birth. [16:7]

**What did Yahweh do for Jerusalem when it reached the age of maturity?**

Yahweh spread his robe over Jerusalem, and brought it into covenant with him. [16:8]

**Why did Jerusalem's fame go out among the nations?**

Jerusalem's fame went out among the nations because of its beauty. [16:14]

**How did Jerusalem act after its fame went out among the nations?**

Jerusalem acted like a prostitute after its fame went out among the nations. [16:15]

**How did Jerusalem act after its fame went out among the nations?**

Jerusalem acted like a prostitute after its fame went out among the nations. [16:16]

**What did Jerusalem do with its sons and daughters born for Yahweh?**

Jerusalem sacrificed its sons and daughters to the images. [16:20]

**What did Jerusalem make in every public place?**

Jerusalem made a shrine in every public place. [16:24]

**What did Yahweh say he would cut off because of Jerusalem's prostitution?**

Yahweh said he would cut off Jerusalem's food because of its prostitution. [16:27]

**What did Yahweh say is the difference between Jerusalem and every prostitute?**

Yahweh said the difference is that prostitutes are paid for their acts, but Jerusalem pays its lovers and bribes them. [16:33]

**What did Yahweh say is the difference between Jerusalem and every prostitute?**

Yahweh said the difference is that prostitutes are paid for their acts, but Jerusalem pays its lovers and bribes them. [16:34]

**Who did Yahweh say he would gather against Jerusalem?**

Yahweh said he would gather all of Jerusalem's lovers against her on every side. [16:37]

**How will Yahweh's attitude toward Jerusalem change after it is punished?**

After Jerusalem is punished, Yahweh will no longer be angry with Jerusalem. [16:42]

**Yahweh said that Jerusalem had done more evil than what other two places?**

Yahweh said that Jerusalem had done more evil than Sodom and Samaria. [16:48]

**Who did Sodom refuse to help?**

Sodom refused to help the poor and needy. [16:49]

**What did the people all around Jerusalem think about the city?**

The people around Jerusalem despised it and made it an object of scorn. [16:57]

**Yahweh said he would treat Jerusalem as he would treat anyone who did what?**

Yahweh said he would treat Jerusalem as he would treat anyone who despised their oath and broke a covenant. [16:59]

**What did Yahweh say he would call to mind and establish?**

Yahweh said he would call to mind his covenant with Jerusalem and establish an everlasting covenant with it. [16:60]

**What will Jerusalem's reaction be when Yahweh forgives it for all it has done?**

Jerusalem will be ashamed and will not longer speak because of its shame. [16:63]

**Ezekiel 17**

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to present and speak to the house of Israel?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to present a riddle and speak a parable to the house of Israel. [17:2]

**In the parable, where did the large eagle plant the tips of the cedar tree branches?**

The large eagle planted the tips of the cedar tree branches in the land of Canaan in a city of merchants. [17:3]

**In the parable, where did the large eagle plant the tips of the cedar tree branches?**

The large eagle planted the tips of the cedar tree branches in the land of Canaan in a city of merchants. [17:4]

**In the parable, where did the large eagle plant the seed of the land, and how did it grow?**

The large eagle planted the seed beside a large body of water, and the vine produced branches and sent out shoots. [17:5]

**In the parable, where did the large eagle plant the seed of the land, and how did it grow?**

The large eagle planted the seed beside a large body of water, and the vine produced branches and sent out shoots. [17:6]

**In the parable, what did the vine do when the other great eagle came?**

The vine turned its roots towards the other great eagle. [17:7]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the vine in the parable?**

Yahweh said that the vine would completely wither away in its plot. [17:9]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the vine in the parable?**

Yahweh said that the vine would completely wither away in its plot. [17:10]

**What did the king of Babylon do with the king of Jerusalem?**

The king of Babylon took the king of Jerusalem to Babylon. [17:12]

**What did the king of Babylon do with the royal descendant of the king of Jerusalem?**

The king of Babylon made a covenant with the royal descendant of the king of Jerusalem. [17:13]

**How did Yahweh say the land of Israel would survive?**

Yahweh said the land of Israel would survive by the king of Jerusalem keeping his covenant with the king of Babylon. [17:14]

**How did the king of Jerusalem violate the covenant he made with the king of Babylon?**

The king of Jerusalem rebelled and sent ambassadors to Egypt to acquire horses and an army. [17:15]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the king of Jerusalem?**

Yahweh said the king of Jerusalem would die in the middle of Babylon. [17:16]

**According to Yahweh, whose covenant did the king of Jerusalem actually break?**

According to Yahweh, the king of Jerusalem actually broke his covenant with Yahweh. [17:19]

**What did Yahweh declare would happen to the armies of the king of Jerusalem?**

Yahweh declared the armies of the king of Jerusalem would fall by the sword. [17:21]

**What did Yahweh say he would do with the tender branches of the cedar tree?**

Yahweh said he would plant the tender branches on a high mountain. [17:22]

**What will the tender branches that Yahweh plants become?**

The tender branches Yahweh plants will become a majestic cedar where every winged bird will live. [17:23]



**Ezekiel 18**

**What does Yahweh declare will happen to every person who sins?**

Yahweh declares that every person who sins will die. [18:4]

**Who does a righteous man help?**

A righteous man gives his food to the hungry and covers the naked with clothes. [18:7]

**What does a righteous man walk in and keep?**

A righteous man walks in Yahweh's laws and keeps Yahweh's decrees. [18:9]

**What does Yahweh declare will happen to a righteous man?**

Yahweh declares a righteous man will live. [18:9]

**If a righteous man has a son who oppresses the poor and needy, what does Yahweh declare will happen to him?**

Yahweh declares the unrighteous son will not live. [18:12]

**If a righteous man has a son who oppresses the poor and needy, what does Yahweh declare will happen to him?**

Yahweh declares the unrighteous son will not live. [18:13]

**If a son does not walk in his father's sins, will a son die for his father's sins?**

If a son carries out Yahweh's decrees and walks according to Yahweh's statutes, then he will not die for his father's sin. [18:17]

**Why does the righteous son not bear the iniquity of his father?**

The righteous son does not bear the iniquity of the father because he carries out justice and righteousness. [18:19]

**What does Yahweh declare will happen to a wicked person who turns away from all his sins?**

Yahweh declares that a wicked person who turns away from all his sins will certainly live. [18:21]

**What does Yahweh declare will happen to a wicked person who turns away from all his sins?**

Yahweh declares that a wicked person who turns away from all his sins will certainly live. [18:22]

**What does Yahweh declare will happen to a righteous person who turns and commits sins and practices wickedness?**

Yahweh declares that a righteous person who turns and commits iniquity will die in the sins that he commits. [18:24]

**How does Yahweh say he will judge each man?**

Yahweh says he will judge each man according to his ways. [18:30]

**What does Yahweh call the house of Israel to do?**

Yahweh calls the house of Israel to repent and turn away from all its sins. [18:30]

**What does Yahweh call the house of Israel to make for themselves?**

Yahweh calls the house of Israel to make a new heart and a new spirit for themselves. [18:31]

## **Ezekiel 19**

### **What was Ezekiel told to lift up?**

Ezekiel was told to lift up a lamentation against the leaders of Israel. [19:1]

### **In the parable of the lions, what did one of the cubs learn to do?**

One of the cubs learned to tear his victims and devour men. [19:3]

### **When the nations heard about this cub, what did they do?**

The nations trapped the cub and brought him to the land of Egypt. [19:4]

### **After the first cub was gone, what did the second young lion learn to do?**

The second young lion learned to tear his victims and devour men. [19:6]

### **What did the nations do with the second young lion?**

The nations trapped the young lion and brought him to the king of Babylon. [19:9]

### **What was Israel's mother once like?**

Israel's mother was once like a fruitful vine planted beside the water. [19:10]

### **For what were her strong branches to be used?**

Her strong branches were to be used for ruler's scepters. [19:11]

### **What happened to the vine?**

The vine was uprooted, thrown down, and dried out by an eastern wind. [19:12]

### **Where is the vine?**

The vine is in the wilderness. [19:13]

### **What does the vine no longer have?**

The vine no longer has strong branches or a scepter to rule. [19:14]

## **Ezekiel 20**

### **Who came to Ezekiel and why did they come?**

The elders of Israel came to Ezekiel to inquire of Yahweh. [20:1]

### **What was Yahweh's response to those who came to Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said that he would not be inquired of by the elders of Israel. [20:3]

### **What did Yahweh swear he would do for Israel when they were in the land of Egypt?**

Yahweh swore that he would bring them into a land flowing with milk and honey. [20:6]

### **What command did Yahweh give the people of Israel in the land of Egypt?**

Yahweh commanded the people to throw away their idols of Egypt. [20:7]

### **How did the people of Israel respond to Yahweh's command?**

The people rebelled against Yahweh and were unwilling to listen. [20:8]

### **Why did Yahweh say he acted to bring the people of Israel out of the land of Egypt?**

Yahweh said he acted for his name's sake so that it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations. [20:9]

### **What did Yahweh give the people of Israel in the wilderness?**

Yahweh gave the people his statutes, decrees, and Sabbaths. [20:11]

### **What did Yahweh tell the people they would be able to do if they obeyed his decrees?**

Yahweh told the people they would be able to live if they obeyed his decrees. [20:11]

### **What did Yahweh give the people of Israel in the wilderness?**

Yahweh gave the people his statutes, decrees, and Sabbaths. [20:12]

**How did the people of Israel respond to what Yahweh gave them in the wilderness?**

The people rebelled against Yahweh and rejected his decrees. [20:13]

**What did Yahweh tell the people they would be able to do if they obeyed his decrees?**

Yahweh told the people they would be able to live if they obeyed his decrees. [20:13]

**What did Yahweh then swear he would not do for the people of Israel because they rejected his decrees?**

Yahweh then swore he would not bring them into the land he was going to give them. [20:15]

**How did the sons and daughters of Israel respond when Yahweh commanded them to walk in his decrees?**

The sons and daughters of Israel rebelled against Yahweh and did not keep his decrees. [20:21]

**What did Yahweh tell the people they would be able to do if they obeyed his decrees?**

Yahweh told the people they would be able to live if they obeyed his decrees. [20:21]

**What did Yahweh then swear to do to the sons and daughters of Israel?**

Yahweh then swore to scatter them among the nations. [20:23]

**How did the fathers of Israel blaspheme and betray Yahweh?**

The fathers of Israel blasphemed and betrayed Yahweh by offering sacrifices to idols on the high places. [20:27]

**How did the fathers of Israel blaspheme and betray Yahweh?**

The fathers of Israel blasphemed and betrayed Yahweh by offering sacrifices to idols on the high places. [20:28]

**How did the fathers of Israel blaspheme and betray Yahweh?**

The fathers of Israel blasphemed and betrayed Yahweh by offering sacrifices to idols on the high places. [20:29]

**What were the people of Israel doing with their sons?**

The people of Israel were causing their sons to pass through the fire. [20:31]

**What thought was in the minds of the people of Israel?**

The people of Israel were thinking they wanted to be like the other nations, worshiping wood and stone. [20:32]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to the people of Israel in order to judge them face to face?**

Yahweh said he would gather the people of Israel out of the countries where they were scattered into the wilderness of the peoples. [20:34]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to the people of Israel in order to judge them face to face?**

Yahweh said he would gather the people of Israel out of the countries where they were scattered into the wilderness of the peoples. [20:35]

**What did Yahweh say he would purge from among the people of Israel?**

Yahweh said he would purge the rebellious and transgressing ones from among the people of Israel. [20:38]

**After Yahweh gathered the house of Israel on his holy mountain, how would Israel treat Yahweh?**

After Yahweh gathered the house of Israel on his holy mountain, Israel would treat Yahweh as holy in the sight of the nations. [20:40]

**After Yahweh gathered the house of Israel on his holy mountain, how would Israel treat Yahweh?**

After Yahweh gathered the house of Israel on his holy mountain, Israel would treat Yahweh as holy in the sight of the nations. [20:41]

**What would the house of Israel think of themselves as they called to mind their past evil ways?**

The house of Israel would hate themselves for all the evil actions they committed. [20:43]

**What declaration did Yahweh make against the forest of the Negev?**

Yahweh declared that he would kindle a fire that would burn every face from south to north. [20:46]

**What declaration did Yahweh make against the forest of the Negev?**

Yahweh declared that he would kindle a fire that would burn every face from south to north. [20:47]

**What were the people of Israel saying about Ezekiel?**

The people of Israel were saying Ezekiel was a mere teller of parables. [20:49]

**Ezekiel 21****Against whom did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to speak?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to speak against the sanctuaries; against the land of Israel. [21:2]

**Who did Yahweh say he would cut off from the land of Israel?**

Yahweh said he would cut off both the righteous and wicked person from the land of Israel. [21:3]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do before the eyes of the people?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to groan before the eyes of the people. [21:6]

**Why did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to act this way before the eyes of the people?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to act this way to show what it would be like for them when Yahweh brought the sword against them. [21:7]

**Who was the sharpened and polished sword to be given to?**

The polished and sharpened sword were to be given into the hand of a killer. [21:11]

**On whom would that sword come?**

That sword would come on Yahweh's people and the leaders of Israel. [21:12]

**What would come to rest after the great slaughter?**

After the great slaughter, Yahweh's fury would come to rest. [21:17]

**What were the destinations of the two roads assigned for the king of Babylon?**

The two destinations were Rabbah of the Ammonites, and Judah and Jerusalem. [21:20]

**How would the king of Babylon determine which road to take?**

The king of Babylon would obtain a prophetic message from divination to determine which road to take. [21:21]



**Of what would the king of Babylon accuse Israel in order to attack them?**

The king of Babylon would accuse Israel of violating their treaty in order to attack them. [21:23]

**What did Yahweh tell the wicked ruler of Israel to do, and why?**

Yahweh told the wicked ruler of Israel to remove his turban and crown, because the crown would no longer exist. [21:25]

**What did Yahweh tell the wicked ruler of Israel to do, and why?**

Yahweh told the wicked ruler of Israel to remove his turban and crown, because the crown would no longer exist. [21:26]

**What did Yahweh tell the wicked ruler of Israel to do, and why?**

Yahweh told the wicked ruler of Israel to remove his turban and crown, because the crown would no longer exist. [21:27]

**When did Yahweh say he would restore the crown in Israel?**

Yahweh said he would restore the crown in Israel when one came who had a right to it. [21:27]

**What do the prophets of Ammon do for the people of Ammon?**

Ammon's prophets see empty visions for the people of Ammon, while they perform rituals to come up with lies for the people of Ammon. [21:28]

**What do the prophets of Ammon do for the people of Ammon?**

Ammon's prophets see empty visions for the people of Ammon, while they perform rituals to come up with lies for the people of Ammon. [21:29]

**Who was the Lord Yahweh going to give the people of Ammon over to?**

The Lord Yahweh was going to give the Ammonites into the hand of cruel men, craftsmen of destruction. [21:31]

**Ezekiel 22**

**What name does Yahweh give the city of Jerusalem that he is judging?**

Yahweh calls the city of Jerusalem the city of blood. [22:2]

**What name does Yahweh give the city of Jerusalem that he is judging?**

Yahweh calls the city of Jerusalem the city of blood. [22:3]

**What two sins does Yahweh name that have made the city guilty?**

The city is guilty of the blood it has poured out, and is made unclean by the idols it has made. [22:4]

**What reputation will the city have after Yahweh judges it?**

The reputation known everywhere will be that it is a city of confusion. [22:5]

**Which three groups of people have been mistreated by the rulers of Israel?**

Fathers and mothers have been dishonored, foreigners have been oppressed, and orphans and widows have been mistreated. [22:7]

**What three sexual sins are being committed by men in the city?**

Men are committing sins with their neighbor's wife, are making their daughters-in-law unclean, and are abusing their sisters. [22:11]

**What does Yahweh declare he is going to do to the people because of their sins?**

Yahweh declares he is going to scatter the people among the nations. [22:13]

**What does Yahweh declare he is going to do to the people because of their sins?**

Yahweh declares he is going to scatter the people among the nations. [22:15]

**What will the people know after Yahweh strikes them?**

The people will know the Lord is Yahweh. [22:16]

**In his parable, to what does Yahweh liken the house of Israel?**

In his parable, Yahweh likens the house of Israel to dross. [22:17]

**Where does Yahweh say he will gather the dross?**

Yahweh says he will gather the dross into the midst of Jerusalem. [22:19]

**What will Yahweh do to the dross as he pours out his fury?**

Yahweh will pour out the dross and melt it down as he pours out his fury. [22:20]

**What will Yahweh do to the dross as he pours out his fury?**

Yahweh will pour out the dross and melt it down as he pours out his fury. [22:21]

**What will Yahweh do to the dross as he pours out his fury?**

Yahweh will pour out the dross and melt it down as he pours out his fury. [22:22]

**What are the priests of the land failing to distinguish and failing to teach?**

The priests are failing to distinguish between holy and profane things, and failing to teach the difference between the unclean and the clean. [22:26]

**What are the prophets of the land doing?**

The prophets of the land are painting with whitewash, seeing false visions and making false predictions. [22:28]

**What did Yahweh look for and not find?**

Yahweh looked for a man who would build up a wall and stand before him in its breach for the land, but he did not find one. [22:30]

**Ezekiel 23**

**In Yahweh's parable, what do the two daughters do in Egypt?**

The two daughters act as prostitutes in Egypt. [23:2]

**In Yahweh's parable, what do the two daughters do in Egypt?**

The two daughters act as prostitutes in Egypt. [23:3]

**What does the older daughter represent and what does the younger daughter represent?**

The older daughter represents Samaria and the younger daughter represents Jerusalem. [23:4]

**What did the older daughter do even though she was Yahweh's?**

The older daughter gave herself as a prostitute to Assyria's men. [23:5]

**What did the older daughter do even though she was Yahweh's?**

The older daughter gave herself as a prostitute to Assyria's men. [23:6]

**What did the older daughter do even though she was Yahweh's?**

The older daughter gave herself as a prostitute to Assyria's men. [23:7]

**What did the older daughter's lovers do to her when Yahweh gave her over to them?**

The older daughter's lovers stripped her naked, took her sons and daughters, and killed her. [23:9]

**What did the older daughter's lovers do to her when Yahweh gave her over to them?**

The older daughter's lovers stripped her naked, took her sons and daughters, and killed her. [23:10]

**What did the younger daughter do when she saw what happened to the older daughter?**

The younger daughter acted like a prostitute even more than her sister. [23:11]

**Because of their prostitution, how did Yahweh's attitude change toward the two sisters?**

Because of their prostitution, Yahweh turned away his soul from the two sisters. [23:18]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to the younger sister because of her prostitution?**

Yahweh said he would turn her lovers against her. [23:22]

**What does Yahweh say will happen to the younger sister and her descendants?**

The younger sister will have her nose and ears cut off, and her descendants will be devoured by fire. [23:25]

**What will be revealed when the younger sister is given into the hand of the ones she hates?**

The naked shame of the younger sister's prostitution will be revealed. [23:29]

**Because of their prostitution, what does Yahweh put into the hands of the younger and older sister?**

Because of their prostitution, Yahweh puts a cup of punishment into the hands of the younger and older sister. [23:30]

**Because of their prostitution, what does Yahweh put into the hands of the younger and older sister?**

Because of their prostitution, Yahweh puts a cup of punishment into the hands of the younger and older sister. [23:31]

**What will the younger sister become to those around her?**

The younger sister will become a laughingstock and a subject for making to those around her. [23:32]

**What were the two sisters doing with their sons born for Yahweh?**

The two sisters were passing their sons born for Yahweh through the fire to be consumed. [23:37]

**What did the two sisters do on the same day they slaughtered their children?**

On the same day they slaughtered their children, the two sisters came to Yahweh's sanctuary to defile it. [23:38]

**What did the two sisters do on the same day they slaughtered their children?**

On the same day they slaughtered their children, the two sisters came to Yahweh's sanctuary to defile it. [23:39]

**What does Yahweh say righteous men will do to the prostitutes?**

Yahweh says righteous men will condemn the prostitutes to punishment for adultery. [23:45]

**What will the company do that Yahweh raises up against the prostitutes?**

The company that Yahweh raises up will stone the prostitutes with stones and cut them down with their swords. [23:47]

**What will the prostitutes know when they bear the guilt of their sins with their idols?**

When they bear the guilt of their sins with their idols, the prostitutes will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [23:49]

**Ezekiel 24**

**What did Yahweh say was happening on the exact day he spoke to Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said that the king of Babylon was attacking Jerusalem on that exact day. [24:2]

**In Yahweh's parable, what does Yahweh tell the people of Jerusalem to do?**

Yahweh tells them to pour water into the cooking pot, fill it with the best bones, and boil it thoroughly. [24:3]

**In Yahweh's parable, what does Yahweh tell the people of Jerusalem to do?**

Yahweh tells them to pour water into the cooking pot, fill it with the best bones, and boil it thoroughly. [24:4]

**In Yahweh's parable, what does Yahweh tell the people of Jerusalem to do?**

Yahweh tells them to pour water into the cooking pot, fill it with the best bones, and boil it thoroughly. [24:5]

**What is wrong with the cooking pot of Jerusalem that will not come out of it?**

The cooking pot of Jerusalem has rust in it that will not come out of it. [24:6]

**What has Jerusalem done to exact vengeance from Yahweh?**

Jerusalem has not covered the blood that is in her midst. [24:7]

**What has Jerusalem done to exact vengeance from Yahweh?**

Jerusalem has not covered the blood that is in her midst. [24:8]

**Why set the empty pot on the fire?**

Set the empty pot on the fire in order to heat and scorch its bronze, so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed! [24:11]

**What has not been removed from Jerusalem by the fire?**

The corrosion of Jerusalem has not been removed by the fire. [24:12]

**According to Yahweh, by what will the people of Jerusalem be judged?**

The people of Jerusalem will be judged by their ways and their activities. [24:14]

**What did Yahweh say he was taking from Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said he was taking Ezekiel's wife from him. [24:16]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel not to do?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel not to mourn or weep for having lost his wife. [24:16]

**What did Yahweh say he was taking from Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said he was taking Ezekiel's wife from him. [24:17]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel not to do?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel not to mourn or weep for having lost his wife. [24:17]

**What did Yahweh say was the meaning of the events which happened to Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said that the desire of the people's eyes was defiling the sanctuary, so their sons and daughters would fall by the sword. [24:19]

**What did Yahweh say was the meaning of the events which happened to Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said that the desire of the people's eyes was defiling the sanctuary, so their sons and daughters would fall by the sword. [24:20]

**What did Yahweh say was the meaning of the events which happened to Ezekiel?**

Yahweh said that the desire of the people's eyes was defiling the sanctuary, so their sons and daughters would fall by the sword. [24:21]

**What would the people of Jerusalem do when they suffered their loss?**

The people would do exactly as Ezekiel did, and not mourn or weep. [24:22]



**What would the people of Jerusalem do when they suffered their loss?**

The people would do exactly as Ezekiel did, and not mourn or weep. [24:23]

**As what did Ezekiel serve for the people of Jerusalem?**

Ezekiel served as a sign for the people of Jerusalem. [24:24]

**What did Yahweh say would happen on the day the temple was captured?**

Yahweh said that on the day the temple was captured, a refugee would come to Ezekiel to give him the news. [24:25]

**What did Yahweh say would happen on the day the temple was captured?**

Yahweh said that on the day the temple was captured, a refugee would come to Ezekiel to give him the news. [24:26]

**On the day the temple was captured, what would the people of Jerusalem know?**

On the day the temple was captured, the people of Jerusalem would know that the Lord is Yahweh. [24:27]

**Ezekiel 25****Who did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy against?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy against the people of Ammon. [25:2]

**What did the people of Ammon do when the sanctuary was profaned and the house of Judah went into exile?**

When the sanctuary was profaned and the house of Judah went into exile, the people of Ammon said, "Aha!" [25:3]

**What will Yahweh do to the people of Ammon because of what they said when the house of Judah went into exile?**

Yahweh will give the people of Ammon to a people in the east. [25:4]

**What will Yahweh do to Ammon that will cause them to know that Yahweh is Lord?**

Yahweh will cut Ammon off from the other peoples and destroy them. [25:7]

**What did Moab and Seir say when the house of Judah went into exile?**

When the house of Judah went into exile, Moab and Seir said that the house of Judah was like every other nation. [25:8]

**What will no longer be remembered among the nations?**

The people of Ammon will no longer be remembered among the nations. [25:10]

**What had Edom done against the house of Judah?**

Edom had exacted vengeance against the house of Judah. [25:12]

**What will Yahweh do to Edom because of what Edom did to the house of Judah?**

Yahweh will destroy every person and animal in Edom. [25:13]

**What had the Philistines done against the house of Judah?**

The Philistines had taken vengeance with disdain against the house of Judah. [25:15]

**What will Yahweh do to the Philistines because of what the Philistines did to the house of Judah?**

Yahweh will destroy the Philistines. [25:16]

**Ezekiel 26****What were the people of Tyre saying against Jerusalem?**

The people of Tyre were saying they would be filled up as Jerusalem was ruined. [26:2]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to Tyre?**

Yahweh said he would raise up many nations against Tyre, who would destroy its walls and towers. [26:4]

**What did Yahweh say would be done at the place Tyre once stood?**

Yahweh said that nets would be dried out at the place Tyre once stood. [26:5]

**Who did Yahweh say he was bringing against Tyre?**

Yahweh said he was bringing Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, against Tyre. [26:7]

**How did Yahweh say the walls of Tyre would be broken down?**

Yahweh said the walls of Tyre would be broken down with Nebuchadnezzar's battering rams. [26:9]

**Where did Yahweh say the stone and wood of Tyre's houses would be laid?**

Yahweh said the stone and wood of Tyre's houses would be laid in the midst of the waters. [26:12]

**What will the chiefs of the sea do when the terrible slaughter occurs in Tyre?**

The chiefs of the sea will come down from their thrones, lay aside their robes, strip off their colorful clothing, and sit on the ground trembling. [26:16]

**Where do the chiefs of the sea lament that the famous city of Tyre is now?**

The chiefs of the sea lament that the famous city of Tyre is now in the sea. [26:17]

**To where did Yahweh say the people of Tyre would be brought down?**

Yahweh said the people of Tyre would be brought down into the pit. [26:20]

**According to Yahweh, when would Tyre be found again?**

According to Yahweh, Tyre would never be found ever again. [26:21]

## **Ezekiel 27**

### **For what trade were the people of Tyre famous?**

The people of Tyre were famous for being merchants of peoples to many islands. [27:3]

### **What had Tyre said about itself?**

Tyre had said about itself that it was perfect in beauty. [27:3]

### **Of what were the ship decks of Tyre made?**

The ship decks of Tyre were made with cypress wood overlaid with ivory. [27:6]

### **Who were the ship pilots of Tyre?**

The ship pilots were the sages of Tyre. [27:8]

### **What were the ships of Tyre carrying?**

The ships of Tyre were carrying merchandise for trade. [27:9]

### **Why was Tarshish a client of Tyre?**

Tarshish was a client of Tyre because of the multitude of every kind of wealth. [27:12]

### **In what was Tyre dealing with Javan, Tubal, and Meshech?**

Tyre was dealing in men's lives and in items of bronze. [27:13]

### **With what items did Judah and the land of Israel trade with Tyre?**

Judah and the land of Israel traded with wheat, millet, honey, oil, and balsam. [27:17]

### **With what items did Sheba trade with Tyre?**

Sheba traded with spices, precious gems, and gold. [27:22]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the wealth of Tyre on the day of its destruction?**

Yahweh said the wealth of Tyre would fall into the depths of the sea on the day of its destruction. [27:27]

**What will the cities at the sea do when they hear the sound of their pilot's cry?**

The cities at the sea will tremble at the sound of their pilot's cry. [27:28]

**What would the kings of the coasts do when they saw Tyre's destruction?**

The kings of the coasts would shudder in horror and tremble when they saw Tyre's destruction. [27:35]

**When did Yahweh say Tyre would again exist?**

Yahweh said Tyre would never again exist. [27:36]

**Ezekiel 28****What did the ruler of Tyre say about himself?**

The ruler of Tyre said about himself, "I am a god!" [28:2]

**Why was the heart of the ruler of Tyre arrogant?**

The ruler's heart was arrogant because of his wealth. [28:5]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to the ruler of Tyre because of his arrogance?**

Yahweh said he would bring foreigners against the ruler of Tyre. [28:7]

**How did Yahweh say the ruler of Tyre would die?**

The ruler of Tyre would die the death of the uncircumcised by the hand of foreigners. [28:10]

**What did Yahweh say the king of Tyre once was?**

Yahweh said the king of Tyre was once the model of perfection, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. [28:12]

**According to Yahweh, where was the king of Tyre when he was created?**

The king of Tyre was in Eden, the garden of God. [28:13]

**Where did Yahweh place the king of Tyre, and what responsibility did the king of Tyre have?**

The king of Tyre was on the holy mountain of God as the cherub anointed to guard mankind. [28:14]

**What was later found within the king of Tyre?**

Injustice was later found within the king of Tyre. [28:15]

**Because of the sin of the king of Tyre, what did Yahweh do to him?**

Yahweh threw the king of Tyre down as defiled from the mountain of God and destroyed him. [28:16]



**What will the ones who knew the king of Tyre do when they see his destruction?**

The ones who knew the king of Tyre will shudder at him and will be horrified. [28:19]

**What did Yahweh say he was sending out to Sidon?**

Yahweh said he was sending out a plague and blood in the streets of Sidon. [28:23]

**According to Yahweh, what were the peoples around Israel like for the house of Israel?**

The peoples around Israel were like pricking briars and painful thorns. [28:24]

**After Yahweh executes justice on the ones who despise Israel, what will happen to Israel?**

Israel will live securely, build houses, and plant vineyards in the land Yahweh will give to his servant Jacob. [28:25]

**After Yahweh executes justice on the ones who despise Israel, what will happen to Israel?**

Israel will live securely, build houses, and plant vineyards in the land Yahweh will give to his servant Jacob. [28:26]

## **Ezekiel 29**

**Who did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy against?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy against Pharaoh, king of Egypt. [29:2]

**What animal does Yahweh say the king of Egypt is like?**

Yahweh says the king of Egypt is like a great sea creature that lies in the midst of the river. [29:3]

**Where does Yahweh say he is going to throw the king of Egypt?**

Yahweh says he is going to throw the king of Egypt down into the wilderness. [29:5]

**What plant does Yahweh say Egypt is like to the house of Israel?**

Yahweh says Egypt is like a reed stalk to the house of Israel. [29:6]

**What had Egypt done when the house of Israel leaned on Egypt?**

Egypt shattered Israel's legs and made their hip shake when Israel leaned on Egypt. [29:7]

**To what does Yahweh say the land of Egypt will be given over?**

Yahweh says the land of Egypt will be given over to desolation and waste. [29:10]

**For how long does Yahweh say the land of Egypt will not be inhabited?**

Yahweh says the land of Egypt will not be inhabited for forty years. [29:11]

**For how long does Yahweh say the land of Egypt will not be inhabited?**

Yahweh says the land of Egypt will not be inhabited for forty years. [29:12]

**What does Yahweh say Egypt will be after they return from being scattered?**

Yahweh says Egypt will be a lowly kingdom after they return from being scattered. [29:14]

**What wages did Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon receive for all the hard work he did against Tyre?**

Nebuchadnezzar received no wages for all the hard work he did against Tyre. [29:18]

**What will Yahweh give Nebuchadnezzar in return for all the hard work he did against Tyre?**

Yahweh will give Nebuchadnezzar the land of Egypt as the wages for all the hard work he did against Tyre. [29:19]

**What will Yahweh give Nebuchadnezzar in return for all the hard work he did against Tyre?**

Yahweh will give Nebuchadnezzar the land of Egypt as the wages for all the hard work he did against Tyre. [29:20]

**On that day, what will Yahweh make Ezekiel do?**

On that day, Yahweh will make Ezekiel speak in the midst of the house of Israel. [29:21]

**On that day, what will the house of Israel know?**

On that day, the house of Israel will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [29:21]

## **Ezekiel 30**

**According to Yahweh, what kind of day and time is the coming day of Yahweh?**

The coming day of Yahweh is a day of clouds, a time of doom for nations. [30:2]

**According to Yahweh, what kind of day and time is the coming day of Yahweh?**

The coming day of Yahweh is a day of clouds, a time of doom for nations. [30:3]

**On the day of Yahweh, what will happen to Egypt, Cush, Libya, Lydia, and the people belonging to the covenant?**

On the day of Yahweh, they will all fall by the sword. [30:4]

**On the day of Yahweh, what will happen to Egypt, Cush, Libya, Lydia, and the people belonging to the covenant?**

On the day of Yahweh, they will all fall by the sword. [30:5]

**What will the people know when Egypt and her helpers are destroyed?**

The people will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [30:8]

**Who's hand will Yahweh use to destroy the land of Egypt?**

Yahweh will use the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, to destroy the land of Egypt. [30:10]

**To what will Yahweh bring an end in Memphis?**

Yahweh will destroy and bring an end to the worthless idols of Memphis. [30:13]

**What will happen to the survivors in the Egyptian cities when Yahweh brings destruction?**

The survivors will walk into captivity when Yahweh brings destruction. [30:17]

**What will happen to the survivors in the Egyptian cities when Yahweh brings destruction?**

The survivors will walk into captivity when Yahweh brings destruction. [30:18]

**What did Yahweh say he had done to Pharaoh's arm, and what would Pharaoh now not be able to do?**

Yahweh said he had broken the arm of Pharaoh, so it was not strong enough to grasp a sword. [30:21]

**After Egypt is destroyed, what will Yahweh do to Egypt among the nations?**

Yahweh will scatter and disperse Egypt among the nations. [30:23]

**Whose arms will Yahweh strengthen?**

Yahweh will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon. [30:25]

**What will happen to arms of Pharaoh?**

Pharaoh's arms will fall. [30:25]

**Ezekiel 31****To whom did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy to Pharaoh, king of Egypt. [31:2]

**To what kind of plant did Yahweh liken Assyria?**

Yahweh likened Assyria to a great cedar in Lebanon. [31:3]

**In Yahweh's parable of Assyria as a tree, what lived in and around the great cedar?**

Every bird of the heavens nested in the cedar's branches, and every living thing of the field gave birth under its foliage. [31:6]

**What was the great cedar of Assyria greater than?**

The great cedar of Assyria was greater than all the trees in the garden of God. [31:8]

**What was the great cedar of Assyria greater than?**

The great cedar of Assyria was greater than all the trees in the garden of God. [31:9]

**Why did Yahweh grasp Assyria and drive it away?**

Yahweh grasped Assyria and drove it away because its heart was lifted up (proud) and it was wicked. [31:10]

**Why did Yahweh grasp Assyria and drive it away?**

Yahweh grasped Assyria and drove it away because its heart was lifted up (proud) and it was wicked. [31:11]

**After the cedar of Assyria was abandoned, what did Yahweh say would never happen again?**

Yahweh said that no other tree would ever again grow that tall. [31:14]

**What did Yahweh bring to the earth on the day when Assyria went down to sheol?**

On that day Yahweh brought mourning to the earth [31:15]

**To where did Yahweh throw the great cedar of Assyria?**

Yahweh threw the great cedar of Assyria down to Sheol. [31:16]

**What happened to those nations that had lived in the shade of the great cedar of Assyria?**

Those nations that had lived in the shade of Assyria also went down to Sheol. [31:17]

**Who does Yahweh declare will be brought down to the lowest parts of the earth?**

Yahweh declares that Pharaoh and his servants will be brought down to the lowest parts of the earth. [31:18]

## **Ezekiel 32**

### **What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to lift up concerning Pharaoh?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to lift up a lament concerning Pharaoh. [32:2]

### **What two animals did Yahweh say Pharaoh was like?**

Yahweh said Pharaoh was like a young lion and like a monster in the seas. [32:2]

### **When Yahweh throws the sea monster into a field, what will happen to it?**

When the sea monster is thrown into a field, the birds and animals will eat it. [32:4]

### **What will happen in the heavens when Yahweh puts out the lamp of Egypt?**

The stars will be darkened, clouds will cover the sun, and the moon will not shine. [32:7]

### **How will the people of the nations react when they see Egypt's collapse?**

The people of the nations will be terrified and will shudder in horror. [32:9]

### **How will the people of the nations react when they see Egypt's collapse?**

The people of the nations will be terrified and will shudder in horror. [32:10]

### **Who will come against Egypt and devastate it?**

The king of Babylon will come against Egypt and devastate it. [32:11]

### **What does Yahweh declare will happen to man and animal in Egypt?**

Neither man nor animal will stir the waters of Egypt. [32:13]

### **What will the people of Egypt know when they are attacked and destroyed?**

The people of Egypt will know that the Lord is Yahweh. [32:15]

### **To where will the servants of Egypt and the daughters of majestic nations be thrown?**

They will be thrown down to the lowest earth with those who have gone down to the pit. [32:18]



**What will the warriors in Sheol declare about Egypt and her allies?**

They will declare that Egypt and her allies have come down here and will lie with the uncircumcised killed by the sword. [32:21]

**What did Elam on the land of the living?**

Elam brought their terrors on the land of the living. [32:24]

**What do the princes of the north and all the Sidonians who went down with the dead, carry?**

They carry their own shame. [32:30]

**In Sheol, what will comfort Pharaoh?**

In Sheol, Pharaoh will be comforted about all his servants who were killed by the sword. [32:31]

## Ezekiel 33

### **What does the watchman do for the people of the land?**

The watchman looks for the sword coming on the land, and blows his horn to warn the people. [33:3]

### **What happens if the people do not pay attention to the watchman?**

If the people do not pay attention, the sword kills the people and each one's blood is on his own head. [33:4]

### **What happens to the watchman if he does not warn the people?**

If the watchman does not warn the people, his blood will be required by Yahweh. [33:6]

### **Who did Yahweh make a watchman for the house of Israel?**

Yahweh made Ezekiel a watchman for the house of Israel. [33:7]

### **In what does Yahweh say he does not delight?**

Yahweh says he does not delight in the death of the wicked. [33:11]

### **What does Yahweh call the wicked to do?**

Yahweh calls the wicked to repent so they will live. [33:11]

### **What does Yahweh say will happen to a righteous person who then commits injustice?**

Yahweh says the righteous person who then commits injustice will die in the wickedness that he has committed. [33:12]

### **What does Yahweh say will happen to a righteous person who then commits injustice?**

Yahweh says the righteous person who then commits injustice will die in the wickedness that he has committed. [33:13]

### **What does Yahweh say will happen to a wicked person who repents and does what is just and right?**

Yahweh says the wicked person who repents and does what is just and right will surely live. [33:14]

**What does Yahweh say will happen to a wicked person who repents and does what is just and right?**

Yahweh says the wicked person who repents and does what is just and right will surely live. [33:15]

**What does Yahweh say will happen to a wicked person who repents and does what is just and right?**

Yahweh says the wicked person who repents and does what is just and right will surely live. [33:16]

**According to Yahweh, whose ways are not fair?**

According to Yahweh, the ways of the people of Israel are not fair. [33:17]

**How does Yahweh say he will judge each person of the house of Israel?**

Yahweh says he will judge each person according to his way. [33:20]

**What message did the fugitive bring to Ezekiel?**

The fugitive brought the message that the city of Jerusalem had been captured. [33:21]

**What were the people of Israel saying about the land that Abraham inherited?**

The people of Israel were saying the land that Abraham inherited was their possession. [33:24]

**Why does Yahweh question whether or not the people of Israel should really possess the land?**

Yahweh questions whether or not they should possess the land because they had depended on their swords and had done disgusting things. [33:25]

**Why does Yahweh question whether or not the people of Israel should really possess the land?**

Yahweh questions whether or not they should possess the land because they had depended on their swords and had done disgusting things. [33:26]

**What does Yahweh say he will do to the land because of the things the people of Israel have done?**

Yahweh says he will turn the land into a desolation and a horror because of the things the people of Israel have done. [33:28]

**What does Yahweh say he will do to the land because of the things the people of Israel have done?**

Yahweh says he will turn the land into a desolation and a horror because of the things the people of Israel have done. [33:29]

**What will the people of Israel do with the words of Ezekiel?**

The people of Israel will listen to the words of Ezekiel, but they will not obey them. [33:30]

**What will the people of Israel do with the words of Ezekiel?**

The people of Israel will listen to the words of Ezekiel, but they will not obey them. [33:31]

**What will the people of Israel know when everything comes to pass?**

The people of Israel will know that a prophet has been among them when everything comes to pass. [33:33]

**Ezekiel 34****What accusation does Yahweh make against the shepherds of Israel?**

Yahweh accuses the shepherds of Israel of not shepherding at all, but of slaughtering the best animals of the flock. [34:2]

**What accusation does Yahweh make against the shepherds of Israel?**

Yahweh accuses the shepherds of Israel of not shepherding at all, but of slaughtering the best animals of the flock. [34:3]

**How did the shepherds of Israel rule over the flock?**

The shepherds of Israel ruled over the flock with strength and violence. [34:4]

**What then happened to the flock?**

The flock was then scattered and became food for all the living beasts in the fields. [34:5]

**What then happened to the flock?**

The flock was then scattered and became food for all the living beasts in the fields. [34:6]

**Who were the shepherds of Israel actually guarding?**

The shepherds of Israel were actually guarding themselves. [34:8]

**What does Yahweh say he will do to the shepherds of Israel?**

Yahweh says he will dismiss the shepherds of Israel and take away the flock from their mouths. [34:10]

**From where does Yahweh say he will gather his flock?**

Yahweh says he will rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on the day of clouds and darkness. Then he will bring them out from among the peoples, he will gather them from the lands. [34:12]

**From where does Yahweh say he will gather his flock?**

Yahweh says he will rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on the day of clouds and darkness. Then he will bring them out from among the peoples, he will gather them from the lands. [34:13]

**How does Yahweh say he will shepherd?**

Yahweh says he will shepherd with justice. [34:16]

**Among what three groups does Yahweh say he will judge?**

Yahweh says he will judge among the sheep, rams, and goats. [34:17]

**What has been done to the weak and thin sheep?**

The weak and thin sheep have been pushed and gored until they have been scattered. [34:21]

**Who does Yahweh say he will raise up to shepherd the flock?**

Yahweh says he will raise up his servant David to shepherd the flock. [34:23]

**Who does Yahweh say he will raise up to shepherd the flock?**

Yahweh says he will raise up his servant David to shepherd the flock. [34:24]

**When Yahweh raises up his shepherd, what will Yahweh do so the sheep will live securely?**

Yahweh will make a covenant of peace with the sheep and remove the evil wild animals from the land. [34:25]

**What will the nations no longer be able to do to the sheep?**

The nations will no longer be able to plunder the sheep or bring insults against them. [34:28]

**What will the nations no longer be able to do to the sheep?**

The nations will no longer be able to plunder the sheep or bring insults against them. [34:29]

**What will the house of Israel then know?**

The house of Israel will then know that Yahweh their God is with them. [34:30]

**What does Yahweh declare to the sheep, the house of Israel?**

Yahweh declares that he is the God of the house of Israel, and that they are his people. [34:31]

**Ezekiel 35****Who does Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy against?**

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to prophesy against Mount Seir. [35:2]

**What does Yahweh say he will do to Mount Seir?**

Yahweh says he will make Mount Seir a desolation and a horror. [35:3]

**What did the people of Mount Seir do that is bringing the judgment of Yahweh upon them?**

The people of Mount Seir were hostile to the people of Israel, and poured them out into the hands of the sword. [35:5]

**According to Yahweh, what will pursue the people of Mount Seir, and why?**

Bloodshed will pursue the people of Mount Seir because they did not hate bloodshed. [35:6]

**What will fill the mountains in the area of Mount Seir?**

The mountains in the area of Mount Seir will be filled with its dead. [35:8]

**For how long will the desolation of Mount Seir last?**

The desolation of Mount Seir will be a perpetual desolation. [35:9]

**What did the people of Mount Seir say about the two nations of Yahweh's people Israel?**

The people of Mount Seir said that the two nations would become theirs. [35:10]

**What did Yahweh hear the people of Mount Seir saying against him?**

Yahweh heard the people of Mount Seir boasting against Yahweh and saying many things against him. [35:13]

**What will the entire earth do when the people of Mount Seir are desolated?**

The entire earth will rejoice when the people of Mount Seir are desolated. [35:14]



**What did the people of Mount Seir do when the people of Israel were desolated?**

The people of Mount Seir rejoiced when the people of Israel were desolated. [35:15]

**What will the entire earth do when the people of Mount Seir are desolated?**

The entire earth will rejoice when the people of Mount Seir are desolated. [35:15]

**Yahweh declares that all of what area will become a desolation?**

Yahweh declares that Mount Seir and all of Edom will become a desolation. [35:15]

**What will the people of Mount Seir and Edom know when Yahweh judges them?**

The people of Mount Seir and Edom will know that the Lord is Yahweh when Yahweh judges them. [35:15]

## **Ezekiel 36**

### **To what did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy to the mountains of Israel. [36:1]

### **What was the enemy saying about the mountains of Israel?**

The enemy was saying that the ancient high places had become their possession. [36:2]

### **Against whom did Yahweh speak in the fire of his fury?**

Yahweh spoke in the fire of his fury against Edom and all who took the land of Israel. [36:5]

### **What did Yahweh swear concerning the nations that surrounded Israel?**

Yahweh swore that the nations surrounding Israel would carry their own shame. [36:7]

### **Who did Yahweh say would soon be coming back to the mountains of Israel?**

Yahweh said the people of Israel would soon be coming back to the mountains of Israel. [36:8]

### **What will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel?**

Man and beast will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel. [36:10]

### **What will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel?**

Man and beast will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel. [36:11]

### **What will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel?**

Man and beast will be multiplied on the mountains of Israel. [36:12]

### **Why had Yahweh poured out his fury against Israel?**

Yahweh had poured out his fury against Israel because Israel had polluted the land by their idols. [36:18]

**What did the people of Israel do when they went to the nations?**

When they went to the nations, the people of Israel profaned Yahweh's holy name. [36:20]

**Why does Yahweh say he is going to bring back the house of Israel to the mountains of Israel?**

Yahweh says he is going to bring the house of Israel back for the sake of his holy name. [36:22]

**What did Yahweh say he would do to the house of Israel to enable them to walk in his statutes and keep his decrees?**

Yahweh said would set his Spirit in them and enable them to walk in his statutes and keep his decrees, so they would do them. [36:27]

**After Yahweh saves the house of Israel, what will the house of Israel think of their previous wicked ways?**

The house of Israel will hate themselves because of their previous wicked ways. [36:31]

**What does Yahweh say will happen to the cities and ruined places of Israel?**

Yahweh says the cities will be inhabited and the ruined places will be rebuilt. [36:33]

**Like what place will the land of Israel become?**

The land of Israel will become like the garden of Eden. [36:35]

**What will the other nations know when they see the inhabited cities and rebuilt ruins of Israel?**

The nations will know that the Lord is Yahweh, and that Yahweh rebuilt Israel. [36:35]

**What will the other nations know when they see the inhabited cities and rebuilt ruins of Israel?**

The nations will know that the Lord is Yahweh, and that Yahweh rebuilt Israel. [36:36]

**Yahweh says that the number of the people of Israel will become like what?**

The number of the people of Israel will become like the flocks in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts. [36:38]

**Ezekiel 37****Where did the Spirit of Yahweh set Ezekiel down, and what was there?**

The Spirit of Yahweh set Ezekiel down in the midst of a valley full of bones. [37:1]

**What question did Yahweh ask Ezekiel?**

Yahweh asked Ezekiel if the dry bones could live again. [37:3]

**What did Ezekiel prophesy would happen to the dry bones?**

Ezekiel prophesied that the dry bones would have flesh and live again. [37:5]

**What did Ezekiel prophesy would happen to the dry bones?**

Ezekiel prophesied that the dry bones would have flesh and live again. [37:6]

**What happened to the bones when Ezekiel prophesied to them the first time?**

When Ezekiel prophesied to them the first time, the dry bones drew together and flesh and skin covered them. [37:7]

**What happened to the bones when Ezekiel prophesied to them the first time?**

When Ezekiel prophesied to them the first time, the dry bones drew together and flesh and skin covered them. [37:8]

**What happened to the bones when Ezekiel prophesied to them the second time?**

When Ezekiel prophesied to the bones the second time, the Spirit came into them and they lived. [37:9]

**What happened to the bones when Ezekiel prophesied to them the second time?**

When Ezekiel prophesied to the bones the second time, the Spirit came into them and they lived. [37:10]

**According to Yahweh, who did the valley of dry bones represent?**

According to Yahweh, the valley of dry bones represented the entire house of Israel. [37:11]

**What did Yahweh say he would do for Israel, which was represented by the dry bones coming back to life?**

Yahweh said he would lift the people of Israel from their graves and bring them back to the land of Israel. [37:12]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with the two sticks?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to write a name on each stick, Judah and Joseph, and then bring both sticks together. [37:16]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do with the two sticks?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to write a name on each stick, Judah and Joseph, and then bring both sticks together. [37:17]

**What did Yahweh say was the meaning of Ezekiel's two sticks?**

Yahweh said he was joining the two branches of Joseph and Judah so that they would be one in his hand. [37:19]

**What did Yahweh say he was about to do for the people of Israel?**

Yahweh said he was about to gather the people of Israel on the mountains of Israel as one nation with one king. [37:21]

**What did Yahweh say he was about to do for the people of Israel?**

Yahweh said he was about to gather the people of Israel on the mountains of Israel as one nation with one king. [37:22]

**Who did Yahweh say would be king over the united nation of Israel?**

Yahweh said that his servant David would be king over the united nation of Israel. [37:24]

**According to Yahweh, how long would the king of Israel be their chief?**

According to Yahweh, the king of Israel would be their chief forever. [37:25]

**What did Yahweh say he would establish with Israel, and for how long?**

Yahweh said he would establish a covenant of peace with Israel for eternity. [37:26]

**Where did Yahweh say he would live forever?**

Yahweh said he would live forever in the midst of the people of Israel. [37:27]

**Where did Yahweh say he would live forever?**

Yahweh said he would live forever in the midst of the people of Israel. [37:28]

**Ezekiel 38****Against whom did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to prophesy?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to prophesy against Gog from the land of Magog. [38:2]

**With what does Yahweh say he will send out Gog?**

Yahweh says he will send out Gog with all his army, horses, and horsemen. [38:4]

**Who is the commander of all the troops from Persia, Cush, Put, Gomer, and Beth Togarmah?**

Gog is the commander of all these troops assembled with him. [38:7]

**To which land will Gog be called to go?**

Gog will go to a land that has recovered from the sword and that has been gathered from many peoples to the mountains of Israel. [38:8]

**What will be the wicked scheme that Gog devises?**

Gog will devise a scheme to capture booty and steal plunder from the quiet people living in safety. [38:11]

**What will be the wicked scheme that Gog devises?**

Gog will devise a scheme to capture booty and steal plunder from the quiet people living in safety. [38:12]

**At what part of the earth are the people who have been gathered from the nations living?**

The people gathered from the nations are living at the center of the earth. [38:12]

**From what direction does Gog and his great army come?**

Gog and his great army come from a place far away in the north. [38:15]

**Through whom had Yahweh spoken that Gog would come against Israel?**

Yahweh had spoken through the prophets of Israel that Gog would come against Israel. [38:17]

**How will Yahweh respond when Gog attacks the land of Israel?**

When Gog attacks the land of Israel, Yahweh will respond with fury in his nostrils. [38:18]

**What great event does Yahweh say will happen on the day Gog attacks Israel?**

Yahweh says that there will be a great earthquake on the day Gog attacks Israel. [38:19]

**What great event does Yahweh say will happen on the day Gog attacks Israel?**

Yahweh says that there will be a great earthquake on the day Gog attacks Israel. [38:20]

**With what will Yahweh judge Gog and his troops on that day?**

Yahweh will judge Gog and his troops on that day with plague, blood, flooding rains, hailstones of fire, and rains of brimstone. [38:22]

**In that day, what will Yahweh show in the eyes of many nations?**

In that day, Yahweh will show his greatness and holiness in the eyes of many nations. [38:23]



**Ezekiel 39**

**To where does Yahweh say he will bring Gog, chief of Meshech and Tubal?**

Yahweh says he will bring Gog to the mountains of Israel. [39:2]

**Where will Gog fall dead?**

Gog will fall dead on the mountains of Israel. [39:4]

**What will Yahweh do to Magog and to those living in safety on the coasts?**

Yahweh will send out fire to Magog and to those living in safety on the coasts. [39:6]

**What does Yahweh say he will no longer allow?**

Yahweh says he will no longer allow his holy name to be profaned. [39:7]

**Why will the ones living in the cities of Israel not need to gather wood for seven years?**

They will not need to gather wood for seven years because they will burn the weapons of Gog. [39:9]

**Why will the ones living in the cities of Israel not need to gather wood for seven years?**

They will not need to gather wood for seven years because they will burn the weapons of Gog. [39:10]

**Where will Gog and all his multitudes be buried?**

Gog and all his multitudes will be buried in the Valley of Hamon Gog. [39:11]

**What will the house of Israel have to do in order to purify the land?**

The house of Israel will have to bury Gog and all his multitudes for seven months in order to purify the land. [39:12]

**What large sacrifice is Yahweh making on the mountains of Israel?**

Yahweh is making a large sacrifice of the flesh of warriors and the blood of princes of the earth on the mountains of Israel. [39:17]

**What large sacrifice is Yahweh making on the mountains of Israel?**

Yahweh is making a large sacrifice of the flesh of warriors and the blood of princes of the earth on the mountains of Israel. [39:18]

**What will all the nations see when Yahweh makes his large sacrifice on the mountains of Israel?**

All the nations will see Yahweh's judgment and his hand. [39:21]

**Why did the house of Israel go into captivity?**

The house of Israel went into captivity because of their sins. [39:23]

**What will Yahweh do for the house of Israel when he acts in zeal for his holy name?**

Yahweh will restore the fortunes of Jacob and have compassion on the house of Israel. [39:25]

**What will the house of Israel forget when they rest in their land in safety?**

The house of Israel will forget their shame and all the treason in which they betrayed Yahweh. [39:26]

**What does Yahweh declare he will do when he pours out his Spirit on the house of Israel?**

Yahweh declares that when he pours out his Spirit on the house of Israel he will no longer hide his face from them. [39:29]

## **Ezekiel 40**

**For how many years had Ezekiel been a captive of the Babylonians?**

Ezekiel had been a captive of the Babylonians for twenty-five years. [40:1]

**How many years ago had the city of Jerusalem been captured?**

The city of Jerusalem had been captured fourteen years ago. [40:1]

**To where did God bring Ezekiel in visions?**

God brought Ezekiel to the land of Israel in visions. [40:2]

**What was Ezekiel told to report to the house of Israel?**

Ezekiel was told to report everything that he saw to the house of Israel. [40:4]

**In Ezekiel's vision, what was surrounding the temple complex?**

In Ezekiel's vision, a wall surrounded the temple complex. [40:5]

**What did the man who looked like bronze measure the width of the gateway entrance to be?**

The man measured the width of the gateway entrance to be ten cubits. [40:11]

**What did Ezekiel see carved on the walls?**

Ezekiel saw carvings of palm trees on the walls. [40:16]

**Where did the man who looked like bronze take Ezekiel after measuring in the area of the gate?**

The man took Ezekiel to the outer courtyard of the temple. [40:17]

**Through what did a person have to go in order to enter the inner courtyard?**

A person had to go through a gate in order to enter the inner courtyard. [40:23]

**How did the gates to the inner courtyard compare in size?**

The gates of the inner courtyard all had the same measurements. [40:28]

**How did the gates to the inner courtyard compare in size?**

The gates of the inner courtyard all had the same measurements. [40:29]

**For what were the rooms with doors by each of the inner gateways used?**

The rooms with doors by each of the inner gateways were used to rinse the burnt offerings. [40:38]

**For what were the four tables on either side of each gate used?**

The four tables on either side of each gate were used for slaughtering animals. [40:41]

**Whose sons were serving as priests in the temple?**

The sons of Zadok were serving as priests in the temple. [40:46]

**How large was the inner courtyard?**

The inner courtyard was one hundred cubits long and wide in a square. [40:47]

**What stood on either side of the sanctuary's portico?**

Columns stood on either side of the sanctuary's portico. [40:49]

**Ezekiel 41****To where did the man bring Ezekiel?**

The man brought Ezekiel into the temple's holy place. [41:1]

**Where did the man go next?**

The man went next into the very holy place. [41:3]

**How would someone get to the highest level of the house?**

To get to the highest level of the house, there was a stairway that went up through the middle level. [41:7]

**What was the size of the sanctuary and the width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary?**

The sanctuary and the front of the courtyard were both one hundred cubits. [41:13]

**What was the size of the sanctuary and the width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary?**

The sanctuary and the front of the courtyard were both one hundred cubits. [41:14]

**What was above the entryway to the inner sanctuary?**

Above the entryway to the inner sanctuary there was a measured pattern. [41:17]

**What two faces did each cherub have?**

Each cherub had the face of a man and the face of a young lion. [41:19]

**What did the man say about the wooden altar in front of the holy place?**

The man said that the wooden altar was the table that stood before Yahweh. [41:22]

**What was carved on the doors of the holy place?**

Cherubim and palm trees were carved on the doors of the holy place. [41:25]

## **Ezekiel 42**

**To which part of the temple did the man send Ezekiel?**

The man sent Ezekiel to the outer courtyard on the north side. [42:1]

**For what did the man say the northern and southern rooms in front of the outer courtyard were used?**

In those rooms the priests ate the most holy food, and put the most holy things. [42:13]

**What were the most holy things of the priests?**

The most holy things of the priests were the food offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering. [42:13]

**What kind of place did the man say the northern and southern rooms were?**

The man said the northern and southern rooms were holy places. [42:13]

**What did the priests have to do before going near the people?**

The priests had to dress in other clothes before going near the people. [42:14]

**What was the length of each side; north, south east and west?**

Each side was five hundred cubits long [42:16]

**What was the length of each side; north, south east and west?**

Each side was five hundred cubits long [42:17]

**What was the length of each side; north, south east and west?**

Each side was five hundred cubits long [42:18]

**What was the length of each side; north, south east and west?**

Each side was five hundred cubits long [42:19]

**What two things did the east gate separate between?**

The east gate separated between the holy and the not holy. [42:20]

## **Ezekiel 43**

**To which place did the man then bring Ezekiel?**

The man then brought Ezekiel to the gate that opened to the east. [43:1]

**What did Ezekiel see and from what direction did it come?**

Ezekiel saw the glory of the God of Israel come from the east. [43:2]

**How did Ezekiel get to the inner court?**

The Spirit lifted Ezekiel up and brought him to the inner court. [43:5]

**What did Yahweh say he would do in the inner court?**

Yahweh said he would place his throne there and would live in the midst of the people of Israel there forever. [43:7]

**In what way would the people of Israel no longer profane Yahweh's holy name?**

The people of Israel would no longer profane Yahweh's holy name by putting the thresholds of their shrines next to Yahweh's. [43:8]

**What did Yahweh tell Ezekiel to do about the house he had seen in the vision?**

Yahweh told Ezekiel to tell the house of Israel about the house he had seen in the vision. [43:10]

**What would Israel have to do in order for Ezekiel to reveal to them the design of the house?**

Israel would have to be ashamed of their sins in order for Ezekiel to reveal to them the design of the house. [43:10]

**What would Israel have to do in order for Ezekiel to reveal to them the design of the house?**

Israel would have to be ashamed of their sins in order for Ezekiel to reveal to them the design of the house. [43:11]

**What did Yahweh say was the regulation for the house?**

Yahweh said the regulation for the house was that it would be most holy. [43:12]



**For what would the hearth on the altar be used?**

The hearth on the altar would be used for the burnt offerings. [43:15]

**What things pointed upward on the hearth?**

There were four horns pointing upward on the hearth. [43:15]

**What did Yahweh say would be the sin offering for the Levitical priests on the first day?**

Yahweh said a bull from the cattle would be a sin offering for the Levitical priests on the first day. [43:19]

**Whose descendants would serve as the Levitical priests at this altar?**

The descendants of Zadok would serve as Levitical priests at this altar. [43:19]

**What would placing the blood on the altar do for it?**

Placing the blood on the altar would cleanse it and make atonement for it. [43:20]

**What did Yahweh say would be the sin offering for the Levitical priests on the second day?**

Yahweh said a male goat without blemish would be a sin offering for the Levitical priests on the second day. [43:22]

**What would the priests have to do for seven days in order to atone for the altar?**

The priests would have to prepare an unblemished bull and an unblemished ram as a burnt offering to atone for the altar. [43:25]

**What would the priests have to do for seven days in order to atone for the altar?**

The priests would have to prepare an unblemished bull and an unblemished ram as a burnt offering to atone for the altar. [43:26]

**On the eighth day and onward, what did Yahweh declare he would do?**

On the eighth day and onward, Yahweh declared he would accept them. [43:27]

**Ezekiel 44****To where did the man bring Ezekiel?**

The man brought Ezekiel back to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east. [44:1]

**What had been done to the east gate, and why?**

The east gate had been sealed shut, because Yahweh the God of Israel had come through it. [44:1]

**What had been done to the east gate, and why?**

The east gate had been sealed shut, because Yahweh the God of Israel had come through it. [44:2]

**About what was Ezekiel told to think regarding the house of Yahweh?**

Ezekiel was told to think about the house of Yahweh's entrance and exits. [44:5]

**What disgusting actions had the house of Israel done to profane Yahweh's sanctuary?**

The house of Israel had brought foreigners with uncircumcised hearts and flesh to the sanctuary. [44:7]

**Why did the house of Israel allow foreigners into Yahweh's sanctuary?**

The house of Israel allowed foreigners into Yahweh's sanctuary because Israel gave the duty of caring for the sanctuary to them. [44:8]

**What had the Levites done who wandered away from Yahweh?**

The Levites who had wandered away from Yahweh had performed sacrifices before their idols. [44:10]

**What had the Levites done who wandered away from Yahweh?**

The Levites who had wandered away from Yahweh had performed sacrifices before their idols. [44:11]

**What had the Levites done who wandered away from Yahweh?**

The Levites who had wandered away from Yahweh had performed sacrifices before their idols. [44:12]

**What did Yahweh say the Levites who wandered away from him would not be allowed to do?**

Yahweh declared that the Levites who wandered away from him would not come near him to act as his priests or to approach any of his holy things, the most holy things. [44:13]

**Where was Yahweh going to place the Levites who wandered away from him?**

Yahweh said he would place them as keepers of the work in the house, for all of its duties and everything that is done in it. [44:14]

**Why did Yahweh declare that the sons of Zadok would come near to him and would stand before him?**

The sons of Zadok would come near and stand before Yahweh because they fulfilled the duties of Yahweh's sanctuary when the people of Israel wandered away. [44:15]

**What kind of clothes were the priests to wear when they came to the gates of the inner courtyard, and why?**

The priests were to wear linen clothes when they came to the gates of the inner courtyard so that they did not sweat. [44:17]

**What kind of clothes were the priests to wear when they came to the gates of the inner courtyard, and why?**

The priests were to wear linen clothes when they came to the gates of the inner courtyard so that they did not sweat. [44:18]

**Who was the priest allowed to marry?**

The priest was allowed to marry a virgin from the line of the house of Israel, or a widow who was married to a priest. [44:22]

**Between what would the priests teach the people the difference?**

The priests would teach the people the difference between the holy and the profane, the unclean from the clean. [44:23]

**What was the priest's role in a dispute between Israelites?**

The priest stood to judge between the people with Yahweh's decrees, and had to be just. [44:24]

**Why did the priests not receive any property or inheritance in the land of Israel?**

The priests did not receive any property or inheritance in the land of Israel because Yahweh was their inheritance and property. [44:28]

**In short what were the priest to eat?**

The priests were to eat the food offerings. [44:29]

**What were the priests not to eat?**

The priests were not to eat any carcass or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast. [44:31]

**Ezekiel 45**

**What offering were the people to make to Yahweh when they cast lots to divide up the land?**

The people were to make an offering of a holy part of the land when they cast lots to divide up the land. [45:1]

**The holy part of the land would be a place for what?**

The holy part of the land would be a place for the houses and towns of the priests. [45:4]

**The holy part of the land would be a place for what?**

The holy part of the land would be a place for the houses and towns of the priests. [45:5]

**To whom would the area of the city belong?**

The area of the city would belong to all the house of Israel. [45:6]

**Whose land would be on both sides of the holy place and the city?**

The land of the princes of Israel would be on both sides of the holy place and the city. [45:7]

**What does Yahweh tell the princes of Israel to stop doing?**

Yahweh tells the princes of Israel to stop evicting Yahweh's people, and to remove violence and strife. [45:9]

**What does Yahweh say must be made accurate?**

Yahweh says the balances, ephahs, and baths must be made accurate. [45:10]

**How much oil from ten baths would be the regulation offering of oil?**

A tenth of a bath for every ten baths would be the regulation offering of oil. [45:14]

**To whom would the people of the land give their contributions?**

The people of the land would give their contributions to the prince in Israel. [45:16]

**Who would be responsible to furnish animals for the offerings at the festivals of the house of Israel?**

The prince in Israel would be responsible to furnish animals for the offerings. [45:17]

**When were the priests to offer an unblemished bull as a sin offering for the sanctuary?**

The priests were to offer an unblemished bull as a sin offering on the first day of the first month. [45:18]

**When would there be a seven day festival of unleavened bread?**

On the fourteenth day of the first month there would be a seven day festival of unleavened bread. [45:21]

**What offerings were to be given on the fifteenth day of the seventh month?**

On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, sin offerings, burnt offerings, food offerings, and offerings of oil were to be given. [45:25]

**Ezekiel 46**

**When did Yahweh say the east gate of the inner courtyard would be opened?**

Yahweh said the east gate of the inner courtyard would be opened on the Sabbath and on the day of the new moon. [46:1]

**Where would the prince of Israel worship?**

The prince of Israel would worship at the threshold of the inner gate. [46:2]

**What would be the burnt offering of the prince on the Sabbath day?**

The prince would offer six unblemished lambs and an unblemished ram. [46:4]

**What did Yahweh say was the rule about how the prince must leave after he worships?**

Yahweh said the rule was that the prince must leave by the same way he came in to worship. [46:8]

**What did Yahweh say was the rule about how the people must leave after they worship?**

Yahweh said the rule was that the people must leave by going out straight ahead from where they came in. [46:9]

**What would the prince have to do at a festival when he gave a freewill offering?**

The prince would have to open the east gate for the offering, and then go out and shut the gate after him. [46:12]

**What did Yahweh say would be given as a burnt offering every morning?**

Yahweh said an unblemished lamb one year old would be given as a burnt offering every morning. [46:13]

**According to Yahweh, who would receive the inheritance of the prince?**

The inheritance of the prince would be received by his sons. [46:17]

**Why did Yahweh say the prince must not take the people's inheritance away?**

The people's inheritance must not be taken away so they are not scattered from their own property. [46:18]

**Why were the priests not to bring the guilt, sin, and grain offerings out to the outer courtyard?**

The priests were not to bring the offerings out to the outer courtyard and so consecrate the people. [46:20]

**What would be done in the cooking hearths at the corners of the outer courtyard?**

In the cooking hearths at the corners of the outer courtyard, the temple servants would boil the people's sacrifices. [46:24]



**Ezekiel 47**

**Which direction did the temple face in Ezekiel's vision?**

The temple faced east. [47:1]

**What did Ezekiel see at the gate facing east?**

Ezekiel saw water flowing from the gate facing east, on its south side. [47:2]

**How deep did the water become that Ezekiel saw?**

The water became a river that was too deep to pass without swimming. [47:5]

**What were on both sides of the river?**

On both sides of the river, the riverbank had many trees. [47:7]

**To where did this water flow, and what did it do there?**

This water flowed to the Salt Sea and would restore it to freshness. [47:8]

**What would not be made fresh at the Salt Sea?**

The swamps and marshes would not be made fresh at the Salt Sea. [47:11]

**What kind of trees would grow on the riverbanks, and how would they grow?**

Edible trees would grow on the riverbanks, bearing fruit each month and never withering. [47:12]

**Who would receive two portions of land among the tribes of Israel?**

Joseph would receive two portions of land among the tribes of Israel. [47:13]

**The northern boundary of the land would reach to the border of what city?**

The northern boundary of the land would reach to the border of Damascus. [47:16]

**The northern boundary of the land would reach to the border of what city?**

The northern boundary of the land would reach to the border of Damascus. [47:17]

**What would be the eastern border of the land?**

The eastern border of the land would be the Jordan River. [47:18]

**What brook would be part of the southern border of the land?**

The Brook of Egypt would be part of the southern border of the land. [47:19]

**What would be the western border of the land?**

The western border of the land would be the Great Sea. [47:20]

**How were the Israelites to determine the inheritances for each person in the land?**

The Israelites were to throw lots to determine the inheritance for each person in the land. [47:22]

**Who were to be treated just like the native born people of Israel?**

Foreigners living in the midst of the Israelites were to be treated just like the native born people of Israel. [47:22]

**Ezekiel 48**

**Which tribe would be given the land on the northern border of Israel?**

The tribe of Dan would be given the land on the northern border of Israel. [48:1]

**Which tribe would be south of the border of the tribe of Dan?**

The tribe of Asher would be south of the border of Dan. [48:2]

**Which tribe would be south of the border of the tribe of Asher?**

The tribe of Naphtali would be south of the border of Asher. [48:3]

**In order, which four tribes would be south of the tribe of Naphtali?**

In order, the four tribes south of Naphtali would be Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben, and Judah. [48:4]

**In order, which four tribes would be south of the tribe of Naphtali?**

In order, the four tribes south of Naphtali would be Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben, and Judah. [48:5]

**In order, which four tribes would be south of the tribe of Naphtali?**

In order, the four tribes south of Naphtali would be Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben, and Judah. [48:6]

**In order, which four tribes would be south of the tribe of Naphtali?**

In order, the four tribes south of Naphtali would be Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben, and Judah. [48:7]

**What would be in the middle of the land located along the border with Judah?**

The temple would be in the middle of the land located along the border with Judah. [48:8]

**Who would live on the land surrounding the sanctuary of Yahweh?**

The priests of the line of Zadok would live on the land surrounding the sanctuary of Yahweh. [48:11]

**Who would live on the land bordering the priests' land?**

The Levites would live on the land bordering the priests' land. [48:13]

**For what would the remaining area of the holy offering of land be used?**

The remaining area of the holy offering of land would be used to produce food for those working in the city. [48:18]

**For whom would be the land on the eastern and western borders of the holy offering of land?**

The land on the eastern and western borders of the holy offering of land would be for the prince. [48:21]

**What was to be the southern boundary of Gad?**

The southern boundary of Gad was to extend from Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea. [48:28]

**How many gates were to be on the north side of the city, and what were they to be named for?**

There would be three gates on the north side of the city, with one being named for Reuben, one for Judah, and one for Levi. [48:30]

**How many gates were to be on the north side of the city, and what were they to be named for?**

There would be three gates on the north side of the city, with one being named for Reuben, one for Judah, and one for Levi. [48:31]

**What would be the city's name?**

The city's name would be "Yahweh is There". [48:35]

## translationWords

### abomination, abominable

#### Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [idol](#), [sacrifice](#))

#### Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:33-34
- Isaiah 01:12-13
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)
- Proverbs 26:24-26

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:8-9
- Ezekiel 7:20-22
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:7-9
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 33:27-29

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Matthew 01:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 33:23-24](#)



## **adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses**

### **Definition:**

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [sleep with](#), [unfaithful](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 20:12-14
- [Hosea 04:1-2](#)
- [Luke 16:18](#)
- [Matthew 05:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 12:38-40](#)
- [Revelation 02:22-23](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [13:06](#) ”Do not commit **adultery**.”

- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, H5005, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:32-34
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 23:43-45

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:14-16](#)
- [Isaiah 09:11-12](#)
- [Job 06:21-23](#)
- [Lamentations 04:12-13](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:24](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:23-24](#)

## Almighty

### Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:1-3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- [Revelation 01:7-8](#)
- Ruth 01:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:3-5](#)

## altar, altars

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 23:18-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 6:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:16](#)

- Ezekiel 9:1-2
- Ezekiel 40:46-47
- Ezekiel 41:21-24
- Ezekiel 43:13-14
- Ezekiel 43:15-17
- Ezekiel 43:20-21
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 47:1-2

## ambassador, representative

### Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: messenger)

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 06:19-20](#)
- [Luke 14:31-33](#)
- [Luke 19:13-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3887, H4135, H4136, H4397, H6735, H6737, G4243

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:15-16](#)

## Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- [Ezekiel 25:1-2](#)
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- [Zephaniah 02:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:1-2](#)



## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- [Amos 02:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:1-3](#)
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:9-10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. **\*15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. **\*15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. **\*15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:44-45](#)

## ancestor, father, forefather

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:31-32](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Acts 22:3-5](#)
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [John 04:11-12](#)
- Joshua 24:3-4
- [Malachi 03:6-7](#)
- [Mark 10:7-9](#)

- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 5:9-10
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 18:18
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:36-38
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 47:13-14

## angry, anger

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)
- [Isaiah 57:16-17](#)
- [John 06:52-53](#)
- [Mark 10:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- [Psalms 018:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:40-42](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:43](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:20-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:14](#)
- [Ezekiel 35:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:4](#)

- [Ezekiel 38:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:6-8](#)

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:20-21](#)
- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- [Acts 04:27-28](#)
- [Amos 06:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [James 05:13-15](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:9-12
- Ezekiel 28:14-15

## appoint, appoints, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 13:48-49](#)
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:37-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:9-10](#)



## Arabah

### Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:28-29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- [Zechariah 14:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:6-8](#)

## Arabia, Arabian

### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esau, Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, Sinai)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 02:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:19-21](#)

## Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

### Definition:

“Aram” was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- 2 Samuel 08:5-6
- [Amos 01:5](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)
- Genesis 31:19-21
- [Hosea 12:11-12](#)
- Psalm 060:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H758, H763, G689

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)

## armor

### Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), salvation, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- [Ephesians 06:10-11](#)
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- [Luke 11:21-23](#)
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2185, H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 38:4-6](#)

## arrogant

### Definition:

The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, **boast**, **proud**)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:49-50](#)
- Proverbs 16:5-6
- Psalm 056:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1346, H1347, H6277

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:49-50](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:16-17](#)

## Asher

### Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- Genesis 30:12-13
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H836

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:33-35](#)

## assembly, assemble

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- Ezra 10:12-13
- [Hebrews 12:22-24](#)
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:22-23



## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17-18
- [Micah 07:11-13](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. **\*20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**. **\*20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:22-23](#)

**astray, go astray, led astray, stray****Definition:**

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

- [1 John 03:7-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:10-13](#)
- Exodus 23:4-5
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 18:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 24:3-5](#)
- Psalms 058:3-5
- Psalms 119:109-110

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 13:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)

## atonement, atone, atones, atoned

### Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, [forgive](#), propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 43:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:13-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)

## avenge, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “to avenge” could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- [Ezekiel 25:15-17](#)
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:46-47
- [Romans 12:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 24:7-8
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 25:15-17

## Babylon, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Daniel 01:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:18-20
- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 23:14-15
- Ezekiel 23:22-23
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:7-8
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 32:11-12

**barren****Definition:**

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Job 03:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7909, H7921, G692, G4723

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 14:15-16](#)



## Bashan

### Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- [Amos 04:1-2](#)
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:17-18](#)

## Benjamin

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:30-32](#)

## betray, betrayer

### Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: Judas Iscariot, Jewish leaders, apostle)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [John 06:64-65](#)
- [John 13:21-22](#)
- [Matthew 10:2-4](#)
- [Matthew 26:20-22](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” | Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7411, G3860, G4273

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 20:27-29
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 39:25-27

## **bind, bond, bound**

### **Definition:**

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

**Bible References:**

- Leviticus 08:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:6-8

## **blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous, blasphemies**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [slander](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- [Acts 06:10-11](#)
- [Acts 26:9-11](#)
- [James 02:5-7](#)
- [John 10:32-33](#)
- [Luke 12:8-10](#)
- [Mark 14:63-65](#)
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:65-66](#)
- [Psalms 074:9-11](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 20:27-29](#)

## **bless, blessed, blessing**

### **Definition:**

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To “bless” could also be translated as “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 10:14-17](#)
- [Acts 13:32-34](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 44:3-4](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [Luke 06:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 26:26](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:5-6](#)
- [Romans 04:9-10](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** ”I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, ”May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 3:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:30-31](#)

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 016:4](#)
- [Psalms 105:28-30](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 18:10-11
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:32
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 24:6
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 32:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 43:18-19
- Ezekiel 43:20-21
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:15-16
- Ezekiel 45:18-20

## **bloodshed**

### **Definition:**

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- “The bloodshed” could be translated as “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “Through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “Innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “Bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you,” could be translated as “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 09:5-7
- [Hebrews 09:21-22](#)
- Isaiah 26:20-21
- [Matthew 23:29-31](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1818, G2210

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 14:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:38-39](#)

## **boast, boasts, boastful**

### **Definition:**

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

(See also: [proud](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 20:11-12
- [2 Timothy 03:1-4](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:15-17](#)
- Psalms 044:7-8

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 35:12-13](#)

## **bow and arrow**

### **Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:14-16
- [Habakkuk 03:9-10](#)
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Psalms 058:6-8

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 21:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:1-3](#)

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 27:33-35](#)
- Exodus 16:13-15
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 06:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 4:12-13](#)



- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 12:17-18
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 13:19
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 44:6-7

## breathe, breath

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: Adam, Paul, [word of God](#), [life](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 17:17-18
- Ecclesiastes 08:8-9
- Job 04:7-9
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 13:15-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, H7309, G1709, G1720, G4157

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 37:4-6

## bribe

### Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as, “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 07:7
- Isaiah 01:23
- **Micah 03:9-11**
- Proverbs 15:27-28

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

### Uses:

- **Ezekiel 16:32-34**
- **Ezekiel 22:10-12**

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- [Daniel 02:44-45](#)
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:7-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 9:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:3-4](#)

## brother, brothers

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 29:9-10](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 03:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 18:18
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 38:21-23

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- [Mark 12:32-34](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:42-43](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:13-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:13-15](#)



## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:32-33
- [Luke 16:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 27:6-8](#)
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 39:14-16](#)

## call, calls, calling, called

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 01 General Notes
- Ezekiel 02 General Notes
- Ezekiel 03 General Notes
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 38:7-9

## camel

### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, [unclean](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- [Mark 10:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 19:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 17:1-4

## captive, captivity

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, [seize](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:5-6](#)
- [Isaiah 20:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 43:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:10-11
- Ezekiel 3:14-15
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 40:1-2



## cedar

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:12-13
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:3-4](#)

## Chaldea, Chaldean

### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:22-23](#)

## chariot

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

\***12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 23:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:9-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:19-20](#)

## cherubim, cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: angel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:5-6
- 1 Kings 06:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- [Ezekiel 09:3-4](#)
- Genesis 03:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 10:1-2
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 10:6-8
- Ezekiel 11:22-23
- Ezekiel 28:14-15
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 41:18-20

## chief

### Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Luke 19:1-2](#)
- Psalm 004:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:19-21](#)

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believer](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 04:19-20](#)
- [Genesis 45:9-11](#)
- [Joshua 08:34-35](#)
- [Nehemiah 05:4-5](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 5:9-10
- Ezekiel 9:5-6
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 36:10-12



## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, [David](#), Jesus, [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 05:40-42](#)
- [John 01:40-42](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [John 04:25-26](#)
- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)

## clan

### Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40-43
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 11:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:30-32](#)

## **clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes**

### **Definition:**

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- [Ezekiel 24:13](#)
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- Proverbs 20:29-30
- Psalms 051:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H3001, H3722, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6565, H6663, H8552, H8562, G2511, G2512, G2513, G3689

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 24 General Notes
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Ezekiel 43:20-21
- Ezekiel 43:22-24
- Ezekiel 44:23-24

## comfort, comforter

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:8-11](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:3-4](#)
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- [Acts 20:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G2174, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 31:16
- Ezekiel 32:31-32

## command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

### Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)
- Numbers 01:17-19
- [Romans 07:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506



**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 10:6-8
- Ezekiel 12:7
- Ezekiel 24:18
- Ezekiel 37:7-8

## commander

### Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), centurion)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- [Daniel 02:14-16](#)
- [Mark 06:21-22](#)
- Proverbs 06:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 38:7-9](#)

## companion

### Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)
- [Hebrews 01:8-9](#)
- [Proverbs 02:16-17](#)
- [Psalms 038:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2271, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G4791, G4898, G4904

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)

## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

### Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:8-9
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:5-6
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 20:15-17

- [Ezekiel 36:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)

## condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 03:19-22](#)
- [Job 09:27-29](#)
- [John 05:24](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Matthew 12:7-8](#)
- [Proverbs 17:15-16](#)
- [Psalms 034:21-22](#)
- [Romans 05:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:43-45](#)

## confidence, confident

### Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: believe, believer, bold, [faithful](#), [hope](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H985, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G1340, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 29:15-16](#)

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)



## consume

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:8-10
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H1497, H1846, H2000, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3631, H3857, H4127, H4529, H4743, H5486, H5487, H5595, H6244, H6789, H7332, H7646, H7829, H8046, H8552, G355, G1159, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315, G5723

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 15:7-8](#)

- Ezekiel 19:12-13
- Ezekiel 19:14
- Ezekiel 28:18-19

## **contempt, contemptible**

### **Facts:**

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Daniel 12:1-2](#)
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 031:17-18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H936, H937, H959, H963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G1848

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 35:12-13](#)

## corrupt, corruption

### Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 20:42-44](#)
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- Genesis 06:11-12
- [Matthew 12:33-35](#)
- Psalm 014:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1097, H1605, H2254, H2610, H4167, H4743, H4889, H4893, H7843, H7844, H7845, G853, G862, G1311, G1312, G2585, G2704, G4550, G4595, G5349, G5351, G5356

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:42-44](#)

## **counsel, counselor, advice, advisor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

### **Bible References:**

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H2940, H3245, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H5843, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1010, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4824, G4825

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 7:26-27](#)

## courtyard, court

### Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, [judge](#), [king](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- [Luke 22:54-55](#)
- [Matthew 26:69-70](#)
- Numbers 03:24-26
- Psalms 065:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, G2681, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G4259

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 8:7-9
- Ezekiel 8:16
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 40:17-19
- Ezekiel 40:20-21
- Ezekiel 40:22-23
- Ezekiel 40:28-31
- Ezekiel 40:44-45
- Ezekiel 41:12-14
- Ezekiel 42:1-3
- Ezekiel 42:7-9
- Ezekiel 44:17-18
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:21-24

## covenant, covenants

### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: new covenant, [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- [Acts 07:6-8](#)
- Exodus 34:10-11
- [Galatians 03:17-18](#)
- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Joshua 24:24-26
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 14:22-25](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:8
- Ezekiel 16:59
- Ezekiel 16:62-63
- Ezekiel 17:13-14
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 20:36-38
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 37:26-28
- Ezekiel 44:6-7

## cow, calf, bull, cattle

### Definition:

The term “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: heifer, [ox](#), [yoke](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:7-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:6-8](#)

## **create, creation, Creator**

### **Definition:**

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), good news, world)

### **Bible References:**

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

- [1 Corinthians 11:9-10](#)
- [1 Peter 04:17-19](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:28-29

## creature

### Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#))

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 04:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 01:7-9](#)
- [Joshua 10:28](#)
- [Leviticus 11:46-47](#)
- [Revelation 19:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H255, H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G2226, G2937, G2938

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:7-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:20-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:27-29](#)

## **crown, to crown**

### **Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), olive)

### **Bible References:**

- [John 19:1-3](#)
- Lamentations 05:15-16
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:9-12
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 23:42

## Cush

### Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), [Ethiopia](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- [Ezekiel 29:8-10](#)
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Genesis 10:6-7
- Jeremiah 13:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 29:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:4-6](#)



## cut off

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- Proverbs 23:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257, H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 14:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:21](#)

- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 31:12
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 37:11-12

## cypress

### Definition:

The term “cypress” refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

- Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
- The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
- Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: ark, [Cyprus](#), [fir](#), [Lebanon](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 06:13-15](#)
- [Hosea 14:7-8](#)
- [Isaiah 44:14](#)
- [Isaiah 60:12-13](#)
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8645

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)

## Cyprus

### Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
- Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
- Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
- In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Barnabas, John Mark, [the sea](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 04:36-37](#)
- [Acts 13:4-5](#)
- [Acts 15:39-41](#)
- [Acts 27:3-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 23:10-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2953, G2954

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:6-7](#)

## Damascus

### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Assyria](#), believer, Syria)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- [Acts 09:1-2](#)
- [Acts 09:3-4](#)
- [Acts 26:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- Genesis 14:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1833, H1834, G1154

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)

## Dan

### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:34-35
- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 30:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:30-32](#)

## Daniel

### Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:6-7](#)
- [Daniel 05:29-31](#)
- [Daniel 07:27-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1840, H1841, G1158

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:1-3](#)

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:15-17](#)
- [Joshua 24:7](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 8:12-13
- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:7
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:11-13

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. **\*17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. **\*17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. **\*17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

**\*17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. **\*17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. **\*17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

**David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 34:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 37:24-25](#)

## day

### Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 20:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 10:4-6](#)
- [Ezra 06:13-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 09:14-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:1](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)

- [Ezekiel 45:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:25](#)

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [day](#), judgment day, [Lord](#), resurrection, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:3-5](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [2 Peter 03:10](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:1-2](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 13:5-7](#)

## death, die, dead

### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, **life**, **spirit**)

#### Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 15:20-21**
- **1 Thessalonians 04:16-18**
- **Acts 10:42-43**
- **Acts 14:19-20**
- **Colossians 02:13-15**
- **Colossians 02:20-23**
- **Genesis 02:15-17**
- **Genesis 34:27-29**
- **Matthew 16:27-28**
- **Romans 05:10-11**
- **Romans 05:12-13**
- **Romans 06:10-11**

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. \*

#### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1478, H4191, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8546, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G599, G615, G684, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G5053, G5054

#### Uses:

- **Ezekiel 3:16-19**



- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 13:19
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 18:18
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 18:27-28
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 24:15-17
- Ezekiel 24:18
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 31:13-14
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 44:25-27

## deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 03:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Leviticus 19:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- [Micah 06:11-12](#)

{{tag>publish review}}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 14:9-11](#)

## declare, declaration

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: proclaim)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:23-24
- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- [Amos 02:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 05:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:11-12](#)

- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 14:15-16
- Ezekiel 14:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:8
- Ezekiel 16:13-14
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:62-63
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:8-9
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:32
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:33-34

- Ezekiel 24:14
- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 32:13-14
- Ezekiel 32:15-16
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:10-11
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 37:13-14
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:9-10
- Ezekiel 43:18-19
- Ezekiel 44:4-5
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 45:9-12
- Ezekiel 47:21-23
- Ezekiel 48:27-29

## decree

### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law, proclaim)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- [Acts 17:5-7](#)
- [Daniel 02:12-13](#)
- Esther 01:21-22
- [Luke 02:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:25-26](#)

- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 43:10-11
- Ezekiel 44:23-24



## defile, be defiled

### Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- [Mark 07:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 15:10-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 7:20-22
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:10-11
- Ezekiel 18:14-15
- Ezekiel 23:38-39
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 28:18-19
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 37:21-23

## descendant, descended from

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” **\*04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” **\*05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” **\*17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!” **\*18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. **\*21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. **\*48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)

## desecrate

### Definition:

The term “desecrate” means to damage or contaminate a sacred place or object in such a way that it is unacceptable for use in worship.

- Often desecrating something involves showing great disrespect for it.
- For example, pagan kings desecrated special dishes from God’s temple by using them for parties at their palace.
- Bones from dead people were used by enemies to desecrate the altar in God’s temple.
- This term could be translated as “cause to be unholy” or “dishonor by making impure” or “disrespectfully profane” or “cause to be impure.”

(See also: [altar](#), [defile](#), [dishonor](#), [profane](#), [pure](#), [temple](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 24:4-6](#)
- [Isaiah 30:22](#)
- [Psalms 074:7-8](#)
- [Psalms 089:38-40](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2610, H2930, G953

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:25-26](#)

## **desert, wilderness**

### **Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 13:16-18](#)
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- [John 03:14-15](#)
- [Luke 01:80](#)
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 01:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:7-8](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 6:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:33-35](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:36-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:42](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:4-5](#)

- Ezekiel 34:25-27

## desolate, desolation

### Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [devastate](#), [ruin](#), [waste](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:17-19
- [Acts 01:20](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- Lamentations 03:9-11
- [Luke 11:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 12:24-25](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H820, H910, H1327, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4876, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7612, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:13-14](#)

- Ezekiel 6:4-5
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 30:12
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:12-13
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:35-36
- Ezekiel 36:37-38



## **devastate, devastation**

### **Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

### **Bible References:**

- [Daniel 08:24-25](#)
- [Jeremiah 04:13-15](#)
- [Numbers 21:29-30](#)
- [Zephaniah 01:12-13](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1110, H1238, H2721, H1826, H3615, H3772, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7843, H8074, H8077

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 23:33-34](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:11-12](#)

## devour

### Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:8-9](#)
- [Amos 01:9-10](#)
- Exodus 24:16-18
- [Ezekiel 16:20-22](#)
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 23:13-15](#)
- Psalms 021:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:20-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:45-47](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 35:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:13-15](#)

## **discipline, disciplines, disciplined, self-discipline**

### **Definition:**

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### **Bible References:**

- [Ephesians 06:4](#)
- [Hebrews 12:4-6](#)
- Proverbs 19:17-18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4148

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 23:48-49](#)

## dishonor, dishonorable

### Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, honor)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [John 08:48-49](#)
- [Leviticus 18:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: 03639 05034 06173 07036 07043 818 819 2617 pizza

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)

## **disperse, dispersion**

### **Definition:**

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believer, persecute)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:22-24](#)
- [Psalms 018:13-14](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2219, H4127, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G1287, G1290, G4650

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 12:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:4-6](#)

## divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

### Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, [false god](#), [magic](#), sorcery)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- [Acts 16:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:24-25](#)
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 12:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:21-23](#)

## divorce

### Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term “to divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term “to divorce” is “to send away” or “to formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- [Luke 16:18](#)
- [Mark 10:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 05:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 19:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 44:20-22](#)

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:3-4
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 23:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:14-15](#)



## doom

### Definition:

The term “doom” refers to a judgment of condemnation with no possibility of appeal or escape.

- As the nation of Israel was being taken captive into Babylon, the prophet Ezekiel said, “doom has come upon them.”
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “disaster” or “punishment” or “hopeless ruin.”

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 07:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:8-9](#)
- Isaiah 06:4-5
- Psalms 092:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1820, H3117, H6256, H6843, H8045

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:8-9](#)

## doorpost

### Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: [Egypt](#), Passover)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:31-32
- Deuteronomy 11:20-21
- Exodus 12:5-8
- Isaiah 57:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H4201

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:48-49](#)
- [Ezekiel 41:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:1-2](#)

## dove, pigeon

### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: olive, innocent, [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 08:8-9
- [Luke 02:22-24](#)
- [Mark 01:9-11](#)
- [Matthew 03:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 21:12-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:14-16](#)

## drink offering

### Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be “offering of grape wine.”
- When Paul says he is being “poured out like an offering” this could also be translated as “I am completely committed to teaching God’s message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 25:28-30
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- Genesis 35:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:11-13](#)
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:12-14
- [Luke 07:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:34-35](#)
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7302, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 23:42](#)

## eagle

### Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#))

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23-24
- [Daniel 07:4-5](#)
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- [Revelation 04:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, H7360, G105

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:12-14](#)

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- [Daniel 04:35](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Zechariah 06:5-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:31-33](#)

- Ezekiel 31:12
- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 31:16
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:3-4



## Eden, garden of Eden

### Facts:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

- The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
- The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
- The word “Eden” comes from a Hebrew word meaning “to take great delight in.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Adam, Euphrates River, Eve)

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 28:11-13](#)
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 04:16-17
- [Joel 02:3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5729, H5731

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 28:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:16](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:35-36](#)

## Edom, Edomite, Idumea

### Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), birthright, Esau, Obadiah, [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- [Obadiah 01:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:56-58](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 35:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:4](#)

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), [Nile River](#), patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:25-26
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:7
- Ezekiel 20:36-38
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:18-19
- Ezekiel 23:26-27
- Ezekiel 27:6-7
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:6-7
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 29:19-20
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:19-21

## Elam

### Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), Shem)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:5-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 32:24-25](#)

## elder

### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 8:10-11
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:2-3

## enslave, in bondage

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Genesis 15:12-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 30:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 34:25-27](#)

**envy, covet****Definition:**

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

**Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 Peter 02:1-3](#)
- Exodus 20:15-17
- [Mark 07:20-23](#)
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- [Romans 01:29-31](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 31:8-9](#)



## Ephraim

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- [John 11:54-55](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:4-7](#)

## everlasting, eternal, eternity

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:1-2](#)
- [1 John 05:11-12](#)
- [Acts 13:46-47](#)
- [Genesis 17:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 48:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 09:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 40:27-28](#)
- [Luke 18:18-21](#)
- [Romans 05:20-21](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5703, H5769, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166

**Uses:**

- **Ezekiel 37:26-28**

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), good, [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- [Luke 06:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:11-12](#)
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02:04](#) ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

#### Uses:

- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 5:5-6
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 7:10-11
- Ezekiel 8:7-9
- Ezekiel 09 General Notes
- Ezekiel 11:2-4
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:15-16
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:24

- Ezekiel 18:27-28
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 22 General Notes
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- Ezekiel 30:12
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 38:10-12

## exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:5-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:47-49](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 19:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:25-27](#)

## exile, the Exile

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- [Daniel 02:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1547, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:3](#)



- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:7
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 25:3-5

## Ezekiel

### Facts:

Ezekiel was a prophet of God during the exile period when many Jews were taken to Babylon.

- Ezekiel was a priest living in the kingdom of Judah when he and many other Jews were captured by the Babylonian army.
- For over twenty years, he and his wife lived in Babylon near a river, and the Jews came there to hear him speak messages from God.
- Among other things, Ezekiel prophesied about the destruction and restoration of Jerusalem and the temple.
- He also prophesied about the future kingdom of the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [exile](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:22-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3168

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:22-24](#)

## face

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:8-9
- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 4:6-8
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 7:20-22
- Ezekiel 8:16
- Ezekiel 10:9-11
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:4-5
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 40:28-31
- Ezekiel 42:15
- Ezekiel 44:1-3
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:19-20
- Ezekiel 47:1-2

## **faithful, faithfulness**

### **Definition:**

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: faith, believe)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:9
- **1 Thessalonians 05:23-24**
- **3 John 01:5-8**
- **Colossians 01:7-8**
- Genesis 24:49
- Isaiah 01:26
- Joshua 02:14
- **Luke 16:10-12**
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Psalm 012:1

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.

- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, G4103

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)

## **faithless, faithlessness**

### **Definition:**

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: unbeliever, [unfaithful](#), disobey)

### **Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 43:6-8](#)
- Ezra 09:1-2
- Jeremiah 02:18-19
- Proverbs 02:20-22
- [Revelation 21:7-8](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G571

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 37:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:9](#)

## false prophet

### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), true)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 04:1-3](#)
- [2 Peter 02:1-3](#)
- [Acts 13:6-8](#)
- [Luke 06:26](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 24:23-25](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5578

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:28-29](#)



## famine

### Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- Genesis 12:10-13
- Genesis 45:4-6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- [Luke 04:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 24:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 6:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:21](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:29-31](#)

## **favor, favors, favorable, favoritism**

### **Definition:**

To “favor” is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term “favoritism” means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- **2 Corinthians 01:11**
- **Acts 24:26-27**
- Genesis 41:14-16
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Genesis 50:4-6

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1293, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5375, H5414, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965  
pizza

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 36:8-9

## fear, fears, afraid

### Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- [Jonah 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 10:28-31](#)
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:6
- Ezekiel 3:8-9
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 32:30
- Ezekiel 34:28-29

## feast

### Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 26:30-31](#)
- [Genesis 29:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 40:20-23](#)
- [Jude 01:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:41-44](#)
- [Luke 14:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 36:37-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:23-24](#)

## **festival**

### **Definition:**

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Exodus 05:1-2
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:11-12](#)

**fir****Definition:**

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as “evergreen” trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

**Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)
- [Isaiah 37:24-25](#)
- [Isaiah 41:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 44:14](#)
- [Isaiah 60:12-13](#)
- [Psalms 104:16-18](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)



## fire

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [John 15:5-7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- Nehemiah 01:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:27-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 15:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 15:7-8](#)

- Ezekiel 19:12-13
- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 28:18-19
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 39:4-6

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 29:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 43:32-34](#)
- [Luke 02:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:25-26

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- Exodus 23:16-17
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- Psalms 105:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:40-41](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:30-31](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:13-14](#)

**fishermen, fishers****Definition:**

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term “fishers” is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

**Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 47:9-10](#)
- [Isaiah 19:7-8](#)
- [Luke 05:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 04:18-20](#)
- [Matthew 13:47-48](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1728, H1771, H2271, G231, G1903

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 47:9-10](#)

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- [Ephesians 06:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 02:24-25](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Romans 08:6-8](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 32:5-6
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 37:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 40:42-43
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:8-9



## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [ox](#), pig, [sheep](#), )

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 08:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:30-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 24:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:37-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:22-24](#)

- Ezekiel 45:13-15
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 46:6-8

## flood

### Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, [Noah](#))

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 11:10](#)
- [Genesis 07:6-7](#)
- [Luke 06:46-48](#)
- [Matthew 07:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 24:37-39](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H2229, H2230, H2975, H3999, H5104, H5140, H5158, H5674, H6556, H7641, H7857, H7858, H8241, G2627, G4132, G4215, G4216

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 13:13-14

## **fool, fools, foolish, folly**

### **Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Ecclesiastes 01:16-18
- [Ephesians 05:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 03:1-3](#)
- Genesis 31:26-28
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)
- Proverbs 13:15-16
- Psalms 049:12-13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 13:1-4](#)

## foreigner, foreign, alien

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17-18
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- [Luke 17:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 17:24-25](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 11:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:36-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:12](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:6-7](#)

- Ezekiel 44:8-9
- Ezekiel 47:21-23

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- [Daniel 07:17-18](#)
- Exodus 15:17-18
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- [Hebrews 10:11-14](#)
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5705, H5331, H5703, H5769, H5865, H5957, G165, G166, G1336



**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 43:6-8

## **forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 04:31-32](#)
- [Genesis 50:15-17](#)
- [Isaiah 55:6-7](#)
- [Joshua 24:19-20](#)
- [Luke 05:20-21](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)
- [Psalms 025:17-19](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3722, H5375, H5545, H5546, H5547, G859, G863, G5483

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 16:62-63](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)

**forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook****Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- [Daniel 11:29-30](#)
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- [Matthew 27:45-47](#)
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:17-18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 8:12-13](#)

- [Ezekiel 20:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:4](#)

## foundation, founded

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- [Ezekiel 13:13-14](#)
- [Luke 14:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 13:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 25:34-36](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:4-5

## free, freedom, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 61:1](#)
- [Leviticus 25:10](#)
- [Romans 06:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G572, G629, G630, G859, G558, G572, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486



**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Ezekiel 46:16-18

## freewill offering

### Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [Ezra](#), [feast](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [law](#), [sin offering](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 46:11-12](#)

## fruit, fruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces—”that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”

- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

#### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 17:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:11-12](#)

## fulfill, fulfilled

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), minister, [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- [Luke 04:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24:04](#) John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- [40:03](#) The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- [42:07](#) Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- [43:05](#) “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- [43:07](#) “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:15-16](#)

## Gad

### Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18-19
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:33-35](#)

## gate, gate bar

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Acts 10:17-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 8:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 9:1-2](#)



- Ezekiel 11:1
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 40:5-7
- Ezekiel 40:20-21
- Ezekiel 40:22-23
- Ezekiel 40:24-25
- Ezekiel 40:26-27
- Ezekiel 40:28-31
- Ezekiel 42:15
- Ezekiel 43:1-2
- Ezekiel 44:1-3
- Ezekiel 44:17-18
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:19-20
- Ezekiel 47:1-2
- Ezekiel 48:30-32

## gift, gifts

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:1-3](#)
- [2 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 11:17-18](#)
- [Acts 24:17-19](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:39

## Gilead

### Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- [Amos 01:3-4](#)
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:18-20](#)

## **glorify, glorifies**

### **Definition:**

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means “to give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [exalt](#), [glory](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 06:19-20](#)
- [1 Peter 04:15-16](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [John 12:27-29](#)
- [Luke 18:42-43](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)
- [Romans 08:16-17](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3513, H6286, G1392, G1740, G4888

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 28:20-22

## **glory, glorious**

### **Definition:**

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Thessalonians 02:5-6](#)
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:1-4](#)
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- Numbers 14:9-10
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 04:18-20](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3519, H3520, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 3:12-13
- Ezekiel 3:22-23
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 11:22-23
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 43:1-2
- Ezekiel 44:4-5



## goat, kid

### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), unrighteous, [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:31-32
- Genesis 31:10-11
- Genesis 37:31-33
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:13-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:23-24](#)

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:14-16](#)
- [Ezra 03:1-2](#)

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 11:2-4
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 20:7
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 28:14-15
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 43:1-2
- Ezekiel 44:1-3

## god, gods, goddess

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, [idol](#), demon, [image](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Acts 19:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 04:8-9](#)
- Genesis 35:1-3
- Isaiah 44:20
- Psalms 081:8-10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H5236, H8267, G2299

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:1-3](#)

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01:14-15](#)
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 02:31-33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:13](#)

## **governor, govern, proconsul, government**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), [power](#), [province](#), Rome, [ruler](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 23:22-24](#)
- [Acts 26:30-32](#)
- [Mark 13:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 27:1-2](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:22-23](#)



## grain

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- [Luke 06:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 13:7-9](#)
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 36:29-31](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:6-8](#)

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [sin offering](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19-20
- Leviticus 02:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 44:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:13-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:19-20](#)

## grape

### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- [Hosea 09:10](#)
- Job 15:31-33
- [Luke 06:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 21:33-34](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 18:1-2](#)

## guilt offering

### Definition:

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [sin offering](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:3-4
- 2 Kings 12:15-16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Numbers 06:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 42:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:19-20](#)

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:6-7
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [John 19:4-6](#)
- [Jonah 01:14-16](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [39:02](#) They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- [39:11](#) After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- [40:04](#) Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- [49:10](#) Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 44:13-14

## Hades, Sheol

### Definition:

The terms “Hades” and “Sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “Sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “Hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “Hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

### Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “Sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “Hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the words “Sheol” and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:29-31](#)
- [Genesis 44:27-29](#)
- [Jonah 02:1-2](#)
- [Luke 10:13-15](#)
- [Luke 16:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 01:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 31:16
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:26-27



## Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites

### Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), Syria, Zedekiah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 08:9-10
- [Amos 06:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)

## hand, right hand, to hand over

### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, [power](#))

#### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [John 03:34-36](#)
- [Mark 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)

#### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

#### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:16-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 6:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:20-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:33-35](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:24](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:30-31](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:13-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:8-10](#)

- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:12
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 34:9-10
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:18-20
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 40:1-2

## Haran

### Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Caleb](#), [Canaan](#), [Levite](#), [Lot](#), [Terah](#), [Ur](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12-13
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:22-23](#)

## hard, hardness, harden

### Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 11:22-23](#)
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Exodus 14:4-5

- [Hebrews 04:6-7](#)
- [John 12:39-40](#)
- [Matthew 19:7-9](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 2:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:4-7](#)

## **harp**

### **Definition:**

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), psalm, Saul (OT))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- [Amos 05:23-24](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- Psalm 033:1-3
- [Revelation 05:8](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 26:12-14](#)



## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 16:9-12
- Ezekiel 22:30-31

## heal, cure

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:14-16](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:17-19](#)
- [Luke 08:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 13:15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. **\*21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. **\*26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” **\*26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. **\*32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” **\*44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. **\*44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.” **\*49:02** ] Jesus did many

miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 34:4-6](#)

## heart, hearts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 03:13-15](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 15:7-9](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 02:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 05:5-8](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:4-5
- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:4-5
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:4-5
- Ezekiel 44:8-9

## heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- [John 03:12-13](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 29:4-5
- Ezekiel 31:5-7
- Ezekiel 31:13-14
- Ezekiel 32:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:7-8



## high places

### Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:3-4
- [Amos 04:12-13](#)
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- [Ezekiel 06:1-3](#)
- [Habakkuk 03:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 6:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 6:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:25-26](#)

- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 20:27-29
- Ezekiel 36:1-3

## Hittite

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:20-21](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:7-8
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:44-45](#)

## Holy One

### Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:20-21](#)
- [2 Kings 19:20-22](#)
- [Acts 02:27-28](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:15-17](#)
- [Isaiah 41:14-15](#)
- [Luke 04:33-34](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H376, H6918, G40, G3741

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 39:7-8](#)

## **holy place**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- [Acts 06:12-15](#)
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- [Ezekiel 41:1-2](#)
- Ezra 09:8-9
- [Hebrews 09:1-2](#)
- Leviticus 16:17-19
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)
- [Revelation 15:5-6](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 37:26-28
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:15-17
- Ezekiel 41:21-24
- Ezekiel 44:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:3-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Ezekiel 48:21-22

## **Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit**

### **Facts:**

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), God the Father, Son of God, [gift](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- Psalms 051:10-11

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:10-12
- Ezekiel 1:19-21
- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:12-13
- Ezekiel 3:14-15
- Ezekiel 3:24-25
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 11:1
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:24-25
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 43:3-5



## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:11-13](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Lamentations 04:1-2](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Matthew 07:6](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2623, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G3741, G3742,

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- Ezekiel 28:14-15
- Ezekiel 28:18-19
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 38:14-16
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 42 General Notes
- Ezekiel 42:13-14
- Ezekiel 42:20
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 43:12
- Ezekiel 44:13-14
- Ezekiel 44:19
- Ezekiel 45:1-2
- Ezekiel 45:3-5
- Ezekiel 46:19-20
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Ezekiel 48:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:17-18
- Ezekiel 48:19-20

## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:6-7
- Proverbs 05:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 3:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)

## hoof, hoofed, hooves

### Facts:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

- An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
- Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
- God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [camel](#), [cow](#), [donkey](#), [goat](#), [ox](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 14:6-7
- [Ezekiel 26:9-11](#)
- Leviticus 11:3-4
- Psalms 069:30-31

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 26:9-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:13-14](#)

## hope, hoped, hopes

### Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- [1 Thessalonians 02:17-20](#)
- [Acts 24:14-16](#)
- [Acts 26:6-8](#)
- [Acts 27:19-20](#)
- [Colossians 01:4-6](#)
- Job 11:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 19:5-7

## horror, horrified

### Definition:

The term “horror” refers to a very intense feeling of fear or terror. The person who is feeling horror is said to be “horrified.”

- Horror is more dramatic and intense than ordinary fear.
- Usually when someone is horrified they are also in shock or stunned.

(See also: [fear](#), [terror](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 28:36-37
- [Ezekiel 23:33-34](#)
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Job 21:4-6
- Psalms 055:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 23:33-34](#)

## horse

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 06:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:9-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:19-20](#)



## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- [Genesis 39:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 08:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 15:24-26](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:4-5
- Ezekiel 2:7-8
- Ezekiel 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:26-27
- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 5:3-4
- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:10-11
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 10:18-19
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:3
- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 23:38-39
- Ezekiel 24:3-5
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 37:11-12

- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 40:46-47
- Ezekiel 41:5-7
- Ezekiel 41:25-26
- Ezekiel 42:15
- Ezekiel 43:3-5
- Ezekiel 44:4-5
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:30-31
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 47:1-2

## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshipping God” or “a place for worshipping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 03:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:8-9](#)
- [Ezra 05:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 28:16-17](#)
- [Judges 18:30-31](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 8:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:16](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:1](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:3-5](#)

## **humble, humbles, humbled, humility**

### **Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 14:10-11](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:11-12](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. **\*34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 21:25-27](#)

## humiliate, humiliation

### Facts:

The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”

- When God in humbling someone it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”

(See also: disgrace · [humble](#) · [shame](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Ezra 09:5-6
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:53-55](#)

## idol, idolatrous

### Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 15:19-21](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- Exodus 32:1-2
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- Psalm 031:5-7
- [Romans 02:21-22](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*13:05** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.” **\*13:12** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it! **\*14:03** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.” **\*18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice. **\*19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 6:4-5
- Ezekiel 7:20-22
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:10-11
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:14-15
- Ezekiel 20:7
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:24-25
- Ezekiel 37:21-23
- Ezekiel 44:10-12



## **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure**

### **Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [idol](#), image of God)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- [Matthew 22:20-22](#)
- [Romans 01:22-23](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 8:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:20-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:20-22](#)

## incense

### Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, [burnt offering](#), frankincense)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 8:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:40-41](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:40-41](#)

## **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir**

### **Definition:**

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:28-29
- Ezekiel 45:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:16-18
- Ezekiel 47:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:27-29

## iniquity, iniquities

### Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 13:40-43](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 4:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:17-19](#)

- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 11:2-4
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 18:18
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 24:22-24
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 32:26-27
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 43:10-11

## inquire

### Facts:

The term “inquire” means to ask someone for information. The expression “inquire of” is often used to refer to asking God for wisdom or help.

- The Old Testament records several instances where people inquired of God.
- The word can also be used of a king or government official making a search through official written records.
- Depending on the context, “inquire” could be translated as “ask” or “ask for information.”
- The expression “inquire of Yahweh” could be translated as “ask Yahweh for guidance” or “ask Yahweh what to do.”
- To “inquire after” something could be translated as “ask questions about” or “ask for information about.”
- When Yahweh says “I will not be inquired of by you,” this could be translated as “I will not allow you to ask me for information” or “you will not be permitted to seek help from me.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:17-19
- [Ezekiel 20:1](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:30-32](#)
- Ezra 07:14-16
- Job 10:4-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:1](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:30-32](#)

## integrity

### Definition:

The term “integrity” refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “integrity” could also be translated as “honesty” or “moral uprightness” or “behaving truthfully” or “acting in a trustworthy, honest manner.”

(See also: [Daniel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Job 02:3
- Job 04:4-6
- Proverbs 10:8-9
- Psalm 026:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 28:14-15](#)



## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 24:21](#)
- [Mark 12:28-31](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. **\*09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. **\*09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. **\*10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” **\*14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. **\*15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. **\*15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. **\*16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. **\*43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 4:12-13
- Ezekiel 5:3-4
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 10:18-19
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 11:13
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 11:22-23
- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 17:22-23
- Ezekiel 18:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 22:6-9

- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:10-11
- Ezekiel 35:12-13
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 37:11-12
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 39:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 43:1-2
- Ezekiel 44:1-3
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:15-16
- Ezekiel 45:6-7
- Ezekiel 47:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Ezekiel 48:10-12

## Issachar

### Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- Genesis 30:16-18
- Joshua 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:33-35](#)

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 39:25-27

## **jealous, jealousy**

### **Definition:**

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Corinthians 12:20-21](#)
- Deuteronomy 05:9-10
- Exodus 20:4-6
- [Ezekiel 36:4-6](#)
- Joshua 24:19-20
- [Nahum 01:2-3](#)
- [Romans 13:13-14](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 8:5-6



## Jehoiachin

### Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months, and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
- During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like the ones his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Judah](#), [Manasseh](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:8
- 2 Kings 24:15-17
- Esther 02:5-6
- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- Jeremiah 22:24-26
- Jeremiah 37:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, [temple](#), Zion)

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 04:9-11](#)
- [Luke 13:4-5](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Mark 03:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 4:6-8
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 5:5-6
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 14:21
- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 15:5-6
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:18-20
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 36:37-38

## Job

### Facts:

Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

- Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
- It is thought that he lived during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
- The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
- After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
- The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Esau](#), [flood](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [James 05:9-11](#)
- [Job 01:1-3](#)
- [Job 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:19-20](#)

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- [John 01:26-28](#)
- [John 03:25-26](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 03:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 19:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land. **\*15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho. **\*19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:18-20](#)

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [John 04:4-5](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. **\*08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt. **\*08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him. **\*08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. **\*08:09** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. **\*09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)

- [Ezekiel 47:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:30-32](#)

## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

(See also: [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- [James 01:1-3](#)
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- [Philemon 01:4-7](#)
- Psalm 048:1-3
- [Romans 15:30-32](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [33:07](#) “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”



- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2304, H2305, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5970, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2167, G2744, G3685, G4640, G5463, G5479

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 7:5-7
- Ezekiel 24:25-27
- Ezekiel 36:4

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), [Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- [Luke 03:33-35](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 8:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:4-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:30-32](#)

## Judah, kingdom of Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:7-8
- [Hosea 05:14-15](#)
- Jeremiah 07:33-34
- Judges 01:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.\ **\*18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.\ **\*18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.\ **\*20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.\ **\*20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.\ **\*20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.\ **\*20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.\

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:6-8
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Ezekiel 37:15-17

## judge

### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Luke 11:18-20](#)
- [Luke 12:13-15](#)
- [Luke 18:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 34:17-19](#)

## judge, judges, judgment, judgments

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [1 Kings 03:7-9](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Isaiah 03:13-15](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 054:1-3](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:8-9
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 20:36-38
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 34:20-21
- Ezekiel 35:10-11

- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 44:23-24



## just, justice, justly

### Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [righteous](#), upright)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- [Acts 28:3-4](#)
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- [Luke 18:3-5](#)
- [Luke 21:20-22](#)
- [Luke 23:39-41](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)
- [Micah 03:8](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3477, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:8-9
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:27-28
- Ezekiel 22:29
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 45:9-12

## **Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh**

### **Facts:**

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name “kadesh” comes from the Hebrew word meaning “holy” or “set apart.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [Edom](#), [holy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)
- [Genesis 14:7-9](#)
- [Genesis 16:13-14](#)
- [Genesis 20:1-3](#)
- [Joshua 10:40-41](#)
- [Numbers 20:1](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 47:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)

## kind, kinds

### Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

### Bible References:

- Genesis 01:20-21
- Genesis 01:24-25
- [Mark 09:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 13:47-48](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:11-12](#)

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 06:15-16](#)
- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:3-5](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Luke 22:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 14:8-9](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. **\*16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. **\*16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. **\*17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. **\*21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. **\*48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:18-20
- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:7-8
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 37:21-23
- Ezekiel 43:6-8

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:17-18](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 18:36-37](#)
- [Mark 03:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 04:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 17:13-14
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 37:21-23



## kingdom of Israel

### Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- Jeremiah 05:10-13
- Jeremiah 09:25-26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**. **\*18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other. **\*18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil. **\*20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God. **\*20:02** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. **\*20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 27:16-18

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), understand, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 02:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:14-15](#)
- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- [Deuteronomy 04:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 19:4-5](#)

- Luke 01:76-77

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:4-5
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 23:48-49
- Ezekiel 24:22-24
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 29:21
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 36:35-36
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:4-6
- Ezekiel 37:13-14
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 44:23-24

## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:18-20
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [John 01:35-36](#)
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- [Luke 10:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" **\*11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. **\*24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." **\*45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word." **\*48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. **\*48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 46:3-5

## **lament, laments, lamentation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “to lament” could be translated as “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

### **Bible References:**

- [Amos 08:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 27:15-17](#)
- [Lamentations 02:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:8-9](#)
- [Micah 02:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 102:1-2](#)
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 2:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:14](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:1-3](#)

- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:15-16



## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
- all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:5-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- [Galatians 02:15-16](#)
- [Luke 24:44](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- [Romans 03:19-20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:26-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:23-24](#)

## Lebanon

### Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), Phoenicia)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- Psalms 029:3-5
- [Zechariah 10:8-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:15](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:16](#)

## Levite, Levi

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- [Acts 04:36-37](#)
- Genesis 29:33-34
- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:46-47](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:30-32](#)

## **life, live, lived, lives, living, alive**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### **1. Physical life**

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### **2. Spiritual life**

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Genesis 02:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 07:21-22](#)
- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:1-3](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 12:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:19](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:15-16](#)

- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:46
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 18:27-28
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 29:4-5
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:13-14
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 47:9-10

## light

### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), true)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [2 Corinthians 04:5-6](#)
- [Acts 26:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 32:7-8

## like, likeness

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 01:4-6](#)
- [Mark 08:24-26](#)
- [Matthew 17:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 18:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 073:4-5](#)
- [Revelation 01:12-13](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:4-6
- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 10:1-2
- Ezekiel 31:1-2

## lion

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:12-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:23-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 41:18-20](#)

## livestock

### Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [donkey](#), [goat](#), [horse](#), [ox](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29-30
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:40-41

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 32:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:13](#)

## loins

### Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), gird, offspring)

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06:7-9](#)
- [Deuteronomy 33:11](#)
- [Genesis 37:34-36](#)
- [Job 15:27-28](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:6-7](#)

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. It is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [Daniel 09:9-11](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Joshua 03:9-11](#)
- [Jude 01:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:1-2](#)

- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Malachi 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)
- [Psalms 086:15-17](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)
- [Romans 06:22-23](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H4756, G1203, G2962

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 18:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:17-20](#)



## Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should not be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [2 Samuel 07:21-23](#)
- [Deuteronomy 03:23-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:26-28](#)
- [Judges 06:22-24](#)
- [Micah 01:2-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H136, H430 H3068, G2316, G2962

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:4-5
- Ezekiel 3:10-11
- Ezekiel 3:26-27
- Ezekiel 4:14-15
- Ezekiel 5:5-6
- Ezekiel 5:7-8
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:5-7
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:13
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 14:15-16
- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 14:21
- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 15:5-6
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:13-14

- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:59
- Ezekiel 16:62-63
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 17:22-23
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:8-9
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:22-23
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:32
- Ezekiel 23:46-47
- Ezekiel 24:3-5
- Ezekiel 24:9-10
- Ezekiel 24:14
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:1-3

- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:13-14
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:17-19
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:10-11
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:22-23
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:9-10
- Ezekiel 37:18-20
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:14-16
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:12-13

- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 43:18-19
- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:15-16
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:9-12
- Ezekiel 45:13-15
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:16-18
- Ezekiel 47:13-14
- Ezekiel 47:21-23
- Ezekiel 48:27-29

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- [Jonah 01:6-7](#)
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 23:33-34](#)
- [Mark 15:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 27:35-37](#)
- [Psalms 022:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 24:6](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)

## love, loves, loving, loved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 29:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [John 03:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 10:37-39](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:32-34](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01:1-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:8
- Ezekiel 16:35-37

## lowly, lowliness

### Definition:

The terms “lowly” and “lowliness” refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

- Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
- His birth was lowly because he was born in a place where animals were kept, not in a palace.
- Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
- Ways to translate “lowly” could include “humble” or “of low status” or “unimportant.”
- The word “lowliness” could also be translated as “humility” or “little importance.”

(See also: [humble](#), [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 20:17-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:13-14](#)
- [Luke 01:48-49](#)
- [Romans 12:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:13-14](#)

## **lust**

### **Definition:**

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or “to strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase “to lust after” could be translated as “to wrongly desire” or “to think immorally about” or “to immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [idol](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:22-23](#)
- [Galatians 05:16-18](#)
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 39:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 05:27-28](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 16:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:35-37](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:30-31](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:19-21](#)

## magic, magician

### Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: [divination](#), [Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), sorcery)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 41:7-8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:14-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:20-21](#)

## majesty

### Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Isaiah 02:9-11](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Micah 05:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:17-18](#)

## Manasseh

### Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:4-7](#)

## marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 08:9-11](#)
- [Acts 09:20-22](#)
- [Galatians 01:6-7](#)
- [Mark 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 07:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 15:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 19:25-27](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H4923, H5953, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8078, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, H8653, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G3167, G4023, G4423, G4592, G5059

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 3:14-15](#)

## meal offering, grain offering

### Definition:

A “meal offering” or “grain offering” was a sacrifice to God in the form of grain or bread made out of grain flour.

- The term “meal” refers to grain that has been ground up into flour.
- The flour was mixed with water or oil to make a flat bread. Sometimes oil was spread on top of the bread.
- This kind of offering was usually offered together with a burnt offering.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 44:30-31](#)
- [Joel 02:14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 44:30-31](#)



## Meshech

### Facts:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Japheth, [Noah](#), Shem)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:5-7
- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Psalms 120:5-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:1-3](#)

## mighty, might

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 06:4](#)
- [Mark 09:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 33:27-29

## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: believe, [heart](#), soul)

### Bible References:

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Mark 06:51-52](#)
- [Matthew 21:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 11:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)

- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 40:3-4

## Moab, Moabite, Moabites

### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 25:8-11](#)

## mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 03:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 39:13-15](#)
- [Luke 22:63-65](#)
- [Mark 10:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah. **\*39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him. **\*39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!” **\*40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?” **\*40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 36:4



## month

### Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- [Acts 18:9-11](#)
- [Hebrews 11:23-26](#)
- Numbers 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 26:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:14-16](#)

## Mount Hermon

### Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

- It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
- Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were “Mount Sirion” and “Mount Senir.”
- Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), Sea of Galilee, Syria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:23-24
- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Psalms 042:5-6
- Song of Solomon 04:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:4-5](#)

## **mourn, mourning**

### **Facts:**

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- [Luke 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 31:15](#)

## name, names, named

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:27-29
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 48:33-35

## Naphtali

### Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- Genesis 30:7-8
- Judges 01:33
- [Matthew 04:12-13](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:4-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:33-35](#)

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 4:12-13
- Ezekiel 5:5-6
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 16:13-14
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:23-24
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 31:5-7
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 31:16



- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 34:28-29
- Ezekiel 35:10-11
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:7
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:24-25
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 36:35-36
- Ezekiel 37:21-23
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:14-16
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 39:21-22

## Nebuchadnezzar

### Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:13-15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- [Daniel 01:1-2](#)
- [Daniel 04:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:7-8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **\*20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year. **\*20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind. **\*20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 26:7-8
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 29:19-20
- Ezekiel 30:10-11

## Negev

### Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:45-47](#)

## neighbor

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:13-15](#)
- [James 02:8-9](#)
- [John 09:8-9](#)
- [Luke 01:56-58](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 19:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 22:39-40](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:25-26](#)

**new moon****Definition:**

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: [month](#), [earth](#), [festival](#), horn, [sheep](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 1 Samuel 20:4-5
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- Isaiah 01:12-13

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:6-8](#)

## Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

### Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Goshen, Moses)

### Bible References:

- [Amos 08:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 41:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 46:7-9](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:04** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**. **\*09:04** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**. **\*09:06** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed. **\*10:03** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 29:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:4-5](#)

## Noah

### Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), ark)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:7-8
- Genesis 08:1-3
- [Hebrews 11:7](#)
- [Matthew 24:37-39](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **03:04** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **03:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:19-20](#)



## **oak**

### **Definition:**

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Many translations will find it important to use the term “oak tree” rather than just the word “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, “an oak” could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 6:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:6-7](#)

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word “swear” means is “use foul language.” This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated as “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 06:26-29](#)

- [Matthew 05:36-37](#)
- [Matthew 14:6-7](#)
- [Matthew 26:71-72](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 16:59](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:7](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:10-12](#)

## obey, obedient, obedience

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), law)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Genesis 28:6-7](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [Luke 06:46-48](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 19:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 33:32-33
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 43:10-11

## oil

### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- [Mark 06:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:9-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:40-41](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:13-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:3-5](#)

## **oppress, oppression, oppressor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), persecute)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:133-134

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 18:7
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 18:18
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:29
- Ezekiel 45:8



**ox, oxen****Definition:**

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [yoke](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- [Luke 14:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 1:10-12](#)

## palm

### Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- [Ezekiel 40:14-16](#)
- [John 12:12-13](#)
- Numbers 33:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 41:18-20](#)

## parable, parables

### Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- [Luke 05:36](#)
- [Luke 06:39-40](#)
- [Luke 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 08:9-10](#)
- [Mark 04:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 13:3-6](#)
- [Matthew 13:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:13-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:48-49](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:3-5](#)

## peace offering

### Facts:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [fellowship](#), [fellowship offering](#), [grain offering](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [unleavened bread](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- Joshua 08:30-32
- Leviticus 09:3-5
- Proverbs 07:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:13-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:1-2](#)

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Luke 07:48-50](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Mark 04:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 05:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:11-13](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

**\*15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. **\*16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. **\*21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. **\*48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. \*50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 34:28-29
- Ezekiel 37:26-28

## **people group, peoples, the people, a people**

### **Definition:**

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 11:1
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 22:29
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 27:10-11
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 29:13-14



- Ezekiel 32:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 38:4-6
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:25-27

## people of God, my people

### Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Acts 10:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- [Joel 03:16-17](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 34 General Notes
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 36:8-9
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 37:26-28
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 44:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:8
- Ezekiel 45:9-12

## perfect

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

### Bible References:

- [Hebrews 12:1-3](#)
- [James 03:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)
- [Psalms 019:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H998, H1584, H1585, H3632, H3634, H4357, H4359, H4512, H8003, H8502, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G195, G197, G199, G739, G1295, G2005, G2675, G2676, G2677, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5052

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:11-13](#)

## **perish, perished, perishing, perishable**

### **Definition:**

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Peter 01:22-23](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Psalms 049:18-20](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 13:8-9](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 7:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:12-13](#)

## Persia, Persians

### Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- [Daniel 10:12-13](#)
- Esther 01:3-4
- [Ezekiel 27:10-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:4-6](#)

## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** ”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:31-32



## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:56-58](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:15-17](#)

## pillar, column

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [idol](#), [image](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 6:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:9-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 42:4-6](#)

## **pit**

### **Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, prison)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:16-18
- [Luke 06:39-40](#)
- Proverbs 01:12-14

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 26:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:16](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:28-29](#)

## plague

### Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, [Israel](#), Moses, [Pharaoh](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- [Luke 21:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 09:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 6:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:21](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:21-23](#)

## pledge

### Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- “To pledge” could be translate as “to formally commit to” or “to strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 05:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 22:25-27](#)
- [Genesis 38:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 18:7](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)

## plow

### Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- [Luke 09:61-62](#)
- [Luke 17:7-8](#)
- Psalm 141:5-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 36:8-9](#)

## possess, possession

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

- [Matthew 13:44-46](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 35:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:10-12](#)



## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), Jesus, miracle)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- [Genesis 31:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:21-23](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 04:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 26:62-64](#)
- [Philippians 03:20-21](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 17:13-14
- Ezekiel 22:6-9

## **priest, priests, priesthood**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:34-36](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" **\*13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. **\*19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. **\*21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:26-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:44-45](#)
- [Ezekiel 41:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 42:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:30-31](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)

- Ezekiel 45:3-5
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:19-20
- Ezekiel 48:10-12

## prince, princess

### Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, [Christ](#), demon, lord, [power](#), [ruler](#), Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- [Luke 01:52-53](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:26-27](#)

- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 32:30
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 45:6-7
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Ezekiel 45:21-22
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:6-8
- Ezekiel 48:21-22

## profane

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), [unclean](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:8-9](#)
- [Malachi 01:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 12:5-6](#)
- [Numbers 18:30-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 13:19](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:39](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:26-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:19-21](#)



- Ezekiel 36:22-23
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:23-24

## profit, profitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:12-13](#)
- [John 06:62-63](#)
- [Mark 08:35-37](#)
- [Matthew 16:24-26](#)
- [Proverbs 10:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 18:8-9](#)

- [Ezekiel 18:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:30-31](#)

## promise, promises, promised

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:15-16](#)
- [Genesis 25:31-34](#)
- [Hebrews 11:8-10](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 30:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>1</sup>
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son” he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 17:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)

## prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, [divination](#), [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [John 01:43-45](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)

- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. \*

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 2:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 4:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 6:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:2-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:13](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:26-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 13 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:15-16](#)

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 25 General Notes
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 26 General Notes
- Ezekiel 27 General Notes
- Ezekiel 28 General Notes
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 29 General Notes
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 30 General Notes
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 31 General Notes
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 33:32-33
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:4-6
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:1-3



## prostitute, harlot, whore

### Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 21:31-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 6:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:30-31](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:32-34](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:35-37](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:40-42](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:30-32](#)

- [Ezekiel 23:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:26-27](#)

## **proud, pride, prideful**

### **Definition:**

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 03:6-7](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 06:3-5](#)
- [Isaiah 13:19-20](#)
- [Luke 01:50-51](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. **\*34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 7:10-11
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 33:27-29

## proverb

### Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: Solomon, true, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- [2 Peter 02:20-22](#)
- [Luke 04:23-24](#)
- Proverbs 01:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 12:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:44-45](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:3-5](#)

## province, provincial

### Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: Asia, [Egypt](#), Esther, Galatia, Galilee, Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, [Samaria](#), Syria)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 19:30-32](#)
- [Daniel 03:1-2](#)
- [Daniel 06:1-3](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 02:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 19:8-9](#)

## provoke

### Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as “to cause to become angry” or “to anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

(See also: [angry](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 20:27-29](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:27-29](#)

## **punish, punishment**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

their

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. **\*16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. **\*19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. **\*48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. **\*48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. **\*49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that



he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. \*49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:4
- Ezekiel 14:21
- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 35:4-6

## **pure, purify, purification**

### **Definition:**

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 01:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 02:22-24](#)
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 36:24-25
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 37:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:14-16
- Ezekiel 43:25-27

## queen

### Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#), [Persia ruler](#), [Sheba](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- [Acts 08:26-28](#)
- Esther 01:16-18
- [Luke 11:31](#)
- [Matthew 12:42](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:13-14](#)

## quench

### Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: [fruit](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:19-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:45-47](#)
- [Isaiah 01:31](#)
- [Jeremiah 21:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:45-47](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:48-49](#)

## Rabbah

### Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [David](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 2 Samuel 12:26-28
- Deuteronomy 03:11
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- Jeremiah 49:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)

## **raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose**

### **Definition:**

#### **raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### **rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 3:22-23
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 23:46-47
- Ezekiel 26:3-4



## rebel, rebellious, rebellion

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- [1 Timothy 01:9-11](#)
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- [Luke 23:18-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead. **\*18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam. **\*18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin. **\*18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods. **\*20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon. **\*45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:8-9
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:3
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:36-38
- Ezekiel 24:3-5
- Ezekiel 44:6-7

## rebuke

### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

### Bible References:

- [Mark 01:23-26](#)
- [Mark 16:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 08:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 17:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 3:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:15-17](#)

## reign

### Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 36:34-36](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 19:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 02:22-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:33-35](#)

## reject

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), disobey, [obey](#), stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:12-14](#)
- [Hosea 04:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 41:8-9](#)
- [John 12:48-50](#)
- [Mark 07:8-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:13-14](#)

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:15-18](#)
- [Acts 16:32-34](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Luke 15:6-7](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 04:10-13](#)
- [Romans 05:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:23](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 35:14-15](#)

## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- [Amos 09:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 06:8-10](#)
- [Genesis 45:7-8](#)
- [Isaiah 11:10-11](#)
- [Micah 04:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 6:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 9:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:13](#)

- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 25:15-17



## repent, repents, repented, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Luke 03:8](#)
- [Luke 05:29-32](#)
- [Luke 24:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 04:17](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”

- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 33 General Notes
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:12-13

## report

### Definition:

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:22-23](#)
- [John 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 05:15-16](#)
- [Luke 08:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 28:14-15](#)

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:3-4](#)

## reproach

### Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: accuse, [rebuke](#), [shame](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 06:13-14](#)
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:13-14](#)

## rest

### Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something. A “rest” is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 24:14
- Ezekiel 37:13-14
- Ezekiel 39:25-27

## restore, restores, restored, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- [Acts 03:21-23](#)
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- [Luke 19:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 12:13-14](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:53-55](#)

- [Ezekiel 16:53-55](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)



## Reuben

### Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Leah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:31-32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:21-22
- Genesis 42:37-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:4-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:30-32](#)

## reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 11:1-2](#)
- [Ephesians 03:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 01:11-12](#)
- [Lamentations 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 10:26-27](#)
- [Philippians 03:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 43:10-11

## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: good, [holy](#), [evil](#), [just](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- [Isaiah 48:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 037:28-30](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3072, H3477, H4334, H4339, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:20-21
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:8-9
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 18:27-28
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 45:9-12

**robe****Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), tunic)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [Luke 15:22-24](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 16:8](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:24-25](#)

## rod

### Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:43-44](#)
- [Acts 16:22-24](#)
- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:36-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)

## royal

### Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- Genesis 49:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17:13-14](#)



## ruin, ruins

### Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Isaiah 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 19:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 35:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:32-34](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:35-36](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:7-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:10-12](#)

## ruler, rule

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, [governor](#), [king](#), synagogue)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Luke 12:11-12](#)
- [Luke 23:35](#)
- [Mark 10:41-42](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 20:25-28](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 19:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:1-3](#)

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- [Acts 13:26-27](#)
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Leviticus 19:1-4
- [Luke 13:12-14](#)
- [Mark 02:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 12:1-2](#)
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 44:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Ezekiel 46:1-2

## sackcloth

### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31-32
- Genesis 37:34-36
- [Joel 01:8-10](#)
- [Jonah 03:4-5](#)
- [Luke 10:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 11:20-22](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:31-33](#)

## sacrifice, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action “to sacrifice” could be translated as “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 21:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 14:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 20:27-29
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 40:42-43
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 45:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:21-24
- Ezekiel 48:8-9
- Ezekiel 48:19-20

## Salt Sea, Dead Sea

### Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name “Dead Sea.”
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Arabah](#), [Jordan River](#), [Moab](#), [Negev](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 03:17
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:11-12](#)



## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 08:1-3](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Luke 09:51-53](#)
- [Luke 10:33-35](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**. **\*27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)" **\*27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him." **\*45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 16:46
- Ezekiel 16:51-52
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:33-34

## sanctuary

### Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [temple](#), )

### Bible References:

- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- [Hebrews 08:1-2](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- Numbers 18:1-2
- Psalms 078:67-69

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G39

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:11-12](#)

- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 9:5-6
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:38-39
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 40:48-49
- Ezekiel 41:8-9
- Ezekiel 41:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:12-14
- Ezekiel 41:15-17
- Ezekiel 42:1-3
- Ezekiel 42:7-9
- Ezekiel 42:10-12
- Ezekiel 43:20-21
- Ezekiel 44:1-3
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:15-16
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 47:11-12

## sandal

### Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- [John 01:26-28](#)
- Joshua 05:14-15
- [Mark 06:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:9-12](#)

## save, saves, saved, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: cross, deliver, [punish](#), salvation, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:15-17](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- [Luke 08:36-37](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3
- [Romans 10:8-10](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.

- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G5198

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 37:21-23

## scepter

### Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as “ruling rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: authority, [Christ](#), [king](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- [Amos 01:5](#)
- [Esther 04:9-12](#)
- [Genesis 49:10](#)
- [Hebrews 01:8-9](#)
- [Numbers 21:17-18](#)
- [Psalms 045:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 19:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:14](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:12-13](#)



## scribe, scribes

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Luke 07:29-30](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:21-22](#)
- [Mark 02:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 05:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 12:38-40](#)
- [Matthew 13:51-53](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 9:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 9:3-4](#)

## scroll

### Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:1-3
- [Luke 04:16-17](#)
- Numbers 21:14-15
- [Revelation 05:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 2:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:1-3](#)

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called semen.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:30-32
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Jeremiah 02:20-22
- [Matthew 13:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H2234, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 17:5-6
- Ezekiel 36:8-9

## seize

### Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 16:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 15:14-15](#)
- [John 10:37-39](#)
- [Luke 08:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 26:47-48](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 18:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:4](#)

## send, send out, sent

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), redeem)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [John 20:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 10:40-41](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 2:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:4-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:21](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:22-23](#)

- [Ezekiel 17:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:36-38](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 37:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:28-29](#)

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 04:29-31](#)
- [Acts 10:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 21:10-11](#)
- [Luke 12:47-48](#)
- [Mark 09:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 10:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 13:27-28](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. **\*08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. **\*09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." **\*19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." **\*29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" **\*35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." **\*47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. **\*50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 46:16-18

## serve, service

### Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:3-5](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Genesis 25:23](#)
- [Luke 04:8](#)
- [Luke 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 22:26-27](#)
- [Mark 08:7-10](#)
- [Matthew 04:10-11](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 40:46-47
- Ezekiel 43:18-19
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:19
- Ezekiel 45:3-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 03:17-19](#)
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 28:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 37:26-28](#)

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [unfaithful](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:19-21](#)
- [Acts 21:25-26](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [Ephesians 05:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 38:24-26](#)
- [Hosea 04:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 05:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 19:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 23:43-45

## shame, shameful, ashamed

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [humble](#), [humiliate](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- [2 Kings 02:17-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 13:13-14](#)
- [Luke 20:11-12](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Mark 12:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:51-52](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:53-55](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:56-58](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:35](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:48-49](#)

- Ezekiel 24:13
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:30
- Ezekiel 36:7
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 43:10-11



## Sheba

### Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia. Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), Beersheba, Ethiopia, Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- 1 Kings 10:1-2
- Isaiah 60:6-7
- Psalms 072:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:22-23](#)

## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 15:3-5](#)
- [Mark 06:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 12:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 34:17-19
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 43:22-24
- Ezekiel 45:13-15
- Ezekiel 45:23-24
- Ezekiel 46:3-5

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression “to shepherd” could be translated as “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 37:24-25

## shield

### Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, [obey](#), Satan, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36-37
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:9-10](#)

## Sidon, Sidonians

### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [Tyre](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 12:20-21](#)
- [Acts 27:3-6](#)
- [Genesis 10:15-18](#)
- [Genesis 10:19-20](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 11:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 15:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:20-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:30](#)

## siege, besiege, besieged, besieger

### Definition:

A “siege” occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city or to put it “under siege” means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To “besiege” a city can also be expressed as to “lay siege” to it or to “perform a siege” on it.
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Jeremiah 33:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 4:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 4:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:7-8](#)



## sign, signs, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- “Reminders” are signs that “remind” people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:18-19](#)
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- [John 02:17-19](#)

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 24:22-24

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 26:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:4-5](#)

## Simeon

### Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Christ](#), [dedicate](#), [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- [Luke 02:25-26](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:33-35](#)

## **sin offering**

### **Definition:**

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](#), [cow](#), [forgive](#), [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- [Ezekiel 44:25-27](#)
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 40:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 42:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:28-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:25](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:19-20](#)

## **sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning**

### **Definition:**

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 3:20-21
- Ezekiel 4:4
- Ezekiel 7:12-13
- Ezekiel 08 General Notes
- Ezekiel 09 General Notes
- Ezekiel 13 General Notes
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Ezekiel 16:51-52
- Ezekiel 18 General Notes
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:14-15
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 23:48-49
- Ezekiel 24 General Notes
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 33 General Notes
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 36 General Notes
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 37:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 44:10-12



## sister

### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#) in Christ, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22-23
- [Philemon 01:1-3](#)
- [Romans 16:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:46](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:11-13](#)

## **slander, slanderer**

### **Definition:**

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 04:12-13](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:11-13](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:8-10](#)
- [Mark 07:20-23](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:1-3](#)

## slaughter

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)
- [Hebrews 07:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 34:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:34-36](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:14](#)
- [Ezekiel 21:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:38-39](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:10-12](#)

**slay, slain****Definition:**

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: [slaughter](#))

**Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 28:23-24](#)
- [Isaiah 26:20-21](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 28:23-24](#)

## Sodom

### Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), Gomorrah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:12-13
- [Matthew 10:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 16:46](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:47-48](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:49-50](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:53-55](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:56-58](#)

## Son of Man, son of man

### Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:54-56](#)
- [Daniel 07:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:6-8](#)
- [John 03:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:3-5](#)
- [Mark 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)
- [Psalms 080:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 14:14-16](#) {{tag>publish ktlink}}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 2:6
- Ezekiel 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:24-25
- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 5:1-2
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 11:2-4
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:3
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:17-18
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 31:1-2

- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:9-10
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:1-3
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 43:10-11
- Ezekiel 44:4-5
- Ezekiel 47:6-8



## son, sons

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- “Son” was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes “sons of God” was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning “person having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 5:9-10
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:10-11
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:36-37

- [Ezekiel 40:46-47](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:16-18](#)

## sow, sower, plant

### Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

### Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), good, reap)

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Luke 08:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 06:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 13:3-6](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 25:24-25](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 36:8-9

## spear

### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:18-19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 39:9-10](#)

## spirit, spirits, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, [Holy Spirit](#), soul)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:19-21
- Ezekiel 10:15-17
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 37:4-6



## splendor

### Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:25-27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- [Ezekiel 28:6-7](#)
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- Psalms 089:44-45
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 25:8-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:16-17](#)

## staff

### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:8-10
- [Luke 09:3-4](#)
- [Mark 06:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 4:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)

## statute, statutes

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordinance, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- [Ezekiel 33:14-16](#)
- Numbers 19:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 11:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:10-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:26-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 37:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:13-15](#)

## stone, stones, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone isto throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:57-58](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [John 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 13:34-35](#)
- [Luke 20:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:37-39](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 11:19-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:40-42](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:30-32](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:46-47](#)

## stronghold, fortress, fortified

### Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [idol](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 08:10-12](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:8-10](#)
- [Acts 21:34-36](#)
- [Habakkuk 01:10-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 19:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:15-16](#)

## stumbling block, stone of stumbling

### Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: stumble, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 01:22-23](#)
- [Galatians 05:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 05:29-30](#)
- [Matthew 16:21-23](#)
- [Romans 09:32-33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 3:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:10-12](#)

## sulfur

### Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: Gomorrah, [judge](#), Lot, [rebel](#), [Sodom](#), ungodly)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:23-25
- Isaiah 34:8-10
- [Luke 17:28-29](#)
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 38:21-23](#)

## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 12:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 34:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 26:55-56](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)



**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 5:1-2
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 7:14-16
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 14:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:21
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 21:18-20
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:46-47
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:24-25

- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 38:4-6
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:23-24

## Tamar

### Facts:

Tamar was the name of several women in the Old Testament. It was also the name of several cities or other places in the Old Testament. *Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.* One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate. *Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.* A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, [ancestor](#), Amnon, [David](#), [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:3-4
- 2 Samuel 13:1-2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24-26
- [Matthew 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)

## Tarshish

### Facts:

Tarshish was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a city.

- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.
- The city of Tarshish was a very prosperous port city, whose ships carried valuable products to buy, sell, or trade.
- This city was associated with Tyre and is thought to have been a Phoenician city that was somewhat distant from Israel, perhaps on the southern coast of Spain.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esther, Japheth, Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, wise men)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 02:14-16
- Jeremiah 10:8-10
- [Jonah 01:1-3](#)
- Psalms 048:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:13](#)

## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 03:1-3](#)
- [Acts 03:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Luke 19:45-46](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Psalm 079:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

#### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:16](#)
- [Ezekiel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:44-45](#)
- [Ezekiel 41 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 41:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 42 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 43 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 44 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 46 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:21-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 47 General Notes](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:21-22](#)

## terror, terrify

### Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- [Luke 21:7-9](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Matthew 28:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:46-47](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:12](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)

## the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### Facts:

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), prosper)

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:18-20](#)
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)



## threshold

### Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- [Ezekiel 09:3-4](#)
- Isaiah 06:4-5
- Proverbs 17:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 9:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:5-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:6-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 46:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:1-2](#)

## throne

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 22:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 19:28](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:26](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:6-8](#)

## tomb, grave, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:29-31](#)
- [Genesis 23:5-6](#)
- [Genesis 50:4-6](#)
- [John 19:40-42](#)
- [Luke 23:52-53](#)
- [Mark 05:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 27:51-53](#)
- [Romans 03:13-14](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [32:04](#) The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- [37:06](#) Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- [37:07](#) The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- [40:09](#) Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- [41:04](#) He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- [41:05](#) When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 37:11-12
- Ezekiel 39:11

## tongue

### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongue” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:9-11](#)
- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 23:1-2](#)
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:1-3](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 36:1-3

## **transgress, transgresses, transgression**

### **Definition:**

The term “transgression” refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To “transgress” is to commit a “transgression.”

- Figuratively, “to transgress” can also be described as “to cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression,” “sin,” “iniquity,” and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Thessalonians 04:3-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- [Galatians 03:19-20](#)
- [Galatians 06:1-2](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)
- [Psalm 032:1-2](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 14:9-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:27-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)

- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 33:10-11



## trial

### Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, test, innocent, [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- [Ezekiel 21:12-13](#)
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:12-13](#)

## tribe

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 37:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:8](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)

## tribute

### Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:1-3
- [Luke 23:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:40-41](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:14-15](#)

## trumpet

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- [Hebrews 12:18-21](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 24:30-31](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 7:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:1-4](#)

## trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, [confidence](#), faith, [faithful](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Hosea 10:12-13](#)
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- [Titus 03:8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12:12](#) When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14:15](#) Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17:02](#) David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34:06](#) Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 11 General Notes
- Ezekiel 16:15-16
- Ezekiel 33:12-13

## Tubal

### Facts:

There were several men in the Old Testament who had the name “Tubal.”

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named “Tubal-Cain” was a son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal was also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cain, [descendant](#), [Ezekiel](#), Isaiah, Japheth, Lamech, [people group](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:5-7
- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- Genesis 10:2-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 38:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:1-3](#)

## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), leprosy, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)



- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Jeremiah 36:1-3](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 11:6-7](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H4878, H5186, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5437, H5472, H5472, H5493, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, H8447, G344, G387, G387, G402, G576, G654, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1624, G1994, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3344, G3346, G3346, G4762, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 14:6](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:23](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:24](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:27-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)

## twelve tribes of Israel

### Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [priest](#), [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 26:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 49:28-30](#)
- [Luke 22:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 19:28](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 47:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)

## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [the sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 12:20-21](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 11:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 15:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 26:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:31-33](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:17-18](#)

## uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), circumcise)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:17-20
- [Acts 11:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Ephesians 02:11-12](#)
- Exodus 12:47-48
- [Ezekiel 32:24-25](#)
- Jeremiah 09:25-26
- Judges 15:17-18
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- [Romans 02:25-27](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:30
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:8-9

## unclean

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Acts 10:27-29](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [Genesis 07:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2930, H2931, H2932, H5079, H6172, H6945, H7137, G167, G169, G2839, G2840, G3394

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:12-13
- Ezekiel 4:14-15
- Ezekiel 7:20-22
- Ezekiel 20:7
- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 24:11-12
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 44:23-24
- Ezekiel 44:25-27

## unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), disobey, [faithful](#), unbeliever)

### Bible References:

- [Hosea 05:5-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 09:7-9](#)
- [Judges 02:16-17](#)
- [Leviticus 26:40-42](#)
- [Luke 12:45-46](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 23 General Notes](#)



## unjust, unjustly, injustice

### Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), unrighteous)

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)
- [Hebrews 06:9-10](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H2555, H5765, H5766, H5767, H8636, G91, G93, G94

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 3:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [Acts 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 23:14-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 19:1-3](#)
- [Judges 06:21](#)
- [Leviticus 08:1-3](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 45:21-22](#)

## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: [idol](#), worthy)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:21-22](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- [Isaiah 45:19](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 15:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 14:22-23](#)

## veil

### Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb “to veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 03:12-13](#)
- [2 Corinthians 03:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Isaiah 47:1-2](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04:3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7289, G2665

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:15-17](#)

## **vine**

### **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [John 15:1-2](#)
- [Luke 22:17-18](#)
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:35-37](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 15:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 17:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:10-11](#)

## **vineyard**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:20-21
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Luke 20:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 20:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 21:40-41](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 28:25-26](#)

## virgin

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- [Luke 01:26-29](#)
- [Luke 01:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 25:1-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**. **\*22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. **\*22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?" **\*49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 9:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:20-22](#)

## vision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 09:10-12](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 10:9-12](#)
- [Acts 12:9-10](#)
- [Luke 01:21-23](#)
- [Luke 24:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 17:9-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:20-22](#)



- Ezekiel 11:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 43:3-5

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#))

### Bible References:

- [John 05:36-38](#)
- [Luke 01:42-45](#)
- [Luke 09:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 03:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 12:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 10:3-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 19:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:28-30](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:1-2](#)

## vow, vows, vowed

### Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 07:27-28](#)
- [Acts 21:22-24](#)
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Genesis 31:12-13
- [Jonah 01:14-16](#)
- [Jonah 02:9-10](#)
- Proverbs 07:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#)

## walk, walks, walked, walking

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), honor)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Kings 02:1-4](#)
- [Colossians 02:6-7](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:8-11](#)
- [Micah 04:2-3](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 5:5-6
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 18:8-9
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 37:24-25

## waste, wasteland

### Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 06:6-7](#)
- [Leviticus 26:37-39](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- [Revelation 18:15-17](#)
- [Zechariah 07:13-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 6:6-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:1-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 15:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:11-12](#)

## watch, watchman

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [Hebrews 13:15-17](#)
- [Jeremiah 31:4-6](#)
- [Mark 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 13:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 25:10-13](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 33:1-4](#)

## watchtower, tower

### Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [watch](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- [Ezekiel 26:3-4](#)
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:33-34](#)
- Psalm 062:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 26:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:10-11](#)



## water, waters

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 14:21-22](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [John 04:13-14](#)
- [John 04:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 14:28-30](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 31:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:1-2

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 27:36-38](#)
- Exodus 34:21-22
- [John 12:23-24](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 4:9-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:13-15](#)

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:23-25](#)
- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 49:11-12](#)
- [John 02:3-5](#)
- [John 02:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:17](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)

- Ezekiel 44:20-22

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Isaiah 19:11-12
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- [Matthew 07:24-25](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:4-5
- Ezekiel 28:6-7

**woe****Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

**Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Isaiah 31:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 45:1-3](#)
- [Jude 01:9-11](#)
- [Luke 06:24-25](#)
- [Luke 17:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 2:9-10](#)



- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 24:6
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:1-3

## wolf, wolves, wild dogs

### Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

### Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), [false prophet](#), [sheep](#), teach)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 20:28-30](#)
- [Isaiah 11:6-7](#)
- [John 10:11-13](#)
- [Luke 10:3-4](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Zephaniah 03:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 22:26-28](#)

## womb

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- [Luke 02:21](#)
- [Luke 11:27-28](#)
- [Luke 23:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 19:10-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 20:25-26](#)

## **word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 12:24-25](#)

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Uses:

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:17-18
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 17:11-12

- Ezekiel 18:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 37:4-6
- Ezekiel 38:1-3

## word, words

### Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [John 01:1-3](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:6
- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:30-31



## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), miracle)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 03:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:29-31

## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 02:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” **\*14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. **\*17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. **\*18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. **\*25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” **\*26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. **\*47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. **\*49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 8:16
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 44:15-16
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:9-10

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Romans 01:18-19](#)
- [Romans 05:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2534, H2740, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 5:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 7:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 9:7-8](#)

- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 24:7-8

## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:1-3



- Ezekiel 3:12-13
- Ezekiel 3:14-15
- Ezekiel 4:12-13
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:22-23
- Ezekiel 11:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:62-63
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 29:21
- Ezekiel 32:15-16
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:12-13
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 40:46-47

- Ezekiel 41:21-24
- Ezekiel 42:13-14
- Ezekiel 43:3-5
- Ezekiel 43:22-24
- Ezekiel 44:1-3
- Ezekiel 45:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:3-5
- Ezekiel 48:8-9

## year

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31-33
- [Acts 19:8-10](#)
- [Daniel 08:1-2](#)
- Exodus 12:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 8:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:1](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:17-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 30:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 31:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:1-2](#)

- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 40:1-2

## yoke

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:10-11](#)
- [Galatians 05:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Isaiah 09:4-5](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 30:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 34:25-27](#)

## Zadok

### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark of the covenant, [David](#), Jotham, Nehemiah, [reign](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- [Matthew 01:12-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 40:46-47](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:30-31](#)
- [1 Kings 19:9-10](#)
- [Acts 22:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:17-18](#)
- [Isaiah 63:15-16](#)
- [John 02:17-19](#)
- [Philippians 03:6-7](#)
- [Romans 10:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)

## Zebulun

### Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:19-21
- Isaiah 09:1-2
- Judges 04:10
- [Matthew 04:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:33-35](#)



## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

#### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

*...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
  - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
    - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
  - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
    - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
    - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
    - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
  - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
    - Today the people in this house have been saved...
    - Today God has saved the people in this house...
  - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:4-6
- Ezekiel 1:4-6
- Ezekiel 1:4-6
- Ezekiel 1:10-12
- Ezekiel 1:13-14
- Ezekiel 1:13-14
- Ezekiel 1:15-16
- Ezekiel 1:15-16
- Ezekiel 1:22-23
- Ezekiel 1:26
- Ezekiel 1:26
- Ezekiel 1:26
- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 2:9-10
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 10:9-11
- Ezekiel 10:9-11
- Ezekiel 10:20-22
- Ezekiel 10:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 23:14-15
- Ezekiel 25:14

- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 27:10-11
- Ezekiel 27:10-11
- Ezekiel 27:26-27
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 28:4-5
- Ezekiel 28:4-5
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 31:12
- Ezekiel 31:13-14
- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:26-27
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:12-13

- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 34:28-29
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:19-20
- Ezekiel 39:19-20
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:21-24
- Ezekiel 42:10-12
- Ezekiel 43:3-5
- Ezekiel 44:10-12

## Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

### Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
    - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
    - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
    - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:9-10
- Ezekiel 3:20-21
- Ezekiel 6:4-5
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 7:12-13
- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 10:12-14
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 12:7
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 12:19-20
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:8-9



- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:15-16
- Ezekiel 14:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 16:13-14
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:60-61
- Ezekiel 17:7-8
- Ezekiel 17:7-8
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 19:5-7
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 19:10-11
- Ezekiel 19:10-11
- Ezekiel 19:12-13
- Ezekiel 19:12-13
- Ezekiel 19:14
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:27-29
- Ezekiel 20:33-35

- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 21:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 21:32
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:42
- Ezekiel 23:46-47
- Ezekiel 24:7-8
- Ezekiel 24:9-10
- Ezekiel 24:11-12
- Ezekiel 24:25-27
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:24-25
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 27:34-36

- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 28:14-15
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 29:4-5
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:13-14
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:5-6
- Ezekiel 32:15-16
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 33:32-33
- Ezekiel 34:4-6
- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:12-13
- Ezekiel 35:12-13

- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:8-9
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:24-25
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 36:35-36
- Ezekiel 36:35-36
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 37:7-8
- Ezekiel 37:9-10
- Ezekiel 37:9-10
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:19-20
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 39:17-18
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 40:38-39
- Ezekiel 40:42-43
- Ezekiel 44:1-3
- Ezekiel 44:13-14
- Ezekiel 44:30-31
- Ezekiel 45:6-7
- Ezekiel 45:13-15
- Ezekiel 46:11-12
- Ezekiel 47:3-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12

## Apostrophe

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

### Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

### Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

### Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULB)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

### Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.
  - **He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' "** (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)
    - He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says about this altar. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on it.' "
  - **Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you** (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)
    - As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:15-17

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

### Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

- **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
  - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
  - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
    - ◇ Or:
  - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
- **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
  - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

- **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
  - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
  - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Ezekiel 1:19-21
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 5:13-14
- Ezekiel 6:4-5
- Ezekiel 6:6-7
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:10-11
- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 8:3-4
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:7-9
- Ezekiel 8:10-11
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 9:5-6
- Ezekiel 10:3-5
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:4-5

- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:32-34
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 16:46
- Ezekiel 16:59
- Ezekiel 16:62-63
- Ezekiel 17:5-6
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:10-11
- Ezekiel 18:14-15
- Ezekiel 19:14
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:10-12
- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 21:18-20
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Ezekiel 23:11-13
- Ezekiel 23:16-17
- Ezekiel 23:16-17
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:26-27
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:48-49
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 24:3-5

- Ezekiel 24:7-8
- Ezekiel 24:7-8
- Ezekiel 24:9-10
- Ezekiel 24:22-24
- Ezekiel 24:25-27
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:7-8
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:4-5
- Ezekiel 29:6-7
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 31:8-9
- Ezekiel 31:8-9
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:5-6
- Ezekiel 32:15-16
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 32:31-32
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 34:1-3

- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:10-11
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 37:4-6
- Ezekiel 37:26-28
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:19-20
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:14-16
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 40:42-43
- Ezekiel 45:6-7
- Ezekiel 45:13-15

## Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

**Examples from the Bible**

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

**Translation Strategies**

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
  - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
  - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 10:3-5](#)



## Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half."
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)."

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter<sup>1</sup>; its width will be two thirds of a meter <sup>2</sup>; and its height will be two thirds of a meter." The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup> two and a half cubits
    - ◇ <sup>[2]</sup> one cubit and a half

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 40:5-7
- Ezekiel 40:5-7
- Ezekiel 40:5-7
- Ezekiel 40:8-10
- Ezekiel 40:11-13
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- Ezekiel 40:17-19
- Ezekiel 40:20-21
- Ezekiel 40:24-25
- Ezekiel 40:26-27
- Ezekiel 40:28-31
- Ezekiel 40:32-34
- Ezekiel 40:35-37
- Ezekiel 40:42-43
- Ezekiel 40:42-43
- Ezekiel 40:46-47
- Ezekiel 40:48-49
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:1-2
- Ezekiel 41:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:3-4
- Ezekiel 41:5-7
- Ezekiel 41:5-7
- Ezekiel 41:8-9
- Ezekiel 41:8-9

- Ezekiel 41:8-9
- Ezekiel 41:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:12-14
- Ezekiel 41:15-17
- Ezekiel 41:21-24
- Ezekiel 42:1-3
- Ezekiel 42:4-6
- Ezekiel 42:7-9
- Ezekiel 42:16
- Ezekiel 42:20
- Ezekiel 43:13-14
- Ezekiel 43:13-14
- Ezekiel 43:15-17
- Ezekiel 45:1-2
- Ezekiel 45:3-5
- Ezekiel 45:6-7
- Ezekiel 46:21-24
- Ezekiel 47:3-5
- Ezekiel 48:8-9
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Ezekiel 48:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:15-16
- Ezekiel 48:15-16
- Ezekiel 48:17-18
- Ezekiel 48:19-20
- Ezekiel 48:21-22
- Ezekiel 48:30-32
- Ezekiel 48:33-35

## Biblical Volume

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters	———	———	———	Dry	omer	2 liters	Dry	ephah	22 liters	Dry	homer	220 liters	Dry	cor	220 liters	Dry	seah	7.7 liters	Dry	letheh	114.8 liters	Liquid	metrete	40 liters	Liquid	bath	22 liters	Liquid	hin	3.7 liters	Liquid	kab	1.23 liters	Liquid	log	0.31 liters
------	------------------	--------	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	----------	-----	-------	-----------	-----	-------	------------	-----	-----	------------	-----	------	------------	-----	--------	--------------	--------	---------	-----------	--------	------	-----------	--------	-----	------------	--------	-----	-------------	--------	-----	-------------

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

### When the unit of measure is stated

#### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
  - "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa."
- Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket."
  - ◇ "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts)."
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>3</sup>." The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>one bath

- ◇ <sup>[2]</sup>one homer
- ◇ <sup>[3]</sup>one ephah

### When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)
- Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:9-11
- Ezekiel 4:9-11
- Ezekiel 45:9-12
- Ezekiel 45:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:23-24



## Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
1 shekel	11 grams	-	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
  - Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
    - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles."
  - Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
    - "The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms."
  - Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
    - "The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds."
  - Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.
    - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)."
  - Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
    - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.<sup>1</sup>"
      - ◇ The footnote would look like:
        - <sup>[1]</sup> This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:
- Ezekiel 4:9-11
  - Ezekiel 45:9-12
  - Ezekiel 45:9-12
  - Ezekiel 45:9-12

## Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
  - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
    - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
  - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
    - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
  - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
    - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

## Uses:

- Ezekiel 2:1-3
- Ezekiel 2:4-5
- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 9:3-4
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 14:22-23
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:33-34

- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:13
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 39:9-10
- Ezekiel 39:9-10
- Ezekiel 39:19-20
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:23-24

## Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

### Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

### Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
  - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 22:29
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:32
- Ezekiel 23:38-39
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 34:4-6
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 40:44-45
- Ezekiel 47:18-20

## Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

### Definition

... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?”  
(Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.



### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
  - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
  - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:32-34
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 32:22-23

## Exclamations

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULB and UDB, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULB)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

## Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
  - **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULB)
    - “You are such a worthless person!”
  - **Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
    - “Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God are so deep!”
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.
  - **They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”** (Mark 7:36 ULB)
    - “They were absolutely astonished, saying, “Wow! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” ”
  - **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
    - **“Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
  - **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
    - Lord Yahweh, what will happen to me? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
    - Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
  - **How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
    - “His judgements are so unsearchable and his ways are far beyond discovering!”
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

- **Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
  - "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. He was terrified and said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 11:13
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 30:1-3

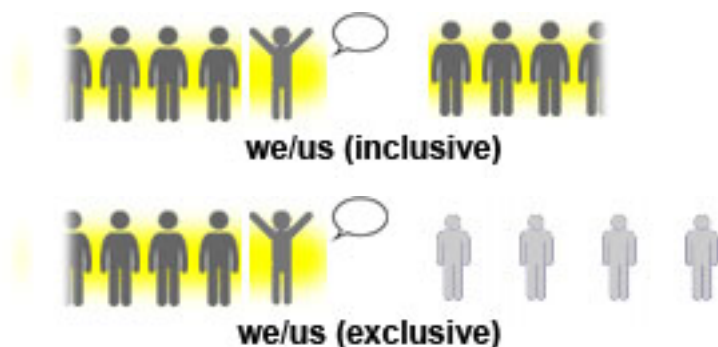
## Exclusive and Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we:” an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

... the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 33:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:1-2](#)

## First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

### Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

### Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
  - **But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
    - But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
  - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
    - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
  - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
    - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 14:9-11



- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:8
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 23:33-34
- Ezekiel 24:14
- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:19-20
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 31:8-9
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:9-10
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:17-19
- Ezekiel 34:20-21
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 37:13-14
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:19-20
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 43:18-19
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:9-12

- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 46:1-2
- Ezekiel 46:16-18
- Ezekiel 47:21-23
- Ezekiel 48:27-29

## Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 18:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:40-41](#)
- [Ezekiel 29:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 35:7-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:18-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:20-21](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:22-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:21-22](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:19-20](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:27-29](#)

## Fractions

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

### Examples From the Bible

Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

### Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

### Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
  - **A third of the ocean became red like blood** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
    - It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.
  - **then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
    - ... then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.
2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - **two thirds of a shekel** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
    - eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
  - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
    - six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UDB)
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
  - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
    - six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 4:9-11
- Ezekiel 5:1-2
- Ezekiel 5:1-2
- Ezekiel 5:1-2

## Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

### Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

### List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Abib** - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

**Sivan** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

**Ab** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

**Elul** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

**Ethanim** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

**Kislev** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

### Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (see [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)
- Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
  - At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
- Use the months that people know.
  - At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
  - It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work.”
- State clearly what season the month occurred in.
  - It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.
- Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
  - It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn<sup>1</sup> you must humble yourselves and do no work.
    - ◇ The footnote would look like:
  - <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 45:21-22
- Ezekiel 45:25

## How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### **Examples from the Bible**

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
    - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
  - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
    - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
    - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
    - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
    - ... a young man named Paul<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
      - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
  - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
    - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
    - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
  - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
  - It came about in Iconium that Paul<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

### Uses:

- Introduction to Ezekiel
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 3:14-15
- Ezekiel 6:13-14
- Ezekiel 8:10-11
- Ezekiel 8:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:1
- Ezekiel 11:13
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:11-13
- Ezekiel 23:22-23
- Ezekiel 23:42
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 27:8-9
- Ezekiel 27:8-9
- Ezekiel 27:10-11
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Ezekiel 27:14-15
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:22-23
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:15-16

- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:14-16
- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Ezekiel 48:27-29
- Ezekiel 48:27-29

## Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

**Examples from the Bible****Examples of Exaggeration**

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

**Examples of Generalization**

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

**Caution**

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)



This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

### Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
  - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
    - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
  - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
    - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
  - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
    - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
  - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

- Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
  - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
- **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
    - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 23:20-21
- Ezekiel 23:20-21
- Ezekiel 23:22-23
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:7-9

## Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

“If the sun stopped shining...”, “What if the sun stopped shining...”, “Suppose the sun stopped shining...”, “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### 1. Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### 1. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### 1. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### 1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger."  
(Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### **Translation Strategies**

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

### **Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 3:4-7](#)

## Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

### Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
  - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** ( 1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
    - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
  - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
    - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
  - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
    - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
  - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
    - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
  - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
    - I am crying my eyes out

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 1:19-21

- Ezekiel 1:27-28
- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 3:20-21
- Ezekiel 3:22-23
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 10:15-17
- Ezekiel 11:13
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:17-18
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:15-16
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:60-61
- Ezekiel 16:62-63
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:19-21



- Ezekiel 18:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:21-22
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:24
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:18-20
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:16-17
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 23:43-45
- Ezekiel 23:46-47
- Ezekiel 23:46-47

- Ezekiel 23:48-49
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 24:11-12
- Ezekiel 24:15-17
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 28:18-19
- Ezekiel 28:18-19
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 31:16
- Ezekiel 31:16
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:7-8

- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:9-10
- Ezekiel 34:9-10
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 37:9-10
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 44:4-5
- Ezekiel 44:4-5
- Ezekiel 44:15-16
- Ezekiel 44:30-31

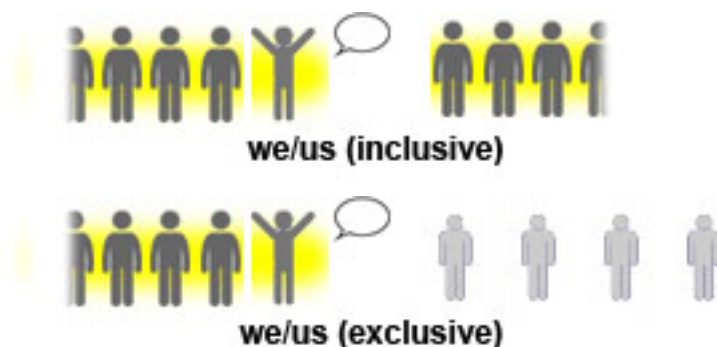
## Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive “we”?*

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)

## Introduction of a New Event

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah, from the division of Abijah. His wife was from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULB)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULB)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULB)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULB)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened after Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying, ...  
(Matthew 3:1-22 ULB)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULB)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULB)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

<sup>6</sup>Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. <sup>7</sup>Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULB)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

### Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULB or UDB. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: “another time” or “someone.”
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
  - **Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him ...** (John 3:1,2)

- There was a man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council. One night he came to Jesus and said...
  - One night a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council, came to Jesus and said ...
  - **As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting at the tax collecting place, and he said to him ...** (Mark 2:14 ULB)
    - As he passed by, Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...
    - As he passed by, there was a man sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...
    - As he passed by, there was a tax collector sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.
- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
    - After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.
  - **Again he began to teach beside the lake.** (Mark 4:1 ULB) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.
    - Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.
    - Jesus went to the lake and began to teach people again there.
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB)
    - Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.
    - This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.
- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULB)
    - Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 30:20-21



## **Irony**

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

### **Description**

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

### **Reason this is a translation issue**

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

### **Examples from the Bible**

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
 Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
 "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

### Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)
  - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
  - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
  - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

- You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)**
  - ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

**Can you find the way back to their houses for them?**

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)**

- Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 39:17-18

## Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are not the least among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
  - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good."
- **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
  - "Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
  - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter."

**Uses:**

- [Ezekiel 24:25-27](#)

## Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
- **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
  - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
- **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
  - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 30:6-7

## Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

### Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

### Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

#### Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.



Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

### Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

### Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

### Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
  - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
    - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
  - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
    - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
  - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
  - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
  - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
    - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
  - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
  - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
  - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

*To learn more about specific metaphors read:*

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 2:4-5
- Ezekiel 2:6
- Ezekiel 3:4-7
- Ezekiel 3:14-15
- Ezekiel 3:14-15
- Ezekiel 3:16-19
- Ezekiel 3:20-21
- Ezekiel 4:6-8
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 5:3-4
- Ezekiel 5:7-8
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:8-9
- Ezekiel 7:10-11
- Ezekiel 7:14-16
- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 11 General Notes
- Ezekiel 11:2-4
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 11:11-12
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:19-21

- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:3
- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Ezekiel 13 General Notes
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Ezekiel 13:15-16
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 14:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 14:19-20
- Ezekiel 14:21
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16 General Notes
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:1-3

- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:8
- Ezekiel 16:9-12
- Ezekiel 16:13-14
- Ezekiel 16:15-16
- Ezekiel 16:15-16
- Ezekiel 16:15-16
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 16:25-26
- Ezekiel 16:25-26
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 16:32-34
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 16:44-45
- Ezekiel 16:44-45
- Ezekiel 16:46
- Ezekiel 16:46
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:47-48
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Ezekiel 16:51-52
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:59
- Ezekiel 16:60-61
- Ezekiel 17 General Notes



- Ezekiel 17:13-14
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 17:22-23
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 18:8-9
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Ezekiel 18:19-20
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:27-28
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 19 General Notes
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 19:5-7
- Ezekiel 19:8-9
- Ezekiel 19:10-11
- Ezekiel 19:12-13
- Ezekiel 19:12-13
- Ezekiel 19:14
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:7
- Ezekiel 20:7
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:33-35

- Ezekiel 20:36-38
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:8-9
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 22:6-9
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:10-12
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 22:20-22

- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 23 General Notes
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:11-13
- Ezekiel 23:11-13
- Ezekiel 23:14-15
- Ezekiel 23:16-17
- Ezekiel 23:16-17
- Ezekiel 23:18-19
- Ezekiel 23:20-21
- Ezekiel 23:22-23
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:26-27
- Ezekiel 23:26-27
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:32
- Ezekiel 23:33-34
- Ezekiel 23:33-34
- Ezekiel 23:33-34
- Ezekiel 23:35
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 23:38-39
- Ezekiel 23:40-41
- Ezekiel 23:42
- Ezekiel 23:43-45

- Ezekiel 24 General Notes
- Ezekiel 24:6
- Ezekiel 24:11-12
- Ezekiel 24:11-12
- Ezekiel 24:22-24
- Ezekiel 24:22-24
- Ezekiel 24:25-27
- Ezekiel 24:25-27
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27 General Notes
- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Ezekiel 27:6-7
- Ezekiel 27:8-9
- Ezekiel 27:24-25
- Ezekiel 27:26-27
- Ezekiel 27:28-30
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 28:14-15
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 29:6-7
- Ezekiel 29:6-7
- Ezekiel 29:6-7
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 29:15-16

- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 29:19-20
- Ezekiel 29:19-20
- Ezekiel 29:21
- Ezekiel 30:1-3
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 30:12
- Ezekiel 30:13-14
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:15
- Ezekiel 32 General Notes
- Ezekiel 32:3-4
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 32:7-8
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:15-16
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:26-27
- Ezekiel 32:26-27
- Ezekiel 32:30
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 33:23-24
- Ezekiel 34 General Notes

- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:4-6
- Ezekiel 34:7-8
- Ezekiel 34:9-10
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:11-13
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 34:17-19
- Ezekiel 34:17-19
- Ezekiel 34:20-21
- Ezekiel 34:20-21
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:12-13
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:7
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:24-25
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 36:26-28
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 36:29-31
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 37 General Notes

- Ezekiel 37:11-12
- Ezekiel 37:11-12
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 38:4-6
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 38:19-20
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:1-3
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:14-16
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezekiel 43:9
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 48:13-14

## Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.



## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
  - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
    - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
  - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
    - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
    - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
  - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
    - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#).### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 1:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:24-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 1:27-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 2:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 2:6](#)
- [Ezekiel 2:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:4-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:14-15](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:16-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:22-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 3:26-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 4:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 4:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 4:4](#)
- [Ezekiel 4:6-8](#)

- Ezekiel 4:6-8
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 5:1-2
- Ezekiel 5:3-4
- Ezekiel 5:13-14
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 7:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:5-7
- Ezekiel 7:20-22
- Ezekiel 7:23-25
- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:10-11
- Ezekiel 8:12-13
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 11:5-7
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:8-10
- Ezekiel 11:14-15
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 12:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:3
- Ezekiel 12:4-6
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 13:8-9

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 13:20-21
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:4-5
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:9-11
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 14:17-18
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 16:1-3
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 16:8
- Ezekiel 16:9-12
- Ezekiel 16:13-14
- Ezekiel 16:15-16
- Ezekiel 16:17-19
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:23-24
- Ezekiel 16:25-26
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 16:32-34
- Ezekiel 16:35-37
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:38-39
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 16:43
- Ezekiel 16:44-45
- Ezekiel 16:46
- Ezekiel 16:47-48

- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Ezekiel 16:51-52
- Ezekiel 16:53-55
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 16:59
- Ezekiel 16:60-61
- Ezekiel 17:1-4
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:13-14
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:10-11
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:14-15
- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 19:10-11
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:8-9
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:13-14
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:33-35
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 20:39
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:18-20

- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 21:24
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 21:30-31
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:17-19
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:18-19
- Ezekiel 23:22-23
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 23:26-27
- Ezekiel 23:28-29
- Ezekiel 23:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:32
- Ezekiel 23:32
- Ezekiel 23:42
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 24:3-5
- Ezekiel 24:6
- Ezekiel 24:9-10
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:14
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2

- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:7-8
- Ezekiel 26:7-8
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 27:1-3
- Ezekiel 27:14-15
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:22-23
- Ezekiel 27:28-30
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:4-5
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 28:25-26
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 29:13-14
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 29:15-16
- Ezekiel 29:21
- Ezekiel 29:21
- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:4-5

- Ezekiel 30:4-5
- Ezekiel 30:6-7
- Ezekiel 30:8-9
- Ezekiel 30:10-11
- Ezekiel 30:12
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:15-16
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 30:17-19
- Ezekiel 30:25-26
- Ezekiel 30:25-26
- Ezekiel 31:5-7
- Ezekiel 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 31:12
- Ezekiel 31:13-14
- Ezekiel 31:16
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:13-14
- Ezekiel 32:15-16
- Ezekiel 32:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:22-23
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Ezekiel 32:26-27
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:28-29
- Ezekiel 32:30
- Ezekiel 32:30

- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:1-4
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:5-6
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:7-9
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:17-20
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 33:27-29
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 33:30-31
- Ezekiel 33:32-33
- Ezekiel 34:9-10
- Ezekiel 34:22-24
- Ezekiel 34:25-27
- Ezekiel 34:28-29
- Ezekiel 34:28-29
- Ezekiel 34:30-31
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:7-9
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:4
- Ezekiel 36:10-12
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 36:22-23
- Ezekiel 36:22-23
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 36:32-34
- Ezekiel 36:37-38
- Ezekiel 37:1-3
- Ezekiel 37:11-12
- Ezekiel 37:18-20



- Ezekiel 37:18-20
- Ezekiel 37:18-20
- Ezekiel 37:24-25
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 38:21-23
- Ezekiel 39:4-6
- Ezekiel 39:7-8
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 39:19-20
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 39:23-24
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 39:25-27
- Ezekiel 39:28-29
- Ezekiel 40:3-4
- Ezekiel 44:6-7
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 44:20-22
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Ezekiel 47:13-14

## Nominal Adjectives

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

... The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds ... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last ... (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less.  
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
  - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
    - The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.
  - **Blessed are the meek ...** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
    - Blessed are people who are meek ...

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:25-27
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 22:29
- Ezekiel 24:15-17
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:16-18
- Ezekiel 28:23-24
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:14-16
- Ezekiel 35:7-9

## Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

### Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Ezekiel 4:4
- Ezekiel 4:9-11
- Ezekiel 4:9-11
- Ezekiel 11:1
- Ezekiel 39:12-13
- Ezekiel 40:17-19
- Ezekiel 48:15-16
- Ezekiel 48:15-16
- Ezekiel 48:17-18
- Ezekiel 48:30-32
- Ezekiel 48:33-35

## Order of Events

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

### Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

### Examples from the Bible

But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULB)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

### Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See: the section on Aspect on Verbs)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.
  - <sup>20</sup> **But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison.** <sup>21</sup> **Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)
    - <sup>20</sup> But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. <sup>21</sup> Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
  - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
    - Who is worthy to open the scroll after breaking its seals?
  
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.
  - <sup>8</sup> **Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...**<sup>10</sup> **But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
    - <sup>8</sup> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...<sup>10</sup> But Joshua had commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.
  
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).
  - <sup>8</sup> **Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...**<sup>10</sup> **But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
    - <sup>8-10</sup> Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets ...
  - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
    - Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_events.##](http://ufw.io/figs_events.##) Uses:

- Ezekiel 5:3-4



## Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

### Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
  - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
    - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim,... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
    - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim,... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
  - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
    - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.
  - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
    - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

## Uses:

- Ezekiel 1:1-3

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 20:1
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 24:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 26:1-2
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 29:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 33:21-22
- Ezekiel 39:14-16
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 40:1-2
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Ezekiel 45:21-22
- Ezekiel 45:25

## Parables

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

A parable is a short story that makes truth easy to understand and hard to forget.

### Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach a truth. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach a truth. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULB)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

### Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULB)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

### Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.
  - **Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand".** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
    - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
      - Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a high shelf.
  - **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."** (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.
    - Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and planted in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."
  - **Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand".** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
    - Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand." (Mark 4:21 ULB)
  - **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."** (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)
    - Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 24:3-5

- Ezekiel 24:6
- Ezekiel 24:7-8
- Ezekiel 24:9-10
- Ezekiel 24:11-12
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Ezekiel 24:14
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 30:20-21
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 30:25-26
- Ezekiel 31:3-4
- Ezekiel 31:3-4

## Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

### Examples from the Bible

#### The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**The second completes what is said in the first.**

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
  - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
    - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”



- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
    - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
  - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
    - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
    - “All you have done is lie to me.”
  - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 7:8-9
- Ezekiel 7:12-13
- Ezekiel 11:16-18
- Ezekiel 11:19-21
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 12:26-28
- Ezekiel 13:19
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 16:40-42
- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:23-24
- Ezekiel 20:40-41
- Ezekiel 21:21-23
- Ezekiel 22:4-5
- Ezekiel 22:13-16

- Ezekiel 22:20-22
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 23:1-4
- Ezekiel 23:8-10
- Ezekiel 23:32
- Ezekiel 23:40-41
- Ezekiel 24:15-17
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 26:12-14
- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Ezekiel 30:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:19-21

## Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

### 1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
  - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

### 2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
  - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

### 3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
  - He even controls the winds and the sea.

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Ezekiel 5:5-6
- Ezekiel 5:15-17
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:5-7
- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 17:7-8
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Ezekiel 21:4-5
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 23:24-25
- Ezekiel 24:7-8
- Ezekiel 24:14
- Ezekiel 25:8-11
- Ezekiel 26:5-6
- Ezekiel 26:17-18
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 29:8-10
- Ezekiel 30:17-19

- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:4-6
- Ezekiel 35:10-11
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 35:14-15
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:13-15
- Ezekiel 36:29-31

## Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

### Description

Pronouns are words that people use in place of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone. The most common type of pronoun is personal.

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

#### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

### Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- **Who built the house?**

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. They tell more about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house that John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man who built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen this here?**
- **Who is that over there?**

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to anyone.**
- **Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.**
- **They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.**

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Ezekiel 43:22-24
- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 44:28-29

## Proverbs

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wisdom or teach a truth. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism.

Hatred stirs up conflicts,  
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULB)

Another example from Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.  
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,  
yet it prepares its food in the summer,  
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULB)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULB)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.



## Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

- **A good name is to be chosen over great riches,**

**and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

- It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.
- Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.
- Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.
- Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

- **Like snow in summer or rain in harvest,**

**so a fool does not deserve honor.** (Proverbs 26:1 ULB)

- It is not natural for a cold wind to blow in the hot season or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

- **Do not boast about tomorrow** (Proverbs 27:1 ULB)
  - Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

- **A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,**

**that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,**

**but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULB)

- People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 18:1-2

## Reflexive Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **Reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves. Other languages may have other ways to show this.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
  - **If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
    - “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”
  - **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.** (John 11:55)
    - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
  - **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
    - “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”
  - **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)
    - “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)
    - “When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)
    - “He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in it’s own place.”

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 28:4-5
- Ezekiel 34:14-16
- Ezekiel 34:20-21

## Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used their question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
  - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
    - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
  - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
    - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
  - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
    - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
  - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
    - You should not insult God's high priest!
  - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
    - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
  - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
    - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
  - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
    - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.



- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 8:5-6
- Ezekiel 8:12-13
- Ezekiel 8:14-15
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:7-8
- Ezekiel 12:8-10
- Ezekiel 12:21-23
- Ezekiel 13:5-7
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:10-12
- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Ezekiel 14:1-3
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 15:1-4
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Ezekiel 16:30-31
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 17:11-12
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:15-16
- Ezekiel 17:19-21
- Ezekiel 18:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:23
- Ezekiel 18:24

- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 18:25-26
- Ezekiel 18:31-32
- Ezekiel 19:1-4
- Ezekiel 20:2-3
- Ezekiel 20:27-29
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 20:48-49
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 23:36-37
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 31:1-2
- Ezekiel 31:17-18
- Ezekiel 32:19-21
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:10-11
- Ezekiel 33:25-26
- Ezekiel 34:1-3
- Ezekiel 34:17-19
- Ezekiel 36:19-21
- Ezekiel 38:13
- Ezekiel 38:14-16
- Ezekiel 38:17-18
- Ezekiel 47:6-8

## Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
  - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
    - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
  - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
    - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
  - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
  - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
  - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
    - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
    - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
  - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 1:7-9
- Ezekiel 1:13-14
- Ezekiel 1:24-25
- Ezekiel 1:24-25
- Ezekiel 7:14-16
- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 13:1-4
- Ezekiel 15 General Notes
- Ezekiel 16:6-7
- Ezekiel 20:30-32
- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 22:23-25
- Ezekiel 22:26-28
- Ezekiel 23:20-21
- Ezekiel 23:20-21
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Ezekiel 26:9-11
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 26:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:6-7
- Ezekiel 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:1-3

- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Ezekiel 32:13-14
- Ezekiel 33:32-33
- Ezekiel 36:16-18
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:7-9
- Ezekiel 38:14-16

## Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
  - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
    - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
  - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
    - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
  - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
    - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
  - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
    - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
  - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
  - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
    - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

## Uses:

- Ezekiel 4:1-3
- Ezekiel 4:6-8
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 6:1-3
- Ezekiel 11:13
- Ezekiel 13:17-18



- Ezekiel 14:7-8
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Ezekiel 17:17-18
- Ezekiel 18:5-6
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- Ezekiel 18:14-15
- Ezekiel 20:4-6
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:23-24
- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:1-3
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Ezekiel 21:14
- Ezekiel 21:15-17
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 24:15-17
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 25:1-2
- Ezekiel 25:6-7
- Ezekiel 27:28-30
- Ezekiel 27:31-33
- Ezekiel 27:34-36
- Ezekiel 28:20-22
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 35:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:7
- Ezekiel 38:1-3
- Ezekiel 44:10-12
- Ezekiel 47:13-14

## Symbolic Language

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

### Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

### Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

### Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

### Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

### Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be a fourth kingdom on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom ten kings will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

### Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
  - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.
  - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)
    - After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,<sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;<sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.<sup>3</sup>
    - The footnotes would look like:

- ◇ <sup>[1]</sup> The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- ◇ <sup>[2]</sup> The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- ◇ <sup>[3]</sup> The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 6:11-12
- Ezekiel 19:10-11
- Ezekiel 29:1-3
- Ezekiel 29:4-5

## Symbolic Prophecy

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

### Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See [dream and vision](#) for help translating “dream” and “vision.”) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images are a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for us. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense “the predictive past.” See [Predictive Past](#).

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
- Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
- If God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

### Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.
- If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.
- Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.
- Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.
- Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

### Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The underlined phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest. His head and hair were as white as wool — as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. His feet were like burnished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULB)

As I looked,  
thrones were set in place,  
and the Ancient of Days took his seat.  
His clothing was as white as snow,  
and the hair of his head was like pure wool. (Daniel 7:9 ULB)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and his feet were like polished bronze, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULB)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULB)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The underlined verbs refer to past events.

The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.  
Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh has spoken:  
"I have nourished and brought up children, but they have rebelled against me. (Isaiah 1:1-2 ULB)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The underlined verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish.  
In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali,  
but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan,  
Galilee of the nations.  
The people who walked in darkness have seen a great light;  
those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light has shone on them.  
(Isaiah 9:1-2 ULB)### Uses:

- [Introduction to Ezekiel](#)

## Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
  - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
    - ”I exalt the Lord.”
  - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)



- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

**Uses:**

- Ezekiel 3:8-9
- Ezekiel 4:16-17
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Ezekiel 7:3-4
- Ezekiel 7:8-9
- Ezekiel 7:17-19
- Ezekiel 7:26-27
- Ezekiel 8:17-18
- Ezekiel 9:5-6
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 13:22-23
- Ezekiel 14:6
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 16:4-5
- Ezekiel 16:27-29
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Ezekiel 16:56-58
- Ezekiel 17:9-10
- Ezekiel 18:3-4
- Ezekiel 20:15-17
- Ezekiel 20:21-22
- Ezekiel 20:23-24
- Ezekiel 20:45-47
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 21:6-7
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:13-16
- Ezekiel 22:30-31
- Ezekiel 23:38-39
- Ezekiel 24:3-5
- Ezekiel 24:15-17
- Ezekiel 24:19-21
- Ezekiel 24:19-21

- Ezekiel 24:25-27
- Ezekiel 28:8-10
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 28:16-17
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 29:11-12
- Ezekiel 32:13-14
- Ezekiel 35:12-13
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Ezekiel 36:8-9
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Ezekiel 37:15-17
- Ezekiel 37:18-20
- Ezekiel 38:10-12
- Ezekiel 43:10-11

## Textual Variants

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

[<sup>1</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup>[Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup>She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]<sup>[2]</sup>

[<sup>2</sup>The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]
  - <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
  - <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.
  - <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup>If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." <sup>[1]</sup>
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

## Uses:

- Ezekiel 27:8-9

## Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins ... will be white like milk
- your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
  - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - to him who made the sun and the moon

#### Uses:

- Ezekiel 4:9-11
- Ezekiel 4:12-13
- Ezekiel 9:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:1-2
- Ezekiel 9:9-11
- Ezekiel 10:1-2
- Ezekiel 10:9-11
- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 27:19-21
- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Ezekiel 31:8-9

## Verse Bridges

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined, such as “3-5” or “17-18”?*

### Description

In rare cases, you will see in the Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB) or the Unlocked Dynamic Bible (UDB) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

<sup>29</sup> These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, <sup>30</sup> Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 26:29-30 ULB)

<sup>29-30</sup> The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishpan. (Genesis 26:29-30 UDB)

In the ULB text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UDB text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes the ULB has separate verses while the UDB has a verse bridge.

<sup>4</sup> However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), <sup>5</sup> if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULB)

<sup>4-5</sup> Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UDB)

There are also a few verse bridges in the ULB.

<sup>17-18</sup> Ezrah's sons were Jether, Mered, Ephraim, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. Mered's Jewish wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soco; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 ULB)

The ULB moved the underlined sentence from verse 18 to verse 17 to more clearly show which were the sons of Bithiah. Here is the original order, which is confusing to many readers:



17 The sons of Ezra: Jether, Mered, Ephraim, and Jalon. She conceived and bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah father of Eshtemoa. 18 And his Judahite wife bore Jered father of Gedor, Heber father of Soco, and Jekuthiel father of Zanoah. These were the sons of Bithiah daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 TNK)

### Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

See how to mark verses in the [translationStudio APP](#).

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.
  - **<sup>2</sup> you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. <sup>3</sup> You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there.** (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)
    - <sup>2-3</sup> you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UDB)
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

### Uses:

- [Ezekiel 5:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:4](#)

## When Masculine Words Include Women

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In some parts of the Bible, the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes his father rejoice  
but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULB)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.' (Mark 22:24 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.
  - **The wise man dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
    - “The wise person dies just like the fool dies.”
    - “Wise people die just like fools die.”
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
  - **For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, about the troubles we had in Asia.** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
    - “For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.
  - **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
    - “If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me.”

### Uses:

- Ezekiel 21:28-29
- Ezekiel 22:1-3